



DRAFT IDP STATUS QUO ANALYSIS REPORT

2025/26



Table of content

<i>(i)List of Acronyms</i>	27
Chapter One: Introduction	33
1.1 Analysis Phase	33
1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase:	33
1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA.....	34
CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis	35
2. SPATIAL RATIONALE	35
2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City	35
2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location).....	36
2.1.2 The Main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane	37
2.1.3 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards.....	37
2.1.4 Description of the 7 Municipal Clusters of settlements	38
2.1.5 Aerial View of the City of Polokwane CBD	38
2.1.6 Profile of the City of Polokwane	41
2.1.7 Some of the Buildings within City of Polokwane CBD.....	42
2.2 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT	43
2.2.1 1st ORDER SETTLEMENTS (GROWTH POINTS).....	43
2.2.2 2nd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (POPULATION CONCENTRATION POINTS)	43
2.2.3 3rd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (LOCAL SERVICES POINTS)	44
2.2.4 National and International legislative guides and programme	44
2.3 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS	45
2.3.1 Town planning and Township Ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 (to be repealed).....	45
2.3.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)	46
2.3.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)	46
2.3.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000.	46
2.3.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013.....	47
2.4. THE PURPOSE OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT ACT (SPLUMA)	49
2.4.1 SPLUMA implementation Progress	50
2.5 Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS).....	50
2.6. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017	51
2.7. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016.....	51

2.8. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS.....	52
2.9. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES.....	54
2.10. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS.....	54
2.11. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS.....	55
2.12. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS	56
2.13. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS.....	57
2.13.1 General challenges and Intervention.....	60
2.14. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY.....	61
2.14.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws.....	61
2.14.2 Economic opportunities and growth	62
2.15. RURAL DEVELOPMENT.....	62
2.16. URBAN DEVELOPMENT	63
2.16.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan	63
2.17 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS.....	65
2.17.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City	65
2.17.2 The Greenery	67
2.17.3 Limpopo Provincial Theatre Construction	68
2.17.4 Urban Renewal projects.....	70
2.17.5 City wide Development initiatives	74
2.17.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties	74
2.17.7 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements	75
2.17.8. ROAD MAP TO METRO.....	77
2.17.9 Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital	78
2.17.10 R4-billion New Limpopo Central Hospital	80
2.18. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION.....	82
2.19 LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT.....	83
2.20 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF.	84
2.20.1 Science and Research Park.....	84
2.20.2 Bakoni Malapa Arts and Cultural Hub.....	84
2.20.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor	85
2.20.4 Agro processing.....	85
2.20.5 Transit Oriented Development (TOD) precinct.....	86
2.20.6 International Softball stadium.....	86
2.20.7 Post incubation Hub.....	86

2.20.8 Eco-Estate at Game reserve.....	86
2.21 Progress on priority/ Catalytic Land Development Programme.....	87
2.22 Progress with the implementation of Circular 88.....	89
2.23 Intergovernmental Planning	90
2.23.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress	90
2.23.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning	91
2.24 IUDF Implementation to Date.....	91
2.24.1 CEF Modules Progress Status Quo.....	91
2.24.2 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Status Quo.....	92
2.25 IUDG Process Roadmap followed.....	92
2.25.1 CEF Success and Challenges.....	93
2.25.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects.....	94
2.25.3 IUDF Levers	94
2.26 Challenges experienced in endeavour to seek integration and collaboration.....	94
2.27 Approved Land for New Leases	94
2.28 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties.....	94
2.29 Progress Report on Aganang Township Land	95
2.29.1 Ivy park Psychiatric Hospital	95
2.29.2 New TUT Campus.....	96
2.29.3 Molepo Mall Development.....	97
2.29.4 NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital	97
2.29.5 Sod Turning Ceremony for NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital	98
2.29.5 Student Tenements on ERF 7339 Bendor Extension 86	99
2.29.6 Student Accommodation at Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 ls.....	100
2.30 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS	101
2.30.1. INTEGRATED GIS SYSTEM.....	102
2.30.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System	104
2.31 Online AFLA System	104
2.31.1 Modules & Tools	104
2.31.2 Building Plans Management System.....	104
2.31.3Town Planning Management System	105
2.31.4 Cemetery Management System	105
2.32 Challenges and Intervention of GIS.....	106
2.33 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU	107

2.34 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane.....	108
2.35 Economic Development and Tourism.....	108
2.35.1 Introduction	108
2.35.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy	108
2.35.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy:.....	109
2.35.4 Local Skills Base on LED.....	110
2.36 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development	112
2.36.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism.....	112
2.36.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane.....	113
2.37 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality.....	113
2.37.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC).....	114
2.37.2 Stakeholder relations.....	114
2.37.3 Tourism Development	115
2.38 Marketing.....	115
2.39 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT	115
2.39.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre.....	116
2.39.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS.....	117
2.39.3 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES	118
2.39.4 Business Compliance and Regulation	119
2.39.5 Economic Research and Development:	121
2.40 Building Inspection.....	122
2.40.1 LEGISLATION AND POLICY PERSPECTIVE.....	122
2.40.2 Services provided by Council’s Building Inspections	122
2.40.3 Building Inspection Key challenges and Interventions.....	123
2.40.4 Report on the Major Developments Building Plans.....	123
CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements Analysis	125
3.1 Housing Implementation Protocol Signing	125
3.2 HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN.....	126
3.2.1 HOUSING DEMAND.....	126
3.3. HOUSING CHALLENGES.....	129
3.3.1 PRIORITY HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND HOUSING DEVELOPMENT AREAS (PHSHDA)	130
3.3.2 Figure A: Polokwane CBD and Surrounding	131
3.3.3 Figure B: Polokwane R71 Corridor	133
3.4 Opportunities to Mitigate Challenges.....	134

3.4.1 Medium term long opportunities for housing delivery	134
3.4.2 Long term opportunities for housing delivery	136
3.5. TENURE UPGRADING	136
3.6 Title Deeds Backlog	136
3.7 Polokwane is accredited to perform level 2 housing functions.....	138
3.8 Diagram 1: Development Process of Residential (Single dwellings and additions)	138
3.9 Diagram 2: Development Process (Commercial and Cluster Developments)	140
3.10 Polokwane Housing Association – PHA.....	142
3.10.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna	142
3.10.2 Seshego CRU	143
3.10.3 Annadale Extension 2 (Newly Completed Project)	144
3.10.4 Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting.....	145
3.10.5 Construction of an Elevated Tank at Annadale Ext 2.....	146
3.11 PHA Upcoming Projects and Year of Implementation	147
3.12 Designs for the Upcoming PHA key Projects	148
3.12.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs	149
3.12.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs	149
3.13 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects.....	149
3.14 Proposed Development Options.....	150
3.15 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years.....	152
CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis	153
4.1 Introduction to Statistical Overview Report	153
4.2 DEMOGRAPHY.....	153
4.2.1 Total Population.....	154
4.2.2 Population projections.....	155
4.2.3 Population by population group, Gender and Age.....	155
4.2.4 Number of Households by Population Group.....	157
4.3 HIV+ and AIDS estimates.....	159
4.4 Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R)	161
4.4.1 Economic Growth Forecast.....	164
4.4.2 Gross Value Added by Region (GVA-R)	166
4.4.3 Historical Economic Growth	168
4.5 Breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:.....	169
4.5.1 Primary Sector.....	169

4.5.2 Secondary Sector	170
4.5.3 Tertiary Sector.....	171
4.5.4 Sector Growth forecast.....	171
4.6 Tress Index	173
4.7 Location Quotient	174
4.8 Labour	175
4.8.1 Economically Active Population (EAP)	175
4.8.2 Labour Force participation rate	177
4.8.3 Total Employment.....	179
4.8.4 Formal and Informal employment.....	181
4.8.5 Unemployment	183
4.9 Income and Expenditure	186
4.9.1Number of Households by Income category.....	186
4.9.2Annual total Personal Income.....	187
4.9.3 Annual Per capita income	189
4.9.4 Index of Buying Power (IBP).....	190
4.10 Development.....	191
4.10.1Human Development Index (HDI).....	192
4.10.2 Gini Coefficient.....	193
4.11Poverty.....	195
4.11.1 Poverty Gap Rate	196
4.12 Education	198
4.12.1 Functional literacy.....	202
4.13Population Density.....	204
4.14 Crime RATE.....	205
4.14.1 Composite Crime Index.....	206
4.14.2 Overall Crime index.....	206
4.15 Tourism	208
4.15.1Trips by purpose of trips	208
4.15.2Origin of Tourists.....	209
4.15.3Tourism spending.....	210
4.15.4Tourism Spend per Resident Capita.....	211
4.15.5Tourism Spend as a Share of GDP	212
4.16International Trade	212

4.16.1	Relative Importance of international Trade.....	213
CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation Analysis		215
5.1	Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview.....	215
5.1.1	Water Provision	215
5.1.2	Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane	215
5.1.3	Water Provision – Short Term Interventions	216
5.1.4	Progress of Groundwater Developments projects	216
5.1.5	Water Provision – Long Term Interventions	217
5.2	Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality.....	217
5.3.	WATER.....	217
5.3.1	Principles of Water Service Provision	218
5.3.2	16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS)	218
5.3.3	Water Scheme Sources	218
5.3.4	Water Provision Progress.....	221
5.3.5	Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes.	230
5.3.6	Polokwane Water Supply 2023/24	231
5.3.7.	Polokwane Groundwater Development	231
5.3.8	Technical report approval.....	232
5.3.9.	Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Water Projects)	233
5.3.10	Free Basic Water	233
5.3.11	Water Quality.....	234
5.3.12	Surface water quality test results	235
5.3.13.	Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water.....	237
5.3.14.	Water Supply to schools	238
5.4.	SANITATION	238
5.4.1	Sanitation Provision	238
5.4.2	VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas	238
5.4.3	Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project	239
5.4.4	Green Drop Audit.	239
5.4.5	Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions)	240
5.4.6.	Free Basic Sanitation.....	240
5.4.7.	Wastewater Treatment Plants.....	241
5.4.8.	Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects).....	241
5.4.9	Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation.....	242

5.4.10 Sanitation in Schools	242
5.4.11 Rural Household Sanitation	243
5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES	243
5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall.....	244
5.6. SMART METERING	245
5.7. AC Pipes Replacement	247
5.7.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement.....	248
5.7.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement.....	248
5.7.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster	248
5.8 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield.....	249
5.9 Water Losses	249
5.9.1 Causes of Water losses	250
5.9.2 Water losses Mitigation Strategy.....	250
5.9.3 Longer term plan to address Water losses.	251
5.9.4 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs.....	251
5.9.5 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure	251
5.10 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience)	252
5.10.1 Water Resource Security	252
5.10.2 Polokwane City Water Supply.....	252
5.10.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241)	253
5.10.4 Network Management.....	253
5.10.5 Waste Water Treatment.....	253
5.10.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment.....	253
5.10.7 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers).....	254
5.11 Smart Meters	256
5.11.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries.....	256
5.11.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains.	256
5.12 WATER TANKERS.....	256
5.12.1 Municipal Water Tankers Fleet.....	257
5.13 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo.....	258
5.13.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report	258
5.14 Pump Station Status Quo	258
5.14.1 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL PUMP STATION STATUS QUO IN ALL CLUSTERS.....	258
5.14.2 Names of the Pump Stations and Status Quo.....	259

5.15 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES.....	259
5.16 Interventions to solve the Challenges.....	260
5.16.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTE WATER TREATMENT PLANT	261
5.16.2 New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant	261
5.16.2 Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works.....	262
5.16.3Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works.	264
5.17 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision	264
5.17.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE.....	265
5.17.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility	266
5.17.3 SAVE Water Campaign	266
5.17.4 Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10.....	267
5.17.5 Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project	268
CHAPTER Six: Energy Services Analysis	269
6.1. ENERGY SERVICES	269
6.1.1 Completed Project - Supply and installation of electrical network in Polokwane Ext 40..	269
6.1.2 After Electrification Photos for Polokwane Ext 40.....	270
6.1.3 Energy Master Plan	271
6.1.4 Free Basic Electricity	272
6.1.5 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar light system).....	273
6.1.6 Solar Water Geysers.....	273
6.1.7 Solar geysers Installed at Seshego Ext 71 and 75	273
6.1.8 The two types of solar water geysers installed at Mohlakaneng	274
6.1.9 Solar water geysers Challenges.....	275
6.1.10 Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy.	275
6.1.11 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES.....	276
6.1.12 Rural Areas Electrification.....	276
6.1.13 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment.....	276
6.1.14 The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at EXT 78 - Phase 2	277
6.2 Electricity Losses	278
6.2.1 Causes of electricity losses.....	278
6.2.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue)	278
6.2.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings).....	279
6.2.4 Maintenance Plan for Electrical infrastructure.....	281
6.3 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)	281

6.3.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification	282
6.3.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)	288
6.4 Electricity Master Plan	292
6.5 Future Township Developments	292
6.5.1 Energy Services Challenges	295
6.5.2 Financial Impact	295
6.5.3 Recommendations	295
6.6 The Electrification Acceleration Process	295
6.6.1 Rural Electrification Backlog	296
6.6.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification	296
6.7 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas	296
6.7.1 Challenges of High Mast lights	296
6.7.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations	296
6.7.3 Electrification Project in progress at Seshego Zone 8 (Ext 133)	297
6.7.4 Electrification Project in progress at EXT 78	297
6.7.5 Construction of Bakone Substation Completed	297
6.8 Solar Streetlights	298
6.8.1 Solar streetlights at Extension 44	298
6.8.2 Streets lights Repairs Programme	300
6.8.3 Extension 78 Streetlights Repairs	300
CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis	302
7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS	302
7.1.1 Climate Description	302
7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality	302
7.1.3 Topography	303
7.1.4 Geology	303
7.1.5 Hydrology	303
7.1.6 Vegetation	304
7.1.7 Soils	304
7.1.8 Heritage Resources	304
7.1.9 Protection and Conservation of ecosystems (Biodiversity)	305
7.1.10 Euphorbia Clivicola	306
7.1.11 Euphorbia groenewaldii	306
7.1.12 Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus	306

7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING.....	307
7.2.1 Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies.....	308
7.2.2 Environmental Challenges	309
7.2.3 Major Environmental Achievements	309
7.2.4 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET	310
7.2.5 Approved Capital Projects.....	311
7.2.6 Completed Project - Construction of Ablution facility at Tom Naude Park.....	311
7.2.7 Upgrading of Municipal Nursery (During and After repairs of glasshouse).....	312
7.2.9 Polokwane Environmental Forum.....	313
7.2.10 Capricorn District Environmental Forum	313
7.2.11 Arbor Day Celebration and Greening Programme.....	313
7.2.12 2023 National Arbor City Award Winner	314
7.2.13 Polokwane is the winner of the Provincial Greenest Municipal Competition 2024.....	315
7.3 Maintenance of Parks and Open Spaces (48 x Municipal Parks)	315
7.3.1 48 x Municipal Parks Maintenance Programme.....	316
7.3.2 Grass Cutting Teams	321
7.3.3 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme.....	321
7.3.4 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan	323
7.4. National Arbor City Competition	323
7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT	323
7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council.....	324
7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan.....	324
7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws	325
7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants	325
7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer	325
7.5.6 Approved Organogram Structure for Environmental Health SBU	326
7.5.7 Conducting of industry inspection.....	328
7.5.8 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs.....	328
7.5.9 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget	329
7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES	329
7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA.....	329
7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties	329
7.6.3 Environmental Outlook.....	330

7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)	330
7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness	331
7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions.....	331
7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA	331
7.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT	332
7.7.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide	332
7.7.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU	332
7.7.3 CORE FUNCTIONS OF WASTE SBU	332
7.7.4 Personnel (Waste SBU)	332
7.7.5 TYPES OF EQUIPMENTS REQUIRED.....	333
7.7.6 SERVICE LEVEL STANDARDS: OPERATIONS.....	333
7.7.7 weekly waste collection service.....	334
7.7.8 WASTE FACILITIES (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations).....	334
7.7.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary	334
7.7.10 CURRENT WASTE PROJECTS: 2023/24.....	334
7.7.11 CONTRACTED SERVICES UNDER WASTE MANAGEMENT	335
7.7.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW	335
7.8 Challenges for cleanliness of the City	336
7.8.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer	336
7.8.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting.....	336
7.9. Designation of Waste Management Officer	336
7.9.1 Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)	339
7.9.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste	339
7.9.3 Refuse Removal Trends.....	340
7.9.4 Licensed Landfill Sites	341
7.9.5 Waste Management Challenges	341
7.9.6 Waste Management Status Quo.....	343
7.9.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas.....	344
7.10 Waste Management Services Status Quo.....	345
7.10.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services	345
7.10.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo	345
7.10.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster)	346

7.10.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters).....	347
7.10.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters)	348
7.10.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week	349
7.10.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD.....	350
7.10.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention	351
7.10.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westernburg.....	351
7.10.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping	354
7.10.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem.	354
7.10.12 Progress Report on Waste Management Capital Projects	355
7.11 By-Law Enforcement & SECURITY	356
7.11.1 SBU challenges and intervention	357
7.12. SAFER CITY CONCEPT	358
7.13 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES	359
7.13.1 Fire Services Status Quo.....	359
7.13.2 Polokwane Main Fire Stations	360
7.13.3 Challenges of Fires Services Unit:	361
7.13.4 Accredited Fire-Fighting Course.....	362
7.13.5 Disaster Management Status Quo	362
7.13.6 Challenges of Disaster Management Unit	363
7.13.7 Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet.....	364
7.14 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS.....	364
7.14.1 Traffic and licenses services.....	364
7.14.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses	365
7.14.3 City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet	365
7.14.4 City of Polokwane Main Traffic Department at Ladanna.....	366
7.14.4 Revenue Enhancement Streams	368
7.15 Licensing Services.....	368
7.15.1 Computerised Leaners Testing Facility	369
7.15.2 Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months	369
7.15.3 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics.....	373
7.15.4 Traffic and Licences Challenges:	374
7.15.5 Measures to address Challenges:	374
7.16. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH.....	375
7.17 SPORT AND RECREATION ANALYSIS.....	375

7.17.1 Municipal Swimming Pools	377
7.17.2 New Peter Mokaba Stadium	377
7.17.3 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium	379
7.17.4 Horticultural Services	379
7.17.5 Sport and Recreational Facilities	379
7.18 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane	380
7.18.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane	380
7.18.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs	382
7.18.3 Construction of Softball Stadium Progress	383
7.19 SPORTS GROUND GRADING STATUS QUO	384
7.19.1 Sports Field Grading Program	385
7.19.2 TENNIS COURT RENOVATIONS	386
7.19.3 Upgrading of Seshego Stadium	387
7.19.4 Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Finalisation	389
7.19.5 Mayoral Charity Golf Cup	391
7.19.6 Polokwane City Marathon	392
7.20 CULTURAL SERVICES	394
7.20.1 Cultural Services	394
7.21 Libraries	395
7.21.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries	395
7.22 Museums	399
7.22.1 Objectives of the Museum	399
7.22.2 Museums located within the City	399
7.22.3 Irish House Museum	400
7.22.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum	401
7.22.5 Polokwane Art Museum	401
7.22.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum	402
7.23 Heritage Sites	402
7.23.1 Eersteling Monument	403
7.23.2 Other heritage sites that have been identified	403
7.24 Cultural Desk	404
7.24.1 Key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection	404
7.24.2 Cultural Desk Challenges	406
CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation Analysis	407

8.1 Performance Management System (PMS).....	407
8.1.1 THE LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK FOR PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT.....	407
8.1.2 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE MANUAL.....	408
8.1.3 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS.....	408
8.1.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MEASURES AT VARIOUS LEVELS.....	409
8.2 ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE.....	409
8.3 INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT OF SENIOR MANAGERS.....	409
8.3.1 PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTS AND EVALUATION OF SENIOR MANAGERS.....	410
8.3.2 THE PROCESS OF MANAGING PERFORMANCE.....	410
8.4 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP.....	410
8.5 Performance Reporting.....	411
8.5.1 Automated Performance Reporting System.....	411
8.6 Audit of Performance Management Information.....	411
8.7 PMS Challenges.....	412
8.8. MUNICIPAL CLUSTER OFFICES.....	412
8.8.1 Number of Municipal Clusters and their Wards.....	412
8.8.2 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards.....	413
8.9 Municipal Cluster Offices.....	413
8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office.....	414
8.9.2 Molepo-Chuene-Maja Cluster Office.....	414
8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office.....	415
8.9.4 Sebayeng-Dikgale Cluster Office.....	415
8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office.....	416
8.9.6 Aganang Cluster Office.....	416
8.9.7 Moletjie Cluster Office.....	417
8.9.8 Award for best performing Thusong Service Centre (Moletjie Moshate Thusong Service Centre).....	417
8.10 Cluster Offices Challenges.....	418
8.10.1. Proposed intervention on Identified Challenges.....	419
8.10.2 CORE RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CLUSTERS-SBU.....	420
8.10.3 CLUSTER OFFICES AND THEIR LOCATIONS.....	420
8.10.4 CURRENT STAFF COMPONENT ACROSS CLUSTERS.....	421
8.10.5 SERVICES RENDERED IN THE VARIOUS CLUSTER OFFICES.....	421
8.10.6 CLUSTERS CAPITAL PROJECTS.....	422

8.11 INTERNAL AUDIT	423
8.11.1 Definition and mandate of Internal Audit.....	423
8.11.2 Internal Audit Strategic Coverage Plan	424
8.11.3 Audit Committee and Performance Audit Committee	425
8.11.4 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)	425
8.11.5 Resources availability for Internal Audit.....	426
8.11.6 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions.....	426
8.11.7 DISCIPLINARY BOARD.....	428
8.12 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT	428
8.12.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders.....	428
8.12.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders	429
8.12.3 The building blocks of Good Governance	430
8.12.4 Ward Committee and Community Development Workers (CDW's)	430
8.13 SECRETARIAT	431
8.13.1 Main objectives of Secretariat unit.....	431
8.13.2 Challenges /Constraints at Secretariat and Records.....	431
8.14 COUNCIL COMMITTEES.....	431
8.14.1 Political Parties Represented in Council:	431
8.14.2 City of Polokwane Council Meeting	432
8.14.3 Portfolio Committees.....	432
8.14.4 Municipal Public Account Committee (MPAC)	433
8.14.5 Local Geographic Names Committee.....	434
8.14.6 Rules and Ethics Committee	434
8.15 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING	434
8.15.1 Complaints Management System	436
8.16 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT PROGRAMMES	436
8.16.1 Core Function of the Executive Support SBU.....	437
8.16.2 Special Focus Challenges.....	438
8.17 Health and Social Development.....	439
8.17.1 Health Facilities Analysis	439
8.17.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane	439
8.17.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane	441
8.17.4 National HIV prevalence	441
8.17.5 Awards Received by Special Focus.....	441

8.17.6 The 95-95-95 targets.....	442
8.18 LEGAL SERVICES	442
8.18.1 Core Functions of Legal Services.....	442
8.18.2 Legislation & Law Enforcement	442
8.18.3 Litigation	443
8.18.4 Governance and Corporate Affairs	444
8.19 RISK MANAGEMENT.....	445
8.19.1 Risk Management core responsibilities.....	445
8.19.2 Risk Management Committee	445
8.19.3 The Risk Champions Committee	445
8.19.4 Top 13 Strategic Risks Identified.....	446
8.19.5 Risk assessment review process	446
8.20 Fraud and Corruption Strategy	446
8.20.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud.....	446
8.20.2 Whistle Blowing Policy.....	447
8.20.3 Anti-Fraud and awareness	447
8.21. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP).....	447
8.21.1 Legislative Background Introduction	447
8.21.2 Integrated Development Planning.....	448
8.21.3 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001).....	449
8.21.4 IDP/ Budget Process Plan.....	449
8.21.5 The IDP/Budget Committees	450
8.21.6 IDP/Budget Technical Committee.....	450
8.21.7 IDP/Budget Steering Committee.....	450
8.21.8 IDP Representative Forum	450
8.22 IDP/Budget Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process	450
8.22.1 Executive Mayor addressing the Community during IDP /Budget Public Participation Meeting.....	451
8.23 MEC IDP Assessments	452
8.23.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP	452
8.24 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad)	453
8.25 District Development Model (DDM)	454
8.25.1 The District Development Model – One Plan	454
8.25.2 The Approach	454

8.25.3 A New Shift.....	454
8.25.4 What Problems are DDM trying to solve?	455
8.25.5 POSITIONING THE DDM	456
8.25.6 The Key Principles	456
8.25.7 The DDM Model.....	457
8.25.8 Principles underpinning the Model and Main Objectives of the Model	458
8.25.9 DDM Institutionalisation	458
8.25.10 The Model’s Main Objectives	459
8.25.11 ONE PLAN WHEELS DESCRIPTIONS	459
8.25.12 Institutional Arrangements, Roles and Responsibilities	462
8.25.13 DDM Gazette.....	465
8.26 Project Management Unit (PMU)	466
8.26.1 Roles and Responsibilities for PMU	466
8.26.2 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME	466
8.27 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).....	467
8.27.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase V	468
8.27.2 Community Work Programme.....	468
8.27.3 EPWP Jobs Targets.....	469
8.28 PMU Challenges	469
8.28.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges.....	469
8.29 Technical Report Approval.....	470
8.30 Capital Expenditure Framework(CEF)	470
8.31 2024/25 Grants performance.	470
8.32 PLANNING FOR 2024/25 FY	472
8.32.1 2024/25FY Grant Allocations	472
8.32.2 SUMMARY OF FORWARD PLANNING	472
8.32.3 2024/25 Finacial Year Project Status Quo	473
8.32.4. 2024/25FY IUDG Projects.....	473
8.32.5 2024/25FY NDPG Projects.....	480
8.32.6 2024/25FY WSIG Projects	481
CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development Analysis	482
9.1 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE	482
9.1.1 Political Governance Structure	483
9.2 ADMINISTRATIVE GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE	483

9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers.....	485
9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram	485
9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate	485
9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate.....	487
9.3 Skills Development and Training.....	488
9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills.....	488
9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA).....	489
9.3.3 Learnership programmes.....	490
9.3.4 Institutional Plan	490
9.4 Employment Equity.....	490
9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality.....	491
9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities.....	492
9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality	492
9.5 Job grade analysis	493
9.6 Vacancy and Turnover	493
9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS)	494
9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges.....	495
9.8 Employee Relations.....	496
9.9 Employee Assistance Programme (EAP)	497
9.10 Recruitment	498
9.11 Fleet Management Services.....	499
9.11.1 Number of Fleet.....	499
9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo	500
9.11.3 Procurement of Waste Compactor truck and Panel vans	500
9.11.4 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy	500
9.11.5 Challenges Within the Fleet SBU	500
9.11.6 Interventions and control measures.....	501
9.11.7 New Municipal Fleet	502
9.11.8 Unveiling of two new graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor	502
9.12 Information Communication and Technology (ICT).....	503
9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept	504
9.12.2 ICT Governance	505
9.12.3 ICT Challenges	506
9.12.4 Network Upgrade (Seshego Cluster Offices)	507

9.12.5 Connectivity for Aganang Cluster	507
9.13 ICT (Telephone Systems).....	507
9.13.1 Telephone Network Configuration	508
9.13.2 City of Polokwane Call Centre Numbers	508
9.13.3 Telephone System Challenges	509
9.14 Record Management	510
9.14.1 Record Management Objectives	510
9.14.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management	510
9.15 Facilities Management.....	510
9.15.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters.....	510
9.15.2 Procedure Manual	514
9.15.3 Priority of work and response times.....	515
9.15.4 Maintenance of municipal facilities.....	515
9.15.5 Trades conducted under routine maintenance.....	516
9.15.6 Codes and Standards	518
9.15.7 Refurbishment and renovation of buildings:	519
CHAPTER Ten: Transportation Services Analysis	520
10.1 Leeto la Polokwane	520
10.1.1 Introduction to Transportation.....	520
10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP).....	520
10.1.3 COMMUTER TRANSPORT CORRIDORS AND FACILITIES.....	520
10.2 Mode of Public Transport Facilities	521
10.2.1 Metered Taxi.....	522
10.3 Polokwane International Airport (GAAL)	523
10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport	523
10.3.2 Rail.....	524
10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT	524
10.4.1 Road freight	524
10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT	524
10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT.....	525
10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVELL.....	525
10.6 TRANSPORT IMPLICATIONS OF THE SDF.....	525
10.7 INTERMODAL / LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB.....	526
10.8 LEETO LA POLOKWANE SYSTEM ELEMENT.....	527

10.8.1 Universal Access (UA)	527
10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT).....	527
10.8.3 Industry Transition	528
10.8.4 Transport Planning and Operations	528
10.8.5 Intelligent Transport System Modelling	529
10.8.6 Leeto La Polokwane fare increase	529
10.8.7 Leeto Marketing, Communications and Stakeholder Relations	529
10.8.8 Business and Finance	530
10.8.9 Leeto Infrastructure	531
10.9 Construction of Bus Depot at Seshego	531
10.9.1 Paving of internal roads and Parking Area at the Bus Depot at Seshego	531
10.10 General Joubert Street Bus Station Precinct.....	532
10.10.1 Progress on Construction of Bus Station Upper Structure (General Joubert str)	533
10.10.2 Complete ProjectConstruction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD	534
10.10.3 Widening of Sandriver Bridge	534
10.11 Trunk route between Seshego and the CBD.....	535
10.11.1 Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD	536
8.11.2 Streets that will have Leeto Dedicated lanes.....	537
10.11.3 Leeto Daytime Layover Facility	537
10.11.4 Leeto Control Cent	538
10.11.5 Leeto La Polokwane (LLP)	539
10.11.5 Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane	539
10.11.6 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane.....	540
10.12 Progress on implementation of Leeto La Polokwane Turnaround Strategy.....	541
10.12.1 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service	543
10.12.2 Monthly ridership and revenue collected.....	543
10.12.3 Accessibility and Convenience	544
10.12.4 Bus Stop Coverage	544
10.12.5 Route Alignment Coverage	544
10.12.6 Flora Park (F1) Route	545
10.12.7 Westernburg (F4A) Route	545
10.12.8 Seshego (TE4) Route	545
10.12.9 Seshego (TEB) Route	545
10.13 Modal Competition	545

10.13.1 Information Dissemination	546
10.13.2 Insufficient Human Resources	546
10.13.3 Possible Strategies to Address Identified Challenges	546
10.14 Upgrade of Indian Centre Taxi Rank	547
CHAPTER Eleven: Roads and Storm Water Analysis	549
11.1 ROADS AND STORM WATER	549
11.1.1 Introduction to Roads and Storm water	549
11.1.2 Classification of Roads	551
11.1.3 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads.	552
11.2 ROADS BACKLOG	552
11.2.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo	552
11.2.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD, Seshego, Westerberg.	553
11.2.3 Refurbishment of streets around the City CBD	553
11.2.4 War on pothole programme	554
11.2.5 Grader's status QUO Report per Cluster (Their Condition)	554
11.2.6 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo	556
11.2.7 New Municipal Graders Hand over	557
11.3 Construction of low level bridges	558
11.3.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES PROGRAMME	558
11.3.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed	558
11.4 Repairs on Storm Water Drainage	559
11.4.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance	559
11.4.2 Interventions for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance	560
11.5 Various Roads Projects under Construction within Various Municipal Clusters	561
11.5.1 Upgrading of Internal Street from Hostel to Oliver Tambo Road at Seshego zone 6	562
11.6 Paving of Economically Strategic Roads	562
11.6.1 Paving of Streets in Mankgaile	563
11.6.2 Paving of Streets in Sebayeng /Dikgale Cluster	563
11.7 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water	564
11.8 Grading of Rural Roads Per Cluster	564
11.8.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo	564
11.8.2 Challenges for Rural Roads Grading	565
11.8.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis	566
11.8.4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads)	566

11.9 ROAD PER WARD PROGRAMME	567
11.9.1 Paving of Street at Moletjie Cluster (Ga-Rankuwa –Ward 35)	568
11.9.2 Upgrading the road from Ga-Mosi to Sengatane	568
11.9.3 Paving of Street in SDA1(DWARS Street Ward 08)	569
11.9.4 Paving of Street in Mankgaile (WARD 04)	570
11.9.5 Upgrading of arterial Road from Spitzkop to Segwashi (Ward 34).....	571
11.9.6 Upgrading of Road at Seshego Zone 5	572
11.9.7 Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street (Industrial Area).....	573
11.9.8 Paving of Street in Moletjie Ga Makibelo to Hlahla Ring Road (Ward 38)	574
11.9.9 Rehabilitation of DORP street in the City CBD	575
11.9.10 Upgrading of Mohlonong to Kalkspruit Road under (Aganang Cluster)	576
11.9.11 Rehabilitation of Jorrisen Street City CBD	577
11.9.12 Upgrading of roads at Seshego Zone 6	577
11.9.13 Tarring of road from Tshebela to Moshate (Ward 03) Molepo/Chuene/ Maja Cluster).....	578
11.9.14 Upgrading of Access Road at Ga Makgoba (Ward 33)	579
11.9.15 Upgrading of Silicon to Matobole	579
11.9.16 Paving of road at Extension 78	580
11.9.17 Paving of Internal Street from Solomondale to D3997(Ward 32)	580
11.9.18 Paving of access road to Moshate wa Moletji (Offices).....	581
11.10 ROADS MARKING PROGRAMME.....	582
11.10.1 Road Marking at Bodenstein Street.....	582
11.10.2 Road Marking in the City CBD	583
CHAPTER TWELVE -Financial Analysis	584
12.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY	584
12.1.1 Revenue Management.....	584
12.1.2 Status on Revenue Management.....	584
12.1.3. Revenue Enhancement	585
12.1.4 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments.....	585
12.1.5 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy	585
12.1.6 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management	587
12.2. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK.....	587
12.3 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT.....	588

12.3.1 Debtor Book	588
11.3.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2024)	588
12.3.3 Debtors Aging (30 June 2023) Comparative	590
12.3.4 Debt Control Initiatives	590
12.4 Indigent support.....	590
12.4.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register.....	590
12.4.2 Processes in indigent Applications.....	591
12.4.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support.....	591
12.4.4 Debtors Incentive Scheme	592
12.4.5 Indigent Support	592
12.5 Revenue generation from other SBUs	593
12.6 FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK.....	593
12.7 Expenditure Management	594
12.7.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement	594
12.7.2 Expenditure analysis	594
12.7.3 Key Contracted Services.....	595
12.7.4 General Expenditure	595
12.7.5 Overtime	596
12.7.6 Capital Performance	596
12.7.7 Non-core expenditure.....	596
12.7.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management	597
12.7.9 Creditors.....	597
12.7.10 Payment of creditors	598
12.8 BORROWINGS	598
12.8.1 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments.	599
12.9 Key ratios – Expenditure Management	599
12.10 EXPENDITURE.....	601
12.10.1 Expenditure analysis	601
12.11 Expenditure.....	601
12.11.1 Expenditure Flow Chart	602
12.11.2 Key contracted services	602
12.11.3 Roll Overs Projects	603
12.11.4 Budget Adjustments	603
12.12 Investments.....	603

12.13 Asset Management	603
12.13.1 State of Assets.....	604
12.13.2 State of Assets – Asset Portfolio	604
12.13.3 Asset Consultants.....	605
12.14 Auditor General Outcomes	605
12.14.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR	605
12.14.2 Audit Strategy	606
12.15 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY	606
12.16. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM)	607
12.16.1 Supply Chain Committees	607
12.16.2 SCM Challenges on Projects.....	608
12.17 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (MSCOA).....	609
12.17.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform	609
12.17.2 mSCOA Implementation by Polokwane Municipality.....	610
12.18 COST CONTAINMENT	610
12.18.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE SUMMARY.....	610
12.19 Audit COMMITTEES Outcomes	611
12.20 Research and Development.....	612
12.20.1 City of Polokwane Investor summit	612
12.20.2 Use of early warning underground cable theft alarm system to prevent cable theft. ...	612
12.20.3 Revamped IT infrastructure and control centre	612
12.20.4 Risk to our financial viability	613
12.22 Sustained Audit Excellence Award.....	613

(i)List of Acronyms

Abbreviations	Explanation
ABET	Adult Basic Education and Training
ACDP	African Christian Democratic Party
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
ANC	African National Congress
AZAPO	Azanian People Organization
AFS	Annual Financial Statements
AGSA	Auditor General of South Africa
AG	Auditor General
AR	Annual Report
AO	Accounting Officer
APAC	Audit & Performance Audit Committee
B&B	Bed and Breakfast
BBBEE	Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment
BRT	Bus Rapid Transport
COPE	Congress of the People
CAS	Controlled Access Site
CBD	Central Business District
CBP	Community Based Planning
CCTV	Closed Circuit Television
CDM	Capricorn District Municipality
CDW	Community Development Worker
CFO	Chief Financial Officer
CEO	Chief Executive Officer
CGICTPF	Corporate Governance of Information and Communication Technology Policy Framework
Cllr	Councillor
COGHSTA	Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs
CRM	Customer Relationship Management

Abbreviations	Explanation
CRMP	Cultural Resources Management Plans
CRU	Central Re-examination Unit
CRZ	Commercial Restricted Zone
DA	Democratic Alliance
DC	Development Corridors
DEA	Department of Environmental Affairs
DORA	Division of Revenue Act
DCoG	Department of Cooperative Governance
DPME	The Presidency Department of Planning Monitoring and Evaluation
DSAC	Department of Sports, Arts and Culture
DWA	Department of Water Affairs
DWAE	Department of Water Affairs and Environment
DWS	Department of Workforce Service
EFF	Economic Freedom Fighters
ECM	Electronic Content Management
EGDP	Economic Growth and Development Plan
EXCO	Executive Committee
EDFS	Environmental Defence Fund Service
EHP	Environmental Health Projects
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ELMDP	Executive Leadership Municipal Development Programme
EM	Executive Mayor
EMP	Environmental Management Plan
EPWP	Expanded Public works Programme
ERP	Enterprise Resource Planning
ETDP	Education, Training and Development Practices
FFP	Freedom Front Plus
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FBW	Free Basic Water
FDA's	Functional Development Areas

Abbreviations	Explanation
FIFA	Federation of International Football Associations
FY	Financial Year
GAAL	Gateway Airport Authority
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GGP	Gross Geographic Product
GIS	Geographical Information System
GITOC	Government Information Technology Offices Council
GVA	Gross Value Added
HDI	Human Development Index
HOD	Head of Department
HDI's	Historically Disadvantaged Individuals
HIV	Human Immune Virus
HR	Human Resources
HV	High Voltage
ICT	Information and Communication Technology
ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
IDP	Integrated Development Plan
IA	Internal Audit
IGR	Intergovernmental Relations
IIA	Institute of Internal Auditor
IKS	Indigenous Knowledge System
IRPTS	Integrated Rapid Public Transport System
IT&T	Information Technology and Telecommunications
ITS	Intelligent Transport System
IUDG	Integrated Urban Development Grant
IWMP	Integrated Waste Management Plan
JMPF	Joint Municipal Pension Fund
KPA	Key Performance Area
KPI	Key Performance Indicator
LED	Local Economic Development

Abbreviations	Explanation
LEGDP	Limpopo Employment, Growth and Development Plan
LDP	Limpopo Development Plan
LGSETA	Local Government Sector Education Training Authority
LTD	Limited Company
LTP	Limpopo Tourism and Parks
LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme
LV	Low Voltage
MAYCO	Mayoral Committee
MMC	Member of Mayoral Committee
MCPF	Municipal Councillors Pension Fund
MEC	Member of Executive Council
MEPF	Municipal Employee Pension Fund
MEW	Measure of Economic Welfare
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MGF	Municipal Gratuity Fund
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MIS	Management Information System
MLL	Minimum Living Level
MM	Municipal Manager
MPAC	Municipal Public Account Committee
MSA	Municipal Systems Act
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
mSCOA	Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts
N1	National Road (Cape town-Beit Bridge)
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NDP	National Development Plan
NFMW	National Fund for Municipal Workers
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NOX	Nitrogen Oxides
NTC	National Training Centre

Abbreviations	Explanation
NTK	Need To Know
NMT	Non-Motorised Transport
OC	Organizing Committee
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety
OPCA	Operation Clean Audit
PC's	Professional Corporation/Personal Computer
PHA	Polokwane Housing Association
PLM	Polokwane Local Municipality
PHP	People Housing Partnership
PICC	Polokwane International Conventional Centre
PIMS	Planning and Implementation Management Support
PMS	Performance Management System
PPU	Public Participation Unit
PR	Public Relations
PRASA	Passenger Railway Agency of South Africa
PSL	Premier Soccer League
PTIS	Public Transport Infrastructure Support Fund
PTY	Proprietary Company
PPP	Public Private Partnership
RAL	Road Agency Limpopo
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
ROD	Record of Decision
RWS	Regional Water Scheme
SA	South Africa
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
SANRAL	The South African National Roads Agency Ltd
SADC	Southern Africa Development Community
SALGA	South African Local Government Association
SAMWU	South African Municipal Workers Union
SANABP	South African National Association of Blind and Partially Sighted

Abbreviations	Explanation
SANDF	South African Defence Force
SANS	South African Network Service
SAPS	South African Police Service
SBU	Strategic Business Unit
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SCM	Supply Chain Management
SDA	Service Delivery Area
SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
SDF	Spatial Development Framework
SDI	Strategic Development Initiatives
SETA	Sector Education and Training Authority
SMME's	Small and Medium Enterprises
SMS	Senior Management Services
SOP'	Stand Operating Procedure
SOX	Sodium Oxides
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act
SPPIA	Standards for Professional Practice of Internal Audits
Stats,S.A	Statistics South Africa
TLC	Transitional Local Council
UDM	United Democratic Movement
UPVC	Unplasticized Polyvinyl Chloride
VP	Vryheidsfront Plus
VIC	Visitors Information Centre
VIP	Ventilation Improved Pit
WSA	Water Service Authority
WSP	Water Service Provider
WSDP	Water Services Development Plan
ZCC	Zion Christian Church

Chapter One: Introduction

1.1 Analysis Phase

The first step for the Reviewal of the IDP is to conduct an analysis of the current state of affairs of the Municipality so that the planning process will be informed by the true reflection of affairs on the ground.

In the analysis phase, Polokwane Municipality is obliged to conduct SWOT analysis as far as the **backlogs in service delivery** is concerned. The information provided should enable the municipality to decide on priority issues or problems, with due consideration of the residents'/communities' perceptions and of available facts and figures.

The municipality should be able to know about the concrete nature of these priority issues or problems, such as trends, context, causes and impacts related to these issues, in order to make informed decisions on appropriate solutions.

The analysis phase should also serve as a **gauge** on how the municipality is performing towards the achievements of the **2030 Vision** which has been approved by Council and also to align municipal plans towards the vision.

The identified problems should be considered and prioritised according to levels of urgency and/or importance, thus constituting the key development priorities.

Through the analysis phase, the Municipality must also be aware of existing and accessible assets and resource limitations before making decisions on strategies in order to allocate scarce resources strategically.

It is important that a municipality understands not only the **symptoms**, but also the causes of problems in order to make informed and appropriate decisions. The municipality must not make assumptions on what the problems are in its area. The people affected should be involved in determining the problems and priorities.

1.2 The Outputs of the Analysis Phase:

- ✓ Assessment of the existing level of Development (**with specific reference to service gaps**).
- ✓ Key Development Priorities (**Problems**)
- ✓ Information on dynamics and causes of Key Development Priorities
- ✓ Information on available resources, potentials and assets

The municipality has conducted Status Quo analysis in **all** the KPA's of local government. Below is the status quo report per Directorate/KPA.

1.3 Status Quo Analysis per KPA

	KPA / Directorates
1	KPA1.Spatial Rationale
2	KPA 2. Basic Services and Infrastructure Planning
3	KPA 3. Local Economic Development
4	KPA 4. Good Governance and Public Participation
5	KPA.5 Financial Viability
6	KPA 6. Municipal Transformation and Organizational Development

CHAPTER Two: Spatial Planning and Land Use Analysis

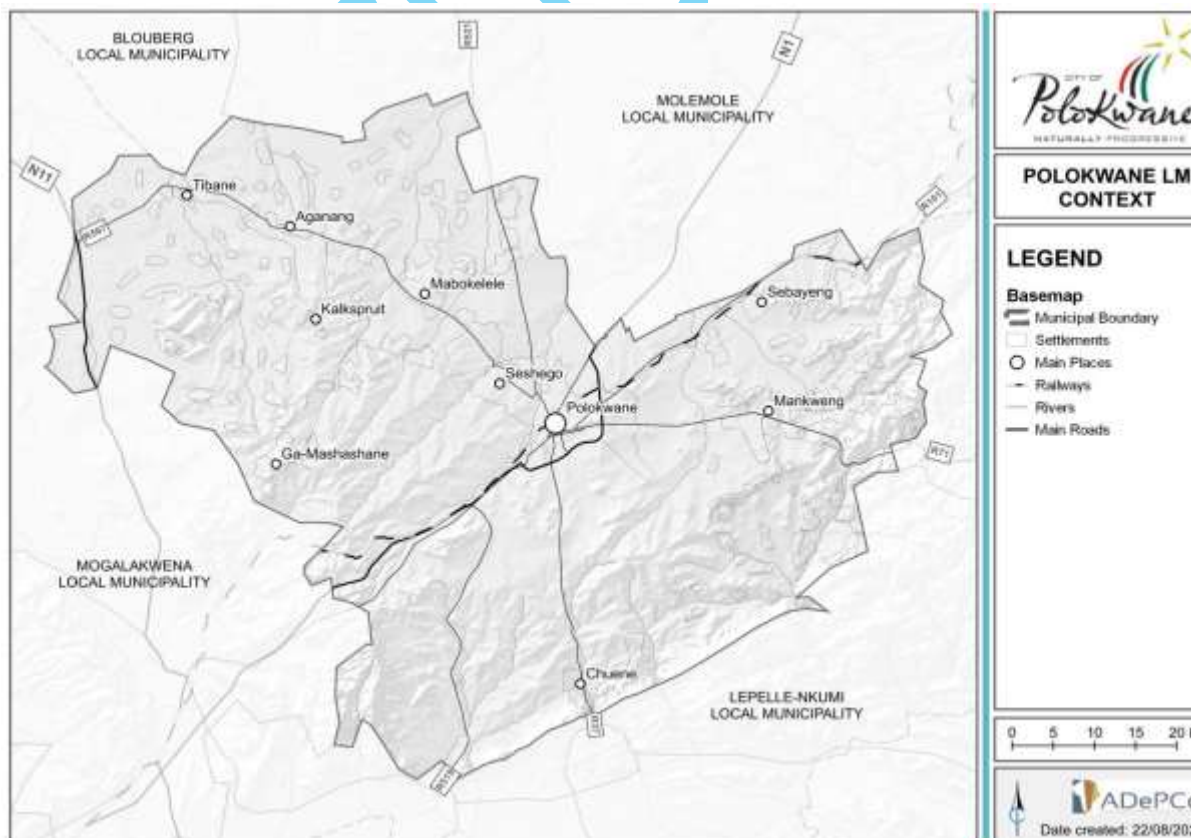
2. SPATIAL RATIONALE

2.1 Strategic Location of Polokwane City

Polokwane meaning "Place of Safety" in Sotho, is a City and also the Capital City of the Limpopo Province, Polokwane is South Africa's largest urban centre north of Gauteng. The City of Polokwane is situated in the **central region** of the Limpopo Province, which is the northern province in South Africa. Polokwane is a part of the Capricorn District Municipality, which includes other local municipalities such as Blouberg, Molemole, and Lepelle Nkumpi. The geographical boundaries of Polokwane are as follows:

- To the north, Polokwane shares boundaries with Blouberg and Molemole local municipalities.
- To the south, it borders the Lepelle Nkumpi local municipality.
- On the west, it is adjacent to the Mogalakwena Local Municipality, a part of the Waterberg District Municipality.
- On the east, it shares borders with the Greater Tzaneen Local Municipality, which is a part of the Mopani District Municipality.

City of Polokwane boundaries Map



Source: City of Polokwane New SDF (2024)

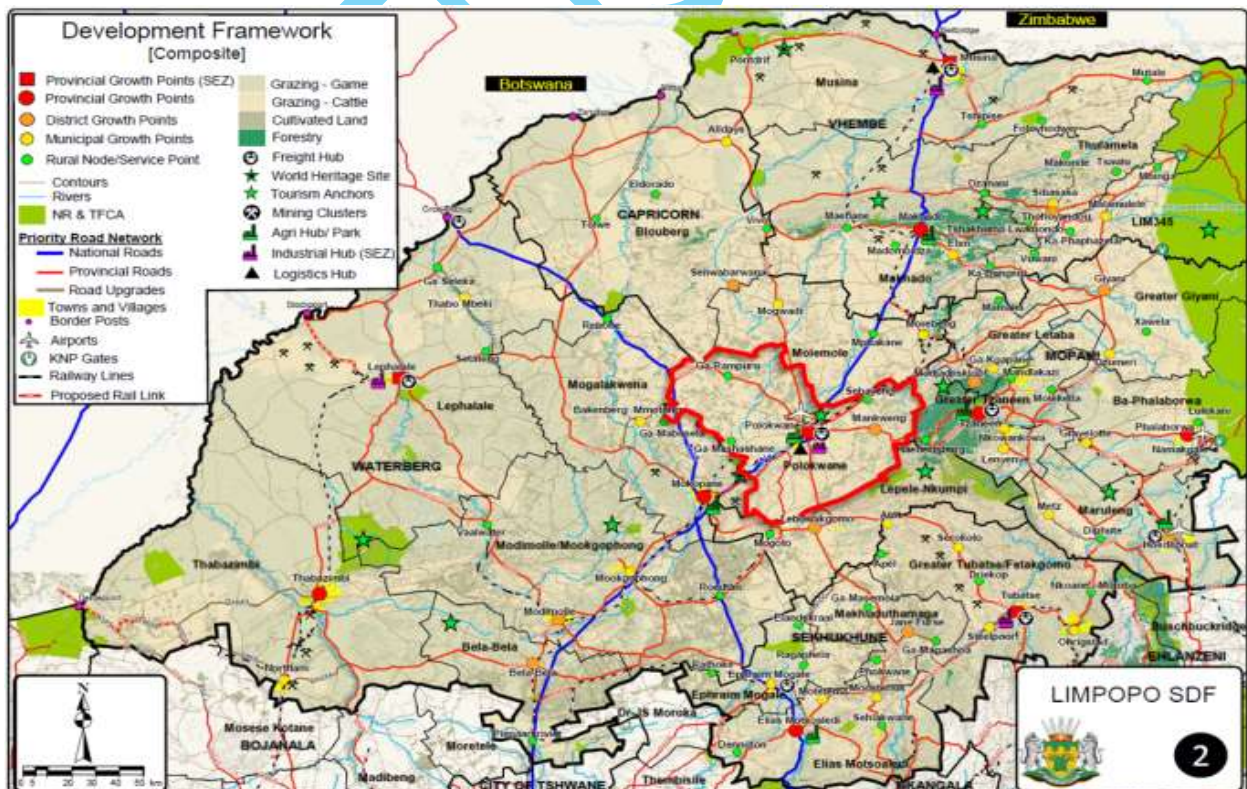
Within the Limpopo region, the city of Polokwane, plays a pivotal role. Positioned along the N1 National Road and at the convergence point of significant road networks, Polokwane boasts exceptional accessibility and connectivity to the wider area.

in 2016, a portion of the former Aganang local municipal area was incorporated into the City of Polokwane. This affected area of Aganang was located northwest of Polokwane and bordered it. This incorporation divided Aganang into two parts, with the southern section, covering approximately **104,000 hectares**, becoming a part of Polokwane.

Consequently, the land area of Polokwane expanded from around **374,000 hectares** to approximately **505,000 hectares**, constituting an increase of about **38%**. In terms of its physical composition, the City of Polokwane is now **35% urbanised and 65% still rural**

City of Polokwane is the **economic hub** of Limpopo Province and is strategically located to be the administrative and economic capital of the Province. It is situated at the cross roads of important national and provincial roads which radiate out into the hinterland providing good access to other towns. There is a definite opportunity for Polokwane to become a logistics hub and freight interchange within the region, also given its proximity to the neighbouring countries of **Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland**. Three of the four Spatial Development Initiatives pass through Polokwane, which repeat the City's strategic location and its importance as far as the economy of the province is concerned.

2.1.1 Map of Limpopo Province (Polokwane Strategic Location)



Source: Limpopo Province SDF

2.1.2 The Main 7 Clusters of settlements in Polokwane

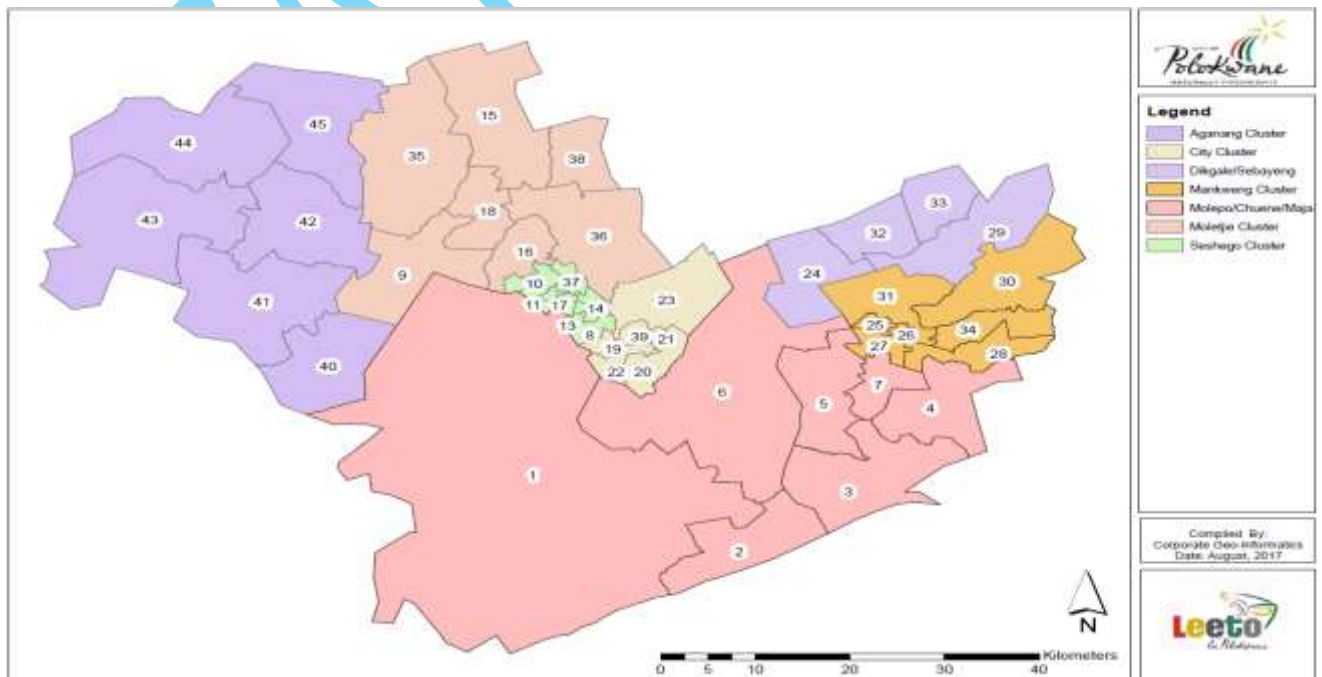
Situated on the outskirts in several clusters are less formal settlement areas which are experiencing enormous influx from rural urban migration trends. These areas are in dire need of upgraded services and infrastructure, both social and engineering, and are struggling to cope with the informal influx of more people who want access to an improved quality and standard of living. Polokwane municipality is made up of Forty-Five (45) wards. The 45 wards constitute 7 clusters and clusters are listed below:

	Clusters Name	Wards No.
1	Mankweng Cluster	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
2	Moletjie Cluster	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
3	Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster	1,2,3,4,5
4	Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster	24,29,32,33,30,31
5	Aganang Cluster	40,41,42,43,44,45
6	City Cluster	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
7	Seshego Cluster	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

2.1.3 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards

Map: Polokwane Cluster Map



Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU:

2.1.4 Description of the 7 Municipal Clusters of settlements

- **Seshego:** located west of the CBD. It is nearest to the economic core of all settlement areas and thus has the best access to the formal economy of Polokwane.
- **Mankweng:** located 30km to the east of the City. It constitutes a large area and is mixed formal and informal. It accommodates the University of Limpopo and is a long-established settlement area.
- **Sebayeng:** located 30 km to the north-east of the City centre and is less formal and newer than Mankweng. The area is experiencing influx and is growing at a rapid rate.
- **Maja:** is located 20km to the south and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.
- **Moletjie:** It is about 32 km northeast of City of Polokwane and comprises an informal settlement area, with very limited services and infrastructure. The settlement area sits on the fringe of the rural hinterland and is hence surrounded by a vast clustering of rural / semi-rural areas.
- **Aganang:** is situated 45 km west of Polokwane. It is a rural Cluster and has 4 Traditional Authorities namely Moletji, Matlala, Maraba and Mashashane. The area has been incorporated into the City of Polokwane and is now serving as the seventh cluster area for Polokwane. The area is purely rural and has no township; it has potential in Agriculture and Tourism.

2.1.5 Aerial View of the City of Polokwane CBD



Aerial View of the City of Polokwane CBD



Aerial View of the City of Polokwane CBD (2)



Mall of the North



Polokwane Eastern Ring Roads – N1 bypass Next to Peter Mokaba Stadium

2.1.6 Profile of the City of Polokwane

City of Polokwane is one of the **17 Non Delegated Municipalities** that reports to **National Treasury**.

	Province	Code	Municipality
1	Western Cape	CPT	City of Cape Town
2	North West	NW383	Mafikeng
3	Eastern Cape	NMB	Nelson Mandela Bay
4	Mpumalanga	MP 326	Mbombela
5	Eastern Cape	DC15	OR Tambo
6	Gauteng	COJ	City of Johannesburg
7	Limpopo	LIM354	City of Polokwane
8	Gauteng	EKU	Ekurhuleni
9	Western Cape	WC044	George
10	North West	NW373	Rustenburg
11	KwaZulu-Natal	ETH	eThekweni
12	KwaZulu-Natal	KZN282	uMhlathuze
13	Eastern Cape	BUF	Buffalo City
14	KwaZulu-Natal	KZN225	Msunduzi
15	Northern Cape	NC091	Sol Plaatje
16	Gauteng	TSH	City of Tshwane
17	Free State	MAN	Mangaung

Source: NT Municipal Report

2.1.7 Some of the Buildings within City of Polokwane CBD



Buildings within City of Polokwane CBD 1



Buildings within City of Polokwane CBD (2)



Buildings within City of Polokwane CBD (3)

Polokwane City is the vibrant capital of Limpopo Province, situated on the Great North road to Zimbabwe; it is the largest Municipality that serves as a Capital of Limpopo with major economic centre. Its proximity to the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, as well as its convenient distance from the Kruger National Park and Magoebaskloof that makes it a perfect gateway to Africa and attractive tourist destination in itself.

2.2 HIERARCHY OF SETTLEMENT

The hierarchy of settlements according to the SDF is indicated in the below table.

2.2.1 1st ORDER SETTLEMENTS (GROWTH POINTS)

Cluster	Polokwane	Polokwane	Seshego			
Cluster 01	Polokwane					
Cluster 02	Polokwane	Ga-Makanye Ga-Thoka Mankweng A	Mankweng B Mankweng C Mankweng D	Nobody Mothapo Nobody Mothiba	– –	University of Limpopo
Cluster 03	Polokwane	Sebayeng A	Sebayeng B			
Cluster 04	Polokwane					
Cluster 05	Polokwane					

2.2.2 2nd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (POPULATION CONCENTRATION POINTS)

Cluster Polokwane 01	Bloodriver	Kgohloane	Mabotsa	Makgofe	Mokgokong
Cluster Polokwane 02	Badimong Boyne La-Magowa	Ga-Mahlanhle Ga-Ramogale Shilwane	Viking Zion City Moria Komaneng	Makgwareng Matshela-Porta Mountain Views	Phomolong Rivier View
Cluster Polokwane 03	Tibibe Dikgale 1	Dikgale 2 Dikgale 3	Ga-Makgoba	Makgoba 1	Mantheding
Cluster Polokwane 04	Hlahla	Makibelo	Ramongwana 1	Ramongwana 2	Semenya
Cluster Polokwane 05	Koloti Komape 2	Komape 3	Mabokelele	Madikoti	Moshate

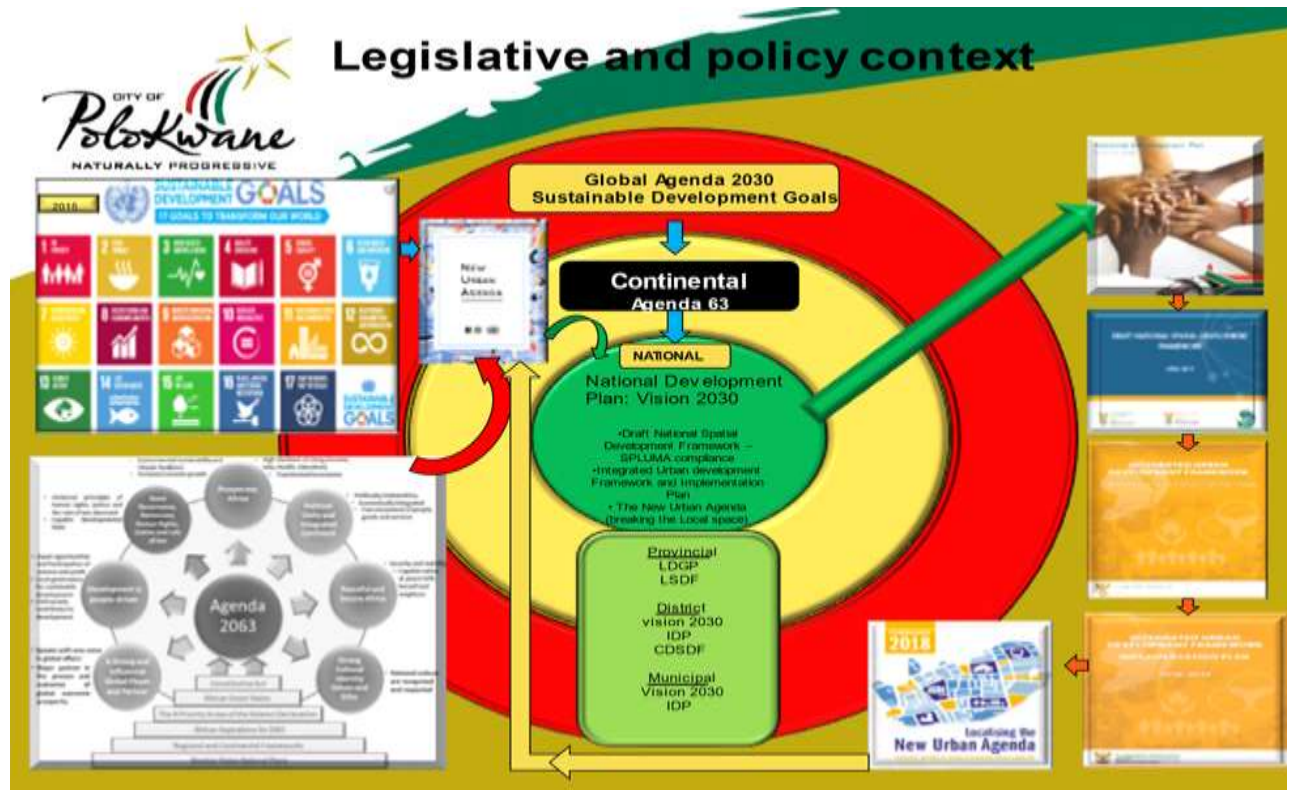
--	--	--	--	--	--

2.2.3 3rd ORDER SETTLEMENTS (LOCAL SERVICES POINTS)

Cluster Polokwane 01	Ga-Maja Ga-Molepo	Ga-Phiri Kopermyn	LaasteHoop 7 Leshikishiki	Maratapelo Maripathekong	Mmoto wa Bogobe Thokgwane ng
Cluster Polokwane 02	Chebeng Choke Chuene Ditengteng Ga-Kama Ga-Kgole	Ga- Lekgothoane Ga-Mobotsa Ga-Mailula Ga- Mompaka Ga- Mapanyula	Ga-Mathiba Ga-Mogano Ga-Mokgopo Ga-Mothiba Ga-Motholo	Ga-Rakopi Ga- Rampheri Ga-Sebati Ga-Thaba Kgokong Bergnek	Kgoroshi: (Mphela) (Thantsha) Kgwara Laaste Hoop Ward 7A
Cluster Polokwane 03	Lekgadimane Mabitsela Makweya Lenyenye Maboi Makgwareng Mamadila	Leswane Mabotsa 2 Makotopong 1 Mamatsha Dithupaneng Madiga Makotopong 2 Mamotintane	Manamela Mashita Mehlakeng Newlands Mankgaile Masobohlen g Mmakata Ramakgaphola	Manthorwane Matamanyane Sebayeng Marulaneng Matobole Mosharw Sefateng Segwasi	Sekgweng Sengatane Setati Thabakgon e Thune Toronto Zondo Tsatsaneng
Cluster Polokwane 01	Bergvley Bethel Cottage Dichueneng Doornspruit Klipspruit Lebowa Mogokubung Makgeng Makubung Masekho	Maselaphale ng Melkboom Moklakeng Mphalong Quayle Setotolwane Tsebela Ga-Kololo Ga-Maphoto Ga- Mawashasha Ga- Molalemane	Ga-Moropo Kobo Lefahla Mahwibitswane Makgobe 2 Marobo Masekoleng Mashongolile Moduwane Mongwaneng Mphogodiba	Sentsere College Tsware Ga-Moswedi Jack Katzenstem Kgatla Kgwareng Komape 1 Mabotsa 1 Makengkeng	Makgopeng Masealama Masekwats e Matikireng Mogole Pax College Sepanapudi Subiaco Vaalkop 1 Vaalkop 2 Thema

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

2.2.4 National and International legislative guides and programme



Source: PLK town planning SBU

2.3 SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT TOOLS/LUMS

The provision of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 requires that the Municipality must develop a system of planning that guide the spatial and land use planning within the Municipality. The Municipality is administered by the series of planning legislations that govern the administration of land use planning namely:

2.3.1 Town planning and Township Ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 (to be repealed).

The application of the Ordinance is within the area that is within the proclaimed **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022**. The area provides types of ownership such as deed of transfer (secured ownership). The said act is applicable in area proclaimed by the said legislations.

Therefore, mixed tenure rights are found within the Municipality. In this regard, there is a need for upgrading of the R293 tenure system from the deed of grant, Permission to Occupy (**PTO**) to Deed of transfer. Those entire townships have to be upgraded in terms of the provision of SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013 through which the one scheme is developed and land releases on the state land is finalised and incorporated through a formal process.

The Municipality have witnessed the issue of revenue collection and valuation of the properties contradicting with the provision of proclamation R293 of 1962 since it has its own application that differs with the rates act and property valuation. There is a great need to deal with the current situation and upgrade the status quo of the townships through the engagement with

the Limpopo provincial department of Corporate Government, Human Settlement and Traditional Affairs for those outstanding township to be donated to the Municipality.

2.3.2 Proclamation R293 of 1962 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)

Polokwane Municipality has the black Township known as Mankweng, Sebayeng and Seshego as developed by the provision of the said legislation. Several issues need to be dealt with in terms of upgrading the status of the Land and the rates collection. Polokwane has witnessed the issues of boycott on the payment of rates by the community of Mankweng for example. The issues cut across the provision and services and better planning since the majority has district potential use such as hospitals, universities, and FET colleges. The following are key challenges:

- a. The zoning in terms of the provision of the proclamation R293 of 1962 is govern by the condition attached to the Deed of Grant that does not provide different classification of zoning unlike in terms of the provision of ordinance.
- b. There is an Integrated Land Use Scheme to deal with the issue in terms of the SPLUMA Act. Section 2(2) of the SPLUMA may be used but the upgrading of the Tenure System has to be deal with since the act may not automatically change the tenure system.
- c. The provision of the scheme as control tool needs to be accompanied by upgrading of all the Townships within those areas under R293 of 1962 as briefed on (b) above. The final approval is still with the provincial governance for other processes since the amendment on the condition still within the ambit of the provincial department.

2.3.3. Proclamation R188 of 1969 (Black Administration Act 38 of 1927)

Polokwane was assigned power of dealing with processing of the Land Use Rights in areas under the control of the Traditional Local Authorities. The ownership is Permission to Occupy (P.T.O). In this form, there is no real right registered against the property since the majority of the settlement are not proclaimed and registered with the deed's registry. The provision of the SPLUMA requires that all citizens should have access to secure tenure. In this regard, it is the duties of all the spheres of government to properly plan the development in rural areas for better transfer of ownership to occupants. The introduction of the Rural settlement development strategy is used as a key towards addressing the issues of tenure and better management of the land use rights and associated uses. The Provision of the Land Use Management Scheme for the entire Municipal Area as a control tool need to be accompanied by the upgrading of the Tenure System of all the Rural Settlements within those areas under R188 of 1962.

2.3.4 Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000.

The focus on the act is based on section 26 of the said legislation that demand that the Municipality in areas of operation must develop the Spatial Development Framework that will provide the guidelines for the Implementation of the Land use management System (Land Use Scheme or Town Planning Scheme). The Spatial Development Framework provides the current and future development plans of the Municipality looking at ensuring the integration

with other components of the IDP. This includes financial spending, environmental management plans etc.

2.3.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

The Municipality has started with the key components of the Act as identified for the implementation of the SPLUMA which includes the following:

- Established MPT and Authorized official (Gazette as per Council resolution)ⁱⁱ
- Municipal Appeal Tribunalⁱⁱⁱ(Gazette as per Council resolution
- Delegation of Power^{iv} (Council resolution
- Tariff^v(Gazette as per Council resolution
- By-law^{vi}(Gazette as per Council resolution
- Land Use Scheme^{vii} (adopted by Council and proclaimed)
- Municipal Spatial Development Framework^{viii}(Final Draft)



The above act provides new form of planning that demand new planning approaches such as development of the New Spatial Development Framework That complies with the contents as highlighted in section 20 of the said legislation. All above activities should be in line with the provision of or incompliance with section 6 of the SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013. The principles below provide the guides for the application of the Act:

(a) The principle of spatial justice, whereby—

- (i). past spatial and other development imbalances must be redressed through improved access to and use of land.
- (ii). spatial development frameworks and policies at all spheres of government must address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on informal settlements, former homeland areas and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation.
- (iii). spatial planning mechanisms, including land use schemes, must incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons.
- (iv). land use management systems must include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas, informal settlements and former homeland areas.
- (v). land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate access to secure tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; and
- (vi). a Municipal Planning Tribunal considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property is affected by the outcome of the application.

Submission

The principle provides guides in addressing the spatial segregation by putting measures in place for proper planning for both areas' disadvantages and informal settlement. This is done through providing access to the use of land through policy such as SDF that provides spatial information useful for economic development at large (Mining, Agriculture etc.). it is through

planned settlement that most of the Informal Settlement has to be eradicated and provides secure tenure. These aspects of secure tenure need to be addressed at large by looking at the rural areas as well.

Our plans and policies should visualise the long term's view of at least 20 years and beyond in an integrated manner. This is through our SDF, Density policies, URS, RSS, HSP, Infrastructure Master Plans, City development Policies, financial planning etc. Both urban and rural should be guarded for managed growth^{ix}.

“54% of the world's population lives in urban areas, a proportion that is expected to increase to 66 per cent by 2050. Projections show that urbanization combined with the overall growth of the world's population could add another 2.5 billion people to urban populations by 2050, with close to 90 percent of the increase concentrated in Asia and Africa, according to a new United Nations report launched today”.

(b) the principle of spatial sustainability, whereby spatial planning and land use management systems must—

- (i). promote land development that is within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the Republic.
- (ii). ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land.
- (iii). uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments.
- (iv). promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets.
- (v). consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments.
- (vi). promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; and result in communities that are viable.

Polokwane Municipality has developed the Economic Growth and Development Plan, a vision 2030 which was adopted by the Municipality in line with the national and provincial Development Plan. The vision 2030 of the Municipality has identified the 6 pillars that aimed addressing the challenges by year 2030 or prior. Each pillars signals the action needed within each directorate in driving the city into a “Smart City”. Polokwane for example, it experiences shortage of water, and that is a basic need. The concept aimed at putting measures in place to deal with the management and sustainable uses of limited resources in a sustainable means.

The programs as identified should cleared, be assessed and measures as per the targeted date. Until to date, there is still a great need for the alignment of the projects with the segments of each pillar and be measured or reviewed. This demands the revisiting of the Implementation Plan of the EGDP targeted time.

(c) the principle of efficiency, whereby—

- (i). land development optimises the use of existing resources and infrastructure.
- (ii). decision-making procedures are designed to minimise negative financial, social, economic or environmental impacts; and
- (iii). development application procedures are efficient and streamlined and timeframes are adhered to by all parties.

This principle tries to strengthen the physical cluster of the Implementation [plan of the EGDP with the aim of speed-up services delivery without Red tapes. Process plans and procedures should be clear and provided in various forms. The Introduction of the SPLUMA requires that, the systems and procedures must be transparent and fair.

- (d) the principle of spatial resilience, whereby flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impacts of economic and environmental shocks.

The 2030 vision is a long plan that should be guided by the proper plans of the municipality. However, it is important that the plans should not be rigid or static but encourage flexibility when new development introduced. This enables the developers to be accommodated based on the sufficient evidence that such demand may yield good results at the end. Municipal plans must be accommodating when new initiatives introduced and be aligned with the municipal plans.

- (e) the principle of good administration, whereby—
- (i). all spheres of government ensure an integrated approach to land use and land development that is guided by the spatial planning and land use management systems as embodied in this Act.
 - (ii). all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other prescribed requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks.
 - (iii). the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use are met timeously.
 - (iv). the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policies, land use schemes as well as procedures for development applications, include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; and
 - (v). policies, legislation and procedures must be clearly set in order to inform and empower members of the public.

The IDP is an Integrated Development Plan that has to include all plans of the Municipality together with the national and provincial mandate in development. This is concluded based on the intergovernmental relations within the spheres of Government. Public participation becomes a key towards transparent governance. Therefore, the principle strengthens the use of all mechanism in collecting the data, communicating the data collected and interpretation of the data collected to the community. By so doing this, it will enable the Municipality to deliver its basic services with success.

2.4. THE PURPOSE OF THE SPATIAL PLANNING AND LAND USE MANAGEMENT ACT (SPLUMA)

It replaces the application of Town Planning and Township's ordinance, Ordinance 15 of 1986 and all other pieces of town planning legislation. In addition to all the land use applications which were processed through the ordinance, the following were repealed by the SPLUMA:

- Act No. 84 of 1967 Removal of Restrictions Act (The whole)
- Act No. 88 of 1967 Physical Planning Act (The whole)
- Act No. 113 of 1991 Less Formal Township Establishment Act (The whole)
- Act No. 125 of 1991 Physical Planning Act (The whole)
- Act No. 67 of 1995 Development Facilitation Act (The whole)

All of the above applications were administered through the Provincial Government, because of the SPLUMA; they will all be administered and processed by the local authority.

2.4.1 SPLUMA implementation Progress

The municipality has already developed and implementing the Municipal Planning By-law, 2017 as from the financial year 2018/19. All components of the act were adhered to, and the Municipal Planning Tribunal is in operation. The **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022** for the entire Municipal Boundary has been adopted and proclaimed and the Municipal Spatial Development Framework still need to be complied (at Final Draft) to Comply with SPLUMA ACT.

2.5 Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS)

POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022 has been adopted by Council and covers all areas within the boundaries of the areas in order to regulate land uses for the whole municipal area.

An integrated Land Use Management Scheme that will cover the wall to wall has been finalised to address some of the main shortcomings of the repealed Polokwane/Perskebult Town planning scheme, 2016 and the repealed LUS, 2017. The previous repealed Town Planning Scheme was limited to the urban area of Polokwane City/ Seshego as well as the adjacent small holdings / farm portions (Urban Fringe Area). The commercial farming area, rural villages and Tribal areas were excluded from the previous repealed land use schemes, but with the enactment of the SPLUMA, the Municipality has **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022** which will cover the rest of the municipal boundary.

Land use management system of the municipality consists of various mechanisms of which the Spatial Development Framework (SDF), Municipal Planning Tribunal, Municipal Appeal Tribunal and Land Use Management Scheme (LUMS) form the main or core components of a land use management system.

Capacity building on land use planning and management are amongst the core strategic mandates of the Provincial Department. In terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Act 13:2005 the department is mandated to build the system's capacity in the province – especially Traditional Authorities for land use planning management and control. Mankweng and Sebayeng is now covered, and the Department of Cooperative Government, Human

Settlements and Traditional Affairs has assisted the municipality with the Pilot project. Tribal Authority have mixed challenges relating to land use planning, control, management and integrity systems: linking to planning, legal rights, ownership, control records, conflict and environmental management failure.

2.6. MUNICIPAL PLANNING BY-LAW 2017

The Municipality was required to develop a Municipal Planning By-Law for its entire area in terms of section 32 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013. The reason for such demand was to have uniform procedures within the Municipality for Spatial Planning and Land Use Management and address the challenges caused by the old order legislations. Even though the By-law adopted and gazetted as well as comes in to operation, some section of the Ordinance may still be applicable for the outstanding issues on the Ordinance applications. This transitional arrangement may take up to two years or beyond subject that, the ordinance is phased out by the province. The Polokwane Municipal Planning By-law has positively included most issues that the ordinance fails to address the operation of the By-law commenced on the 2 July 2018 with all the supporting components in place.

2.7. POLOKWANE URBAN RENEWAL STRATEGY (URS) AND CBD DEVELOPMENT PLAN, 2016

The said plan has highlighted the key issue to be addressed in the retaining of the business within the city and unpacking the development needs as per the provision of the EGDP 2030 vision. Key principles identified for URS and CBD Development plan.

PRINCIPLE 1: URBAN MANAGEMENT AND MAINTENANCE
Action 1: Establishment of Polokwane CBD Manager's Office
Action 2: Establishment of Communication/ Complaints System in CBD Manager's Office
Action 3: Joint Service Agreements for External Stakeholders
Action 4: Minimum Basic Service Levels Commitment
Action 5: Special Precinct: Mini IDP/ Joint Maintenance Scheduling Programme/ Budget
Action 6: Dedicated Response Crews
Action 7: Public Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 8: Private Property Management – Neglected Buildings
Action 9: Monitoring and Review
PRINCIPLE 2: SAFETY, SECURITY AND BY-LAW ENFORCEMENT
Action 1: Visible Policing and Support Services
Action 2: CCTV and Other Crime Prevention Mechanisms
Action 3: Design-out Crime and Provision of Street Lighting
Action 4: By-Law Enforcement Campaign/ Capacity Building
Action 5: Implement By-Law Enforcement Programme
Action 6: Speeding Up Of Municipal Prosecution Processes
PRINCIPLE 3: LANDMARKS, PUBLIC SPACES, ARTS, CULTURE AND HERITAGE
Action 1: Enhancement of Gateways and Access Routes
Action 2: Establish Public Arts and Culture Initiatives in Civic Park and Mark Street Park
Action 3: Formalization of the Sterkloop Spruit Public Open Space

Action 4: Developing of the Water land Iconic Public Space
Action 5: Strengthening of the Provincial Sports and Recreation Precinct
Action 6: Enhance Priority NMT Movement Network
Action 7: Proper Management of the Visual City Scope
PRINCIPLE 4: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT
Action 1: Informal Trading / Micro-retailing Formalization
Action 2: Revitalization of the African Market Square
Action 3: Waste Management and Recycling
Action 4: Expansion of Urban Development Zone
Action 5: Incentives
PRINCIPLE 5: SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT
Action 1: Social Capacity Building and Training Strategy
Action 2: Provision of Community Facilities
Action 3: Provide Access to Broadband Telecommunication at Iconic Public Spaces

The above principle will enable the city to restructure and consider key elements that will address the current challenges faced by the Municipality. If proper plans are integrated, the municipality will further attract investors to the city that will address city decay. Managing the city need dedicated team of both the external and internal to deal with the challenges holistically. Safety, open space management, LED and social development are important. Key strategic projects in response to the above principles are detailed in the page 89-98 of the said document.

2.8. GROWTH POINT ANALYSIS

Polokwane Municipality has the provincial growth point which functions as a first order settlement. However, the geographical area of Polokwane Municipality is predominantly rural including considerable land under traditional authority. Polokwane has a large portion of the population living in rural or peri-urban areas, which for most part is unplanned and poorly serviced. All spatial planning must take cognizance of the population and contribute to the improvement of their living conditions.

The Limpopo Spatial Rationale identified a hierarchy of settlements from provincial growth point to scattered settlements. Development interventions are proposed in terms of infrastructure provision and government services in such a manner that the natural economic potential of growth points is further stimulated. Interventions at scattered settlements are such that basic services are provided to ensure that the quality-of-life objective in the Growth and Development Strategy is achieved, but that prevents over investment in places that are depopulating.

- 1. Provincial Growth Point: City and Seshego**
- 2. District Growth Point: Mankweng**
- 3. Municipal Growth Point: Sebayeng and Aganang (to be incorporated)**

However, the following Development Corridors (DC's) and Functional Development Areas Have been identified according to the SDF analysis, namely:

- **Development Corridor (DC) 1: The Pretoria/Gauteng - Pietersburg – Mankweng – Tzaneen**

Development Corridor (N1- south road/ R71 road)

- **Development Corridor (DC) 2: The Burgersfort/ Chuenespoort - Polokwane - Louis Trichardt Development Corridor (R33- N1 north road)**

The Municipality has opened the corridor by initiating the key project that are under catalytic project for CEF such as the **Science park, Bakoni Malapa Township** where the provincial State Theatre will be developed and **Eco-Estate** at the Game reserve. Their status will be elaborated further in detail.

Public Transport Integration Corridor F1; Due to the proposed re-alignment of N1 toll road bypass, it is necessary to revise a study conducted in 1999, namely the Development Plan for the Public Transport Integration Corridor alongside **Nelson Mandela Drive**.

Southern Gateway Development Corridor (F2); This corridor (N1 South, along the western entrance to Polokwane City) is an excellent example of positive spin-offs from this kind of forward planning of a development corridor, in view of recent development. The continued consideration of appropriate land-uses is essential for the long-term sustainability of this corridor and also with a view to not jeopardizing the other initiative in the SDF plan.

Eastern Gateway Development Corridor (F3; The functional development area was previously called the Eastern Corridor or Private Transport Corridor, and involved the Thabo Mbeki and Grobler Streets one-way pair, stretching from Biccard Street to the Savannah Centre. The study conducted in July 1999, titled Eastern Corridor Development Plan and investigation to formulate policy on the Biccard Street Transitional Area, is being reviewed).

Northern Gateway Development Corridor F4; The corridor starts at Landros Maré Street extension on the northern border of the CBD and traverses the industrial area (Extensions 3 and 12), running past the International Airport, and also includes part of Annandale. The proposal for SEZ or Industrial Hub may also take cognisance of the proposed development on the proposal for the mixed use and proposal for the expansion of the satellite university Campus through a mixed-use development. The expansion of the Urban edge is crucial since the development of the industrial use has now bordered to the urban edge that is a success story for the past 8 years of implementing the current SDF.

Outer Eastern Link (F5); This is a completely new development area and was proposed because of the amalgamation of the different TLC areas. It is part of the Tshwane / Gauteng – Polokwane – Mankweng – Tzaneen Development Corridor (DC1) which would play a major role in integrating the Polokwane and Mankweng clusters with one another. This integration should be regarded as a long-term vision.

The PDA1 proposal for the Dalmada Precinct, is being developed in order to support the development and address the issues of informal or illegal occupation of the land and land invasion. Currently, the Municipality has received township application development in order to support the PDA1 that will comprise of the mixed-use development including the Business, industrial recreational and Residential in a form of a new Nodes or suburban area. Looking at

the long terms plan of the SDF, the area will consider the area to be a catalyst for linking Mankweng and Polokwane City.

The development area starts where the Eastern Gateway Development Corridor (F4) ends. From this point it runs to the area in the vicinity of the Boyne and Ga-Mokwane villages, on the eastern border of the Polokwane Municipality Area.

In view of the above corridors, has open an opportunity for the spinoff- development for the key catalytic projects as planned for the various land that support the PHDA'S as gazetted. **R81 corridor** as well is becoming an active spinoff of the Mall of the North, the approved institutions or educational zoning around the area and other land uses will constitute to a kind of mixed used development that will constitute a **student village/Varsity village** since the interest of proposed development around the area as per the current applications received seen the potential for expansion.

2.9. MUNICIPAL LAND ANALYSES

The Municipality is currently intending to develop the Land Audit report in order to account on the opportunities that the land may impact looking beyond 2030 vision. The map below provides the developable properties within the register of the Municipality.

There is more land that the Municipality has not investigated or yet transferred to the Municipality that needs to be researched. The commissioning of the Land Audit may pave the way for proper land management and the need to address urban challenges. The current land parcels of the municipality are not enough in terms of the projected 2060 urbanisation rate in Urban areas. It is vital that the Municipality advance its strategy in land acquisition with the 2060 urbanisation rate in mind. In this case, having a backlog of housing demand of almost 60000, what will the situation be if the strategic land is not used efficiently through planning approaches such as densification and compact settlement and do away with urban sprawl.

2.10. LAND CLAIMS ANALYSIS

A number of land claims have been lodged with Government within the Polokwane Municipal area of jurisdiction. However, the majority of these claims are not yet concluded or finalized. It is currently not possible to determine their likely impact on spatial development. There is concern from some quarters that more unsustainable rural settlements might be established as a result of restitution of land rights.

From a spatial development point of view, land claims do not necessarily impact on the type of land use. It, however, do have an impact in delaying development processes. Prospective developers are obliged to seek consent of the respective Land Claims Commissioner prior to undertaking any form of development, that is, either for township establishments or change in land use. Although consultations do not hinder development, they do derail the speed at which development moves.

The claimants that receive their land through restoration process becomes a challenging issue that impact negatively to the Municipality especially in areas that are within the Municipal proclaimed scheme. It also plays a negative role and foster illegal invasion. No settlement plans or Township established, and people tend to develop on those land. Such occupants tend to demand services on the area not well surveyed and declared suitable from environmental point of view.

2.11. LAND AVAILABILITY ANALYSIS

The municipality owns a sizable number of land parcels within the urban area. This includes erven within proclaimed townships, farm portions, agricultural holdings and proclaimed townships for mixed housing developments primarily to cater for the housing gap which is outlined in detail in the Housing Chapter.

Table: The below table represents vacant municipal owned townships

#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
1	Polokwane X72	Doornkraal	800 Residential 1
2	Polokwane X79	Doornkraal	500 Residential 1
3	Polokwane X78	Doornkraal	2863x "Residential 1"; 5x "Residential 2"; 7x "Residential 3"; 2x "Business 3"; 1x "Special"; 5x "Institutional" (Church) 7x "Educational" 4x "Municipal"; 13x "Public Open Spaces" 1x "RSA"
4	Polokwane X108	Portion 188 (a ptn of ptn 8) of Doornkraal680 LS	200 Industrial 2 Sites
5	Polokwane X126	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
6	Polokwane X124	Portion 12 of the remainder of Krugersburg 933 LS	19 erven zoned "Special": "Business 2: 1 Erf ±6 650m². "Municipal": 1 Erf ±917m²
7	Polokwane X127	Engelschedoornboom 668LS	500 Residential 1 Erven
8	Southern Gateway X1 PICC	N1 southbound (Pretoria road) and Lawton Road, in the southwestern corner of Polokwane city adjacent to the Nirvana suburb and Ivydale Agricultural Holdings Portions 407, 408, 409, 410, 411 and 412 of the farm Sterkloop 688 LS	The "Special" zoned Erf for a Convention Centre: Tunnel Level Basement Level, Ground Floor First Floor Second Floor The "Special" zoned Erf for a Hotel

#	NAME	LOCALITY	NUMBER OF UNITS
			The "Public Open Space" zoned Erf will be used as a Green Belt Buffer
9	Polokwane X106	Portion 171 Doornkraal 680 LS	190 Residential Erven
10	Polokwane X107	Portion 191 Doornkraal 680LS	142 Residential Erven
11	Polokwane X133	Klipfontein 670 LS Stoefontein 678 LS	3000 sites 208, 422 Ha 138,1129 ha
12	Polokwane X134	Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS	2591 sites 178.4699 Ha
13	Nirvana X 5	Portion 74 and 75 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings	105 sites 8. 92224 Ha

Source: PLK Town planning SBU

Township establishment processes for Mixed Housing Development (BNG) are currently underway for the below farm portions:

Table: Land with Township Establishment in progress.

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	SIZE
Portion of portion 7 of the Farm Palmietfontein 24KS	104.8367Ha
Farm Weltevreden 746 KS	Part of 5 980.00 Ha
Portion 151 to 160 Farm Sterkloop 688 LS	215 Ha

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

Although the Municipality does not own land in the Tribal Authority's area of jurisdiction, the provisions of the development objectives and development planning in general still vests within the Municipality's guidelines and control. These processes are illustrated in detail in the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) By-Laws as well as Proclamation R188 of 1969 regulations.

2.12. LAND INVASIONS COURT ORDERS

As land invasions were starting to be a problem in the City of Polokwane, Council has obtained **Court orders** which protect the following land parcels.

1. Polokwane Extension 40
2. Polokwane Extension 108
3. Polokwane Extension 78

4. Polokwane Extension 106 and 107
5. Erf 6045 Pietersburg, Mikes Kitchen
6. Portion 1-16 of the farm Pelgrimshoop 630 LS
7. Erf 60 and 374 Seshego 9G
8. Erf 36 Seshego 9F
9. Erf 2406 Seshego E (Church)
10. Erf 5289 Pietersburg Extension 11
11. Erf 8518 Seshego Zone 1 extension
13. Erf 815 Mankweng E

Farms:

1. Farm Engeshedoorboom 688LS
2. Farm Volgestruisfontein 667 LS
3. Farm Klipfontein 670 LS
4. Holding 76 of Ivy Dale Agricultural Holdings
5. Farm Doorndrai 606/ LS
6. Farm Sterkloop 688 LS

Court Orders are fully implemented in dealing with land invasion to assist the City with proper Land Management and Planning. But the challenging issue is the cost lost due to unplanned invasion since it is unknown. A comprehensive strategy to deal with the Land invasion is crucial for the municipality in order to safe guard its properties.

2.13. SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND INTERVENTIONS

Spatial analysis

i. Planning control and Outdoor advertising

Challenges

- inadequate control over illegal land use practices within the city
- lack of human capital to deal with illegal land uses (shortage of staff)

- inadequate control over illegal outdoor advertising
- management of contracts for outdoor advertising projects

Interventions

- reviewed the operational manual contained in the illegal land use strategy 2012- to enable the imposing of fines for illegal land uses.
- A comprehensive land use survey has been conducted with the implementation framework and submitted to Council for adoption.
- Council has budgeted for 2 positions of Planning Control Officers positions and have been advertised. Short listing and interviews have been finalized and appointment done.
- 3 contractors appointed to deal with the removal of illegal advertisement of council land. Their contracts expired, revised ToR submitted for approval and advertisement of the Project for new Contractors.
- The outdoor advertising bylaw has been reviewed to deal with inadequacies of the 2009 by-law

ii. Land Use Management

Challenges

- Installation of services on approved municipal townships.
- Installation of Services on new approved municipal townships.
- Lack of Truck in Facilities.
- Townships without Street names

Interventions

- The process of servicing municipal township has started. City & Regional SBU has appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Dilokong X 1) and thereafter contractors will be appointed to install services. The Detailed design report has been submitted for approval.
- List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. City & Regional SBU Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors.
- Application for Truck Inn Facility lodged on Polokwane Extension 136 (Municipal Township). Municipal Planning Tribunal has decided on the application, and it is approved.
- Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships.

iii. Spatial Planning

Challenges

- Spatial Inequalities/Injustices
- Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas
- Underutilised airport infrastructure
- Lack of alignment in municipal plans

- Lack of areas earmarked for Student Accommodation and policy to address the need
- Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA
- Municipal By-Law Implementation

Interventions

- Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighbourhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities.
- The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (**Mamahule Area**) will be the initial intervention areas. The Precinct plan for Dalmada and Kalkfontein has been finalised and went on public participation which is supported for approval
- Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. Terms of reference to conduct feasibility studies have been drafted in order to get a consultant to carry out the relevant studies.
- The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs. The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans.
- Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing.
- Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017 has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area. **POLOKWANE INTEGRATED LAND USE SCHEME, 2022**, has been adopted and will cover areas within the boundaries of the Municipality in order to regulate land uses through the whole municipal area.
- The Municipality has integrated the two schemes which are now repealed to have a single wall to wall Land Use Scheme for the entire Municipal area of jurisdiction in order to comply with SPLUMA Act and Municipal Planning Bylaws.

2.13.1 General challenges and Intervention

Spatial Challenges	Intervention
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inadequate ownership of land in rural areas • Illegal land uses • Lack of human resource to fast-track updating of spatial data regularly • Property Management (Leasing and valuation roll) • Human Capital • Limited Funding (Development of the strategies and feasibility studies) • Land claims • Illegal townships • Poor integrated human settlement with institutional facilities • Limited power on the administration of R293 proclamation • Underutilised airport infrastructure • Fresh produce market for regional trade • Lack of commitment on the establishment of Cargo HUB or Agro-processing HUB • Townships without Street names • Management of Contracts for Outdoor Advertising Projects • Installation of services on approved municipal townships. • Installation of Services on new approved municipal townships. • Lack of Truck in Facilities. • Spatial Inequalities/Injustices • Lack of Alignment in Municipal Plans • Lack of areas earmarked for Student Accommodation and policy to address the need • Confusion in Multiple legislation not repealed by SPLUMA • Integrated Human Settlements 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reviewed the operational manual contained in the illegal land use strategy 2012- to enable the imposing of fines for illegal land uses. • Two (2) Planning Control Officers positions have been appointed to deal with illegal land uses. • To Appoint 3 contractors to deal with the removal of illegal advertisement on council land. • . The outdoor advertising bylaw 2009 has been reviewed to deal with inadequacies • To benchmark with Municipality of our size to learn how Management of Contracts for Outdoor Advertising Projects are done. The Municipal Council has already resolved that benchmarking should be conducted. • The process of servicing Municipal Township has started. City Planning Services SBU has appointed engineer to start with the designs for (Dilokong X1) and the contractor will be appointed to install services. • List of Municipal Townships attached that require services to be installed. City Planning Services SBU to budget for and appoint engineers and contractors. • Application for Truck Inn Facility lodged on Polokwane Extension 136 (Municipal Township). Municipal Planning Tribunal decided on the application and approved it. • Polokwane Local Geographic Names Policy has been adopted to deal with naming of streets within townships. • Neighborhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG) is a grant that unlocks investments, by funding neighborhood development projects to improve the life of residents in targeted areas, generally townships. The partnership of the municipality and National Treasury with this program, enable the municipality to implement projects identified in municipal plans in order to curb spatial inequalities. • The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has approached the municipality on some portions which are

Spatial Challenges	Intervention
	<p>owned by the state. The intention is to release land owned by state to the municipality in order to unlock development and promote ownership. For example, Portions affected by invasions (Mamahule Area) will be the initial intervention areas.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enhancing the status of the municipal airport has been prioritised. Mixed land uses are to be promoted around portions surrounding the airport. The feasibility studies have been finalised and approved by Council. • The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs. The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. A Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework. The CEF was developed in order to incorporate those Strategic Development Areas that details the Future Priority Development Areas, as such there will be alignment between planning, infrastructure and financial plans. • Through the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBB Plan, 2016, areas where student accommodation is to be promoted has been identified. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and social housing. • Polokwane Municipal Bylaw, 2017 has been and approved by Council and currently in operation and covers the whole municipal area.

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.14. SPATIAL INTERPRETATION OF THE POLOKWANE MUNICIPALITY

2.14.1 Key guiding policies and municipal By-laws

- SDF
- EGDP
- URS/CBD Development Plan
- Density policies
- Rural Settlement Strategy

- f. Telecommunication mast policy
- g. Spaza and Tavern Policy
- h. IUDF

2.14.2 Economic opportunities and growth

- 1) Polokwane Municipality is a gate way to Africa
- 2) SEZ/Industrial park development
- 3) Post incubation hub at Polokwane extension 26
- 4) Cargo Hub/Agro-processing HUB
- 5) Truck-Inn/Logistic HUB
- 6) Development of Science Park
- 7) Eco-estate around the Bakoni Malapa
- 8) Arts and Cultural Hub
- 9) Urban Renewal projects (development of the High-rise office and residential accommodation)
- 10) Limpopo Academic Hospital



2.15. RURAL DEVELOPMENT

In terms of the Rural settlement development challenges, the Municipality must comply with section 3-8 of the SPLUMA.

Approximately 70% of the area in Polokwane Municipality is Rural and need to be careful considered. Through public participation on the Draft Rural Settlement Strategy, it was discovered that, rural areas have potential in Nodal development and those areas close to our Sub-urban areas. This tends to have major development along the main roads and attract people to seek residential properties, business etc. in the assessment, it was found that there are:

- Informal settlement within road reserve and flood lines
- Uncoordinated spatial settlement
- Poor streets and roads in informal settlement
- Un-planned desired land use types
- Unclear determination of the property's sizes
- Poor Cemetery planning and maintenance
- Land allocation disputes
- Poor monitoring and evaluation on the registered servitudes, flood lines, road reserves.

This goes beyond to old settlement as they extend. In this regards, Spatial Planning has developed the **Rural Settlement Strategy, 2017** with the aim of addressing this spatial pattern. Once the document has presented, the Traditional Local Authority has seen the

potential and realize to partner with the Municipality through development of those area. Letters of request was received and need urgent attention.

Our Land Use Scheme survey conducted in 2012/2013 has data that portray zoning of that area and captures in the system. The following challenges have to be addressed:

- a. Development of the proper integrated human settlement that will be sustainable: this are the benefit
 - Building Plans approval fees
 - Rezoning
 - Managing land use since we have two land use Scheme and Town Planning Scheme that covers the wall-to-wall scheme.
 - Proper planning for other services such as Roads, Water and sanitation etc.
- b. Land survey for all settlement in Polokwane municipal Jurisdiction:
 - Proper stand numbers and streets
 - Land dispute resolution
 - Proper stats
 - Proper maintenance etc.
- c. Land Use Survey for the whole Municipality
 - Proper zoning and
 - conflict resolution
 - Business Registration and management
 - Adhere to SPLUMA
 -

2.16. URBAN DEVELOPMENT

2.16.1 Integrated Urban Development Framework Plan

The future of the Polokwane City, we tend to develop policies that demand integration of all resources and different directorate to interact with one another. Looking at the directionless, the Municipality tends to shift away from purpose built (Future planning) and concentrate on basic services rather advance proactive Plans that aim at advancing service delivery mechanism looking at the 2030-2050 urbanization challenges. Government policies are being development with a long terms vision, but it is left with the planners to properly re-shape the city toward the future needs. Advance skills and commitment of the planners is required. The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is one of the fundamental policies of the Government that seek to action the National Development Plan for the future needs.

The purpose of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is to fundamentally provide a micro plan for a specific area with proper development guides. In this case, The CBD and parts of the Industrial area and some neighbourhoods were left without being guided by any of those SDA's. In terms of Table 66 of the current Spatial Development Framework, 2010, it was noted that the IUDF must be developed. Therefore, the proposed development strategy seeks to incorporate those SDA's in to an Integrated Urban Framework Plan that details the Future and Integrated plan for the Provincial growth point.

The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is a response to our urbanisation trends and the directive by the National Development Plan (NDP) to develop an urban development policy that will cater for the increasing numbers by ensuring proper planning and necessary infrastructure to support this growth. Polokwane Municipality has to develop its own Integrated Urban Framework Plan that will propose a detail plan on the City Development Strategy looking towards on a sustainable urbanisation model at the following key policy levers:

- Integrated urban planning and management
- Integrated transport and mobility
- Integrated sustainable human settlements
- Integrated urban infrastructure
- Efficient land governance and management
- Inclusive economic development
- Empowered active communities.
- Effective urban governance.
- Sustainable finances

Polokwane Municipality has developed a series of policies to deal with the development of the city but in a narrow view. Part of the current project within the Directorate is to have a comprehensive **City Development Strategy** that will underpin the key policy levers looking at the promoting the city through long terms development goals and models. This will enable to address the following:

- **A CDS is a potential trend breaker:** - motivating key decision-makers to think and operate differently so as to break the negative trends faced by a city.
- **Guiding short-term implementation within a long-term logic:** - A CDS informs the 5- year integrated development planning (IDP) process and shape term-of-office delivery objectives.
- **Pulling in the same direction:** - It allows multiple government agencies, communities and business to rally, act and invest along a similar logic; creating a common focus.
- **Identifying interventions with the highest leverage potential:** - A CDS serve to prioritise and direct resources effectively into those identified interventions that holds the best potential.
- **Anticipating future shocks and contextual changes:** - Through a CDS anticipated long term future changes can be identified and anticipated.
- **Assist in guiding growth:** - A CDS can influence how a city approaches infrastructure creation and physical growth; and
- **(Re)Positioning:** -A CDS serve to reposition the city in terms of national policies and public funding, place-marketing and also the confidence with which ordinary people view the potential of their city.

The budget was allocated for the development of the said document but is subject to the finalisation of the Draft SDF in order to be aligned. All the project within the Municipality must be in accordance to the approved CEF that will assist



in the plotting of the various directorate project that will enable proper recording of the projects spatially.

2.17 ECONOMIC SPIN-OFF DEVELOPMENTS

2.17.1 Baobab Gardens Motor City

Baobab Boulevard township is surrounded by existing township developments on three sides. On the north eastern side is Bendor X87 (i.e., **Thornhill shopping centre**, an area approved for an office development with the rest being a residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development). Next to the Munnik road on the northern side are townships such as Bendor X32 and 44 (i.e. mostly residential development consisting of both single and sectional title residential development and a filling station). Adjacent to De Wet Drive to the south west of the application site is a township for up market single residential development known as Polokwane extension 11 (Sterpark). The area to the south is vacant and part of the Remaining Extent the Farm Krugersburg 993 LS. The site occupies an important location in relation to other significant features of the City. The site is close to the newly completed N1 ring road and therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.

The location advantages are amongst other, the following:

- i. The eastern area has a large concentration of middle to higher income housing at Polokwane extension 138 that will include the botanical gardens and Bendor 126 for mixed land uses.
- ii. The huge volume of existing “older” motor industry/motor dealership rights in Polokwane city, and similar rights approved in recent years elsewhere outside the CBD such as along the N1 (now R101) south impact negatively on the development of Polokwane X124 for motor and motor related businesses. Most of the motor dealerships are “established” in their current locations and the remaining motor dealerships are currently being established in new locations such as MGM Group at Polokwane X124 (Baobab Boulevard) and others at the southern N1/R101 entrance such as Jeep/Mercedes/Mitshubishi/Dodge (pre-owned on Erf 141 Ivypark) and Audi (on Erven 2 and 3 Ivypark). Westvaal dealership (Chevrolet/Opel/Isuzu) will relocate to Erf 2506 Ivypark X52.
- iii. **Mall of the north** is a secondary activity node with Munnik road an activity spine/corridor and mixed-use development is allowed in this development area. The area is close to the Mall of the North regional shopping centre and therefore also close to the N1 ring road. Baobab Boulevard therefore has excellent and direct connections to the south and north-east.
- iv. Baobab Boulevard is part of the Mall of the North secondary activity node/Munnik road corridor and far enough from Polokwane CBD to functionally service a huge surrounding residential community. In conjunction with Thornhill shopping centre which is opposite the road on the most north eastern side of Baobab Boulevard the “combined Mall of the North node” is even more functional, without compromising the operations of the CBD.

- v. The north-eastern part of the city has been rapidly expanding in recent years, and the quality and nature of Baobab Boulevard once fully developed will be a huge attribute to the area and also to Polokwane City.
- vi. Secondary nodes and activity corridors are part of the urban structure, particularly in a rapidly growing city. The CBD is the central, economic heart of the city with a role to serve the high order retail and general business needs of the community. Activity nodes and corridors that lead into the city provide complementary economic opportunities and speciality functions, such as Mall of the North and Baobab Boulevard. Multi-nodal cities such as Polokwane are function-oriented, and these uses need not to be located in the CBD because they have specific space needs and operational requirements.

Motor City Baobab Boulevard Development



Motor City



Motor City



Motor City



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.17.2 The Greenery

The Greenery – named in tribute to the **municipal nursery** that used to be located on the site, opened its doors with 23 handpicked retailers that include well-known favourites and a variety of local stores and speciality services.

The Greenery, Polokwane’s much-anticipated neighbourhood shopping centre, celebrated its grand Limpopo opening on 26 October 2023.

The 11,000m² centre offers a fresh, upmarket, and vibrant neighbourhood retail establishment to residents’ doorsteps.

The modern convenience centre is located on the corners of **Grobler, Oost, and Thabo Mbeki** Streets, and in close proximity to schools, medical facilities, and other local amenities. This not only gives it superb visibility but excellent accessibility for local shoppers.

The Greenery features an impressive offering of latest specification anchor tenants



The Greenery

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.17.3 Limpopo Provincial Theatre Construction

The construction of **Limpopo Provincial Theatre** has started. The location of the **R376-million** theatre is at the **Bakone Malapa cultural precinct**, it is **10km** south of Polokwane city centre, along the R37 road to Burgersfort. The complete theatre will be handed over to the community of Limpopo by **31st May 2026**.



Construction of Limpopo Provincial Theatre (1)



Construction of Limpopo Provincial Theatre(2)



Construction of Limpopo Provincial Theatre(3)

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

The construction of the long-awaited and much-talked about Limpopo Provincial Theatre has finally take off. This is after the **official sod turning ceremony** was conducted. At the helm of the event held at Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum, the site of the planned theatre. The news will come as a relief for the people of Limpopo, as they have had to wait all eight years

Location at known cultural precinct

The location of the **R376-million** theatre, the Bakone Malapa cultural precinct, is 10km south of Polokwane city centre, along the R37 road to Burgersfort.

the complete theatre will be handed over to the community of Limpopo by May 31, 2026

This 24-month venture will result in a modern theatre, complete with a main hall seating 600, a secondary hall for 200. Further facilities will include a restaurant, coffee shop, bookshop and bar.

this project is going beyond a cultural hub, but a commitment to the success of our artists and the advancement of Limpopo’s cultural and economic stature.

This theatre will serve as a cultural epicentre for the province, a dedicated space that elevates and celebrates the diverse artistic expressions within Limpopo. At the same time, it will provide

a platform for local artists to showcase their talents, fostering a sense of community pride and identity.”

Boost for Limpopo Economy

The theatre in particular is significant here at Limpopo Province because our province has rich cultural heritage. A provincial theatre, therefore, becomes a beacon for preserving and promoting the unique history, traditions and stories that define the local identity.

Moreover, we are opening up a stage for economic growth and development. The completed structure should stimulate the creative and cultural industries, generating employment opportunities for various professionals such as stage managers, voice-over artists, designers and performers.”

2.17.4 Urban Renewal projects

Polokwane Municipality has adopted the Urban Renewal Strategy and CBD Development Plan 2016. This policy has set the key principles that support the current Program of “Re a ga” Polokwane that highlight the following:

The City of Polokwane has launched programme called "Re a ga Polokwane", that is geared towards ensuring that the City and its citizens are working together to build the city of Polokwane. The "Re a ga Polokwane" programme – strengthening the partnership in **building a smart city by 2030 and beyond**. Polokwane is the Capital city of the Limpopo Province-opportunity for economic growth and experience rural urban migration. Polokwane is likely to face urbanisation challenges as the signs have already surfaced such as engineering capacity and high demand of housing typologies. Major projects being embarked by the City of Polokwane:

- ✓ the **replacement of 177km of AC (asbestos cement) pipes** in the municipality's jurisdiction.
- ✓ **to replace conventional water and electricity meters** with smart meters in a number of areas in the City.
- ✓ the introduction of a **rapid bus service**;
- ✓ a **waste management project**.
- ✓ as well as a major **student accommodation** drive to support the growing number of students in the city.
- ✓ Other **Public Private Partnership on Mixed use development** through a Long-term development
- ✓ Water Master Plans
- ✓ Urban Renewal projects
- ✓ etc.

Key strategic/Catalytic development projects on the Long Terms Development leases and other Municipal initiative includes:

- Development of the Polokwane Towers (office accommodation and other SOE)
- Development of the Eco-estate on the part of the Game reserve or theme park
- Proposed Sasol Depot at the proposed Polokwane Extension 136
- Support initiatives for SEZ:

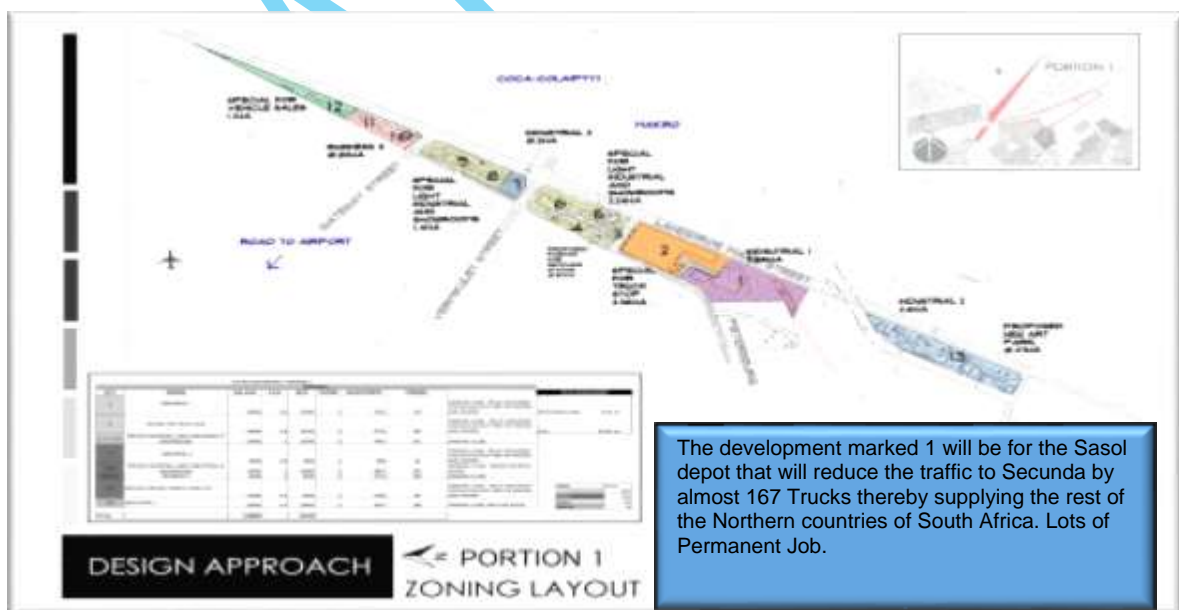
i. Cargo and Logistic Hub

The State of Province Address 2019, the Limpopo Premier Honorable Mathabatha has highlighted the progress made with regard to the proposed SEZ in the province and the district and provincial SDF identified Polokwane for SEZ based on the Agro-processing and Logistics.

The municipality has concluded the pre-feasibility study for Agro-processing and Logistics Hub which was approved by Council and submitted to the Office of the Premier for consideration as a provincial catalytic project. The project has also been presented at the provincial EXCO Lekgotla and provincial Economic Cluster.

ii. Truck-inn and Cargo HUB (Polokwane extension 136 as approved)

The Figure below illustrates the proposed Township with the uses as highlighted. The **Long-term development leases** were awarded in line with the development of the Cargo and Logistic Hub concept. An **industrial Township** with the following uses:



- **Industrial zone properties for Sasol depot, Tanker's park-inn, cargo truck-inn, Vehicle sales lot.**
- **Public Garage**
- **Special for other uses.**

iii. Agro-Processing.

Agro-processing industry is a subset of manufacturing that processes raw materials and intermediate products derived from the agricultural sector. Agro-processing means transforming products that originate from agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The Standard Industrial Classification also categorises the following eleven divisions under the agro-processing industry: food, beverages, paper and paper products, wood and wood products, textiles, wearing apparel, furniture, tobacco, rubber products, footwear and leather and leather products. Polokwane has a strong logistic support from different part of the region and can be able to take that advantage.

Part of the development of the agro-processing, the industrial development becomes the key, since three modes of transport (Air, Rail and Road) are integrated within the identified area being Polokwane International Airport. The Agro-processing industry is among the sectors identified by the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), the New Growth Path and the National Development Plan for its potential to spur growth and create jobs because of its strong backward linkage with the primary agricultural sector. The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) has established a Directorate: Agro-processing Support to complement the interventions undertaken by several governmental departments, notably, the Department of Trade and Industry, by focusing on supporting the establishment and growth of Small and Medium Enterprises (SMEs) for Agro-processing. Polokwane by far, has already earmarked the need for the Agro- processing and Logistics Hub to support the economic growth and development with the support of the sector departments.

iv. Industrial Development

Polokwane Municipal Economic growth is being hampered by the less production in terms of the Manufacturing sector. The Municipality has dedicated the land on the Old N1 Road (North) now known as the Landros Mare Street as part of the Commercial and Industrial Development. In order to improve the **Airport Precinct**, all the encore development that complement the Agro-processing and Logistic Hub must be prioritised within the area. The main issue for the

success of the industrial development is centered around the following key factors for the success of the industries:

- power supply.
- communications - including transport, telecommunications.
- labour supply - including workers with the right skills.
- access to market - where the goods are sold.
- grants and financial incentives - usually from governments.
- raw materials.

The DTI has collaborated with a range of institutions and stakeholders in developing strategies and policies to achieve rapid industrialisation of the country's manufacturing sectors. The institutions and stakeholders include other government departments, particularly in the Economic Sector and Employment Cluster, the National Economic Development and Labour Council, and organised business formations, such as Business Unity South Africa (BUSA) and Industry Associations.

The **DTI** has identified institutions and partners that support the implementation of its industrial development mandate which include:

- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications (NRCS)
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa (NMISA)
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)
- The South African National Accreditation System (SANAS)

In order for the Polokwane to successfully have an area that support fully the Industrial development, the SBU on economic Development and Trade must be energised in order to access funding and attract investors through the support of the DTI for betterment of the Limpopo Economy and nationally.

NB: The projects in this regard to do a comprehensive feasibility study has commenced in order to deal with the aspects of the SEZ establishment after detail studies and approaches are dealt with.

2.17.5 City wide Development initiatives

The Municipality has developed the Urban Renewal Strategy and the CBD Development Plan, 2016. The ideal was to rejuvenate the city to be a functional business zone with Mixed Land Use Development that will complement the cities vision of being the SMART CITY. The Urban Development Framework developed by the National Department of COGTA laid a several levers that now incorporated in the **CEF** approved by Cogta as presented above. The municipality strive to align the said Policy with the URS and CBD Plan for its identified projects.

This includes re-investing in engineering for more compactable city through **high density** development and office and Business development. The first approach was to look at the development of the **Municipal Towers**.

The proposed idea will strengthen the attraction of the Investors and office accommodation on the scattered Municipal services points around the city. The down Town area is mostly affected by the illegal land uses. It is from the said plans that the Municipality must enable major urban regeneration through Private Public Partnership for developing the area. Land acquisition is a best tool for the Municipality to develop high density development within the area and be supported by the relaxation of the development control and introduction of the incentive on development.

Several land parcels were identified for mixed uses looking at the potential impact that the development will have in the economic growth and addressing the unemployment rate. The approach will be sent to the Council regarding establishing the Data base for the prospective developer who have financial muscle to carry any task that the Municipality intend to develop. This include following the SCM processes and national Treasury Regulations.

2.17.6 Commercialisation of Municipal Facilities/Properties

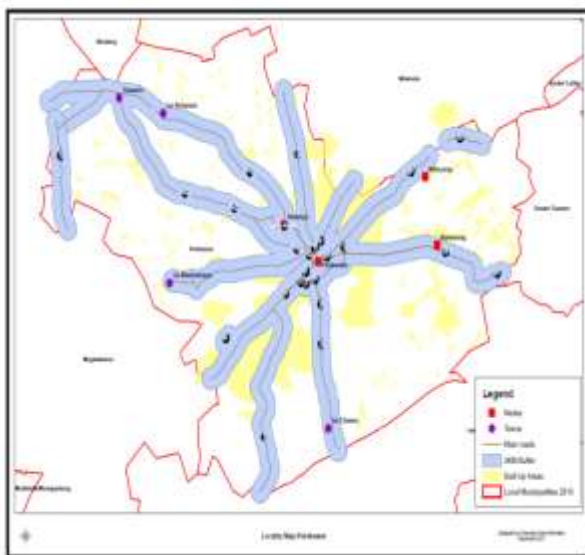
The municipality has number of the community facilities and other amenities that need urgent attention. This includes the **Peter Mokaba stadium, the game reserve, Jack Botes hall Airport, Library Garden and Showground** that may pose positive impact to the community if well managed. Some of these activities need expertise from the people who are specialising in such field. Learning from other cities that own such facilities, the majority are outsourced through the services of the private companies to generate more revenue and lessen the burden of expenditure by the Municipality. For example, the Game reserve may be turned in an Eco-estate that promote the men contact with the nature. The stadium for multipurpose

centre Bakoni Malapa for Innovation art and cultural Hub as it is strategically located within the Corridors.

2.17.7 Metropolitan Municipal Requirements

It is the prerogative of the Municipality to become a metropolitan Municipality within the next 3-4 years. The basics should be laid in order to have a proper road map in achieving the Metropolitan status. The Municipal Structures Act, Section 2 provides that – Category A Municipality if that area can reasonably be regarded as-

(a) a conurbation (continuous network of urban communities) [metropolitan] featuring-

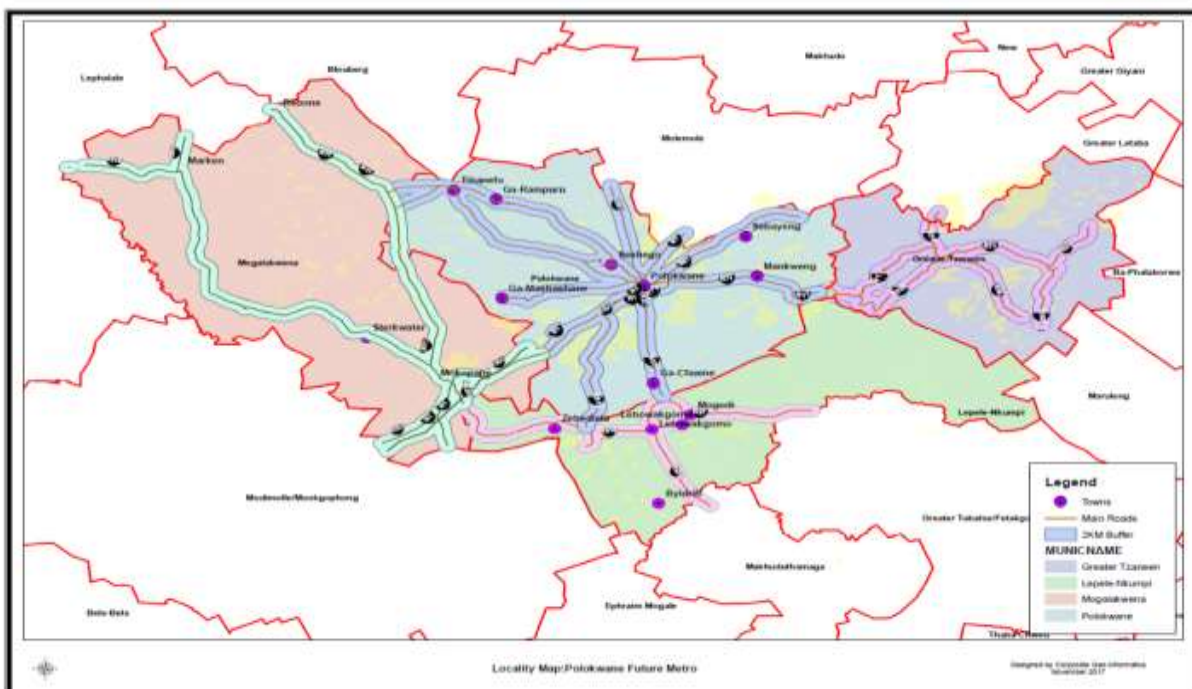


- (i) areas of high population density.
- (ii) an intense movement of people, goods, and services.
- (iii) extensive development; and
- (iv) multiple business districts and industrial areas.

(b) a centre of economic activity with a complex and diverse economy.

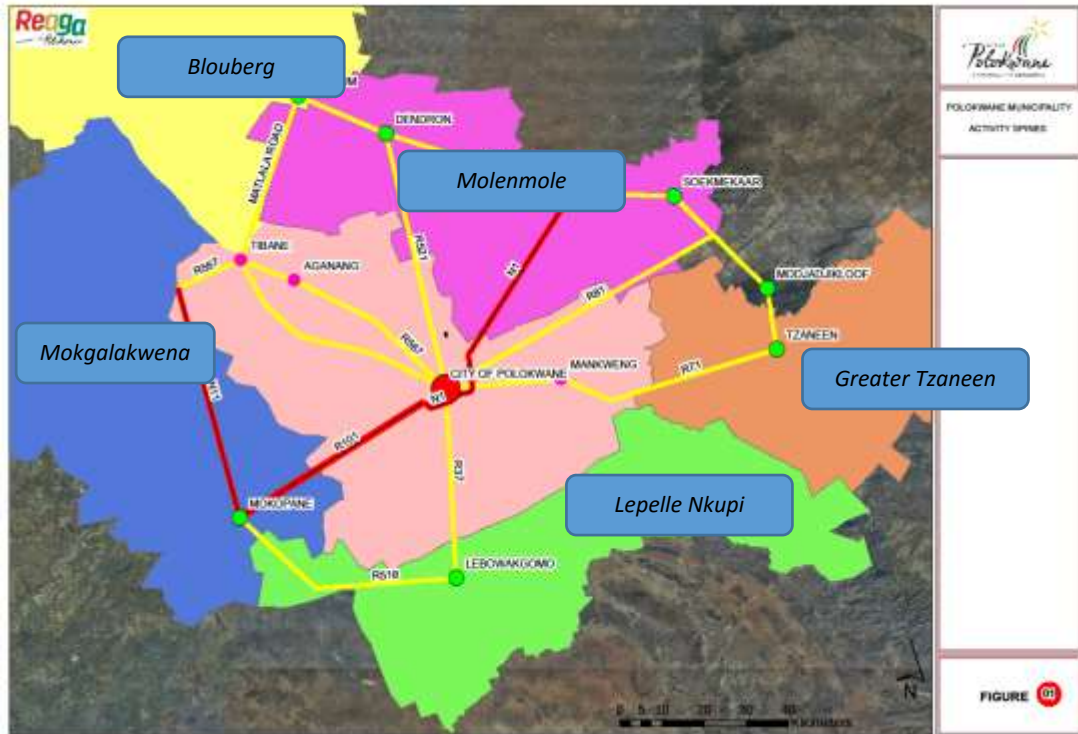
(c) a single area for which integrated development planning is desirable; and

(d) having strong interdependent social and economic linkages between its constituent units. Should apply to the relevant authority



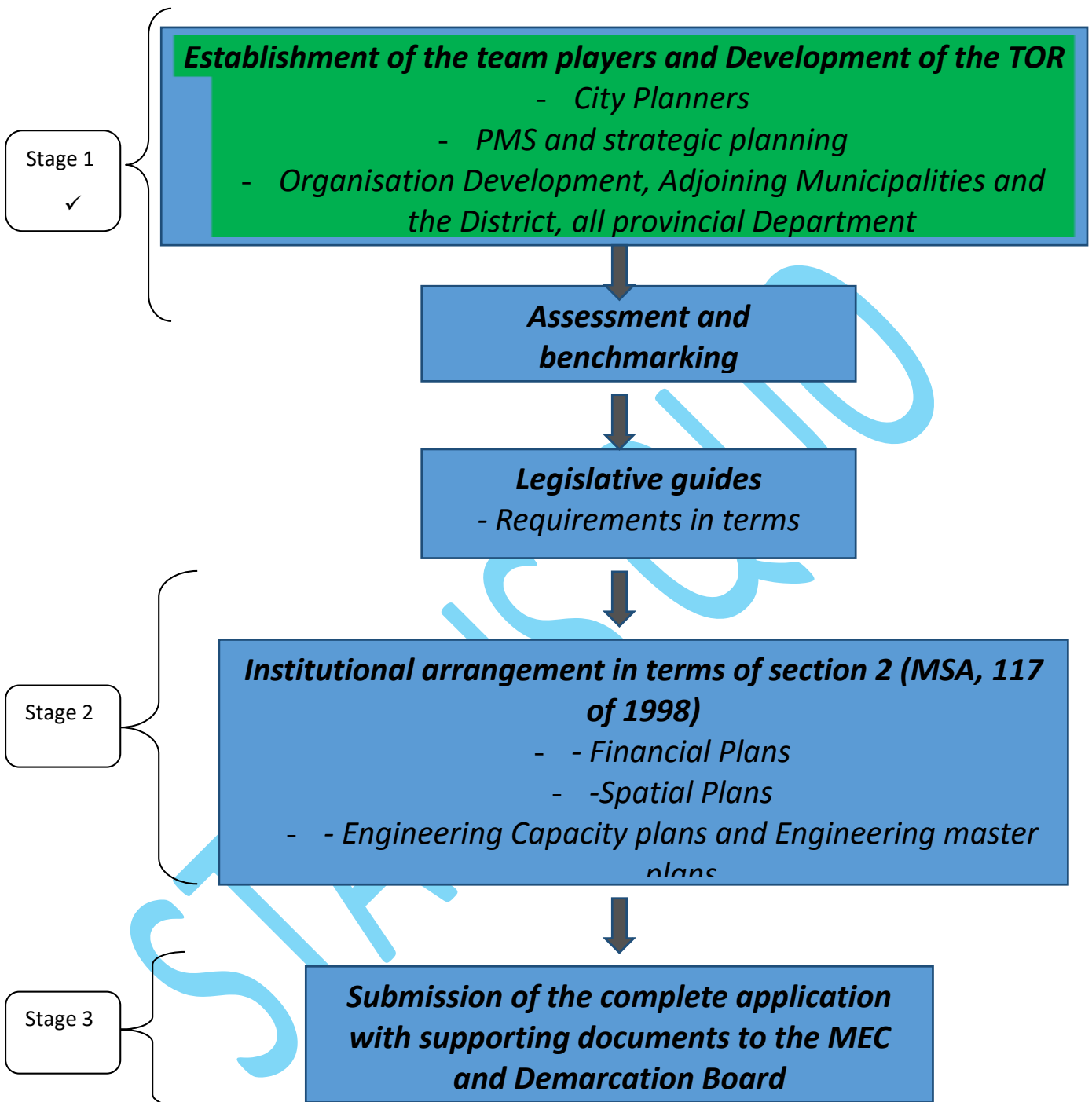
for consideration and such application should be assessed looking at the above criteria and other requirement that the demarcation board may require.

Alignment with adjacent Municipalities and road networks



The above structure will be updated and used for the purpose of identifying the key role players in preparing the Municipality in to be **Category A Municipality**

2.17.8. ROAD MAP TO METRO



2.17.9 Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital

City of Polokwane and Edu park donated Remaining Extent of Erf 6861 Pietersburg Extension 30, measuring 19.90 Hectares. The aforesaid Donation was in line with a **Council Resolution** dated 28th of February 2012.

The aforesaid Council Resolution contain the conditions which the Donee must comply with before the transfer of the ownership such as rezoning and that was already adhered to. The recent Council resolution also provides conditions that the Donee should adhered to and has since started to communicate with the Municipality.

Progress to date, the donation agreement has been signed and **construction has commenced**.

Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital



Notice on Site - Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital



Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital



Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital



Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital



Construction of the New Limpopo Central Hospital

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU 2024

2.17.10 R4-billion New Limpopo Central Hospital

Plans are afoot to deliver Limpopo's first academic hospital that will see the province's residents no longer having to travel to Gauteng to receive tertiary medical services.



New Limpopo Central Hospital



New Limpopo Central Hospital



Bulk Underground Services Installation



Health Minister, Dr Joe Phaahla, and other government officials turned the first sod to mark the birth of the ground-breaking new Limpopo Central Hospital

This is going to be a **488-bed hospital** providing over **20 services**. Those services, amongst others, include **all disciplines of surgery, trauma, burns, oncology, gynaecology, neonatal care, paediatrics and emergency medicine**.

This state-of-the-art facility will be essential in ensuring that our citizens have access to quality healthcare services.

Preliminary estimates show that the project is expected to generate 1 220 part-time jobs during the construction phase and create 2 461 full-time equivalent jobs in Polokwane and surrounding areas, once the hospital is fully operational.

The project would cost a whopping **R4-billion** funded by the National Health Department on behalf of the provincial health Department.

2.18. IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR STUDENT ACCOMMODATION

Erf 20802 – 20815 and 20818 – 20821 Polokwane Extension 106 zoned Residential 3 have already been advertised for **student accomodation**. Some other erven in Polokwane Extension 79 also advertised for high density residential developments. Additionally Council has adopted the **CBD Urban Renewal Strategy** of which one of its objectives was to identify a strategy to curb illegal accommodation and devise a means for student accommodation. The area in downtown CBD is in such a decay state, and vulnerable students are residing here in appalling state.

The list of five institutions namely the **University of Limpopo, UNISA Polokwane Campus, TUT Polokwane Campus, Capricorn FET College, Boston City Campus and Business College** which developers and the Municipality could partner with in order to meet the demand for student accommodation within the CBD. Only three of these institutions currently have accommodation available - **University of Limpopo located in Mankweng, TUT Polokwane Campus and Capricorn FET College** both located in Polokwane Town.

The majority of illegal land uses are located within the north-western part of the CBD as depicted (Buite, Boom, Bok, Dahl, Devenish, Excelsior and Onder Street). The majority of illegal land uses relate to student boarding accommodation and rental units, (approximately 33 properties), Some of the most serious problems associated with illegal land uses are illegal water/ electricity connections and temporary partitions within building structures. Amongst others, large numbers



of people (up to 20 and more) use existing houses for informal accommodation purposes. Plans to acquire the subject land is one of the priorities for affordable student housing and or social housing. Block 1 to 6. The **Map Below** indicate the location of block 1-6.

Number 7 to 8 can be open for the mixed use for the city main library, open market on the 2-4th floor while the ground floor can be used as City parking or taxi holding as currently being used.

2.19 LEGISLATIVE AND POLICY CONTEXT

The Spatial Analysis chapter and the development growth of Polokwane Municipality is guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

- i. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (108 of 1996)
- ii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (16 of 2013)
- iii. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Regulations: Land Use Management and General Matters, 2015
- iv. National Development Plan, 2012
- v. Town Planning and Township Ordinance 15 of 1986 to be repealed by the
- vi. Polokwane Economic Growth and Development Plan, Vision 2030
- vii. Administration and Control of Townships Regulations R293 of 1962
- viii. Proclamation R188 of 1969 Regulations
- ix. Communal Land Rights Act (11 of 2004)
- x. Upgrading of Land Tenure Rights Act (112 of 1991)
- xi. Interim Protection of Informal Land Rights Act No 31 of 1996

- xii. Extension of Security of Tenure Act (Act no. 62 of 1997)
- xiii. Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act No 19 of 1998
- xiv. Restitution of Land Rights Act No 22 of 1994
- xv. Land Administration Act No 2 of 1995
- xvi. National Environmental Management Act No 107 of 1998
- xvii. Planning Profession Act No 36 of 2002
- xviii. LIBRA, Act 5 of 2003 and its regulation (Limpopo Business Registration Regulations 2015)

The next Housing Analysis will therefore be guided by the following legislative and policy frameworks:

- i. National Housing Act (107 of 1997)
- ii. Breaking New Ground, 2005
- iii. National Housing Code, 2009
- iv. Rental Housing Act (50 of 1999)
- v. Limpopo Housing Act (2 of 2006)
- vi. The Social Housing Act (16 of 2008)

2.20 Catalytic Land Development Programme in support of the CEF.

Below are the **9 key catalytic projects** that will unlock economic growth in those spaces and contribute towards job creation and ultimately reduce unemployment in the City of Polokwane.

2.20.1 Science and Research Park

Science and Research Park to be establish at Weltevreden Farm at the southern part of the new interchange at N1-By-pass. The Municipality has already **awarded the land** amount to **274ha land** for development of the Science Park of which the studies has already commenced. Limpopo connection is currently conducting **Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)** and engineering capacity assessment. The development form part of the **Dilokong Corridor** in support of the National Development Plan (**NDP**).



2.20.2 Bakoni Malapa Arts and Cultural Hub

Bakoni Malapa arts and cultural hub as proposed will support the issues of artists in terms of the **film and recording studio, theatre, incubation stall.**

This will increase tourism at the Municipal facility. That will form belt of the **sport precinct** as proposed in the **SDF**, that stretches from Peter Mokaba stadium. The Feasibility study (**DSAC**) and Township Application processes funded by the Polokwane Municipality. Bulk engineering services to be provided by Polokwane Municipality to the area and funded under the IUDG. This project is part of implementing the **CEF**.



2.20.3 Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor

- **Industrial Park or SEZ N1 North Corridor** site identification around the **airport** will be a key towards **application for the expansion of the Municipal Boundary further to the North** in order to cater for at least **200km²** of land.
- Since the northern part of the City border with the **Molemole Municipality** just **5-10KM** from the City, it is prudent that Polokwane Municipality start with application to request the expansion of its Boundary (land) to at least **40km** from the current boundary to includes the **SEZ or Industrial Park** development.
- Municipality has received Lots of proposals for Townships by private developers of which that is encouraging in the area for Facilities such as Tertiary education facility (admin block, faculty departments, on campus student housing, warden housing, recreational facilities). Public garage, convenient shopping centre and food court to be assessed based on the Spatial Development Framework of the Municipality. The revised SDF has included the extending of the urban edge for support of the proposed SEZ/Industrial Park and Development within the earmarked areas. The initiatives will support Job creation and Economic Growth.



2.20.4 Agro processing

- **Agro-processing** - the support for the proposed development concept is centred on the **Logistic and Agro-processing** taking advantage of the transport modes available that includes:
 - **Air network (airport).**
 - **Rail network (railway Station).**
 - **Road's network (Bus, taxi station).**
- The Municipality will take advantage over the identified **Musina /Makhado SEZ and Tubatse SEZ** as Logistic Hub.
- Polokwane as a Capital City of Limpopo Province is also a gateway to Africa and rest of the World.



- Several MOU were signed for trade with the African Countries and the Municipality intend to participate in the market to boost in the **Economic Growth** through Manufacturing and processing of **raw materials**.

2.20.5 Transit Oriented Development (TOD) precinct

Transit Oriented Development (TOD):

TOD precinct –will be development phases as part of supporting the **SEZ**: airport corridor or industrial parks. The TOD precinct development will include **truck inn**. All the roads from the SADC connects to Polokwane CBD. The massive industrial sites connect with the said modes of transport. Good positioning of the Land use with are compactable with each other and further be supported by the vast land available for future development. The Council has already release land for the feasibility by the Directorate Transportation to establish the **Truck inn**.



2.20.6 International Softball stadium

- **International Softball stadium** - Polokwane Municipality has receive funding from **SRSA** through the **UIDG** to **design and construct** an international softball stadium over the **next 3 years**.
- **30M** was budget allocated for the **2020/21 FY**.
- Polokwane Municipality has made a **pocket of land available** within its **sport precinct hub** for this development.
- The Concept designs have been approved with all stakeholders.
- The municipality is engaging **DCOG** support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real-time spatial transformations,



2.20.7 Post incubation Hub

- **Post incubation Hub** - the intension is to lease and develop a park with the aim of providing the alternative and opportunity to the incubates and investors that we attract during our marketing.
- The installation of services is complete. The perimeter fencing and access road is also complete. The municipality will be going out on public to advertise for long-term development leases for certain erfs of the industrial park.



2.20.8 Eco-Estate at Game reserve

- ❖ **Eco-Estate at Game reserve** -proposal for the **Eco-estate** will boost the Polokwane Game reserve for **tourism and accommodation facilities** and attract **investors** on the South eastern part of the City as the **future expansion** of the City.
- ❖ This will be a **high marketed residential development** where man is in contact with nature.

2.21 Progress on priority/ Catalytic Land Development Programme.

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE 23 August 2021	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
1. Science Park	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conveyance Notaries is appointed for the drafting of the lease agreement and negotiation (Public to Public Partnership approach) The Record of Decision positive Basic Township establishment studies are finalised and lodgement of the Township has been done and approved by the Municipal Planning Tribunal. 	LEDA- Limpopo connection	Planning 90 % for Planning Within the Functional Area 1
2. Arts and Cultural Hub	<p>Township application has been submitted and public participation concluded. The Municipality has received objection regarding the application.</p> <p>Legal Counsel need to be appointed to represent the Municipal on hearing and possible Appeals and Court processes.</p> <p>A memo has been sent to legal department to assist with appointing legal Counsel.</p> <p>Land subdivision and zoning for a theatre has begun.</p>	<p>Municipal and Department of Sports Arts and Culture.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ❖ Land zoning and donation to the department (municipal). ❖ Development of the Provincial Theatre (Department) and will commence for construction 	Planning and Social 95% on Planning 30% Engineering and designs Within the Functional Area 1
3. SEZ (Agro-processing and logistic) N1 North Corridor	Feasibility study finalised and approved by Council. The municipality is engaging Department of Public Works for the purpose of land disposal.	Polokwane Municipality (Budgeted)	Planning and Social 100% for planning Within the Functional Area 1
4. Softball stadium	Planning Completed and construction has commenced	Polokwane Municipality and National Department of Sports	Planning and Economic 100% Planning done.

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
	23 August 2021		56% in Construction
5. Post incubation Hub	The bulk services, access road and perimeter fencing are complete.	Municipality but to seek funding from Department of Small Business Development	Economic and Planning 100% spent for planning. 100% spent on Construction and supervision. Within the Functional Area 1
6. Academic hospital	Conveyancers finalise deed of donation to the Department of Public works. Zoning already approved. Site Development Plans approved by Council.	Department of Public Works, Health and social Development/Education.	Planning 100% for Planning 5% construction Within the Functional Area 1
7. Urban renewal- Municipal Tours	Planning for the project has commenced in 2021/2022 Financial Year as budgeted. (subject to Budget availability)	Polokwane Municipality	Planning For appointment of the service provider- Within the Functional Area 1
8. Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing) (Municipal entity)	Annandale extension 2 construction commence for provision of rental housing. Student housing at 106 and 108 underway.	Municipal entity	Planning, Social and Economic 100% Within the Functional Area 1
9. Urban renewal projects- Transit Oriented Development (TOD): <u>Truck inn</u> (Municipal).	Truck inn land availability approved by Council. Feasibility already approved. Incorporated in the reviewed ITPS and to be part of the freight Plan as project to be implemented in 2021/2022.	Polokwane Municipality	Planning and Economic 100% feasibility completed and 0% for implementation. Within the Functional Area 1
10. Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing	Assessment of the land ownership is in progress and development of incentive for developers to be finalised. Application of UDZ underway and	Polokwane Municipality/Private Developers	Planning and Economic Consultation with Land Owners

CATALYTIC PROJECT NAME	PROJECT STATUS QUO DATE	PROJECT OWNER & PROGRESS (MUNICIPAL OR PROVINCIAL DEPARTMENT)	INVESTMENT TO DATE and (area of projects as per the Spatial Plans)
	23 August 2021		
around Buite and Bok Streets (Municipal)	to be supported by Council Resolution.		Within the Functional Area 1
11. Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties)	Polokwane extension 136, 138 and Bendor 126, East Ridge X 3 approved for mixed use development.	Leased properties for revenue enhancement	Planning and Economic 95% Township Planning approved

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.22 Progress with the implementation of Circular 88

Planning Indicators	Progress in Implementation
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Greenfields's development	None
Number of hectares of land procured and suitable for Brownfield development	None
Number of hectares of land proclaimed (township establishment completed)	178 846ha
Number of dwelling units developed per hectare	70.5962ha
Percentage density reduction in total informal settlements	80%
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading	2
Number of households living in informal settlements targeted for upgrading	1000
Number of informal settlements targeted for upgrading with upgrading plans	2
Number of informal settlements upgraded (services provided): In Situ	7
Number of informal settlements targeted for formalisation (services provided): Relocated	1
Number of households living in informal backyard rental agreement	Above 1000
Number of sites serviced	Approximately 6000 (Informal settlement)
Number of Title deeds transferred to eligible beneficiaries	10 441

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.23 Intergovernmental Planning

Polokwane Municipality is part of the **provincial infrastructure committee and other committees as per the directorates** that report to **HOD's** forum and presented to the **Exco-Lekgotla (Province)**. All planned projects from the **SONA, SOPA**, and District are aligned to the Municipal plans for implementation and the **CEF**. The Municipality also form part of **other forums** at the **District level** such as:

- ❖ Provincial Intergovernmental Structure.
- ❖ National Planning forums (**SPLUMA, LED, Human settlement**).
- ❖ District Intergovernmental Structures: i.e.
- ❖ **Mayor Forum**
- ❖ **MM Forum and other technical forum**
- ❖ **Speaker Forum**
- ❖ **Communicators Forum**

2.23.1 Intergovernmental Projects in progress

The Municipality has identified a number of key spatial targeting areas that will further compliment the priority development areas and other areas within the municipality.

Intergovernmental Projects in progress

Brownfield Development	Greenfield Development
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Urban renewal projects in the CBD- Polokwane Towers • Urban renewal projects in the CBD - Mixed housing around Buite and Bok Streets • Urban renewal projects- Transit Oriented Development (TOD) around Itsoseng, bus station, Train station and Airport. • Housing – Mixed housing (Social, Gap and Student housing) • Industrial Development - Light industries development (small scale industries) to partner with Department of Small Business 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Polokwane Mixed Housing Development (leased properties) ▪ Science Park by LEDET (LEDA project) ▪ Commercialisation of the Strategic Assets such as the Game reserve for mixed use ▪ Development of the Arts and Cultural HUB (Bakoni Malapa) (Polokwane and DSAC) ▪ Logistic or Cargo Hub and Agro-Processing Hub to support SEZ (Feasibility study) ▪ Softball stadium (On Going) jointly with National Department of Sports and recreation. ▪ Academic Hospital (Construction Stage) land released for Department of Health and Social Development and Public works

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.23.2 Pilot Projects for Inter-Governmental Planning

(A). International softball stadium

Polokwane municipality has received funding from SRSA (National Department of Sports & Recreation South Africa) through the UIDG to design and construct an international softball stadium over the next 3 years. R24.7 M was allocated in the year 2020/21 Fy.

Council has made available a pocket of land within its sport precinct hub for this development. Concept designs have been approved with all stakeholders. The municipality is engaging DCOG support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real-time spatial transformations.

(B). Provincial State Theatre

The National Department to design and construct provincial State Theatre. Provincial Treasury allocated approximately R20 Million; and additional allocation will be requested from National Treasury for 2023/24 Fy. Polokwane Municipality has budgeted R2 Million as from the 2020/21Fy-2021/22Fy for Planning process. The project is currently at 95% expenditure.

The Municipality has further budgeted R8.7 Million for Engineering services for 2023/24Fy. Council has made available a pocket of land within its Bakoni Malapa for feasibility study for this development. The DSAC, Public works, Treasury has already budgeted the cost associated with the project of Provincial State Theatre to be developed as from the September 2023. Planning has commenced in order to support on maximisation of this project to showcase Real time spatial transformations.

2.24 IUDF Implementation to Date

COGTA introduced a consolidated grant (IUDG) for Intermediate City Municipalities (ICM). Polokwane and uMhlathuze were identified as the two pilot municipalities. The ICM program aims at supporting the Municipalities in areas of Spatial Planning, Infrastructure/Capital projects and preparing financial access to the new IUDG grant. As such, the municipalities were requested to develop a Capital Expenditure Framework, which is a long-term infrastructure plan that flows from a Spatial Development Framework (SDF). The process of developing the Capital Expenditure Framework was approached by dividing it in 3 different CEF Modules.

- 1) **Module 1: Planning,**
- 2) **Module 2: Infrastructure,**
- 3) **Module 3: Finance**

2.24.1 CEF Modules Progress Status Quo.

- 1) **Module 1: Planning** was more focused with the Spatial Transformation Agenda, which involved dividing the municipal in functional areas, in this instance went further to priority development areas. **Development strategies for the above-mentioned**

areas has been developed. The Functional Area 4 developed as part of the CEF submission.

- 2) **Module 2: Infrastructure** was more focused on technical assessments, which involves, **backlogs and capacity** being guided by development strategies completed in **Module 1 of Planning**. The module will indicate the backlogs, existing and required capacity of bulks and networks in the coming years.
- 3) **Module 3: Finance** is more focused on the long-term financial plan (**assumptions and projections**), which involves a fit on the development strategies for functional areas by **identified by planning**, together with the backlogs and need **outlined by infrastructure**. An analysis should also be provided to ensure staying within affordability margin.

2.24.2 Capital Expenditure Frameworks (CEF) Status Quo

Polokwane Municipality has concluded all three modules and the CEF was approved by the Cogta and Council as a Business plan to be aligned with the IDP and Budget.

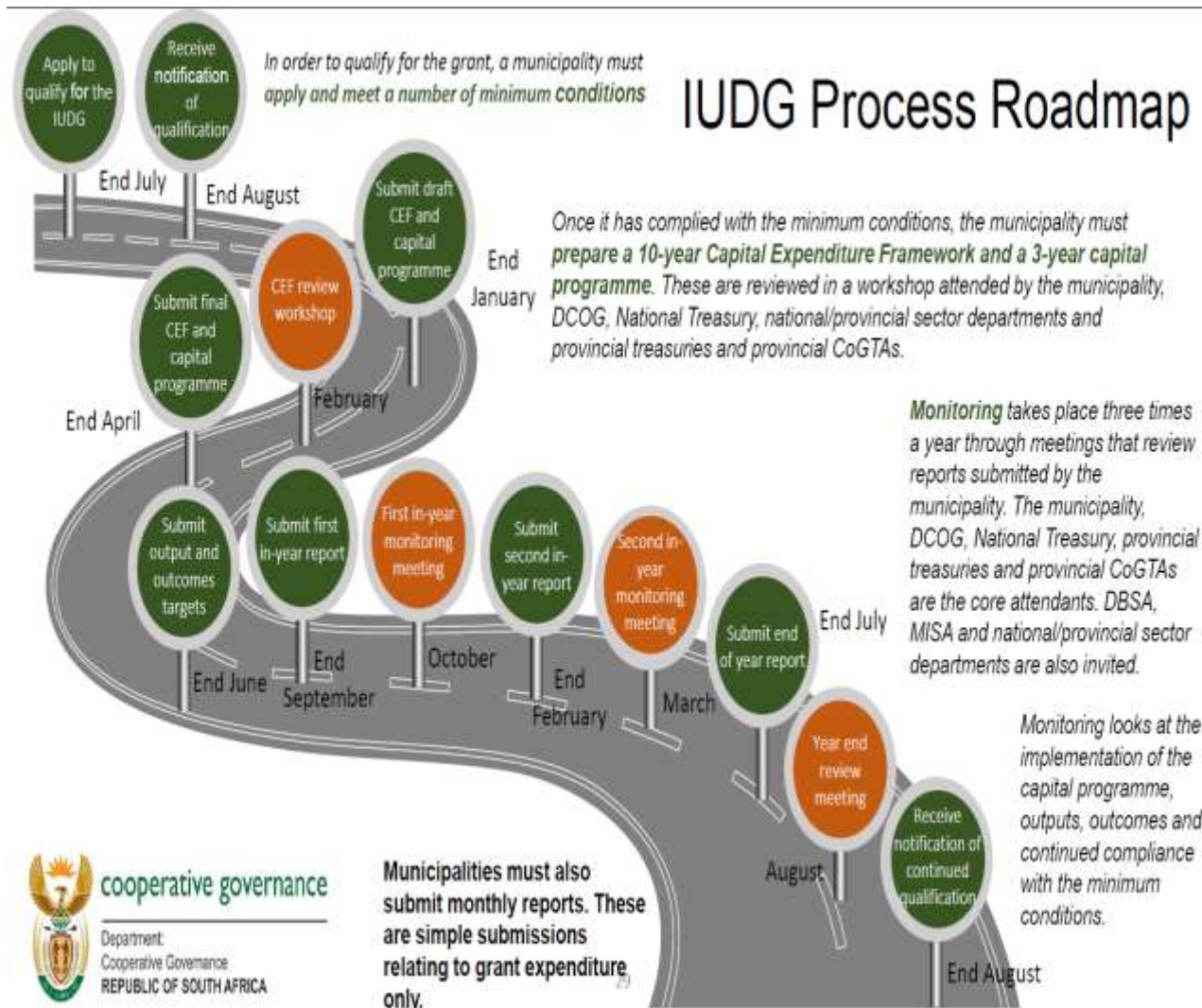
The draft revised Capital Expenditure Framework Report was planned to be ready on the 25th January 2020, but due to downward adjustment of Budget affected the program. Comments and inputs were received during the budget adjustment and will be considered once Cogta guides on the revised CEF Report.

Currently, Planning SBU is concluding its section in the CEF report. The presentation on **Module 1: Planning** was presented, and all inputs and comments Received have been included.

Module 2: Infrastructure – under review and soon to be concluded, the different infrastructure sections to finalize their submissions

Module 3: Finance is currently also in a process of developing the financial plan being guided by the above 2 Modules. The revised draft CEF (Capital Expenditure Framework) report will be submitted for inputs and comments (The downward budget adjustment has affected the overall projection and planning Process of the CEF. The final submission of the Revised CEF report is planned **June 2021**).

2.25 IUDG Process Roadmap followed.



Source: Cogta Guide IUDG Process Roadmap

2.25.1 CEF Success and Challenges

Success	Challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Approved CEF aligned with the IDP. • Well defined spatial targeted area in line with the SDF. • Well defined projects with funding (External and Leases). • Possibility of attracting investors in ideal location. • Driving the spatial agenda of the City. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alignment and unfunded budget due to community needs analyses. • Unequal Share due to Municipal community's composition (Urban 30% and Rural 70%). • Financial sustainability due to culture of non-payment. • Budget vs Community needs. • Prioritisation of projects and their return.

Success	Challenges

Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.25.2 Impact of the adjustments budget on CEF priority projects

The adjustment of the CEF and **resubmission** to National Treasury. Reducing the planned projects guided by available budget. Community redress on the planned and pronounced projects. Rescheduling of the Projects and planned program of implementation have been moved to outer **years**.

2.25.3 IUDF Levers

After careful consideration of the **Smart City Pillars** of the Municipal **long-term vision**, the **IUDF levers** are well presented in the projects that are to be implemented within the **CEF**. All **9 levers** as presented below has sharpens our approach when integrating the Municipal Planning and the other sphere of government and **SOE** as presented on the catalytic projects.

2.26 Challenges experienced in endeavour to seek integration and collaboration.

(A) Misalignment of Planning Cycle for Municipalities and Sector Departments.

The introduction of the **IUDF and DDM** in dealing with the alignment of the budget and intergovernmental projects pave the positive input to foster such relationship. Alignment of the Spatial Planning and project from the national, province, district and local municipality **SDF** as categorised by the **SPLUMA** is becoming a key in directing where investment should be prioritised.

(B) Priority Interventions that must be addressed dealing with the community needs.

Priority should be given to Municipality Funded **mandate projects** in the IDP and Unfunded **mandate Projects** Should be referred to the Relevant Department to address the need (**e.g., Library**). **Such** projects should be addressed by the DDM. Effectiveness of the forums on the priority projects and monitoring. Grants alignment vs Priority needs on the ground.

2.27 Approved Land for New Leases

The Council of Polokwane has approved about **21 properties** within the established township (**Brownfield development**) and 6 portions of farms (**green field development**). Notice on intention to lease the land was released and two objections received and address since they were related to water. Notice for invitation of bids in underway as per the resolution of Council

2.28 Sales of sites –City Planning and Properties

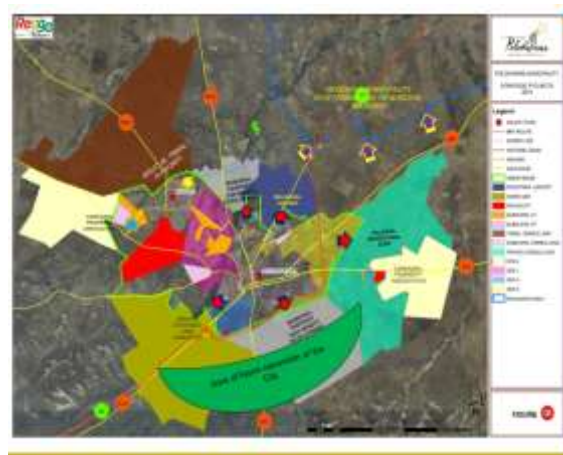
Progress with the sales of sites:

- ✓ Polokwane X 72
- ✓ Polokwane X 79
- ✓ Bendor
- ✓ Nirvana X 3
- ✓ Flora park

ESTABLISHED TOWNSHIP SERVICES COST: Water and Sanitation

MUNICIPAL OWNED TOWNSHIP NAME	Equivalent stands	Water			Sanitation		
		Reticulation	Bulk	Total	Reticulation	Bulk	Total
1 Polokwane 72	800		8 631 230	9 631 230		5 201 153	5 201 153
2 Polokwane 79	500		8 619 518	8 619 518		3 250 721	3 250 721
3 Polokwane 78	900	9 236 599	10 835 134	20 071 643	12 128 180	8 681 286	17 979 477
4 Polokwane 108							
5 Aganang 20 Industrial Park	1048	10 724 614	12 580 794	23 305 408	14 682 164	8 794 937	20 876 171
6 Polokwane X125	500	8 131 384	8 219 919	11 190 913	6 737 879	3 250 721	9 888 598
7 Polokwane X127	500	8 131 384	8 219 919	11 190 913	6 737 879	3 250 721	9 888 598
8 Polokwane X130	190		2 287 417	2 287 417		1 235 274	1 235 274
9 Polokwane X127	142	1 457 310	1 739 543	3 196 859	1 913 557	103 205	2 836 762
10 Polokwane X133	3050	33 780 564	36 117 112	68 905 476	40 427 268	19 504 328	50 931 591
11 Nirvana X05	200	2 082 558	2 407 907	4 490 365	2 695 151	1 300 288	3 995 435
TOTAL	7 777	84 522 148	93 627 593	158 149 742	84 722 073	50 561 713	135 283 786

Township servicing



Land Ownership & Future needs

2.29 Progress Report on Aganang Township Land

City Planning and Property management SBU has initial prepared the report for submission to the Council. The land was having the suspensive condition that the Municipality has failed to conclude on the following basis. The Department of Agriculture and Rural Development has to releases the land. To date, the Municipality has managed to achieve all outstanding issues that are within the Municipal Control such as the Approval of the Surveyor General Diagram for the initial Township and land for extension. After several letters sent and requested, that delay by the Department has cause the delays and still awaiting the land released. Community resolution was provided with the SG diagram but no response by the Department.

This project was dated back in 1995 and 2005, but with no success of land release. The Traditional Authority has alternatively request for the withdrawal in order to finalise the township using the private developer. The report was considered by the Council as requested by the Traditional Local Authority.

2.29.1 Ivy park Psychiatric Hospital

A privately driven 150 beds hospital development to be located along the N1 at Ivydale Agricultural holding, is on the cards to cater for the much-needed hospital beds in the City. The project cost is estimated at R450 million for direct construction. The township was approved by Polokwane Municipal Planning Tribunal. This development is expected to create **600 jobs** during construction and **450 jobs** permanent upon completion.



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.29.2 New TUT Campus

Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) has on plans to build a brand-new campus in the City of Polokwane. The property is located along Silicon Road next to the Municipal Airfield opposite the Polokwane Game.



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

A portion of the Remaining Extent of Weltevrede 746 LS measuring 40 hectares is valued at R1 430 000 Excluding VAT. Tshwane University of Technology (TUT), Department of Higher Education and Training –Limpopo Community Education and Training (CET) College, Capricorn District Municipality (CDM) and CoGHSTA-Limpopo province requested donation

of land to establish Polokwane Campus (TUT), Head Office and Community Learning Centre (CET) and Disaster Management Centres (CDM and COGHSTA).

The envisaged development by the institutions referred to is estimated to cost over two billion rands. Polokwane Local Municipality stands to benefit monthly from rates and taxes payable upon completion estimated at over a million rand.

The larger Polokwane Municipality community will benefit from services to be provided by these institutions. Hundreds to thousands of temporary jobs will be created during development phase and hundreds to a thousand during their lifetime.

2.29.3 Molepo Mall Development

Molepo Mall is a development that is going to take place at Sebjeng Ga- Molepo Village farm Laastehoop 1050 LS. This is a mixed commercial development of a shopping mall that is 12500m², Filling station, Drive through restaurant and a Hardware. Estimation cost of the development is R220 000 000.00 and the anticipation of breaking the ground is mid-June 2024. This development will be constructed under a property development company called Lizhakandila Investment (PTY)LTD.



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.29.4 NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital

The construction of Phase one of 86-beds hospital is to commence at the end of April 2024 on Erf 43242 Polokwane Ext 138 Grobler Street side. Phase one will cost approximately R200mil. The estimated number of jobs to be created is **472** Temporary and 120 permanents.



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.29.5 Sod Turning Ceremony for NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital



Sod Turning Ceremony for NETCARE AKESO Psychiatric Hospital



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU (25 April 2024)

2.29.5 Student Tenements on ERF 7339 Bendor Extension 86

The subject property is located in Die Meer Street Bendor, the site property is 6819m² in extent whilst also the overall character of the area is mixed residential housing characterized by free-standing housing and also group housing such as flats. The development was approved in 2020, the overall project has two phases which are supposed to amount to 204 habitable student rooms. The first phase of development has 102 rooms whilst the second phase has another 102 rooms. In overall there are students which are currently living there.

A total of R 156,808,379.22 has been spent on the project. The overall job creation turnover of 22 professional consultants, 1200 construction jobs and 30 operational long-term jobs



2.29.6 Student Accommodation at Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 Is

The student accommodation is located on Portion 67 of Syferkuil 921 LS in **Mankweng area**. The portion is behind the Mankweng Hospital.

The development covers a total of 271 Single rooms, 41 Disabled rooms and 1290 double rooms. This student accommodation is aimed at addressing accommodation shortages that are facing Mankweng.



Source: PLK Town Planning SBU

2.30 CORPORATE GEO-INFORMATICS

The City of Polokwane has a fully-fledged and functional Corporate Geo-Informatics Strategic Business Unit under Planning and Economic Directorate to manage all spatial data in the Municipality.

GIS is an abbreviation for '**Geographic Information Systems**'. It is a computer-based tool used to store, analyse, manage and distribute spatial data within Polokwane Municipality's jurisdiction. GIS is an important decision making tool used for manipulation, queries, analyse and presentation of spatial data to enhance decision. GIS is a critical tool that supports a number of municipal legislative requirements contained in the Municipal System Act (No. 32 of 200), the Municipal Structures Act (No. 117 of 1998), and the Spatial Data Infrastructure Act (No. 54 of 2003), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (No. 2 of 2000), Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (No. 16 of 2013), Infrastructure Development Act (No. 23 of 2014) and the Property Rates Act (No. 6 of 2004).

Most importantly, GIS is a vital tool to support the Municipal Integrated Plans (**IDPs**), undertaken in accordance with the Polokwane Spatial Development Framework (**SDF**) and with projects have a recorded spatial location.

GIS is the only technology that will allow the City of Polokwane to manage its assets spatially in an interactive environment and thereby ensure that all municipal assets are managed electronically.

The SBU: Corporate Geo-Informatics is expected to make a significant contribution to the planning process in the municipality. Currently, the SBU is working on ensuring that **Revenue SBU** receives clean and accurate **Property data** which will enable accurate **billing** of properties.

A spatial land audit that is GIS based will be conducted to support the Spatial Development Framework and Land Use Management System in the municipality. GIS will play a pivotal role in the maintenance and monitoring of these plans as they change overtime. For example, **Municipal boundary demarcation adjustment**, land subdivision and ownership transfer, amendment schemes and urbanization.

Professional Land Surveyors are not limited to preparing plot plans and placing boundary markers. In addition to being experienced in all types of land surveying and Geomatics services, they consult and incorporate the use of technological innovations and data management techniques as it relates to our communities and infrastructure.

Utilizing products like online Geographic Information Systems (GIS) that help municipalities **manage their assets**, save time and efficiently deploy resources; quickly provide the accurate spatial data, boundary definitions and geo-referenced information clients need to move their land development or infrastructure projects toward successful completion.

Surveyors always play a key role in **urban planning**, responsible for data collection and for the management of different design and engineering plans such as transportation, water system, and power system plan using proper metric standards (e.g., coordinate system, accuracy, drafting specifications, etc.).

2.30.1. INTEGRATED GIS SYSTEM

The integrated GIS system - With this system, the City of Polokwane has developed an integrated GIS system where the majority of systems that were **running independent** of each other will be running from a federated platform underpinned by geographic information system (GIS) or spatial data. The municipality will for the first time empower all of its employees and

its customers with relevant information that they'd need when carrying out their responsibilities.

The City of Polokwane being the largest business hub in the Limpopo Province and being the most strategically located City in the heart of the Limpopo, it attracts all major economic opportunities and play a significant role in the socio-economic space by providing the best services to its residents. The municipality also as a population concentration centre where people from all walks of life migrated to the City in search for a better life. In order for the City to plan better and efficiently, the use of spatial data become paramount to the City's planning and development. The municipality has since embarked on a journey to become one of the role players in the data driven institutions in the country.

The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business process flow and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services.

The introduction of the integrated GIS system in the municipality is aimed at transforming the organization to a point where every person or official/s who make use of the spatial data to make well informed decisions, have access to spatial data and its attributes at all times. The system integration in the municipality is designed to empower the Council decision makers such as SBU's Managers, Directors and Municipal Manager (MM) to explore data independently even if one is working with data from various sources.

The new technology (Integrated GIS System) has made it possible now than ever to capture, store and manipulate large quantities of data in a more cost-effective manner. The integrated GIS system gives decision makers a competitive edge in the sense that it does not only prove them with reports on what had happened but rather report on what is happening, e.g., **Town Planning Application Management Module System (TPAMS)** provide town planners and management a real time feed on those applications that are being processed by the municipality. Similar protocol is being followed with **Building Plans Application Management System (BPAMS)** and **Cemetery Management System (CMS)**.

The integrated GIS system function as a tool through which the various databases or systems that were running independent of each other will now be accessed and managed from a **single central point** with map enabled functionalities.

The advantages of using such a system are that end users need not be academically trained to navigate through the various platforms. The following application modules form part of the integrated GIS System:

2.30.2 Modules that form part of the integrated GIS System

- a) Land Information Management System (**LIMS**)
- b) Town Planning Application Management System (**TPAMS**)
- c) Building Plans Application Management System (**BPAMS**)
- d) Cemetery Management System (**CMS**)
- e) Billing Information Management
- f) Document Management System
- g) Infrastructure Asset Management
- h) Valuation Roll

For quick access to any of the above listed module please click the link below and you will be taken to the Polokwane Integrated GIS System landing page.

<http://gis.polokwane.gov.za/polokwanewebpage/>

2.31 Online AFLA System

The AFLA PORTAL system has been designed and developed by Esri South Africa to assist local authorities in reducing waiting times and promoting faster turnaround times on land development application processes. This user-friendly system is open to members of the public, allowing for convenient online application submissions.

Going from inline to online.

To achieve the most efficient processing of applications submitted to the Polokwane Local Municipality, striving for excellence through collaborative efforts

2.31.1 Modules & Tools

Here are the available modules, each equipped with a centralized document and information storage system.

2.31.2 Building Plans Management System

Assisting you to electronically lodge building development applications like minor work that needs to be done like adding a swimming pool, boundary walls, adding carports, etc

2.31.3 Town Planning Management System

Assisting you to electronically lodge land development applications like Rezoning, subdivision, township establishment and other city planning developments

2.31.4 Cemetery Management System

Now you can lodge a burial application online at local cemeteries.



ONLINE AFLA SYSTEM

CITY OF Polokwane
NATURALLY PROGRESSIVE

The municipality has embarked on a new trajectory to become a smart city by the year 2030 commonly referred to as 2030 VISION: SMART CITY. Polokwane Local Municipality Vision 2030 is aligned to the National Development Plan Vision 2030. To achieve the 2030 Vision, the municipality took a decision to move away from the manual systems of operations into an electronic system of operations in order to ensure effective service delivery to its residents.

Town Planning Application Management System (TPAMS)
Assisting you to electronically lodge land development applications like Rezoning, subdivision, township establishment and other city and regional planning developments.

Building Plans Application Management System (BPAMS)
Assisting you to electronically lodge Site Development Plan applications and all Building Plan applications remotely.

Cemetery Management System (CMS)
Now you can lodge a burial application online at local cemeteries.

Why Choose Polokwane Municipality Online System?

- Fast and Efficient:** Say goodbye to long queues and slow turnaround times. Our online system ensures that your applications are processed swiftly and efficiently.
- Convenience at Your Fingertips:** Submit your applications from the comfort of your home, anytime, anywhere.
- Transparency and Tracking:** Keep track of your application status in real-time, ensuring transparency and peace of mind.
- User-Friendly Interface:** Our portal is designed to be intuitive and easy to navigate, making the process hassle-free for all users.

Go-Live Date: 30 August 2024
This portal can be accessed by going to polokwane.gov.za (Polokwane Online) \AFLA Portal

Admin Queries
TPAMS – KgatjopeK @ 067 102 7009 / Email: kgaogelok@polokwane.gov.za
BPAMS – Manamela M @ 083 285 0524 / Email: makosham@polokwane.gov.za
CMS - Machete D @ 083 671 9917 / Email: disegom@polokwane.gov.za

Technical Queries
Nkosi L @ 081 316 703 / Email: lunjin@polokwane.gov.za or Nevondo N @ 081 311 7115 / Email: ndivhalenin@polokwane.gov.za

Reaga Polokwane **AFLA** **Leeto La Polokwane**

2.32 Challenges and Intervention of GIS

Challenges	Intervention
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Delays in land parcels registration (subdivision and consolidation) leads to spatial data inaccuracies and may affect municipal billing system. ▪ Delay in allocation of street names in proclaimed townships leads to inaccurate billing records. ▪ Lack of a GIS strategy to guide the municipality with regards to the use and maintenance of spatial data. ▪ In adequate budget allocation for the SBU to carry out its mandate. ▪ Difficulty in tracking illegal land occupation due to lack of updated imagery. ▪ Delay in the appointment of the Manager: Corporate Geo-Informatics. ▪ Non submission of GIS data from completed projects by respective strategic business units (Energy services, Water & Sanitation and Roads) ▪ Under performing ICT hardware and network availability if remote areas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The integrated GIS has been implemented and all Town Planning, Building Plans and Cemetery applications will be lodged online as from 30 August 2024. The public will have access to a public portal where they will lodge and track progress of their applications. • The GIS system has been integrated with the financial system (Munsoft) to ensure accurate billing at all times. It will further assist the municipality in visualising all IDP projects spatially. • In order for the City to plan better and efficiently, the use of spatial data become paramount to the City's planning and development. • The Integrated Geographic Information system has been developed to streamline and improve the institutional business process flow and to restore customer confidence in the institution by providing efficient and reliable services.

Source: PLK GIS SBU

2.33 Successes of Corporate Geo-Informatics SBU

Despite all the challenges mentioned above the SBU: corporate Geo-Informatics had brought in the following successes within the Directorate. Below is the list of **Success** for the SBU.

- Successfully implemented seven (8) of the eight (8) modules.
- Through the full implementation of the integrated GIS system, the municipal authority will be able to track all land development applications right from the moment the application is lodged with the municipality to the decision stage.
- Revenue SBU will receive accurate property information for accurate billing.
- The system will make it easy for authorities and municipal officials to draw statistical reports from the system which will pass the audit master's test.
- Continues with the support for site identification across the municipality.
- The SBU plays an important role in revenue data, IDP project spatial presentation and correct presentation of the valuation roll.
- Assisted service providers who are carrying out municipal duties by rendering its technical services such as land surveying and spatial data dissemination to minimise errors and save Council its resources.
- The collaborative work between GIS and Revenue unit has resulted in the billing having accurate data which reduced the amount of dispute from members of the community. However, the process of updating and correcting the data on both the Billing and GIS system is continuous.
- The SBU is currently engaging with other relevant departments streamline the flow of spatial data in the municipality.
- The municipality has successfully renewed the enterprise license agreement (ELA) with ESRI South Africa for a period of three years. This will enable the municipality to improve in its service delivery as mandated by municipal structures act.
- The SBU has successfully resolved all the boundary dispute that were lodged with the municipality during the period under review.
- The SBU has successfully managed to reduce audit queries that were directed to the revenue SBU through the integration of the GIS and Billing Systems.
- Continuous Mapping of all municipal strategic capital projects as reflected in the IDP.
- The SBU Corporate Geo-Informatics provided training to all municipal officials working on the use of online GIS system.

2.34 Role of GIS in the City of Polokwane

The City of Polokwane has been using GIS technology for over **a decade**, and this technology has proven to be a catalytic tool when it comes to decision making relating to land development and other related activities. Therefore, various SBU's either directly or indirectly make use GIS in carrying out their functions. But even though the tool has been in the City of Polokwane for many years, the system has not been fully utilised.

With the Introduction of **Integrated GIS System**, this means that the use of spatial data ought to be placed right in the hands of the people who are taking decisions on land development matters. The consolidation of various systems into GIS platform is one way of allowing for automatic updating of information that can be seen by everyone at the same time and this will eliminate the duplication of work by different SBUs and will ultimately lead to efficient productivity and save municipal resources. This merely shows that the Corporate Geo-informatics SBU has a major role to play in realising the municipality's **Smart City 2030** vision.

2.35 Economic Development and Tourism

2.35.1 Introduction

The SBU has four (4) sections: i.e.

- 1) Investment Promotion and Tourism
- 2) Enterprise Development.
- 3) Business Compliance and Regulation.
- 4) Economic Research and Development.

2.35.2 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy

The City of Polokwane 2020-2024 Local Economic Development (LED) strategy. The strategy advocates for the strengthening of the multi-sectoral response against the rising levels of unemployment, inequality and poverty facing PLM. The strategy was launched at a time when the local economy is facing one of its worst crises in history. The pace at which the economy is growing is not sufficient enough to take care of the mounting socio-economic needs of the local population.

The strategy provides a “package of game changing solutions” to some of the socio-economic challenges. In partnership with other stakeholders Provincially and Nationally, Economic Development and Tourism Unit leads efforts in ushering the local economy on the path of a turnaround. With the unwavering support of all social partners (labour, private sector and all spheres of government), the idea to create an inclusive local economy with a high job absorption capacity (as cherished in the National Development Plan (NDP, the Limpopo Development Plan (LDP) and the Integrated Development Plan (IDP)) is still feasible.

_This strategy gives effect to objective No 3 of section 152 of the constitution. Objective No 3 underscores the need for PLM to design and implement impactful strategies that improve the socio-economic conditions of local communities. Due to changes in the local economy over the past 10 years because of shifting global, national and provincial contexts, PLM took a decision to review its 2008 LED strategy in order to realign it with its **2030 Economic Growth and Development Plan (EGDP)**._The triple crisis of poverty, unemployment and inequality remain the Municipality’s unresolved developmental challenges. This strategy outlines some of the measures PLM intends to implement in the next five years (2020/2024) to address some of these developmental concerns.

2.35.3 Highlights of the Local Economic Development Strategy:

1. VISION 2024

“Towards a job absorbing economy”

2. GOALS

- i. Reduction of unemployment rate
- ii. Report a steady GVA growth rate
- iii. Improve ease-of-doing business
- iv. Promote economic inclusion and social cohesion
- v. Enhance development coordination capabilities

3. STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES

- i. Prioritization of high job creation investments
- ii. Unleash sectoral potential and growth
- iii. Enhance investment competitiveness
- iv. Widen access to economic opportunities and choices
- v. Strengthen multi-sectoral response

2.35.4 Local Skills Base on LED

Education is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals is required. The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. IHS uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

Within the City of Polokwane, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2012 to 2022 with an average annual rate of -5.44%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 119 043 to 176 544. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 5.91%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 0.90%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2022 [NUMBERS]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
No schooling	17 656	42 201	223 394	1 416 495	41,84%	7,90%	1,25%
Grade 0-2	6 094	10 896	57 712	414 630	55,93%	10,56%	1,47%
Grade 3-6	27 304	49 157	233 946	2 520 518	55,54%	11,67%	1,08%
Grade 7-9	72 705	122 723	577 173	5 801 506	59,24%	12,60%	1,25%
Grade 10-11	131 247	213 912	1 017 485	9 900 841	61,36%	12,90%	1,33%
Certificate / diploma without matric	6 492	9 382	31 536	140 527	69,19%	20,59%	4,62%
Matric only	176 544	251 045	970 685	13 397 731	70,32%	18,19%	1,32%
Matric & certificate / diploma	60 881	85 527	292 124	2 689 065	71,18%	20,84%	2,26%

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National Total	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
Matric & Bachelor's degree	24 581	30 935	92 080	1 760 721	79,46%	26,69%	1,40%
Matric & Postgrad degree	11 632	15 852	49 196	919 585	73,38%	23,64%	1,26%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2023

The number of people without any schooling in the City of Polokwane accounts for 41.84% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 7.90% of the province and 1.25% of the national. In 2022, the number of people in the City of Polokwane with a matric only was 176,544 which is a share of 70.32% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a postgraduate degree constitutes 73.38% of the district municipality, 23.64% of the province and 1.26% of the national.

Functional literacy

Functional literacy describes the reading and writing skills that are adequate for an individual to cope with the demands of everyday life - including the demands posed in the workplace. This is contrasted with illiteracy in the strictest sense, meaning the inability to read or write. Functional literacy enables individuals to enter the labour market and contribute towards economic growth thereby reducing poverty.

FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER – CITY OF POLOKWANE , 2012-2022 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Illiterate	Literate	%
2012	79 538	440 223	84,7%
2013	80 501	448 377	84,8%
2014	80 630	458 180	85,0%
2015	80 187	468 762	85,4%
2016	79 727	478 442	85,7%
2017	78 428	488 361	86,2%
2018	75 790	499 961	86,8%
2019	70 461	515 139	88,0%

Financial Year	Illiterate	Literate	%
2020	63 225	532 896	89,4%
2021	55 680	550 002	90,8%
2022	52 568	563 889	91,5%
Average Annual Growth			
2012-2022	-4,06%	2,51%	87,11%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2023

A total of 563 889 individuals in the City of Polokwane were considered functionally literate in 2022, while 52 568 people were considered to be illiterate. Expressed as a rate, this amounts to 91.5% of the population, which is an increase of 6.80 percentage points since 2012 (84.7%). The number of illiterate individuals decreased on average by -4.06% annually from 2012 to 2022, with the number of functional literate people increasing at 2.51% annually.

the City of Polokwane functional literacy rate of 91.5% in 2022 is higher than that of Capricorn at 89.2%, and is higher than the province rate of 87.1%. When comparing to National Total as whole, which has a functional literacy rate of 89.7%, it can be seen that the functional literacy rate is lower than that of the the City of Polokwane.

In terms of the literacy rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, the City of Polokwane had the highest literacy rate, with a total of 91.5%. The lowest literacy rate can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 82.3%.

2.36 Status Quo of Programs and Projects of Economic Development

2.36.1 Investment Promotion and Tourism

The objective of the section is to market Polokwane as a tourists and investment destination. The Municipality has a potential of high growth and development potential for the economy to grow sustainably. The strategic location of Polokwane also offers opportunities and in addition businesses that trade, transport and conduct business across the border should need a space of their own in Polokwane and this can only be achieved by promoting Polokwane and the advantages it offers.

Polokwane should be known for its advantageous business policies that incentivise development of desired uses in the municipality while offering a distinct competitive advantage when seeking access to the rest of the continent and providing great opportunities for

businesses to grow and prosper. Marketing is a tool ever increasing in necessity for any industry and sphere. It also helps shape perceptions that dictate the emotions associated with the subject being advertised.

As part of a marketing strategy to attract, retain and promote investments and tourism within the Municipality, Polokwane needs tools in order to reach out and grab the attention of potential investors and businesses by bringing them to Polokwane to stay and invest. These tools include the use of media as well as structures present in Polokwane that offer growth potential and prospects for economic development; by highlighting the vision and goals Polokwane has and the plans being made to achieve these goals, it becomes increasingly attractive, and the goals become more achievable.

2.36.2 Types of Tourism industries found in Polokwane

1. Transportation e.g., car rentals
2. Accommodation
3. Food and Beverages
4. Recreation and entertainment
5. Travel agents
6. Tour operators
7. Tourist guides
8. Event Organisers
9. Health and Wellness

A number of strategies and platforms are utilised to market the Municipality, locally, nationally and Internationally.

2.37 Strategies used to promote Polokwane Municipality

Below are the Strategies that are used to promote the Municipality i.e.

- 1) Information Centre
- 2) Stakeholder relation
- 3) Tourism development
- 4) Marketing

2.37.1 Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)

The Municipality in partnership with Limpopo Tourism Agency operates a Visitor Information Centre that was built and donated to the Municipality by the **National Department of Tourism**. The centre provides tourism and investment information to the residents of the Municipality, National and International visitors. This is done through walk ins, telephone, email and other social media platforms.

Business is encouraged to partner with the Municipality and ensure that their information is available at the centre and the Municipality also has a database of all businesses operating within the Municipality which is revised often to ensure accuracy.

Polokwane Visitor Information Centre (VIC)



2.37.2 Stakeholder relations

The Municipality has assisted the tourism industry to establish a Tourism Association which the Municipality supports through the following:

- Secretariat services for the Association
- Venue for its meetings

- Procurement of marketing platforms
- Accommodation for the Executive members when they attend trade shows outside the Municipal boundaries

The Municipality also established a Local Economic Development Forum that comprises of business representatives and other Government Departments and Parastatals within the Economic cluster. The Municipality provides support by providing the following to the Forum:

2.37.3 Tourism Development

The Municipality in partnership with other institutions provides support to the tourism industry in order to develop tourism within the Municipality. This is done through the following activities:

- Training based on the skills gaps that are identified within the sector.
- Provision of marketing opportunities such as hosting of exhibitions
- Workshops
- Networking sessions for industry to collaborate.

2.38 Marketing

The Municipality is busy exploring new channels to be used in response the global challenge.

- Trade shows
- Exhibitions
- Adverts in identified platforms
- Social media
- Investor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)
- Visitor's Guide (Hard and E-Copy)

2.39 ENTERPRISE DEVELOPMENT

Enterprise Development is one of the key focus areas within Economic Development and Tourism in Polokwane Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and is a provincial priority as stated in the provincial growth and development strategy. It is therefore essential that Polokwane Municipality support entrepreneurs not only through selected programmes but to be incorporated in the implementation of all projects geared towards providing service delivery to the communities. Services offered by Enterprise Development to all SMMEs and Cooperatives:

- SMMEs Database
- Skills Audit
- Business Profiling
- Capacity building and skills development

- Provision of access to market through flea markets and exhibitions.
- Conducting effective monitoring of projects/co-operatives /and SMME
- Provision of access to finance from other institutions
- Facilitate business to business linkages big or small

The Municipality has also provided Infra-structure in a form of facilities to promote enterprise development initiatives as described below:

2.39.1 Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre is an SMME Incubation Centre that was founded by Polokwane Municipality's Local Economic Development SBU.

Primarily, this manufacturing incubator was founded upon the need to provide development support services to SMME's involved in the strategic sectors of the local economy, especially manufacturing.

This initiative ties in with the targets of ASGISA and LDP, which among others, are employment creation and poverty alleviation.

In order to achieve this, LED SBU is conducts **Business Incubation Programme** aimed at providing intensive business counselling to SMME's that have a potential to grow into a successful business.

Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed



Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed 1



Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed 2



Fencing of Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre Completed 3

2.39.2 INCUBATION PROGRAMME AND ITS BENEFITS

Incubation programme is a three-year programme whereby SMME's will receive the following services:

- Business management advice
- Facilitation of access to finance
- Accounting/Bookkeeping systems advice
- Regular visits by Business Development Officer to ensure progress
- Trainings on specific skills needed by the SMME
- Linkages to markets
- Linkages to industry experts
- Assistance in marketing their business
- Access to key business information

ELIGIBLE CRITERIA AND ENTRY REQUIREMENTS:

To participate in this programme, SMME's need to complete and submit an application form at Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre 's office. The applicant must also meet the following criteria:

- The business must be located within the boundaries of Polokwane Municipality
- The business must be a manufacturing enterprise.
- The owner must be prepared to sign a three (3) year lease agreement with Polokwane Municipality and should also demonstrate intent to abide by all rules.
- The business must have been trading for at least 1 year or more.

- Business owners must be South African citizens
- Women and Disabled will be given first preference.
- Owners must submit proof of residence.

ITSOSENG ENTREPRENEURIAL CENTRE

Itsoseng Entrepreneurial Centre provide incubation program for SMMEs for a period of 3 years. Developmental support services to SMMEs is offered in different sectors of the economy with focus on manufacturing sector of the local economy. Our services include the following:

- Provision of subsidized rental services to SMME and Co-operatives
- Facilitation of access to market/market linkages.
- Facilitation of capacity building with other stakeholders
- Facilitations of access to finance to SMME and Co-op.
- Provision of other non-financial support services to SMME and co-op

The sectors that the center was designed to incubate 41 SMMEs who are doing mainly the following:

- Art & Crafts - Includes bead work, paintings, crafted products etc.
- Steelwork Includes welding, aluminum products, steel pipes, others steel products such as readily made shacks, toilets etc.
- Woodwork – Includes furniture, or any other wood products.
- Upholstery – includes furniture, car seats, leather work etc.
- Textile – include bags, shoes.
- Clothing – includes all types of clothes such as traditional, wedding, uniforms, evening wear and casual wear.

The center is established to provide SMME with incubation programme which offers services such as access to market, commercial and technical training, monitoring and evaluation, subsidized cubicles and other related enterprise developmental programmes. The facility has thus by far been very instrumental in promoting the plight of SMME and continues to play a critical role in advancing SMME development support.

2.39.3 BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRES

The municipality has constructed stalls in some clusters in an attempt to offer support to emerging entrepreneurs. This forms part of the municipality initiative to provide business Centre development support programme. The following is the list:

- i. **Mankweng University gate 1 Center**

The facility is located closed to University of Limpopo gates Offering various products to the student community and the general public around Mankweng The center has 86 Entrepreneurs provided with subsidies infrastructure by municipality. The main activity of SMMEs in the center is trading / selling of products and services such as fruit and vegetables, Pap and vleis, Fast food, shoe repair, IT, hair dressing general merchandise etc.

ii. Mankweng hospital gate Center

The facility is able to accommodate at least 58 SMME offering different types of ranging from food, veggies, etc.

iii. Limpopo cooks Center.

The municipality has allocated 24 units to SMME involved in cooking targeting taxi commuters and many other customers in town. Entrepreneurs undergo developmental training which focuses on aspect of health and safety and other commercial training to improve on their business.

iv. Knobel business center

The municipality has constructed 12 stalls to enterprises offering variety of services including among others, cooked food, fruit and vegetables, shoe repair etc. The facility assists patients who visits the hospital and also community members in an around the area.

V. Aganang business center

The facility is located at Aganang cluster office and has become instrumental in servicing the communities in the area. The municipality has allocated 12 stalls to SMME who sells food, maize, shoe repair etc.

2.39.4 Business Compliance and Regulation

Informal trade economy plays a large and vital role in the overall economy of Polokwane, Limpopo and South Africa as a whole as it forms the very livelihood for thousands of people. Informal Trade consists of economic activity outside the influence and control of institutions. The livelihoods of many people across the country are dependent on the informal economy, especially in rural areas and therefore it is vital to support and sustain this sector of the economy as well.

The objective of the section is to demarcate special areas for informal trade to take place, to regularize the informal economy and to have more efficient transformation from informal to formal economy.

Strategic Interventions The value of the informal trade sector should not be underestimated and/or discredited but should rather be harnessed and employed to stimulate growth in the economy of Polokwane. However, negative perceptions towards informal traders often exist in Polokwane as this sector is regarded as caused excess pollution and chaos in the inner

city. This notion is premised on the fact that no proper structures and trading spaces exist for entrepreneurs, and they therefore occupy any available area.

By implementing viable and manageable interventions for the informal trade economy, the benefits of this economic activity can be felt, and sustainable economic growth and development be supported. The management of these interventions and processes becomes an institutional function supported by the infrastructure developed to assist and cater for the needs of both the informal traders and the Municipality. The economic activities generated by informal trade can be improved by regulation of informal trade without going as far as formalizing the sector. The reason being that formalizing the sector can make advantages offered be lost and the efforts fruitless. Rather opportunity should be created that assist and support the informal trade economy and, in the process, create a better image of Polokwane.

Interventions are implemented for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.

The following interventions are implemented for the development of informal trade in Polokwane.

1. Management of Street Trading Permits:

Permits are issued for different categories/ sectors within the Municipality, and they are renewed monthly. There are **1450 permits issued** across different areas within the Municipality - City cluster, Seshego cluster, Mankweng cluster, Aganang cluster.

We have currently opened for applications for street trading permits in this 2022/23 financial year. The invitation was issued on the 07th of July 2022 to 15th August 2022 We anticipate issuing over 500 permits to complying traders under the following categories:

- 1) Fruits and Vegetables
- 2) Meat and Porridge
- 3) Bunny Chow
- 4) Accessories
- 5) Shoe repair
- 6) Home utensils
- 7) Photography

2. Developmental Support:

The street traders that have permits are offered developmental support through trainings and workshops. The Municipality conducts workshops and trainings to empower street traders to

run successful business and comply with Municipal by-laws and policies. There are some workshops conducted in partnership with parastatals, and private sector.

1. Trading Opportunities:

The communities are given trading opportunities during events hosted in Municipal Infrastructures such as stadium. The events such as soccer matches, festivals and church gatherings. These events offer economic spin-offs through trading.

2. Trading Stalls constructed by the Municipality:

- (i) Bok Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates 25 traders.
- (ii) Church Street Traders Stalls next to the Taxi Rank – accommodates 19 traders.

3. Future Plans:

(1) Infrastructure Development through NDPG Project

The Municipality through NDPG programs for infrastructure development, has got plans for construction of informal trading stalls. The infrastructure development will assist informal traders within Seshego cluster to improve business operating conditions, which will in turn improve the quality of life and also contributing to the cleanliness of the Municipality.

(2) Implementation of the Limpopo Business Registration Act (LIBRA), 05 of 2003

The Act provides for law regarding the registration and carrying on of businesses in the Province, establishment of the Limpopo Directorate of Business Registration and Business Registration Centres.

The implementation of LIBRA will provide full control of the functions within the Municipal environment. The Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism will provide training related to the LIBRA functions at a Municipal level. Through the performance of the function, the Municipality will retain all the revenue generated

2.39.5 Economic Research and Development:

The economic analysis as per the Performance of the Local Economy and the Investment Trends is Compiled each financial year. The 2023/24 Economic Analysis was compiled to guide the City in planning Process.

2.40 Building Inspection

Building Inspection is the statutory function assigned to local authorities in terms of the constitution. The National Building Regulation and Building Standards Act (103 of 1977) also assigns duties to local authorities, the most important of which are the approval of building plan application, enforcement of the regulation and the issuing of certificates of occupancy. Building activities controlled and regulated by Council's Building Inspections sub-unit include:

- Erection of new buildings
- Alteration/extension/conversion of existing buildings
- Change of use of existing buildings
- Demolition of existing buildings/structures
-

2.40.1 LEGISLATION AND POLICY PERSPECTIVE

The following legislative requirements are used by the SBU on a daily basis in the application and enforcement of the Act on National Building Regulations and Building Standards (Act 103 of 1977) as well as in the evaluation and approval of building plans, hoarding, demolition and other applications in terms of the following:

- The National Building Regulations Act (Act 103 of 1977)
- Act on architects (Act 35 of 1970)
- The Polokwane Seshego Perskebult Town Planning Scheme

2.40.2 Services provided by Council's Building Inspections

Services provided by Council's building Inspections include the following:

- Building plan approval
- Minor works permit approval (for work such as swimming pools, small 'Wendy' houses etc.)
- Extension of the validity of an approved building plan
- Temporary structures permits
- Hoarding permits
- Demolitions permits
- Copies of approved building plans

In additions, other responsibilities are:

- Building Inspection during the construction period
- Issuing of Occupation Certificates

- General enforcement of building Regulations
- Investigation and resolving building complaints, contraventions and illegal building work
- Maintaining statistics on building construction activities

2.40.3 Building Inspection Key challenges and Interventions

The challenging factor within the SBU is deeply on the **records management** of the Building plans approved hence, the Municipal records management SBU does not have control over the building Plans that are approved. Several cases were observed where the majority of the Building Plans were found to be missing. A proper plan should be considered to locate the building plan within the records management.

Key challenges:

- Record management of the Building Plans.
- Electronic Filing and submission of the Building Plans.
- Staffing for key positions such as plan examiner and Building inspectors.
- Incompetency for the Building inspectors due to limited training on the following:
 - ✓ Sewerage inspection.
 - ✓ Structural and Concrete engineering.
 - ✓ Plumbing (including trading).

Required intervention:

- Records management to deal with the recoding of building plans.
- Purchase of the relevant equipment's for the electronic filing.
- Re-structuring of the Building inspection and creation of the Building inspection SBU
- Filling of the vacancies.

2.40.4 Report on the Major Developments Building Plans

STAND NUMBER	TOWNSHIP	DESCRIPTION	AREA	PROGRESS
1051LS	Mankweng	University of Limpopo Earth Science Building and Library addition	8454.27m ²	SDP approved. Building Plans in progress.
1051LS	Mankweng	University of Limpopo Student Accommodation	5034m ²	SDP approved. Building Plans in progress
43242	Polokwane Extension 138	New Psychiatric Hospital	8703m ²	Building plans approved. Awaiting

STAND NUMBER	TOWNSHIP	DESCRIPTION	AREA	PROGRESS
				commencement of construction.
6861/RE	Pietersburg Extension 30	New Limpopo Academic Hospital	87333m ²	Construction in progress.
40220	Polokwane Extension 124	New BMW Motor Dealership	4253m ²	Occupation Issued. Dealership in operation
1050LS	Sebjeng Ga-Molepo	Molepo Mall	12500m ²	SDP approved, pending building plan application submission

Source: PLK Building Inspection SBU

STATUS Quo

CHAPTER Three: Housing and Human Settlements Analysis

3.1 Housing Implementation Protocol Signing

In a historic moment for the province of Limpopo, Polokwane Municipality has become the first municipality to be granted the authority to oversee housing and human settlement initiatives independently.

The monumental agreement was formalized through the **signing of the Level 2 Housing Implementation Accreditation Protocol**, a significant milestone that marks a new era in housing administration for the region.

The pivotal accord was signed by the Head of Department (HoD) of the Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) in Limpopo, **Dr. Modjadji Malahlela**, and the Municipal Manager of Polokwane, **Ms. Thuso Nemugumoni**.

The ceremony was graced by the presence of MEC for COGHSTA, **Honourable Basikopo Makamu**, and Polokwane Executive Mayor, **Cllr Makoro John Mpe**.



Housing Implementation Protocol Signing

Source: Polokwane Municipality Communication Publication

3.1 HUMAN SETTLEMENT STATUS QUO ANALYSIS

The development and adoption of a Human Settlement Plan, as part of a Municipal Integrated Development Plan is directed by section 9 of the Housing Act (Act 107 of 1997); to give rise to the Constitution and universal obligation that everyone has a right to a decent accommodation.

Whereas section 153 of the Constitution (Act 108 of 1996) compels municipalities to structure and manage themselves (administration, planning, budgeting) so as to ensure effective response to the basic and developmental needs of communities, the City finds itself in an unprecedented position. Difficult conditions of the world have negatively impacted on the already struggling economic landscape of the country. Population growth, unemployment and constrained fiscal resources creates this complex matrix where the pace of human settlement and housing delivery seems slow in relation of the need.

In addition, the circular migration and steady urbanisation rates of the City in relation of limited resources for infrastructure and housing delivery has led to some housing conditions not envisaged in the Constitutions. New urban lodgers are finding themselves in backyard and overcrowded housing conditions.

3.2 HUMAN SETTLEMENT PLAN

The Human Settlement Plan is the anchor of human settlements and housing provision across the City. Over the past years, in line with the IDP, the City developed and annually reviewed the five-year Human Settlement Plan, which presents human settlement and housing realities of the City, and identifies strategies for addressing prevalent housing policy gaps.

The HSP has coordinated a variety of programmes that delivered different housing opportunities to different income groups.

- Over the past three financial year (2021/2022, 2022/2023, and 2023/2024) more than 3 256 housing opportunities were provided;
- In addition, the existing housing conditions of approximately 1 500 families in Seshego were improved through the asbestos removal project; and
- **Informal settlement upgrading:** the remaining two informal settlements were upgraded through relocation to formal Townships. Approximately 711 households of Seshego F (Freedom Park) and Polokwane Ext 106 were allocated stands at Polokwane Ext 126 and 127. In the financial year 2023/2024, a total of 256 top structure were built.
- **Military Veterans** – the Council also donated 50 residential sites at Polokwane Ext 78.

3.2.1 HOUSING DEMAND

In 2004, the City developed a municipal housing demand database which was upgraded in 2008/2009 and in 2011/12 financial years. Currently the Municipality is migrating its housing

data to the new **National Housing Needs Register (NHNR)**. With the migration still in process and new registration, the need for housing assistance is counting at 53 275 which is an increase of approximately 3 743, about 0.075% increase (Source: NHNR). An overwhelming majority of families have a monthly income of less than R3 500.

Social/affordable rental housing need is managed by the municipal entity (Polokwane Housing Association) and at present there is no current market study conducted. The municipality requested SHRA to appoint a service provider to do a social/rental housing market survey.

In creating a conducive environment for the development of Social Housing/affordable rental accommodation, the municipality-designated **Restructuring Zones** which were promulgated by the Minister of Human Settlement. The Zones are:

- Polokwane Extensions
- Annadale
- Bendor
- CBD and Surroundings

In 2018, the Municipality signed a land availability agreement with PHA as a Social Housing Institution (SHI), where several pieces of land which fall within the restructuring zones were made available to the SHI for development. The pieces of land are as follows:

- Erf 513, 514 and 515 (consolidated into Erf 525) Annadale Ext 2
- Erf 15953 and 15954 Ext 76 consolidated into 40206)
- Erf 23145 Ext 108
- Erf 20802 -20815, 20817 – 20821 Ext 106

Polokwane Housing Association is currently managing 697 rental units of which 508 are social housing and 189 are Community Residential Units (CRU).

Housing supply is relatively low in relation to the demand. This is due to diverse housing backlog (i.e. tenure backlog, land development, infrastructure investment, top structure). In the previous financial year (2023/2024) the City received a total of 641 units under the rural housing programme. A further 494 social housing units were developed in the 2019/2020 financial year, stalled by the national lockdown, completed in November 2022 is yet to be tenanted.

In the rural areas of the City, the backlog is estimated that between 3 000 and 5 000 units.

The low income property market is still locked. Tenure security backlog on formalised public Townships (old and new) is around 3 038 units.

A further estimate of ±100 families in the Seshego area (Seshego E) that requires housing intervention through the consolidation housing programme.

Informal settlement upgrading programme is progressing. The programme is in Phase 3 (top structure). To-date 256 top structures were built in the financial year 2023/2024 for households at Ext 127.

The Mankweng F informal settlements is within the PSHDA: R71 Corridor. It is within a formalised Township of Mankweng F (on an Educational Erf). It has about 50 households who were relocated from a flood line (between Mankweng E and F Townships) in 2008. However, the relocated families have since built brick structure. There are domestic water connections and pit latrines.

Asbestos removal programme is the National and Provincial Department 's plan to eradicate asbestos roofs in the country. The asbestos materials have been banned in south Africa since 2008. There are many asbestos-containing materials that are still in use today. Exposure to asbestos/ asbestos fiber can lead to many health complications which at the most are fatal and affect the respiratory organ, being the lung.

Department of Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (CoGHSTA) appointed Housing Development Agency (HDA) as an Implementing Agent to manage the 1st phase of the Implementation of the 1500 Asbestos Roofing replacement project within Seshego Townships, and the balance of the units are to be implemented on the next two phase to follow

Most of the damaged house are in wards 12, 13, 17 and 37. Below is the number of beneficiaries in the four wards:

- 1) Ward 12 - 227
- 2) Ward 13 - 788
- 3) Ward 17 - 540
- 4) Ward 37 - 700

Total 2255

3.3. HOUSING CHALLENGES

The City's housing environment is made up of urban and rural settlements. Despite all efforts, a variety of institutional and environmental challenges continue to exist, namely:

- **Growing housing demand in relation to supply:** due to a variety of factors including new family formation, unemployment, limited financial resources to deliver at scale;
- **Unemployment:** which means households are unable to invest in their own housing needs;
- **Unplanned/unsustainable human settlements on the urban edge:** a number of communities are dysfunctional in a sense that such communities are located in areas without basic services, far from economic activities, social amenities;
- **Well-located land is expensive:** publicly owned strategically located land is relatively low. Acquiring privately owned land is overwhelming and expensive. On the other hand, planning requirements and geotechnical challenges limits delivery at scale;
- **Human Settlements Development Grants (to municipalities) constraints:** fluctuating HSDG (allocation) to municipality does not allow a steady delivery peak;
- **Unsustainable social housing entity (PHA):** The Municipal social housing entity is continuously struggling to stabilize. The huge debt of rentals owed to the entity makes it difficult for the entity to thrive;
- **Insufficient human capital:** which is influenced by a number of factors including; increasing population, the increased Municipal jurisdiction, and the process of transferring housing functions (Municipal housing accreditation) to the Municipality. A number of activities/projects that emerged have evidenced that the City is lacking in terms of human resources to manage and coordinate human settlements and housing delivery;
- **Institutional capacity building:** the evolution of national housing policy as well as the accreditation of the City demands enhancement of existing skills and knowledge, as new functions and systems of operation are adopted by the City;
- **Unoccupied houses due to untraceable beneficiaries:** unoccupied houses appear to be a perpetual challenge facing the City. It undermines all the financial efforts of the State in promoting the Constitutional rights of the people;
- **Planning alignment:** there is a need for improved planning and alignment of delivery plans and prioritization of projects between the City and provincial housing sector Department;
- **Unsigned implementation protocol:** which is necessary to expedite and put to motion the housing accreditation of the City and therefore fast-track housing service delivery;
- **Urban planning and approval processes are slow and frustrating:** prescribed urban planning and approval processes are overwhelming;
- **Insufficient bulk infrastructure:** The City is growing at a rate faster than that of infrastructure investment. As such some infrastructure is constrained (sewer plants, water storage, electrical transmission);

- **Lack of proper roads and storm water drainage infrastructure in newly established Townships:** it has now become a norm that newly established townships do not have surfaced roads and storm water drainage system and this leads to flooding some areas during heavy seasons;
- **Limited affordable housing stock:** there is a severe shortage of affordable housing stock for middle-income groups.

3.3.1 PRIORITY HUMAN SETTLEMENT AND HOUSING DEVELOPMENT AREAS (PHSHDA)

It is true that the City inherited some dysfunctional spatial pattern and continues to see some depressed human settlements in an around the urban edges of the City. The rapid urbanisation, unemployment, population growth, slow infrastructure investment has forced people to live in unplanned areas without basic infrastructure and social amenities.

To deal with this challenge, following the National spatial transformation and consolidation framework, the City has identified and demarcated locations as Priority Human Settlements and Housing Development Areas (PHSHDAs). This is a national spatial transformation approach to building new, integrated, functional, and inclusive settlements.

The programme intends to support Municipalities to prioritize housing development applications in terms of SPLUMA thus directing housing finance to areas that promote an inclusive residential market instead of further segregating people by income, race, and gender.

This should enable the City to consolidate and access funding to deal, in an integrated manner with the Human Settlement needs of such identified communities, the identified PHDAs of the City include

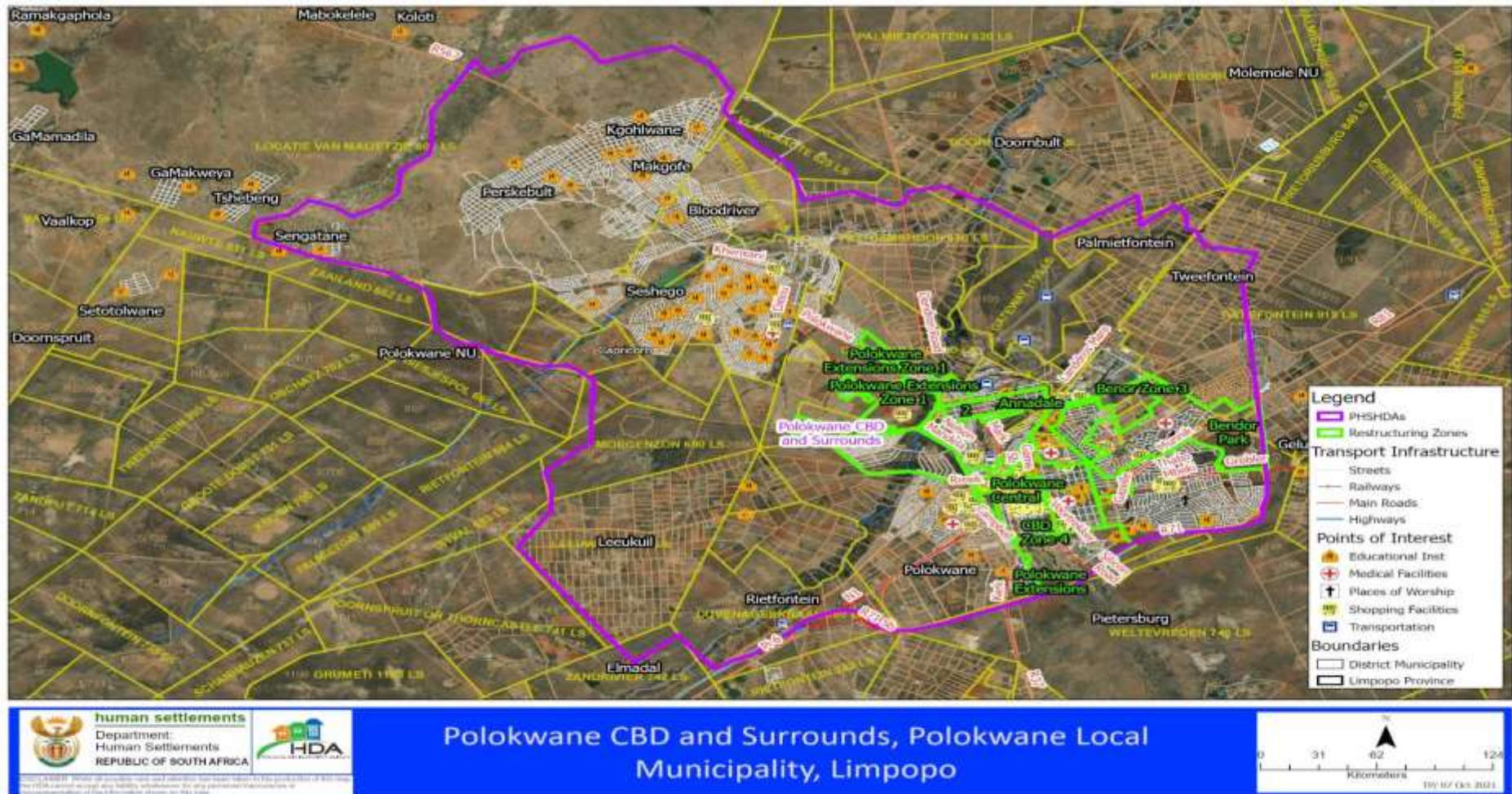
- **Polokwane CBD and surrounding** – extending from the South-western gateway of Polokwane covering Polokwane Extensions,
- **Polokwane R71 corridor** extending from the eastern Polokwane along the R71, covering Dalmada AH, Mamahule, Nobody, running through to Boyne,

These Priority Human Settlements and Housing Development Areas are experiencing fast growth and somewhat unplanned development. Transforming these regions is crucial in the overall objective of creating integrated and sustainable human settlements. The Housing Development Agency (HDA) facilitated the development plans for the two PHSHDAs.

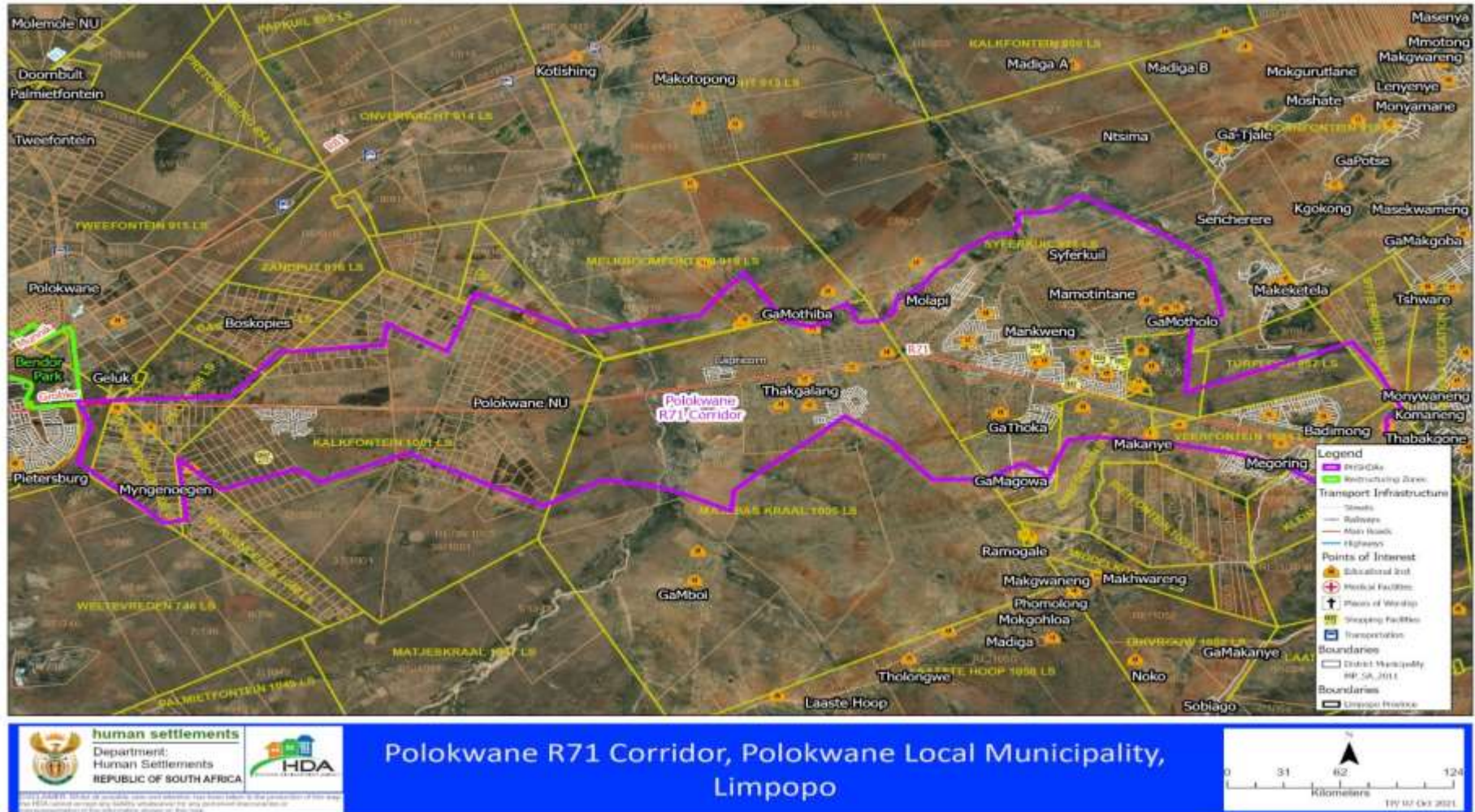
3.3.2 Figure A: Polokwane CBD and Surrounding

STATUS QUO

Figure A: Polokwane CBD and Surrounding



3.3.3 Figure B: Polokwane R71 Corridor



3.4 Opportunities to Mitigate Challenges

The Municipality encourages the Brownfield development and discourages Greenfield developments. This initiative of brownfield development encourages densifying the existing land available for various use. Through spatial planning policies analyses, the development of the land will help alleviate the increase demand for housing, including the gap market and student accommodation around the City.

3.4.1 Medium term long opportunities for housing delivery

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 72	Sites reserved for middle and high income earners First Home Finance and Subsidy Assistance (FHFSAs) and open market)	800 (Res 1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Township proclaimed •Services installed (Water and Sanitation).
Polokwane Ext 78	IRDP (low, medium to high density) (FHFSAs) and open market)	1 137 (Res 1) 5 X Res 2 7 X Res 3 2 X Bus 3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township proclaimed, • Services installed (Water, sewer, electricity) <p>Only sites earmarked for middle to high income are yet to be sold.</p>
Polokwane Ext 79	IRDP (middle and high income earners) (FHFSAs) and open market)	500 (Res 1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township proclaimed • Services installed.
Ext 133	Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)	2 969 (Res 1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township proclaimed • Site allocated • Services installed (Water and Sanitation, electricity infrastructure is currently being installed) <p>Construction of low income houses is in phases</p>

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Polokwane Ext 126	ISUP	497 (Res 1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township proclaimed • Services installed (Water and Sanitation). • Site allocated <p>Construction of low income houses is in phases</p>
Polokwane Ext 127	ISUP	497	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township proclaimed • Services installed (Water and Sanitation). • Site allocated <p>Construction of low income houses is in phases</p>
Polokwane Ext 76 (Erf 40206)	Social housing	240 units	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township completed • Bulk services (water, sanitation, electricity) <p>The regulator (SHRA) raised and issue with the appointment of service provider. The project will be advertised</p>
Annadale Ext 2	Social Housing	494	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township complete • Services installed (water, sanitation, electricity) • Practical completion done • Client is processing application for occupation certificate
Polokwane Ext 108 and 106	Social housing (medium to high density)	19 x Res 3 Ext 106 1 x Bus 3 in Ext 108 (Erf 23145)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township complete • Bulk services installed (water, sanitation, electricity) <p>PHA to plan on the land parcels</p>
Ext 134	Integrated Residential Development Programme IRDP	1 399 low 1 163 Middle to high income sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Township complete • Bulk services installed (water, sanitation) • 400 low cost units are built <p>Only sites earmarked for middle to high income are yet to be sold.</p>

PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	PROGRAMMES	TARGET	STATUS
Kingdom park	IRDP	± 7000	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Township approved by MPT
Pietersburg 40 (Phase 3)	IRDP	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Township established. Municipality intends to subdivide the sites.

Source: Polokwane Municipality: Human Settlement SBU

3.4.2 Long term opportunities for housing delivery

Property Description	Extent	Ownership	Proclamation Status	Proposed Development
Ptn 75 of Ivydale Agricultural Holdings	4.96112 Ha	Municipality	Farm	Mixed Housing Development
179 Sterkloop LS	83 ha	Municipal	Farm	Mixed Housing Development
Pilgrimshoop 1,2,3,5	92.6 ha	Municipality	Farm	Mixed housing development

Source: Polokwane Municipality: Human Settlement SBU

3.5. TENURE UPGRADING

Secure tenure is a central part of the housing development process. The municipality in collaboration with CoGHSTA is running a programme of Township upgrading, Title Deed restoration and registration. Incomplete Township in the areas of Seshego and Mankweng are currently finalised and proclaimed. Through the Title Deed restoration programme, focus is placed on the following long Townships which are long overdue:

- Westernburg
- Annandale
- Nirvana
- Seshego
- Mankweng and
- Sebayeng.

3.6 Title Deeds Backlog

TOWNSHIP NAME	SUBSIDIZED UNITS	TRANSFERRED	OUTSTANDING	CURRENT ALLOCATION
WESTENBURG (RDP)	968	959	9	0
EXT 44	1501	1479	20	0

EXT 40	393	393	0	0
EXT.40 NEW PROJECT	116	116	0	0
EXT.40 NEW PROJECT	29	0	0	29
EXT 71	1109	1098	11	0
EXT 73	569	565	4	0
EXT 75	492	491	1	0
EXT 76	1327	1325	2	0
ZONE AX1	738	594	144	0
ZONE 5	862	617	244	01
ZONE H	21	0	21	0
ZONE 6A -8148	257	141	116	116
ZONE 6B -8147	49	20	29	29
ZONE 6 (MOHLAKANENG)	133	95	41	41
ZONE B (LEPAKENG)	120	0	0	120
ZONE A EXT (MPHONEGELE)	12	0	12	0
ZONE C (MOKABAPARK)	74	23	51	26
ZONE C (MOLEPOPARK)	31	8	23	13
ZONE C (SAMUEL THEMA)	101	0	101	0
LITHULI 9A	517	512	5	0
LITHULI 9F	240	228	12	0
LITHULI 9G	320	302	18	18
LITHULI 9H	212	201	11	0
LITHULI 9L	1064	1006	58	
SEBAYENG B	500	453	47	0
MANKWENG UNIT G	377	0	377	0
MANKWENG E	94	9	85	0
MANKWENG F EXT 2	297	0	297	0
MANKWENG G EXT 1	503	0	503	0
MANKWENG C	1	0	1	0
EXT 106	130	130	0	0
EXT. 78	1625	1530	95	0
ZONE D (BIKOPARK) 1397/01-33	26	0	26	0
1400-1788	152	0	152	0
SESHOGO A X2 HOSPITAL VIEW	477	0	477	0
ANNADALE	18	18	0	0

EXT 133	1018	1018	0	0
EXT.133	130	5	125	0
WESTENBURG (EEDBS)	263	197	66	10
EXT. 127	257	0	257	0
EXT.134	413	413	0	0

3.7 Polokwane is accredited to perform level 2 housing functions

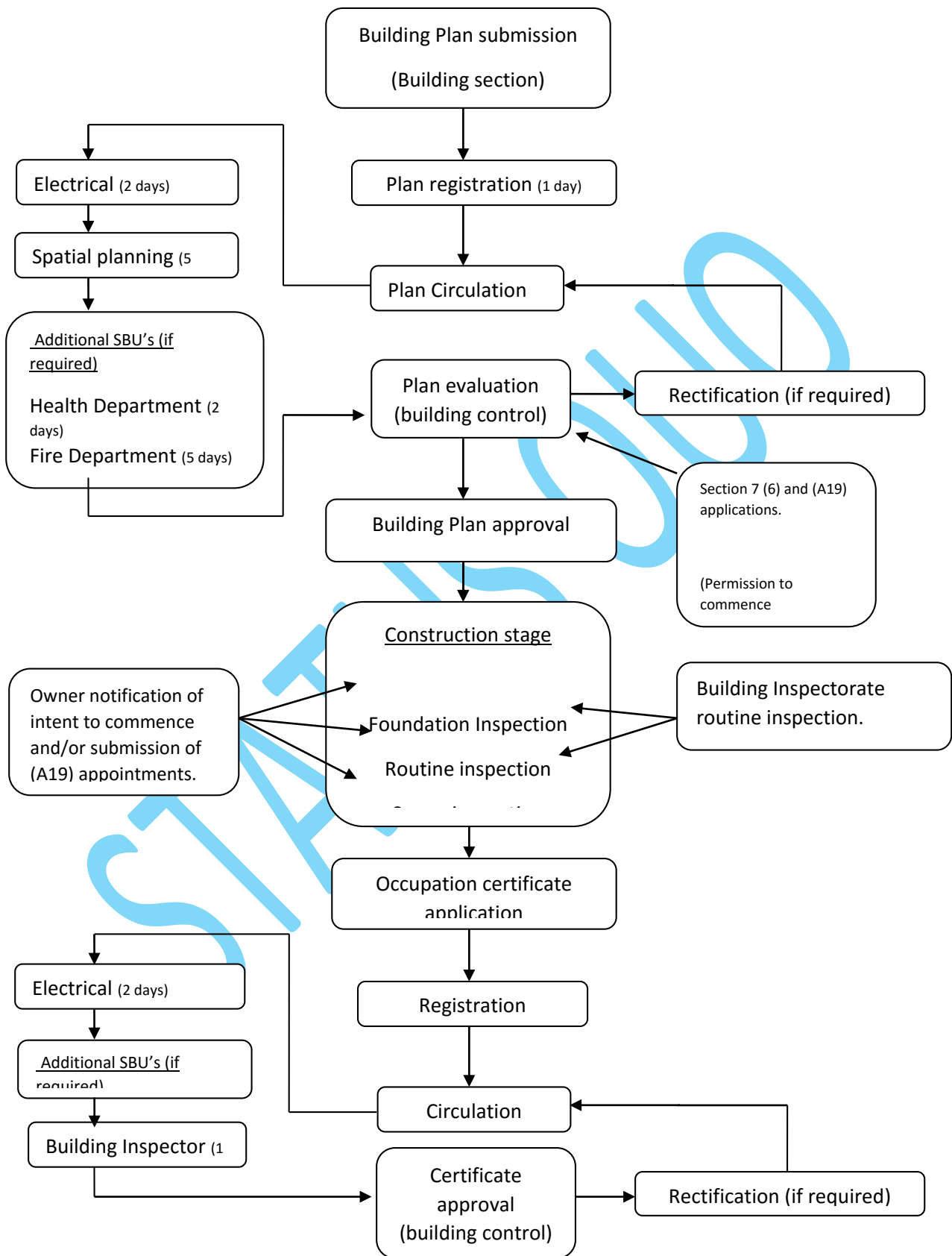
Housing Accreditation is a progressive process of building Government capacity thereby transferring housing functions from the Provincial to the Local Government sphere. The aim is to provide an opportunity for Polokwane Municipality to plan, execute and expedite housing service delivery. The process unfolds in three stages, where each stage is linked to institutional capacity of the municipality to undertake specified housing functions. Thus, municipalities should demonstrate capacity to undertake housing functions attached to the level of accreditation.

Polokwane is accredited to perform level 2 housing functions which are amongst others:

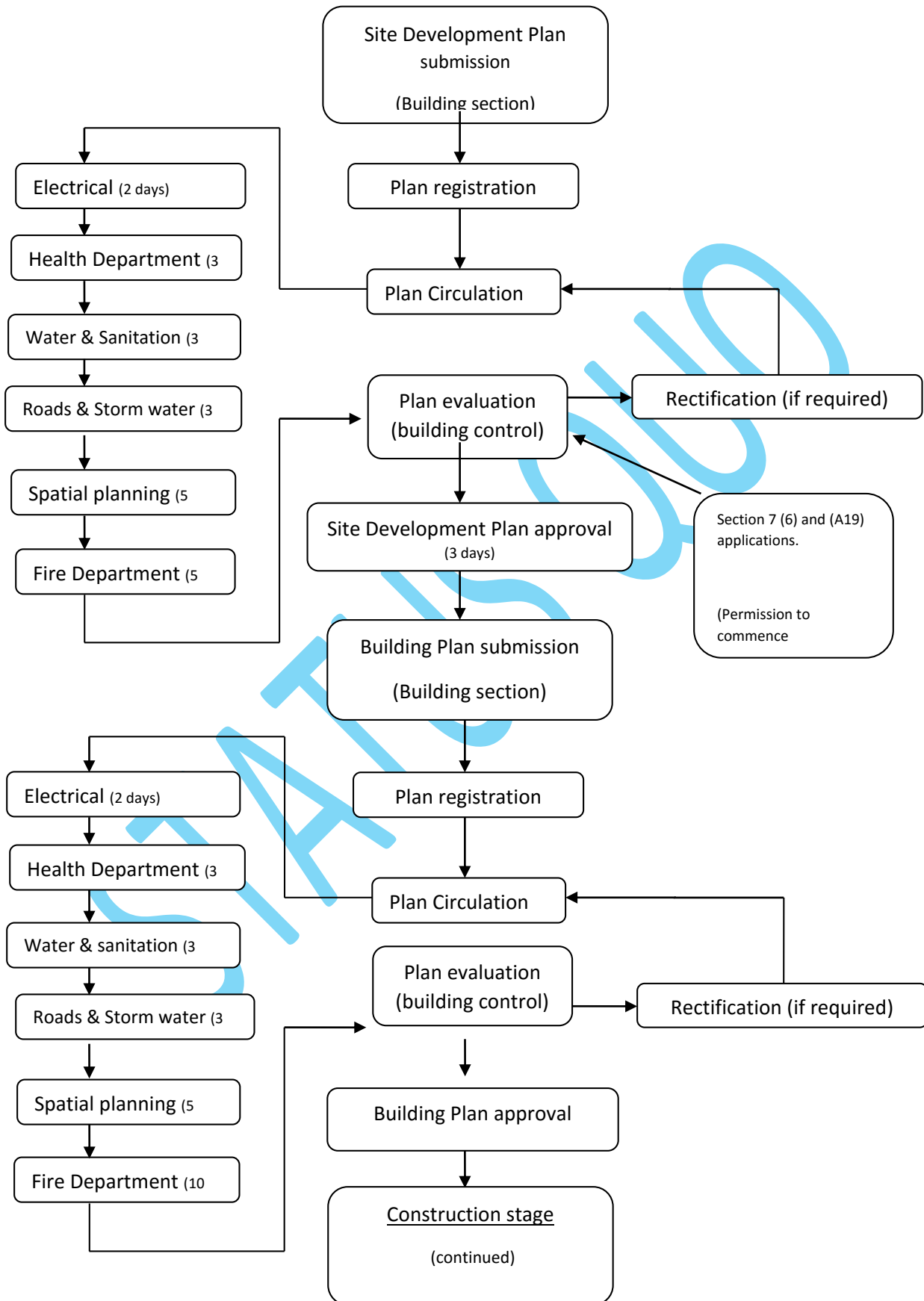
- ✓ Project evaluation and approval,
- ✓ contract administration,
- ✓ subsidy registration,
- ✓ programme management including cash flow projection and management.
- ✓ and technical (construction) quality assurance.

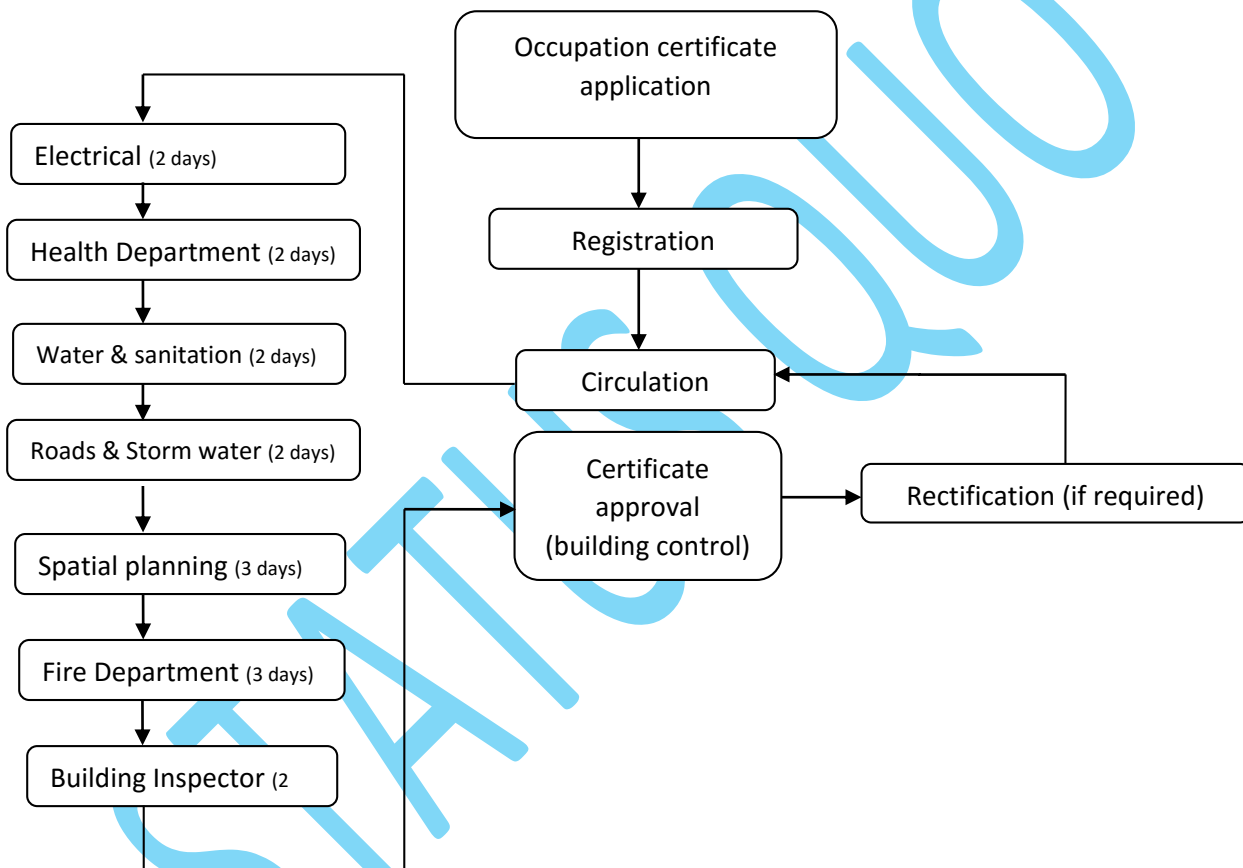
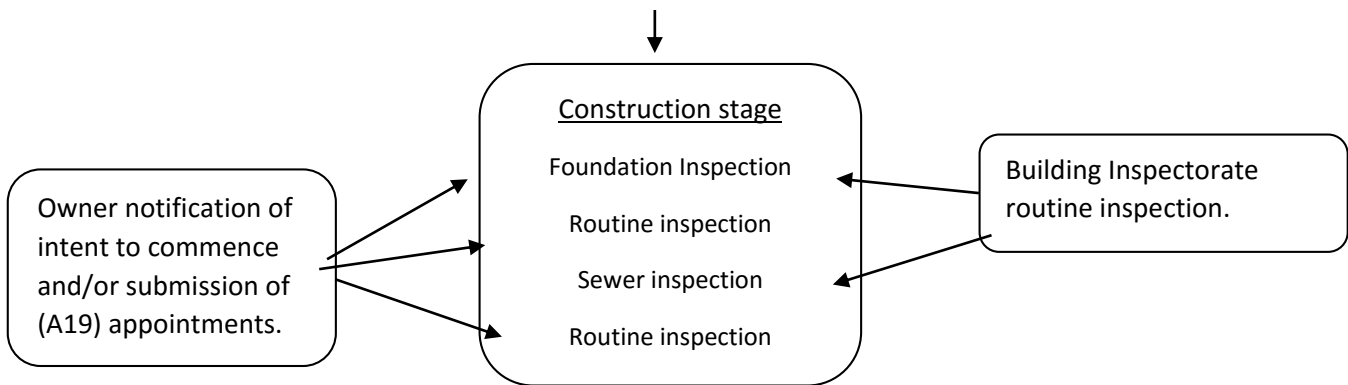
3.8 Diagram 1: Development Process of Residential (Single dwellings and additions)

Diagram 1.
Development Process Residential (single dwellings and additions)



3.9 Diagram 2: Development Process (Commercial and Cluster Developments)





3.10 Polokwane Housing Association – PHA

The City of Polokwane is a leader within the province as it has an established housing entity (*Thabatshweu Housing Company PTY LTD*) – trading as Polokwane Housing Association - PHA), but the responsibilities that come with the fully and effective functioning of the PHA need to be addressed during the next five-year period to ensure that a sound base is established for building sustainable **integrated human settlements**. The focus should be on identification of mechanisms to fast-track delivery of social housing, GAP Market Housing and Student Housing. This will also result in the Service Delivery Agreement (SDA) being reviewed to incorporate these aspects. This will improve the property portfolio of the PHA and assist towards the establishment thereof as a viable municipal entity.

Critical for the operational requirements of the PHA will be the adherence and compliance of all integrated settlement establishment (spatial plans) with the Spatial Development Framework of the City of Polokwane. The PHA must also develop mechanisms to effectively deal with the conclusion and finalisation of the Annadale EXT 02 housing project and to review and update the housing chapter which will include implementing effective maintenance programme. The development of a communication plan will assist the PHA to create awareness and obtain buy-in from the private sector with regards to planned developments. Human settlement demand database and other forms of pieces of information required need to be updated regularly and communicated to all various stakeholders as means to obtain buy-in. The PHA is also responsible for effective co-ordinated and regulated building and development within the municipal area.

PHA is currently managing **508 units** located in the City of Polokwane, **Ladanna** with an estimated **1,524** residents and **193** Community Residential Units. Seshego **CRU** with an estimated 567 residents. The projects are known as the **Ga-rena Hosing Rental Village and Seshego CRU** and both projects consist of a mixture of one-, two- and three-bedroom units and shops, Live and work units for the CRU project. Both are within a radius of 12km from the CBD and provides housing with easy access to transport and social amenities / places of interest.

3.10.1 Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna

Garena Phase 1 Rental Village in Ladanna



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.10.2 Seshego CRU

Seshego CRU

- Seshego CRU with an estimated **567** residents.
- **Project type:** Conversion of Seshego hostel into Community Residential Units.
- **Project history:** Approved 2008/2009, for occupation by existing hostel dwellers.



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.10.3 Annadale Extension 2 (Newly Completed Project)

Annadale Extension 2 consists of **494** social housing units. Practical completion was attained in November 2022 but due to water challenges the project could not be tenanted. This development is situated within the City of Polokwane at Ladanna Area.

Annadale Extension 2 is located on the Corner of Railway and Market streets and consists of Erf 513, 514, 515 and 516. Erven 514 and 515 have been consolidated to enable the project development. Construction of 494 High Density (Residential 3) Units / Flats comprising of:

No. of units	Size of the units	Description
174	31m ²	One bedroom Flats
320	40m ²	Two Bedroom Flats

Source: Polokwane Housing Association

3.10.4 Completed Annadale Extension 2 Ready for tenanting



Annadale Ext 2 Completed



Annadale Ext 2 Completed



Interior Annadale Ext 2



Interior Annadale Ext 2

Source: Polokwane Housing Association

3.10.5 Construction of an Elevated Tank at Annadale Ext 2

Construction of the water tank is currently at 75% completion and once completed tenanting of the first batch of tenants will begin in earnest end of September 2024, provided occupancy certificate is issued.



Construction of an elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2



Construction of an elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2



Construction of an elevated tank at Annadale Ext 2

Source: Polokwane Housing Association (20 August 2024)

3.11 PHA Upcoming Projects and Year of Implementation

Table A: Project Types

No	Project Types	Units	Year of Implementation
1.	Social Housing	494	2025-2026
2.	GAP Market Housing	754	2026-2027
3.	Social Housing Bendor Ext 100	198	2025-2026
4.	Zone RE Weltevreden for Student accommodation	1000	2025-2026
5.	Student beds	5116	2025/2028

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

Table B: Projects Names

No	Project Name	Units	Year of Implementation
A.	Annadale Ext 2	494	2019-2022
B.	Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing	240	2025-2026
C.	Bendor Ext 100	198	2025-2026
D.	Zone RE Weltevreden for student accommodation	1000	2024- 2026
E.	Polokwane Ext 106 Students beds	5116	2025-2028

Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.12 Designs for the Upcoming PHA key Projects

3.12.1 Phase 1-4 Student Accommodation Designs



3.12.2 Polokwane Ext 76 Social Housing Designs



Source: Polokwane Housing Association:

3.13 Land parcels earmarked for Development of New Projects

Planned Development Start date from 2025-2026, The land parcels earmarked for development are the following: i.e.

- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 106&108 to deliver 5116 student bed housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 107 to deliver 754 GAP market rental housing units. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Polokwane Ext 76 to deliver 240 high density housing. Planned construction**
- ✓ **Bendor Ext 100 to deliver 198 social housing units.**
- ✓ **Construction Total number of housing units = 6 308 housing units**

All these land parcels are situated within the development zone of Polokwane Municipality with vibrant development activities around them. Townships have been established on these land parcels and there are no bulk requirements.

3.14 Proposed Development Options

The following will be the development options that PHA will consider:

(a) Delivering housing on a development lease approach

- The developer takes the risks of developing and managing housing units over an agreed period of time. At the end of the period the facility is transferred to PHA

(b) Delivering housing as a developer

- PHA raises the funding required and provide management services like the Ga- Rena model.

(c) Acquiring CRU housing stock to provide property management services.

- PHA acquires these projects from CoGHSTA in an effort to grow its property portfolio.

(d) Providing student accommodation.

- The entity has Investigated the possibility of providing student accommodation. Each stream makes clear the following:
 - ❖ Type of development,
 - ❖ unit numbers,
 - ❖ facilities/amenities etc.
 - ❖ Status of land – town planning processes
 - ❖ Funding options and envisaged budget
 - ❖ Target market

(e) Project development agreement – i.e.,

PHA as developer vs developmental lease and all that which goes with either option.

- The **development lease** seems to be the preferred model to follow as PHA will not have any risk at all. At the end of the lease, the properties will be transferred to PHA. This approach is similar to the one the municipality has with developers on the **Motor City development**.
- The **developer approach model** will expose PHA to all kinds of risks that PHA is not ready to deal with.

PHA manages social housing stock in close cooperation with the residents through tenant committees and tenant meetings. It wants to provide **quality accommodation** in affordable ways, also working against slum conditions and promoting civic pride. PHA management product aims at being participatory and integrative of physical, social and human aspects.

a. Housing development

Polokwane Housing Association continues to identify possibilities for new housing development in the inner City, through Greenfield development, refurbishment or conversion of buildings and offices for residential uses. It wants to develop housing in response to unnecessary dislocation of people that are sometimes caused by so-called urban renewal processes.

b. Housing Information

A housing information desk provides information and advice on how to access various affordable housing options and housing subsidies, as well as information on housing policy, rights and responsibilities.

C, community Empowerment

PHA wants to support its tenant community through linkages to other social support services and empowerment programmes. It also wants to ensure that low-income housing, social and non-social housing in the inner city is on the agenda of relevant role players—local and provincial government, financial institutional, etc.—through an active advocacy programme. In conjunction with its partners, it advocates inner city residential opportunities for those previously excluded and without access. This is done through local community forums, participation in discussions on urban renewal, and so forth.

3.15 PHA Key Success over the past 5 years

- Maintain **unqualified** audit opinion for 8 years
- Maintain level 2 accreditation for 8 years
- Settling the NHFC Loan
- Successfully implementing 494 social housing units in Annadale Ext 2 which is **100%** complete

STATUS QUO

CHAPTER Four – Economic Analysis

4.1 Introduction to Statistical Overview Report

The following statistical overview report aims to quantify the economic, demographic and socio-economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in context of its neighbouring regions, the district, the province and South Africa. A better understanding of the demographic, economic and socio-economic environment could inform stakeholders to implement and monitor plans and policies that will allow for a healthy, growing and inclusive economy and society.

Understanding the changes in the composition of the population with respect to population group, age and gender is vital in the face of growing pressure on food, energy, water, jobs and social support on the country's citizens. An understanding of how the total fertility rates, age-specific fertility rates, sex ratios at birth, life expectancies and international migration affect the respective population groups, ages and genders is essential for effective planning on a spatial level. The first section of the Statistical Overview Report will aim to disentangle the changes in the Polokwane Local Municipality demographics in context of other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

The second section will provide insights into the economic environment of Polokwane Local Municipality in relation to the other local municipality in the region, the district, the province and South Africa's performance. The changing economic environment subsequently has an effect on the ability of the economy to create jobs. This section will therefore also include analysis on the employment and subsequent income dynamics of Polokwane Local Municipality.

The third component of the Statistical Overview will investigate issues pertaining to the socio-economic environment of residents in Polokwane Local Municipality. Analysis will include a review of the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini, poverty, education, population density, crime, bulk infrastructure, international trade and tourism indicators relative to that of the other locals of the region, the districts, the Province and South Africa.

4.2 DEMOGRAPHY

In this section, an overview is provided of the demography of the Polokwane Local Municipality and all its neighbouring regions, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa as a whole.

4.2.1 Total Population

Population statistics is important when analyzing an economy, as the population growth directly and indirectly impacts employment and unemployment, as well as other economic indicators such as economic growth and per capita income.

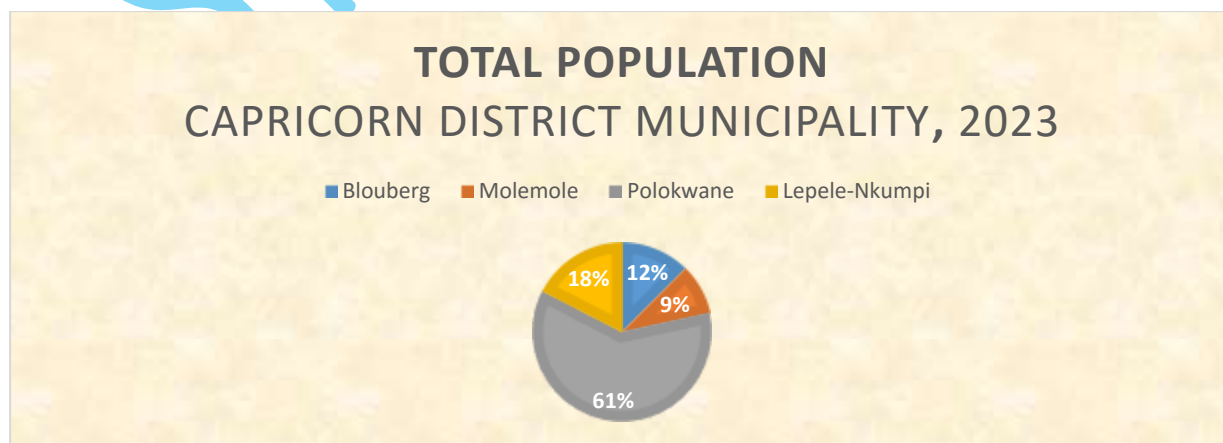
TABLE 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023[NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year					Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National			
2013	763 411	1 298 641	5 574 923	53 653 787	58,79%	13,69%	1,42%
2014	776 023	1 311 783	5 631 036	54 483 679	59,16%	13,78%	1,42%
2015	789 010	1 326 204	5 693 046	55 322 524	59,49%	13,86%	1,43%
2016	801 573	1 340 635	5 755 650	56 163 092	59,79%	13,93%	1,43%
2017	814 036	1 355 633	5 820 850	57 034 929	60,05%	13,98%	1,43%
2018	826 161	1 370 927	5 886 950	57 910 332	60,26%	14,03%	1,43%
2019	838 161	1 386 463	5 953 566	58 780 511	60,45%	14,08%	1,43%
2020	849 937	1 402 137	6 020 136	59 646 053	60,62%	14,12%	1,42%
2021	859 671	1 415 045	6 075 222	60 324 819	60,75%	14,15%	1,43%
2022	869 928	1 429 559	6 136 475	61 111 836	60,85%	14,18%	1,42%
2023	880 605	1 445 147	6 201 346	61 922 573	60,94%	14,20%	1,42%
Average Annual Growth							
2013-2023	1,44%	1,07%	1,07%	1,44%			

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

With 880 605 people, the Polokwane Local Municipality housed 1.44% of South Africa's total population in 2023. Between 2013 and 2023 the population growth averaged 1.44% per annum which is similar to the growth rate of South Africa as a whole (1.44%). Compared to Capricorn's average annual growth rate (1.07%), the growth rate in Polokwane's population at 1.44% was close to double than that of the district municipality.

CHART 1. TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

When compared to other regions, the Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for a total population of 880 605, or 60.95% of the total population in the Capricorn District Municipality, which is the most populous region in the Capricorn District Municipality for 2023. The ranking in terms of the size of Polokwane compared to the other regions remained the same between 2013 and 2023. In terms of its share the Polokwane Local Municipality was significantly larger in 2023 (60.95%) compared to what it was in 2013 (58.79%). When looking at the average annual growth rate, it is noted that Polokwane ranked highest (relative to its peers in terms of growth) with an average annual growth rate of 1.44% between 2013 and 2023.

4.2.2 Population projections

Based on the present age-gender structure and the present fertility, mortality and migration rates, Polokwane's population is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.20% from 880 605 in 2023 to 939 742 in 2028.

Population projections - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2023-2028 [NUMBERS PERCENTAGE]

Financial year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2023	880 605	1 445 147	6 201 346	61 922 573	60,94%	14,20%	1,42%
2024	894971	1459657	6265920	62845373	61,31%	14,28%	1,42%
2025	906238	1474733	6330393	63669815	61,45%	14,32%	1,42%
2026	917385	1489614	6393877	64488850	61,59%	14,35%	1,42%
2027	928551	1504427	6456953	65302927	61,72%	14,38%	1,42%
2028	939742	1519124	6519533	66111731	61,86%	14,41%	1,42%
Average Annual Growth	1,20%	0,95%	0,94%	1,24%			

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The population projection of Polokwane Local Municipality shows an estimated average annual growth rate of 1.20% between 2023 and 2028. The average annual growth rate in the population over the projection period for Capricorn District Municipality and Limpopo Province is 0.95%, 0.94% respectively is lower while South Africa is higher than the average annual growth in Polokwane Local Municipality.

4.2.3 Population by population group, Gender and Age

Total population can be categorized according to the population group, as well as the sub-categories of age and gender. The population groups include African, White, Coloured and Asian, where the Asian group includes all people originating from Asia, India and China. The age subcategory divides the population into 5-year cohorts, e.g. 0-4, 5-9, 10-13, etc.

TABLE 2. POPULATION BY GENDER - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [NUMBER].

Name of Municipality	Male	Female	Total
Polokwane	429 968	450 637	880 605
Blouberg	81 144	98 377	179 521
Molemole	61 053	71 909	132 962
Lepele-Nkumpi	115 645	136 415	252 059

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality's male/female split in population was 95.41 males per 100 females in 2023. The Polokwane Local Municipality appears to be a fairly stable population with the share of female population (51.17%) being very similar to the national average of (51.05%). In total there were 450 637 (51.17%) females and 423 877 (48.72%) males.

TABLE 3. POPULATION BY POPULATION GROUP, GENDER AND AGE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [NUMBER].

Age Group	African		White		Coloured		Asian	
	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female
00-04	40 567	39 523	1 049	981	321	329	214	238
05-09	39 601	39 623	1 165	1 105	403	432	216	141
10-14	40 432	41 174	1 419	1 350	419	330	239	162
15-19	40 157	41 337	1 241	1 161	305	292	153	153
20-24	40 177	38 999	1 068	999	315	312	170	152
25-29	43 803	39 715	1 062	1 116	394	400	173	169
30-34	47 269	40 859	1 099	1 035	351	381	245	262
35-39	36 385	34 595	1 221	1 346	278	369	317	232
40-44	23 753	25 015	1 370	1 271	260	307	329	216
45-49	14 894	16 512	1 077	1 035	172	235	315	183
50-54	10 836	13 573	975	968	163	232	226	151
55-59	9 191	14 225	963	886	162	219	187	159
60-64	6 863	13 941	863	912	65	156	133	105
65-69	5 294	11 117	619	714	78	127	71	67
70-74	3 958	8 671	508	743	32	66	53	51
75+	3 593	8 298	659	1 037	40	75	38	100
Total	406 772	427 177	16 359	16 658	3 758	4 261	3 079	2 541

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, the Polokwane Local Municipality's population consisted of 94.70% African (833 949), 3.75% White (33 017), 0.91% Coloured (8 019) and 0.64% Asian (5 619) people.

The largest share of population is within the young working age (25-44 years) age category with a total number of 305 596 or 34.70% of the total population. The age category with the second largest number of people is the babies and kids (0-14 years) age category with 251

434 a total share of 28.55%, followed by the teenagers and youth (15-24 years) age category with 166 990 people. The age category with the least number of people is the retired / old age (65 years and older) age category with only 46008 people.

4.2.4 Number of Households by Population Group

If the number of households is growing at a faster rate than that of the population it means that the average household size is decreasing, and vice versa. In 2023, the Polokwane Local Municipality comprised of 259 959 households. This equates to an average annual growth rate of 1.94% in the number of households from 2013 to 2023. With an average annual growth rate of 1.44% in the total population, the average household size in the Polokwane Local Municipality is by implication decreasing.

Number of households - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2013	214 475	349 176	1 447 282	14 926 188	61,42%	14,82%	1,44%
2014	219 534	355 003	1 471 581	15 196 029	61,84%	14,92%	1,44%
2015	228 463	367 088	1 522 587	15 598 064	62,24%	15,00%	1,46%
2016	235 365	376 134	1 561 493	15 970 063	62,57%	15,07%	1,47%
2017	240 216	381 998	1 586 960	16 256 581	62,88%	15,14%	1,48%
2018	242 775	384 257	1 597 185	16 410 325	63,18%	15,20%	1,48%
2019	242 806	382 552	1 590 206	16 434 113	63,47%	15,27%	1,48%
2020	242 140	379 831	1 577 994	16 396 938	63,75%	15,34%	1,48%
2021	247 270	386 600	1 606 851	16 687 988	63,96%	15,39%	1,48%
2022	255 183	398 543	1 658 802	17 197 073	64,03%	15,38%	1,48%
2023	259 959	406 033	1 691 319	17 570 284	64,02%	15,37%	1,48%
Average Annual Growth							
	1,94%	1,52%	1,57%	1,64%			

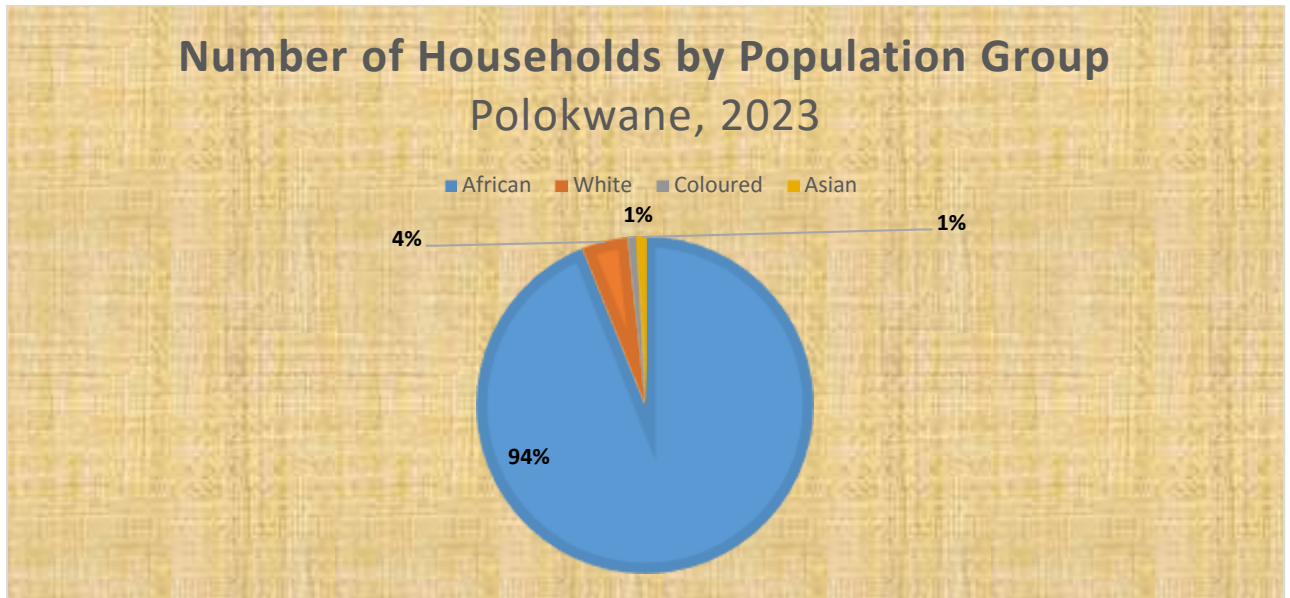
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Relative to the district municipality, the Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher average annual growth rate of 1.94% from 2013 to 2023. In contrast, the province had an average annual growth rate of 1.57% from 2013. South Africa as a whole had a total of 17.5 million households, with a growth rate of 1.64%, thus growing at a lower rate than the Polokwane one.

The composition of the households by population group consists of 93.93% which is ascribed to the African population group with the largest amount of households by population group. The White population group had a total composition of 4.38% (ranking second). The Coloured

population group had a total composition of 0.89% of the total households. The smallest population group by households is the Asian population group with only 0.80% in 2023.

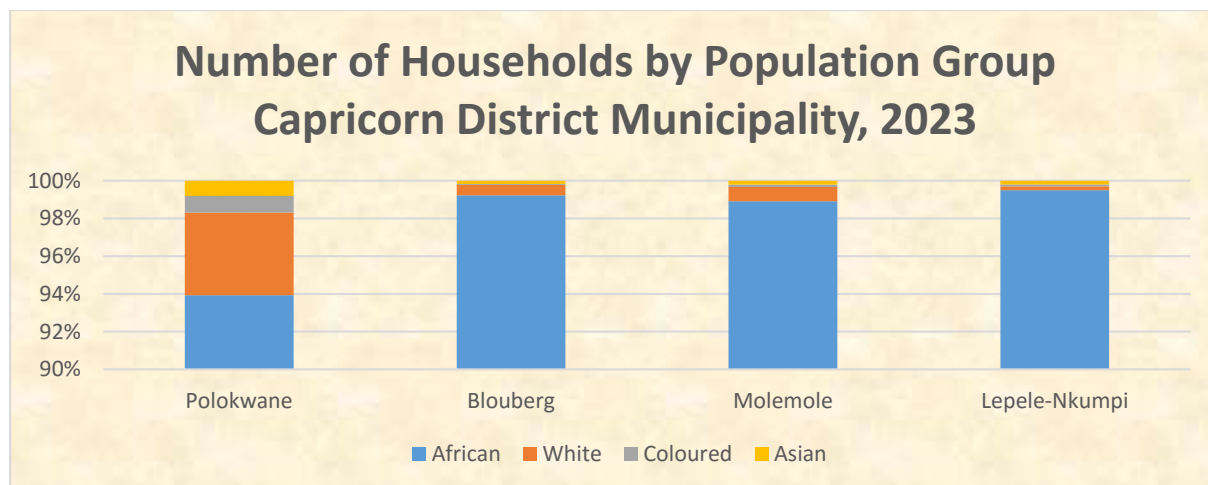
CHART 2. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The growth in the number of African headed households was on average 1.93% per annum between 2013 and 2023, which translates in the number of households increasing by 42515 in the period. Although the Asian population group is not the biggest in size, it was however the fastest growing population group between 2013 and 2023 at 5.62%. The average annual growth rate in the number of households for the other population groups has increased with 1.30% white and Coloured at 3.76%.

TABLE 4. NUMBER OF HOUSEHOLDS BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.3 HIV+ and AIDS estimates

HIV and AIDS can have a substantial impact on the growth of a particular population. However, there are many factors affecting the impact of the HIV virus on population progression: adult HIV prevalence rates; the speed at which the virus progresses; age distribution of the virus; the mother-to-child transmission; child treatment; adult treatment; and the percentage by which the virus decreases total fertility. ARV treatment can also prolong the lifespan of people that are HIV+. In the absence of any treatment, people diagnosed with HIV live for approximately 10 years before reaching the final stage of the disease (called AIDS). When patients reach this stage, recovery is highly unlikely.

HIV+ and AIDS estimates are defined as follows:

The HIV+ estimates are calculated by using the prevalence rates from the HIV/AIDS model built by the Actuarial Society of Southern Africa (ASSA-2008). These rates are used as base rates on a provincial level. IHS slightly adjusted the provincial ASSA-2010 data to more accurately reflect the national HIV Prevalence rate per population group as used in the national demographic models. The ASSA model in turn uses the prevalence rates from various primary data sets, in particular the HIV/AIDS surveys conducted by the Department of Health and the Antenatal clinic surveys. Their rates are further adjusted for over-reporting and then smoothed.

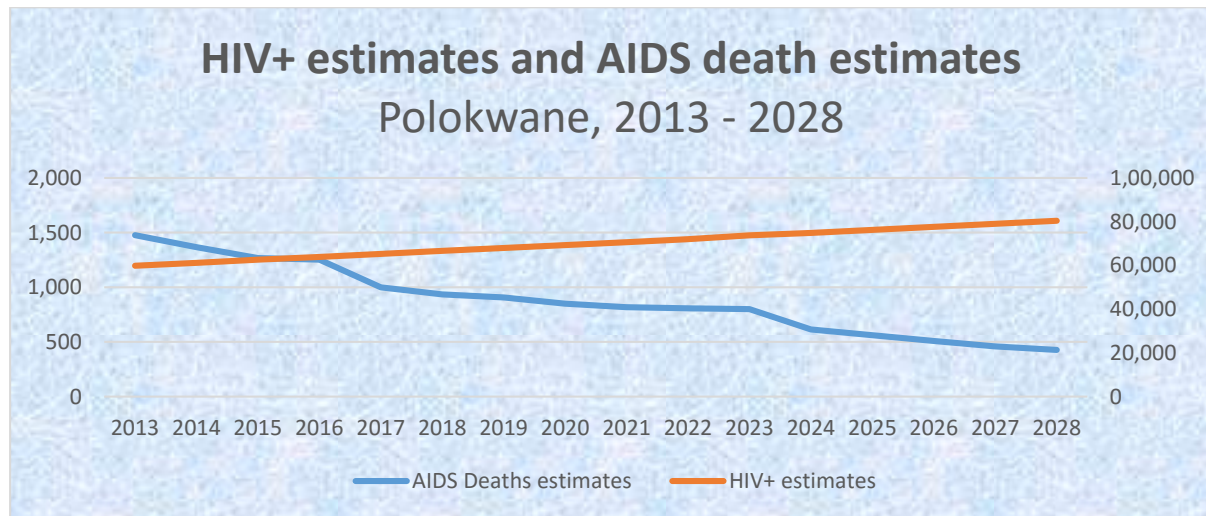
TABLE 5. NUMBER OF HIV+ PEOPLE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013 -2023 [NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2013	59 825	97 265	421 944	6 769 648	61,51%	14,18%	0,88%
2014	61 184	98 997	428 948	6 908 129	61,80%	14,26%	0,89%
2015	62 586	100 859	436 555	7 053 897	62,05%	14,34%	0,89%
2016	63 878	102 608	443 662	7 195 964	62,25%	14,40%	0,89%
2017	65 245	104 541	451 526	7 360 690	62,41%	14,45%	0,89%
2018	66 629	106 556	459 640	7 534 474	62,53%	14,50%	0,88%
2019	67 940	108 507	467 377	7 712 743	62,61%	14,54%	0,88%
2020	69 270	110 535	475 323	7 899 820	62,67%	14,57%	0,88%
2021	70 581	112 582	483 413	8 085 077	62,69%	14,60%	0,87%
2022	72 007	114 864	492 402	8 298 620	62,69%	14,62%	0,87%
2023	73 778	117 727	503 771	8 530 959	62,67%	14,65%	0,86%
Average Annual Growth							
	2,12%	1,93%	1,79%	2,34%			

SOURCE: S&P GLOBAL MARKET INTELLIGENCE 2024

In 2023, 73778 people in the Polokwane Local Municipality were infected with HIV. This reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 2.12% since 2013, and in 2023 represented 8.38% of the local municipality's total population. The Capricorn District Municipality had an average annual growth rate of 1.93% from 2013 to 2023 in the number of people infected with HIV, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality. The number of infections in the Limpopo Province increased from 421944 in 2013 to 503771 in 2023. When looking at South Africa as a whole it can be seen that the number of people that are infected increased from 2013 to 2023 with an average annual growth rate of 2.34%.

CHART 3. AIDS PROFILE AND FORECAST - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2028 [NUMBERS]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Presenting the number of HIV+ people against the number of people living with AIDS, the people with AIDS added up to 1476 in 2013 and 427 for 2023. This number denotes a decrease from 2013 to 2023 with a high average annual rate of -5.93% (or -676 people). For the year 2023, they represented 0.09% of the total population of the entire local municipality.

Economy

The economic state of Polokwane Local Municipality is put in perspective by comparing it on a spatial level with its neighbouring locals, Capricorn District Municipality, Limpopo Province and South Africa.

The Polokwane Local Municipality does not function in isolation from Capricorn, Limpopo Province, South Africa and the world and now, more than ever, it is crucial to have reliable information on its economy for effective planning. Information is needed that will empower the municipality to plan and implement policies that will encourage the socio-economic development in the municipality.

4.4 Gross Domestic Product by Region (GDP-R)

The Gross Domestic Product (GDP), an important indicator of economic performance, is used to compare economies and economic states.

GDP-R can be measured using either current or constant prices, where the current prices measures the economy in actual Rand, and constant prices measures the economy by

removing the effect of inflation, and therefore captures the real growth in volumes, as if prices were fixed in a given base year.

TABLE 6. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of the District	Polokwane as % of the Province	Polokwane as % of the National
2013	69.72	90.89	281.65	3,868.6	76,70%	24,75%	1,80%
2014	75.21	97.82	299.03	4,133.8	76,89%	25,15%	1,82%
2015	82.33	106.79	319.80	4,420.7	77,09%	25,74%	1,86%
2016	91.87	118.98	351.92	4,759.5	77,21%	26,11%	1,93%
2017	97.21	125.74	371.32	5,078.1	77,31%	26,18%	1,91%
2018	103.95	134.34	396.19	5,363.1	77,38%	26,24%	1,94%
2019	109.49	141.43	418.65	5,625.2	77,41%	26,15%	1,95%
2020	110.59	142.81	425.01	5,562.7	77,44%	26,02%	1,99%
2021	124.48	160.92	489.04	6,220.1	77,36%	25,46%	2,00%
2022	130.96	169.04	513.04	6,655.5	77,47%	25,53%	1,97%
2023	136.04	175.55	526.91	7,023.9	77,49%	25,82%	1,94%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

With a GDP of R 136.04 billion in 2023 (up from R 69.72 billion in 2013); the Polokwane Local Municipality contributed 77.49% to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of R 175.55 billion in 2023 increasing in the share of the Capricorn from 76.70% in 2013. The Polokwane Local Municipality contributes 25.82% to the GDP of Limpopo Province and 1.94% of the GDP of South Africa which had a total GDP of R 7.02 trillion in 2022 (as measured in nominal or current prices). It's contribution to the national economy stayed similar in importance from 2013 when it contributed 1.80% to South Africa, but it is lower than the peak of 2.0% in 2021.

TABLE 7. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2022 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]

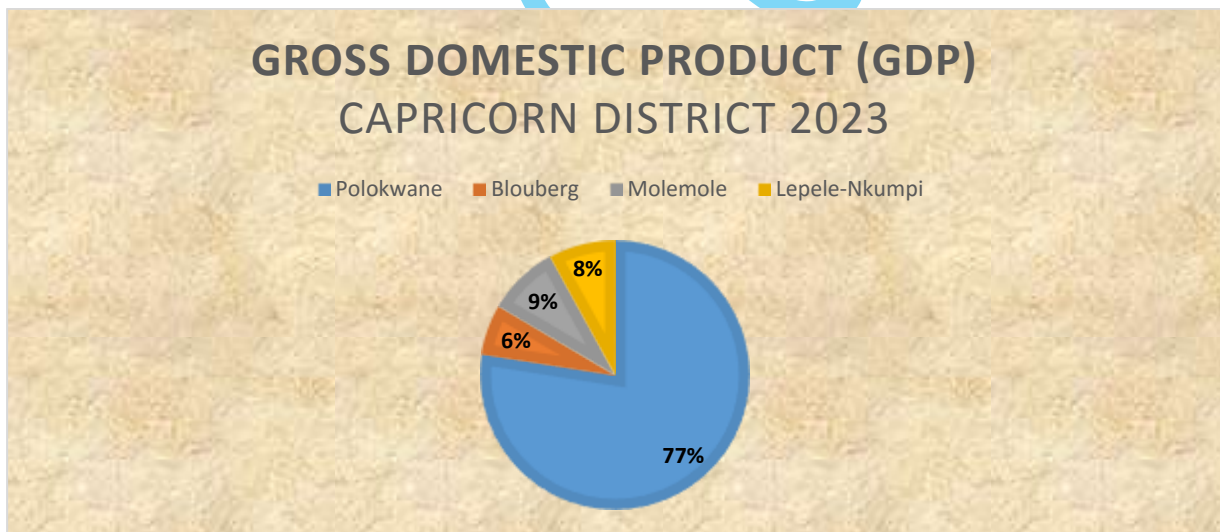
Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2013	3,2%	2,9%	2,5%	2,5%
2014	2,2%	2,0%	1,1%	1,4%
2015	1,9%	1,7%	1,9%	1,3%
2016	2,9%	2,6%	0,1%	0,7%
2017	1,3%	1,2%	1,4%	1,2%
2018	1,6%	1,5%	1,1%	1,6%

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2019	0,3%	0,3%	0,1%	0,3%
2020	-4,0%	-4,3%	-6,7%	-6,2%
2021	5,2%	5,2%	5,5%	5,0%
2022	2,4%	2,2%	1,0%	1,9%
Average Annual Growth				
2013-2022	1,7%	1,5%	0,8%	1,0%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2022, the Polokwane Local Municipality achieved an annual growth rate of 2.4% which is a significant increase in GDP growth than the Limpopo Province's 1.0%, but is higher than that of South Africa, where the 2022 GDP growth rate was 1.9%. Contrary to the short-term growth rate of 2022, the longer-term average growth rate for Polokwane (1.7%) is significantly higher than that of South Africa (1.0%). The economic growth in Polokwane peaked in 2021 at 5.2%.

CHART 4. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The Polokwane Local Municipality had a total GDP of R 136.04 billion and in terms of total contribution towards Capricorn District Municipality the Polokwane Local Municipality ranked highest relative to all the regional economies to total Capricorn District Municipality GDP. This ranking in terms of size compared to other regions of Polokwane remained the same since 2013. In terms of its share, it was in 2023 (77.49%) significantly higher compared to what it was in 2013 (76.70%). For the period 2013 to 2023, the average annual growth rate of 1.44% of Polokwane was the highest relative to its peers in terms of growth in constant 2015 prices.

TABLE 8. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2013 TO 2023, SHARE AND GROWTH

Name of Municipality	2023 (Current Prices)	Share of District Municipality	2015 (Constant Prices)	2023	Average Annual growth
				(Constant Prices)	
Polokwane	136,04	78,76%	91,07	91,07	0,94%
Blouberg	10,51	6,20%	6,9	6,9	0,80%
Molemole	14,9	7,92%	9,7	9,7	1,68%
Lepele-Nkumpi	14	7,12%	8,9	8,9	0,85%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane had the second highest average annual economic growth, averaging 0.94% between 2013 and 2023, when compared to the rest of the regions within Capricorn District Municipality. The Molemole Local Municipality had the highest average annual growth rate of 1.68%. Lepelle Nkumpi Local Municipality had the third highest average annual growth rate of 0.85% between 2013 and 2023.

4.4.1 Economic Growth Forecast

It is expected that Polokwane Local Municipality will grow at an average annual rate of 1.59% from 2023 to 2028. The average annual growth rate in the GDP of Capricorn District Municipality and Limpopo Province is expected to be 1.41% and 0.68% respectively. South Africa is forecasted to grow at an average annual growth rate of 0.85%, which is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

TABLE 9. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2028 [AVERAGE ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2028, Polokwane's forecasted GDP will be an estimated R 95.6 billion (constant 2015 prices) or 78.35% of the total GDP of Capricorn District Municipality. The ranking in terms of size of the Polokwane Local Municipality will remain the same between 2023 and 2028, with a contribution to the Capricorn District Municipality GDP of 78.35% in 2028 compared to the 78.02% in 2023. At 0.98% average annual GDP growth rate between 2023 and 2028, Polokwane ranked the highest compared to the other regional economies.

TABLE 10. GROSS DOMESTIC PRODUCT (GDP) - REGIONS WITHIN CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2013 TO 2028, SHARE AND GROWTH

Name of Municipality	2028 (Current Prices)	Share of District Municipality	2015 (Constant Prices)	2028 (Constant Prices)	Average Annual Growth
Polokwane	168,9	77,60%	91,1	91,1	1,70%
Blouberg	12,9	5,94%	6,9	6,9	0,97%
Molemole	18,3	8,45%	9,7	9,7	0,83%
Lepele-Nkumpi	17,4	8,01%	8,9	8,9	0,88%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.4.2 Gross Value Added by Region (GVA-R)

The Polokwane Local Municipality's economy is made up of various industries. The GVA-R variable provides a sector breakdown, where each sector is measured in terms of its *value added* produced in the local economy.

The summary table below puts the Gross Value Added (GVA) of all the regions in perspective to that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

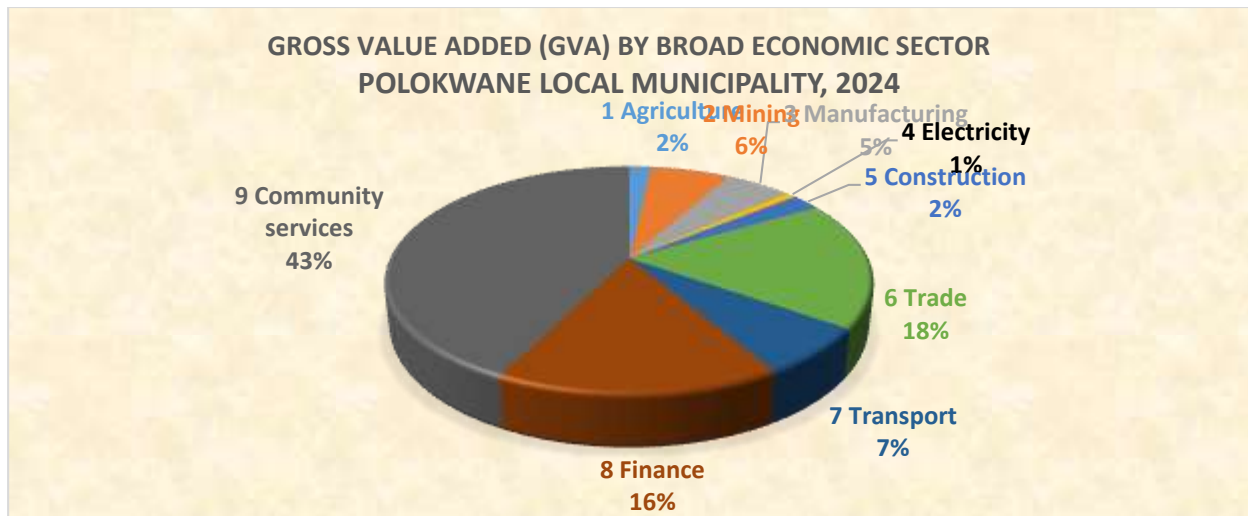
TABLE 11. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

Economic Sector	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
1 Agriculture	2 144 638	3 225 902	14 915 012	183 804 619	66,48%	14,38%	1,17%
2 Mining	7 744 591	11 769 016	108 193 211	444 195 487	65,80%	7,16%	1,74%
3 Manufacturing	6 299 692	7 702 548	17 934 156	910 485 141	81,79%	35,13%	0,69%
4 Electricity	1 067 269	1 502 478	12 845 426	219 383 727	71,03%	8,31%	0,49%
5 Construction	2 847 071	3 635 477	9 482 731	155 217 896	78,31%	30,02%	1,83%
6 Trade	22 263 755	27 711 408	64 092 761	877 745 499	80,34%	34,74%	2,54%
7 Transport	8 271 429	10 082 140	23 127 164	494 962 033	82,04%	35,76%	1,67%
8 Finance	19 436 591	24 522 708	68 677 331	1 471 794 321	79,26%	28,30%	1,32%
9 Community services	51 910 827	66 893 477	156 156 604	1 553 240 732	77,60%	33,24%	3,34%
Total Industries	121 985 863	157 045 154	475 424 395	6 310 829 456	77,68%	25,66%	1,93%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, the community services sector is the largest within Polokwane Local Municipality accounting for R 51.9 billion or 42.55% of the total GVA in the local municipality's economy. The sector that contributes the second most to the GVA of the Polokwane Local Municipality is the trade sector at 18.25%, followed by the finance sector with 15.93%. The sector that contributes the least to the economy of Polokwane Local Municipality is the electricity sector with a contribution of R 1.0 billion or 0.87% of the total GVA.

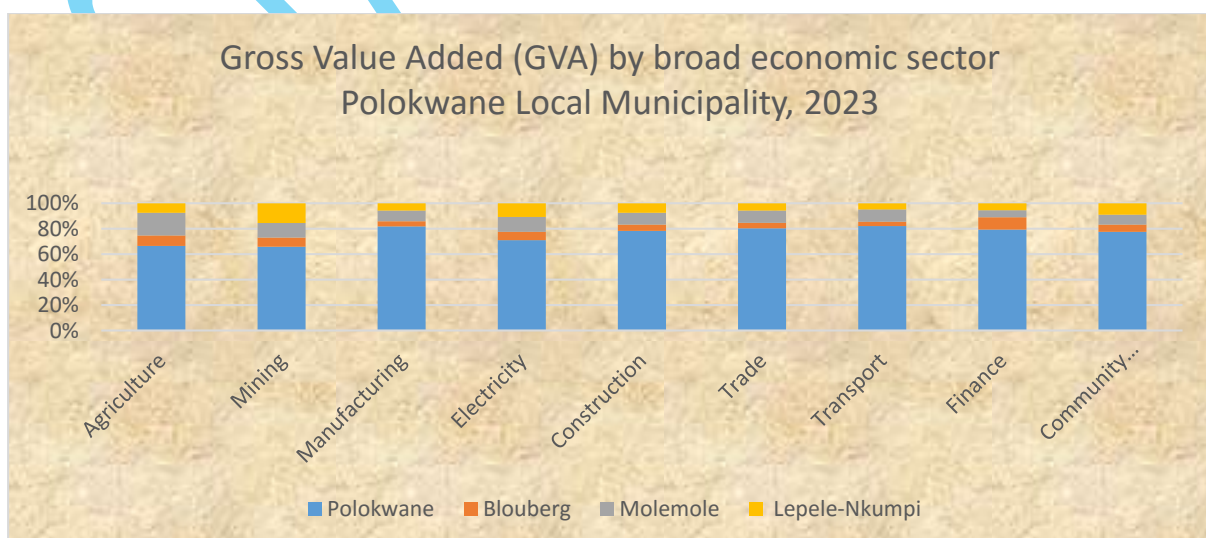
CHART 5. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The community sector, which includes the government services, is generally a large contributor towards GVA. When looking at all the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, it is clear that Polokwane contributes the most community services towards its own GVA, with 77.60%, relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane municipality contributed R 121.9 billion or 77.68% to the GVA of Capricorn District Municipality. The Polokwane economy also contributes the most to the overall GVA of Capricorn District Municipality.

CHART 6. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [PERCENTAGE COMPOSITION]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.4.3 Historical Economic Growth

For the period 2012 to 2022, the GVA in the agriculture sector had the highest average annual growth rate in Polokwane at 5.85%. The industry with the second highest average annual growth rate is the mining sector averaging at 5.17% per year. The transport sector had an average annual growth rate of 3.45%, while the electricity sector had the lowest average annual growth of -3.24%. Overall a positive growth existed for all the industries in 2023 with an annual growth rate of 1.30% since 2013.

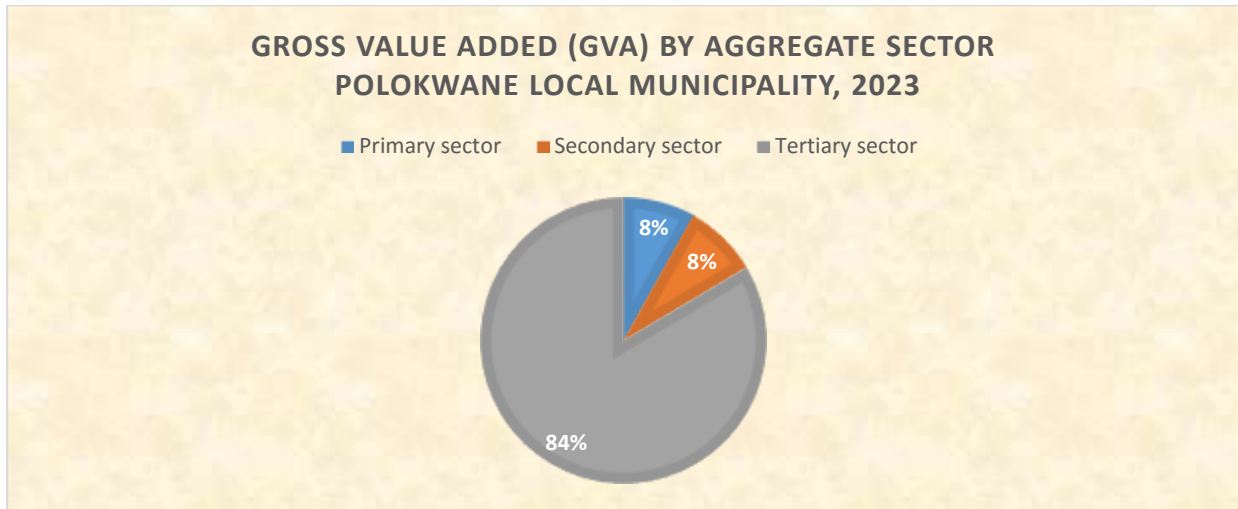
TABLE 12. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013, 2018 AND 2023[R BILLIONS, 2015 CONSTANT PRICES]

Economic Sector	2013	2018	2023	Average Annual Growth
1 Agriculture	9,7	1,36	1,71	5,85%
2 Mining	3,17	3,77	3,90	2,09%
3 Manufacturing	3,53	3,78	3,73	0,55%
4 Electricity	6,61	5,77	4,7	-3,24%
5 Construction	2,40	2,41	1,85	-2,58%
6 Trade	13,60	14,39	12,56	-0,79%
7 Transport	5,16	6,26	7,24	3,45%
8 Finance	12,11	13,27	14,53	1,83%
9 Community services	30,31	33,81	35,80	1,68%
Total Industries	71,94	79,67	81,83	1,30%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The tertiary sector contributes the most to the Gross Value Added within the Polokwane Local Municipality at 83.52%. This is significantly higher than the national economy (69.69%). The primary sector contributed a total of 8.11% (ranking second), while the secondary sector contributed the least at 8.37%.

CHART 7. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

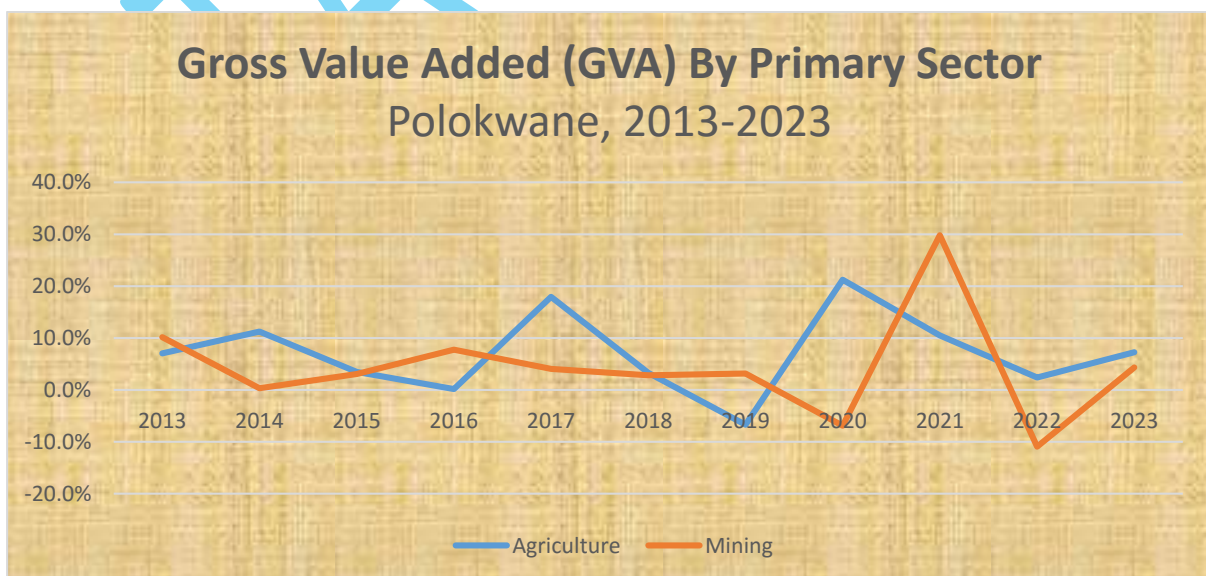
4.5 Breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:

The following is a breakdown of the Gross Value Added (GVA) by aggregated sector:

4.5.1 Primary Sector

The primary sector consists of two broad economic sectors namely the mining and the agricultural sector. The following chart represents the average growth rate in the GVA for both of these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2013 to 2023.

CHART 8. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY PRIMARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2013-2023 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE] 2015 CONSTANT PRICES



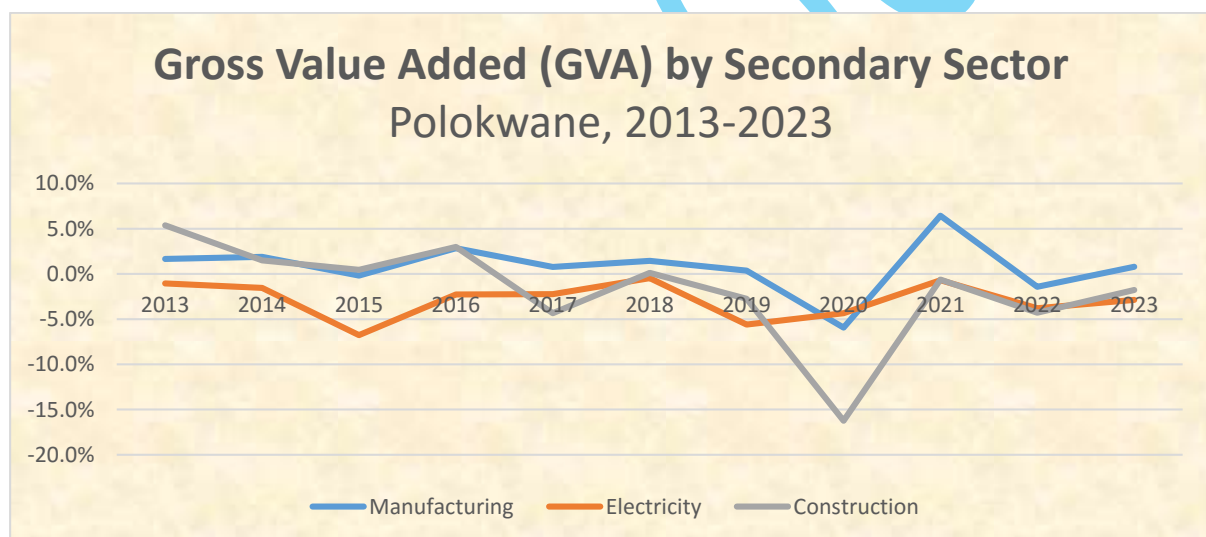
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Between 2013 and 2023, the agriculture sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2020 with an average growth rate of 21.2%. The mining sector reached its highest point of growth of 29.8% in 2021. The agricultural sector experienced the lowest growth for the period during 2019 at -6.7%, while the mining sector reaching its lowest point of growth in 2022 at -10.9%. Both the agriculture and mining sectors are generally characterized by volatility in growth over the period.

4.5.2 Secondary Sector

The secondary sector consists of three broad economic sectors namely the manufacturing, electricity and the construction sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2013 to 2023.

CHART 9. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY SECONDARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2013-2023 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]



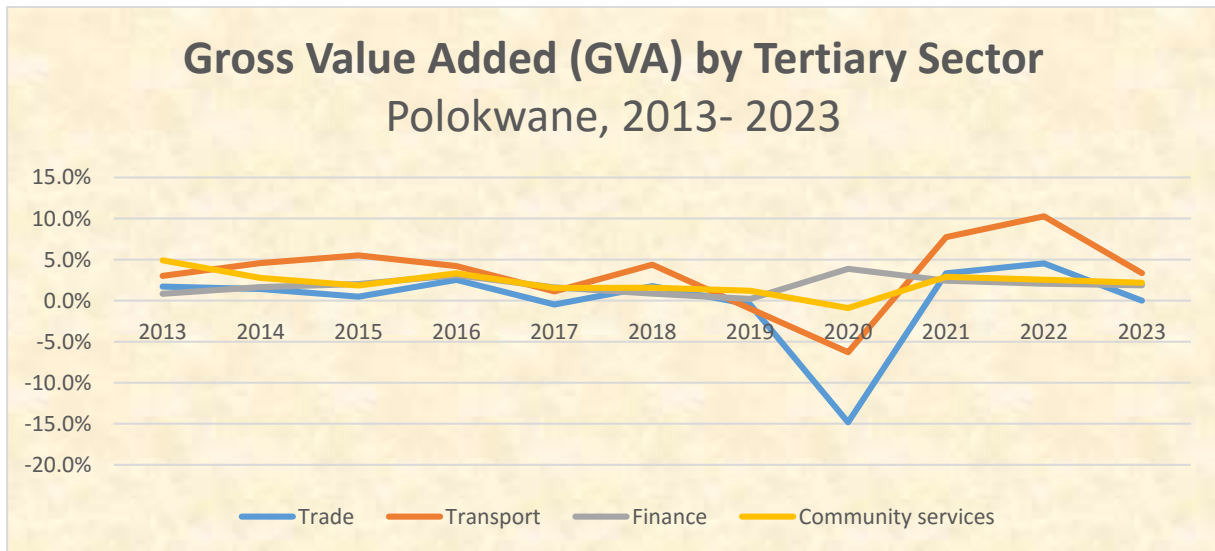
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Between 2013 and 2023, the manufacturing sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2021 with a growth rate of 6.4%. The construction sector reached its highest growth in 2013 at 5.4%. The manufacturing sector experienced its lowest growth in 2020 of -5.9%, while construction sector reached its lowest point of growth in 2020 as with -16.2% growth rate. The electricity sector experienced the minimal decline in 2013 at -1.1%, while it recorded the lowest decline of -6.8% in 2015.

4.5.3 Tertiary Sector

The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. The following chart represents the average growth rates in the GVA for these sectors in Polokwane Local Municipality from 2013 to 2023.

CHART 10. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY TERTIARY SECTOR - POLOKWANE, 2013-2023 [ANNUAL PERCENTAGE CHANGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The trade sector experienced the highest positive growth in 2022 with a growth rate of 4.5%. The transport sector reached its highest point of growth in 2022 at 10.3%. The finance sector experienced the highest growth rate in 2020 when it grew by 3.9% and recorded the lowest growth rate in 2019 at 0.2%. The Trade sector also had the lowest growth rate in 2020 at -12.4%. The community services sector, which largely consists of government, experienced its highest positive growth in 2013 with 4.9% and the lowest growth rate in 2020 with -0.9%.

4.5.4 Sector Growth forecast

The GVA forecasts are based on forecasted growth rates derived from two sources: historical growth rate estimates and national level industry forecasts. The projections are therefore partly based on the notion that regions that have performed well in the recent past are likely to continue performing well (and vice versa) and partly on the notion that those regions that have prominent sectors that are forecast to grow rapidly in the national economy (e.g. finance and telecommunications) are likely to perform well (and vice versa). As the target year moves

further from the base year (2010) so the emphasis moves from historical growth rates to national-level industry growth rates.

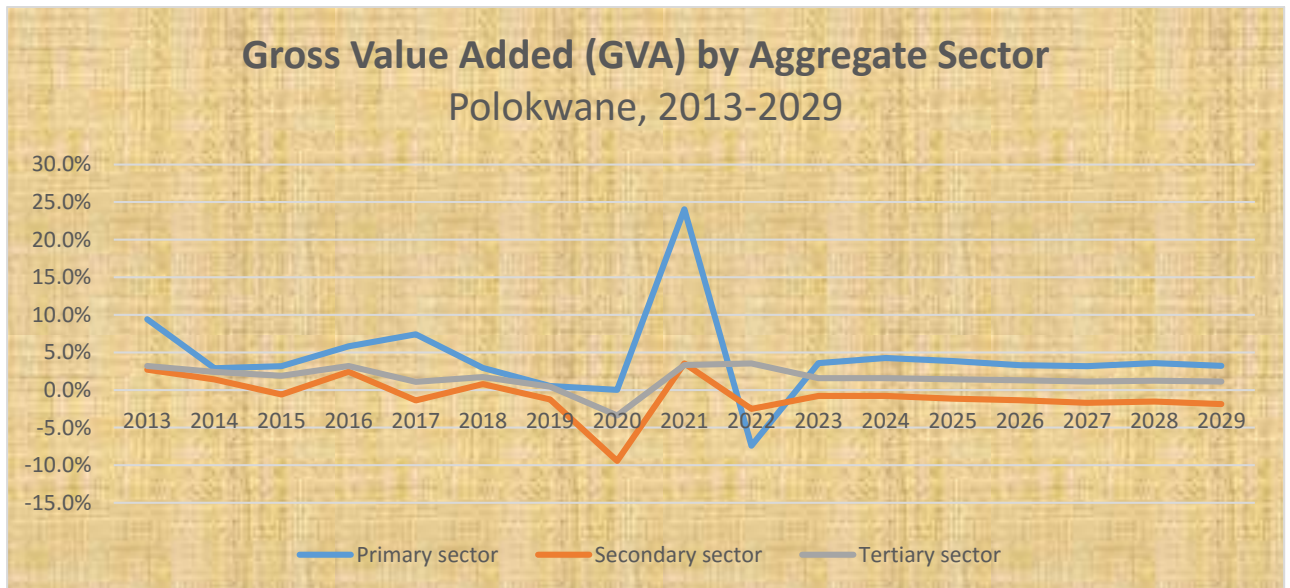
TABLE 13. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023-2029 [R BILLIONS, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]

Economic Sector	2023	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028	2029	Average Annual Growth
Agriculture	1,71	1,85	1,93	2,03	2,12	2,19	2,29	4,99%
Mining	3,90	4,40	4,51	4,60	4,68	4,78	4,87	3,77%
Manufacturing	3,73	3,79	3,80	3,80	3,80	3,80	3,81	0,35%
Electricity	4,75	4,57	4,40	4,26	4,07	3,89	3,70	-4,08%
Construction	1,85	1,82	1,70	1,59	1,47	1,38	1,29	-5,83%
Trade	12,56	12,70	12,41	12,11	11,80	11,55	11,33	-1,70%
Transport	7,24	7,07	7,21	7,35	7,52	7,72	7,92	1,51%
Finance	14,53	14,81	15,07	15,31	15,55	15,82	16,10	1,72%
Community services	35,80	36,62	37,05	37,49	37,90	38,40	38,91	1,40%
Total Industries	86,07	87,63	88,08	88,54	88,91	89,53	90,22	0,79%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The Agricultural sector is expected to grow faster at an average of 4.99% annually from R 1.71 billion in Polokwane Local Municipality to R 2.29 billion in 2029. The community services sector is estimated to be the largest sector within the Polokwane Local Municipality in 2029, with a total share of 38.91% of the total GVA (as measured in constant prices), growing at an average annual rate of 1.40%. The sector that is estimated to decline is the construction sector with an average annual growth rate of -5.83%.

TABLE 14. GROSS VALUE ADDED (GVA) BY AGGREGATE ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2024-2029 [ANNUAL GROWTH RATE, CONSTANT 2015 PRICES]

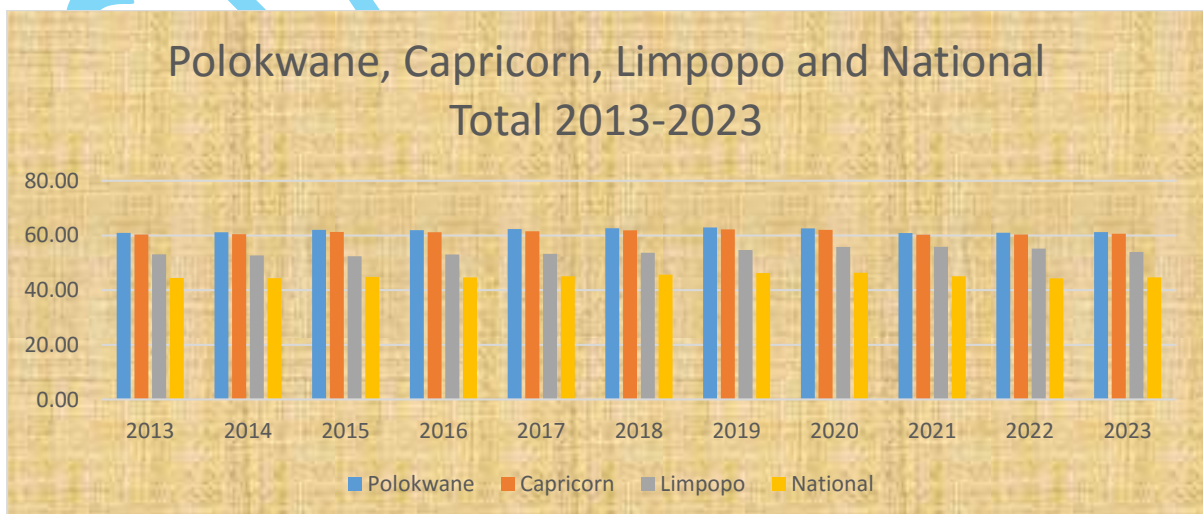


Source: IHS Global Insight 2024

The Primary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 3.6% between 2024 and 2029, with the Secondary sector growing at -1.4% on average annually. The Tertiary sector is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 1.3% for the same period.

4.6 Tress Index

CHART 11. TRESS INDEX - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [NUMBER]



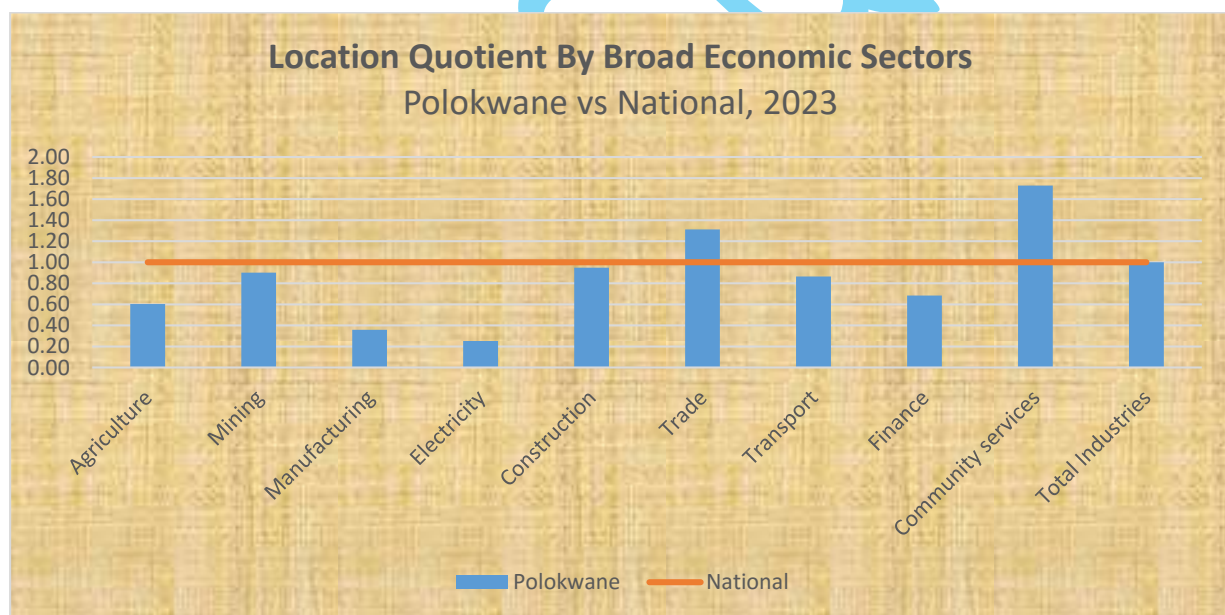
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, Polokwane's Tress Index was estimated at 61.25 which are higher than the 60.63 of the district municipality and higher than the 53.97 of the province. This implies that - on average - Polokwane Local Municipality is less diversified in terms of its economic activity spread than the province's economy as a whole. The Polokwane Local Municipality has a concentrated trade sector.

4.7 Location Quotient

If the location quotient is larger than one for a specified sector within a region, then that region has a comparative advantage in that sector. This is because the share of that sector of the specified regional economy is greater than the same sector in the national economy. The location quotient is usually computed by taking the percentage share of the sector in the regional economy divided by the percentage share of that same sector in the national economy.

CHART 12. LOCATION QUOTIENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTORS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND SOUTH AFRICA, 2023 [NUMBER]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

For 2023 Polokwane Local Municipality has a comparative advantage in the trade sector. The community services sector has a comparative advantage. The finance also has a comparative advantage when comparing it to the South African economy as a whole, although less prominent. The Polokwane Local Municipality has a comparative disadvantage when it comes to the manufacturing and agriculture sector which has a large comparative disadvantage. In general, mining is a very concentrated economic sector. The Polokwane Local Municipality area does have some mining, but this is very limited and fairly unimportant.

4.8 Labour

The labour force of a country consists of everyone of working age (above a certain age and below retirement) that are participating as workers, i.e. people who are actively employed or seeking employment. This is also called the economically active population (EAP). People not included are students, retired people, stay-at-home parents, people in prisons or similar institutions, people employed in jobs or professions with unreported income, as well as discouraged workers who cannot find work.

TABLE 15. WORKING AGE POPULATION IN POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013 AND 2023 [NUMBER]

Age Group	Polokwane		Capricorn		Limpopo		National	
	2013	2023	2013	2023	2013	2023	2013	2023
15-19	80 097	84 798	145 160	148 742	614 854	627 957	4 867 554	5 300 450
20-24	101 824	82 192	160 925	124 222	688 725	520 960	5 386 979	4 590 232
25-29	87 320	86 832	130 930	125 589	572 894	540 673	5 367 354	5 064 130
30-34	59 165	91 502	88 623	132 228	397 386	597 687	4 403 259	5 586 964
35-39	38 690	74 741	59 163	111 283	260 112	494 640	3 551 848	5 377 296
40-44	31 284	52 521	48 885	80 072	205 311	333 183	3 031 825	4 257 524
45-49	29 086	34 423	47 262	53 706	198 015	222 677	2 627 415	3 334 267
50-54	25 269	27 123	42 471	43 537	180 353	185 986	2 286 183	2 796 042
55-59	22 110	25 992	37 878	43 271	155 489	180 158	1 909 449	2 377 299
60-64	18 147	23 038	33 089	41 390	129 282	161 360	1 528 722	2 016 988
65-69	13 635	18 088	25 606	33 306	102 925	133 343	1 166 632	1 609 704
Total	506 626	601 250	819 993	937 347	3 505 346	3 998 623	36 127 219	42 310 896

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The working age population in Polokwane in 2023 was 601 250, increasing at an average annual rate of 1.69% since 2013. For the same period the working age population for Capricorn District Municipality increased at 1.30% annually, while that of Limpopo Province increased at 1.28% annually. South Africa's working age population has increased annually by 1.53% from 34.9 million in 2013 to 40.7 million in 2023.

4.8.1 Economically Active Population (EAP)

The economically active population (EAP) is a good indicator of how many of the total working age population are in reality participating in the labour market of a region. If a person is economically active, he or she forms part of the labour force.

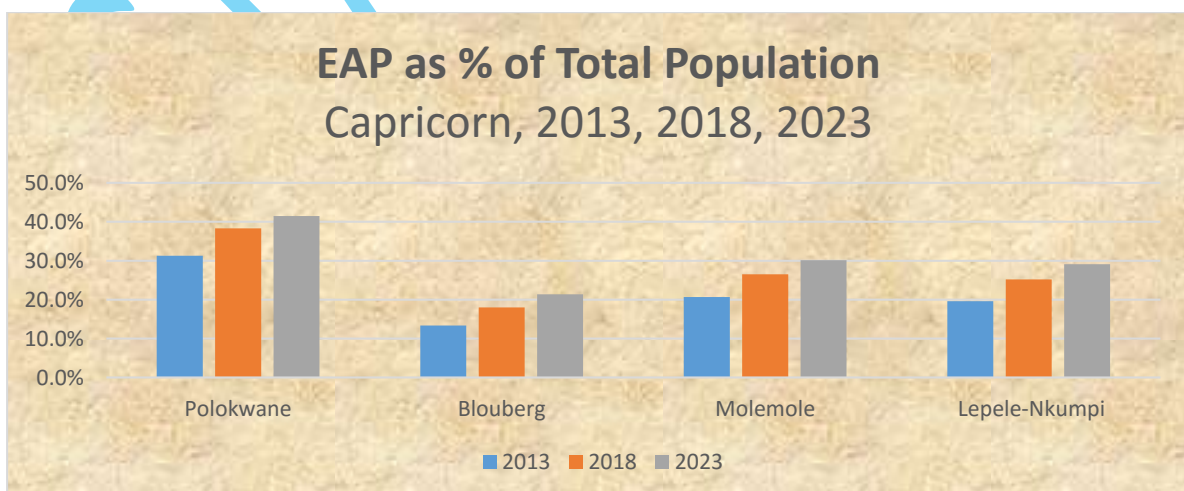
TABLE 16. ECONOMICALLY ACTIVE POPULATION (EAP) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013- 2023 [NUMBER, PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2013	238 795	334 195	1 314 793	19 296 680	71,45%	18,16%	1,24%
2014	258 233	360 961	1 412 501	20 087 855	71,54%	18,28%	1,29%
2015	278 069	389 304	1 525 222	20 797 627	71,43%	18,23%	1,34%
2016	298 366	418 267	1 630 981	21 456 477	71,33%	18,29%	1,39%
2017	310 529	435 312	1 698 709	22 025 124	71,33%	18,28%	1,41%
2018	316 395	442 749	1 719 862	22 301 192	71,46%	18,40%	1,42%
2019	322 087	450 847	1 749 695	22 671 163	71,44%	18,41%	1,42%
2020	317 843	443 656	1 715 305	22 127 497	71,64%	18,53%	1,44%
2021	321 821	451 061	1 753 997	22 244 986	71,35%	18,35%	1,45%
2022	342 589	483 121	1 894 236	23 146 014	70,91%	18,09%	1,48%
2023	365 085	516 818	2 038 888	24 190 732	70,64%	17,91%	1,51%
Average Annual Growth	4,34%	4,46%	4,48%	2,29%			

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality's EAP was 365 085 in 2023, which is 41.46% of its total population of 880 605, and roughly 70.64% of the total EAP of the Capricorn District Municipality. From 2013 to 2023, the average annual increase in the EAP in the Polokwane Local Municipality was 4.34%, which is -0.12 percentage points lower than the growth in the EAP of Capricorn's for the same period.

CHART 13. EAP AS % OF TOTAL POPULATION - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2013, 2018, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2013, 31.3% of the total population in Polokwane Local Municipality were classified as economically active which increased to 41.5% in 2023. Compared to the other regions in Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest EAP as a percentage of the total population within its own region relative to the other regions. On the other hand, Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest EAP with 21.4% people classified as economically active population in 2023.

4.8.2 Labour Force participation rate

The following is the labour force participation rate of the Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total as a whole.

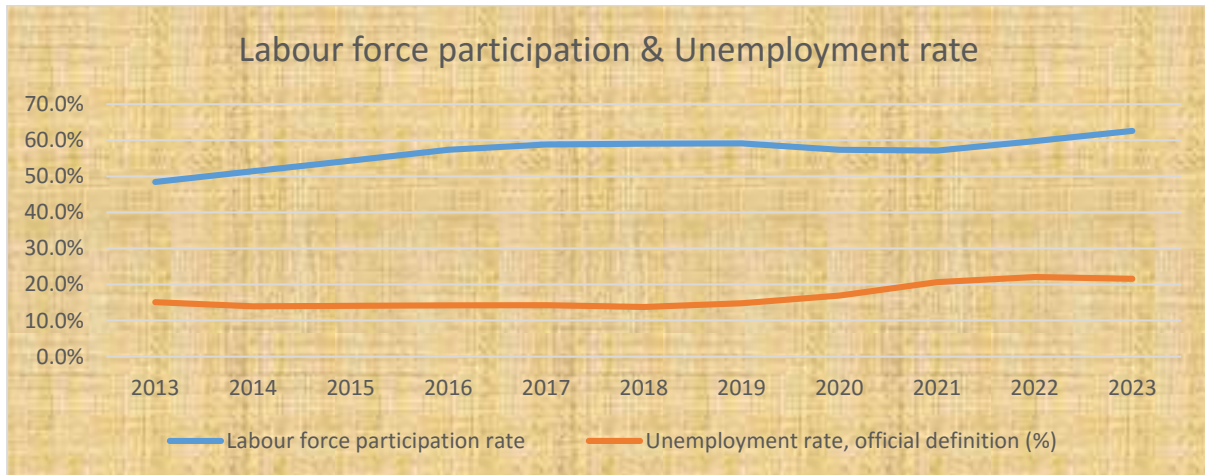
TABLE 17. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2013	48,4%	42,1%	38,6%	55,2%
2014	51,4%	44,9%	41,1%	56,6%
2015	54,4%	47,9%	43,8%	57,7%
2016	57,4%	50,9%	46,4%	58,8%
2017	58,8%	52,5%	47,9%	59,5%
2018	59,1%	52,8%	47,9%	59,4%
2019	59,1%	53,1%	48,1%	59,4%
2020	57,4%	51,5%	46,5%	57,0%
2021	57,2%	51,6%	46,9%	56,5%
2022	59,8%	54,4%	49,8%	57,8%
2023	62,6%	57,2%	52,7%	59,4%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The Polokwane Local Municipality's labour force participation rate increased from 48.4% to 62.6% which is an increase of 14.20 percentage points. The Capricorn District Municipality increased from 42.1% to 57.2%, Limpopo Province increased from 38.6% to 52.7% and South Africa increased from 55.2% to 59.4% from 2013 to 2023. The Polokwane Local Municipality labour force participation rate exhibited a higher percentage point change compared to the Limpopo Province from 2013 to 2023. The Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher labour force participation rate when compared to South Africa in 2023.

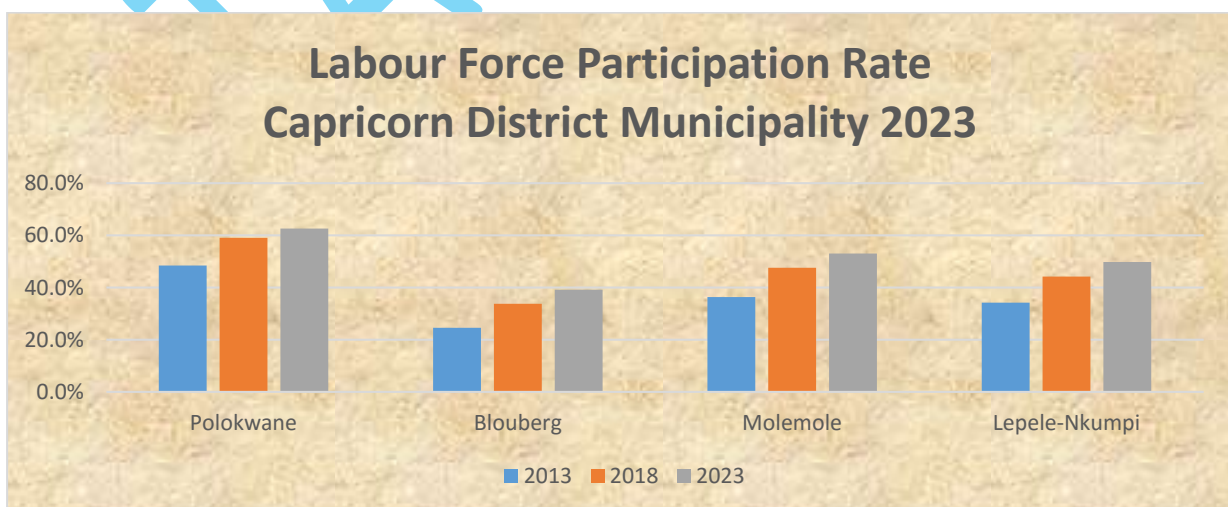
CHART 14. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023 the labour force participation rate for Polokwane was at 62.6% which is significantly higher when compared to the 48.4% in 2013. The unemployment rate is an efficient indicator that measures the success rate of the labour force relative to employment. In 2013, the unemployment rate for Polokwane was 15.1% and increased overtime to 21.6% in 2023. The gap between the labour force participation rate and the unemployment rate decreased which indicates a positive outlook for the employment within Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 15. THE LABOUR FORCE PARTICIPATION RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2013, 2018 AND 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest labour force participation rate with 62.6% in 2023 increasing from 48.4% in 2013. Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest labour force participation rate of 39.1% in 2023, this increased from 24.5% in 2013.

4.8.3 Total Employment

Employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. Employment data is also used in the calculation of productivity, earnings per worker, and other economic indicators.

TABLE 18. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [NUMBERS]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2013	196 985	276 204	1 018 476	14 443 237	71,32%	19,34%	1,36%
2014	215 759	302 381	1 107 591	15 030 411	71,35%	19,48%	1,44%
2015	231 840	324 983	1 189 536	15 497 776	71,34%	19,49%	1,50%
2016	247 941	347 282	1 255 642	15 785 399	71,39%	19,75%	1,57%
2017	257 678	360 697	1 302 383	16 030 782	71,44%	19,79%	1,61%
2018	263 707	368 675	1 322 286	16 201 043	71,53%	19,94%	1,63%
2019	265 034	369 779	1 319 324	16 225 383	71,67%	20,09%	1,63%
2020	254 125	351 640	1 230 414	15 419 068	72,27%	20,65%	1,65%
2021	245 124	337 559	1 165 897	14 774 640	72,62%	21,02%	1,66%
2022	256 325	353 691	1 226 501	15 339 116	72,47%	20,90%	1,67%
2023	275 140	381 184	1 332 336	16 288 834	72,18%	20,65%	1,69%
Average Annual Growth	3,40%	3,27%	2,72%	1,21%			

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, Polokwane employed 275 140 people which is 72.18% of the total employment in Capricorn District Municipality (381 184), 20.65% of total employment in Limpopo Province (1,3 million), and 1.69% of the total employment of 16.2 million in South Africa. Employment within Polokwane increased annually at an average rate of 3.40% from 2013 to 2023. The Polokwane Local Municipality average annual employment growth rate of 3.40% is less than the average annual labour force growth rate of 4.34% resulting in unemployment increasing from 15.1% in 2013 to 21.6% in 2023 in the local municipality.

TABLE 19. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2023 [NUMBERS]

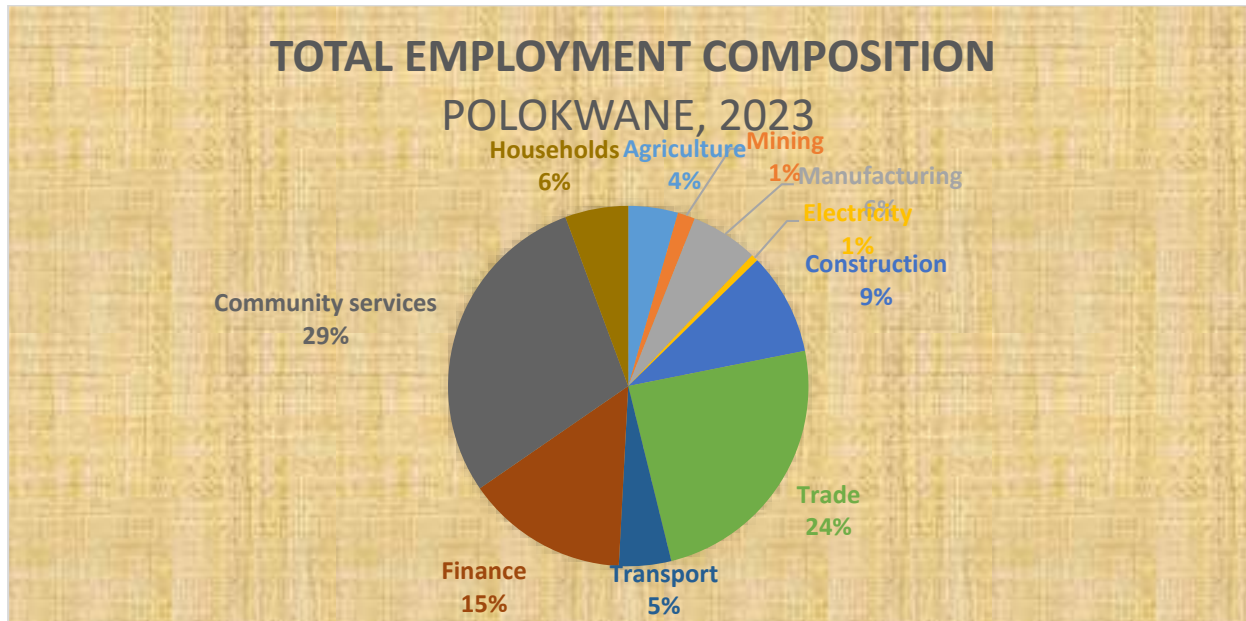
Economic Sector	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
Agriculture	12 263	3 151	7 072	3 523
Mining	4 284	469	748	1 491
Manufacturing	16 650	738	1 883	2 507
Electricity	1 747	190	249	292
Construction	25 213	2 237	3 671	3 594
Trade	66 835	4 766	9 705	8 136
Transport	12 886	789	1 751	1 830
Finance	40 053	1 771	3 914	3 625
Community services	79 611	5 761	11 018	13 805
Households	15 598	1 704	3 946	1 711
Total	275 140	21 576	43 955	40 513

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality employs a total number of 275 140 people within its local municipality. Polokwane Local Municipality also employs the highest number of people within Capricorn District Municipality. The local municipality that employs the lowest number of people relative to the other regions within Capricorn District Municipality is Blouberg Local Municipality with a total number of 21 576 employed people.

In Polokwane Local Municipality the economic sectors that recorded the largest number of employment in 2023 were the community services sector with a total of 79 611 employed people or 28.93% of total employment in the local municipality. The trade sector with a total of 66 835 (24.29%) employs the second highest number of people relative to the rest of the sectors. The electricity sector with 1 747 (0.63%) is the sector that employs the least number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality, followed by the mining sector with 4 284 (1.56%) people employed.

CHART 16. TOTAL EMPLOYMENT PER BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

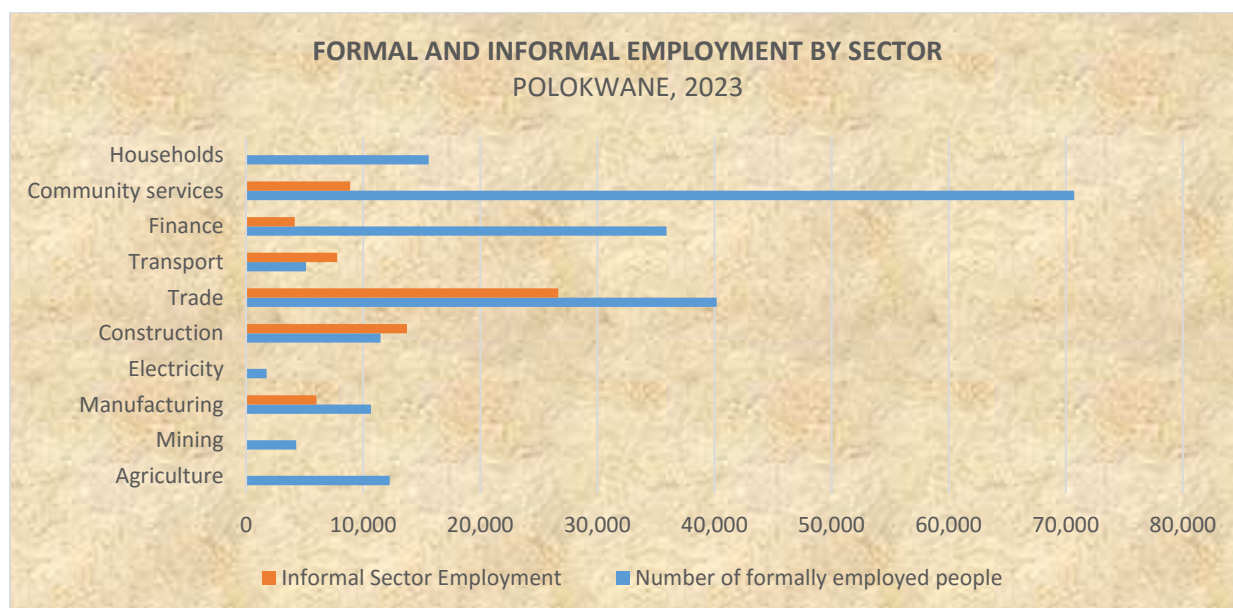
4.8.4 Formal and Informal employment

Total employment can be broken down into formal and informal sector employment. Formal sector employment is measured from the formal business side, and the informal employment is measured from the household side where formal businesses have not been established.

Formal employment is much more stable than informal employment. Informal employment is much harder to measure and manage, simply because it cannot be tracked through the formal business side of the economy. Informal employment is however a reality in South Africa and cannot be ignored.

The number of formally employed people in Polokwane Local Municipality counted 207 957 in 2023, which is about 75.58% of total employment, while the number of people employed in the informal sector counted 67 183 or 24.42 % of the total employment. Informal employment in Polokwane increased from 48 396 in 2013 to an estimated 67 183 in 2023.

CHART 17. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [NUMBERS]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023 the Trade sector recorded the highest number of informally employed, with a total of 26 646 employees or 39.66% of the total informal employment. This can be expected as the barriers to enter the Trade sector in terms of capital and skills required is less than with most of the other sectors. The Finance sector has the lowest informal employment with 4 148 and only contributes 6.18% to total informal employment.

TABLE 20. FORMAL AND INFORMAL EMPLOYMENT BY BROAD ECONOMIC SECTOR - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [NUMBERS]

Economic Sector	Number of formally employed people	Informal Sector Employment
Agriculture	12 263	
Mining	4 284	
Manufacturing	10 656	5 994
Electricity	1 747	
Construction	11 480	13 733
Trade	40 188	26 647
Transport	5 112	7 774
Finance	35 904	4 149
Community services	70 726	8 886
Households	15 598	
Total	207 957	67 183

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.8.5 Unemployment

The choice of definition for what constitutes being unemployed has a large impact on the final estimates for all measured labour force variables. The following definition was adopted by the Thirteenth International Conference of Labour Statisticians (Geneva, 1982): The "unemployed" comprise all persons above a specified age who during the reference period were:

- "Without work", i.e. not in paid employment or self-employment;
- "Currently available for work", i.e. were available for paid employment or self-employment during the reference period; and
- "Seeking work", i.e. had taken specific steps in a specified reference period to seek paid employment or self-employment. The specific steps may include registration at a public or private employment exchange; application to employers; checking at worksites, farms, factory gates, market or other assembly places; placing or answering newspaper advertisements; seeking assistance of friends or relatives; looking for land.

TABLE 21. UNEMPLOYMENT (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
2013	36 104	59 173	253 378	4 853 443	61,01%	14,25%	0,74%
2014	35 983	59 454	257 452	5 057 445	60,52%	13,98%	0,71%
2015	39 112	65 039	283 815	5 299 851	60,14%	13,78%	0,74%
2016	42 374	71 007	320 678	5 671 078	59,68%	13,21%	0,75%
2017	44 273	74 385	339 103	5 994 341	59,52%	13,06%	0,74%
2018	43 627	73 470	339 658	6 100 149	59,38%	12,84%	0,72%
2019	47 650	80 180	373 253	6 445 780	59,43%	12,77%	0,74%
2020	53 781	90 195	433 219	6 708 429	59,63%	12,41%	0,80%
2021	66 436	111 025	540 421	7 470 346	59,84%	12,29%	0,89%
2022	75 586	126 865	617 000	7 806 898	59,58%	12,25%	0,97%
2023	78 758	133 155	650 738	7 901 898	59,15%	12,10%	1,0%
Average Annual Growth							
	8,11%	8,45%	9,89%	4,99%			

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, there were a total number of 78 758 people unemployed in Polokwane, which is an increase of 42 654 from 36 104 in 2013. The total number of unemployed people within Polokwane constitutes 59.15% of the total number of unemployed people in Capricorn District

Municipality. The Polokwane Local Municipality experienced an average annual increase of 8.11% in the number of unemployed people, which is better than that of the Capricorn District Municipality which had an average annual increase in unemployment of 8.45%.

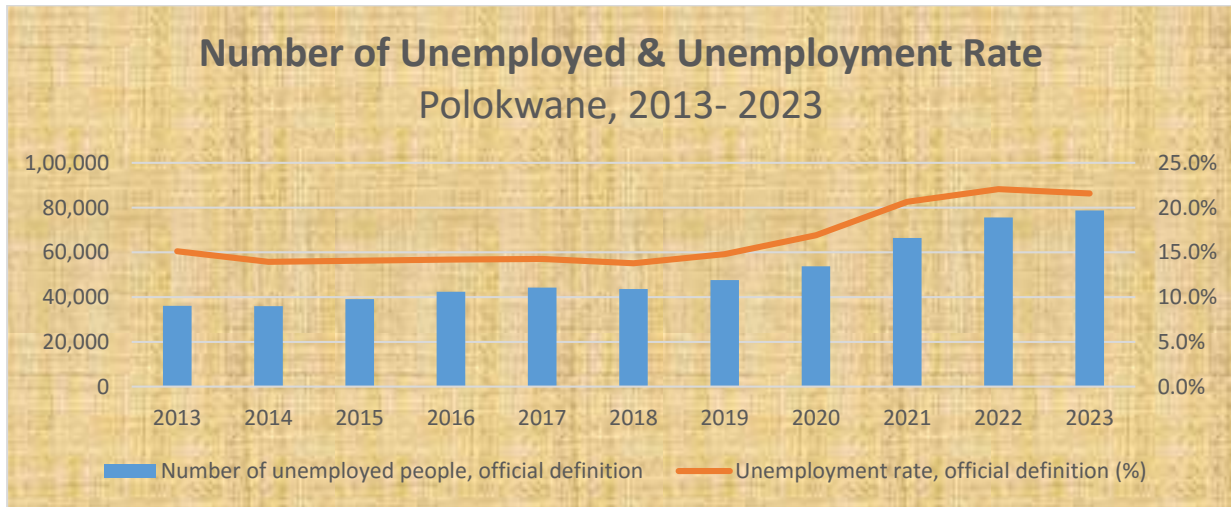
TABLE 22. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2013	15,1%	17,7%	19,3%	25,2%
2014	13,9%	16,5%	18,2%	25,2%
2015	14,1%	16,7%	18,6%	25,5%
2016	14,2%	17,0%	19,7%	26,4%
2017	14,3%	17,1%	20,0%	27,2%
2018	13,8%	16,6%	19,7%	27,4%
2019	14,8%	17,8%	21,3%	28,4%
2020	16,9%	20,3%	25,3%	30,3%
2021	20,6%	24,6%	30,8%	33,6%
2022	22,1%	26,3%	32,6%	33,7%
2023	21,6%	25,8%	31,9%	32,7%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

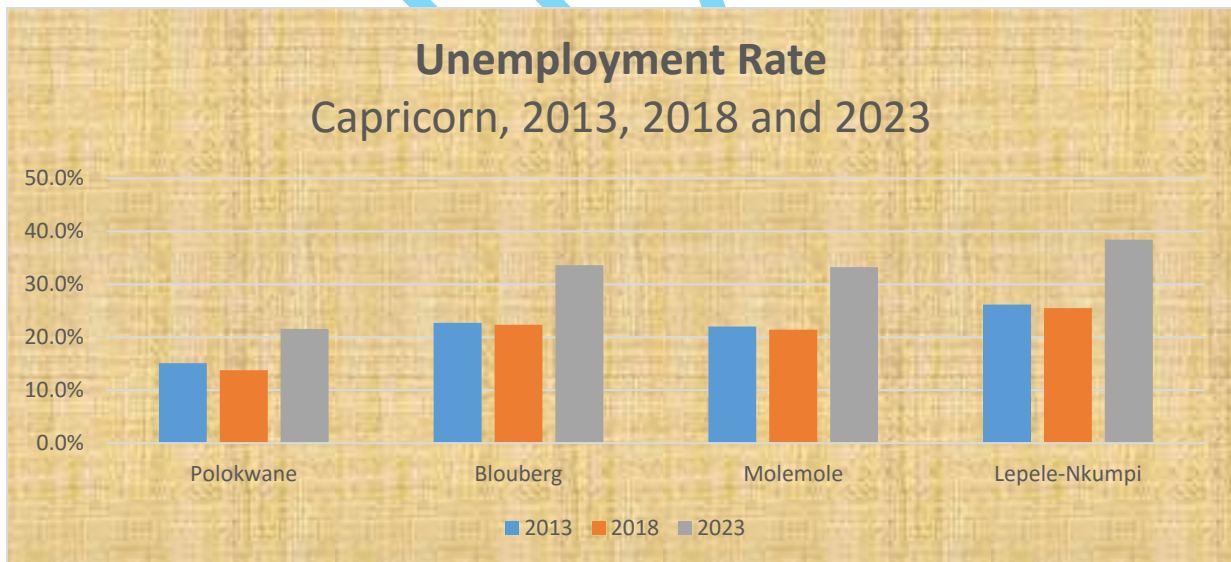
In 2023, the unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality (based on the official definition of unemployment) was 21.60%, which is an increase of 6.50 percentage points. The unemployment rate in Polokwane Local Municipality is lower than that of Capricorn. Comparing to the Limpopo Province it can be seen that the unemployment rate for Polokwane Local Municipality was lower than that of Limpopo which was 31.90%. The unemployment rate for South Africa was 32.70% in 2023, which is an increase of 7.50 percentage points from 25.20% in 2013.

CHART 18. UNEMPLOYMENT AND UNEMPLOYMENT RATE (OFFICIAL DEFINITION) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

CHART 19. UNEMPLOYMENT RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2013, 2018 AND 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

When comparing unemployment rates among regions within Capricorn District Municipality, Lepelle-Nkumpi Local Municipality has indicated the highest unemployment rate of 38.4%, which has increased from 26.2% in 2013. It can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the lowest unemployment rate of 21.6% in 2023, this increased from 15.1% in 2013.

4.9 Income and Expenditure

In a growing economy among which production factors are increasing, most of the household incomes are spent on purchasing goods and services. Therefore, the measuring of the income and expenditure of households is a major indicator of a number of economic trends. It is also a good marker of growth as well as consumer tendencies.

4.9.1 Number of Households by Income category

The number of households is grouped according to predefined income categories or brackets, where income is calculated as the sum of all household gross disposable income: payments in kind, gifts, homemade goods sold, old age pensions, income from informal sector activities, subsistence income, etc.). Note that income tax is included in the income distribution.

Income categories start at R0 - R2,400 per annum and go up to R2,400,000+ per annum. A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. These income brackets do not take into account inflation creep: over time, movement of households "up" the brackets is natural, even if they are not earning any more in real terms.

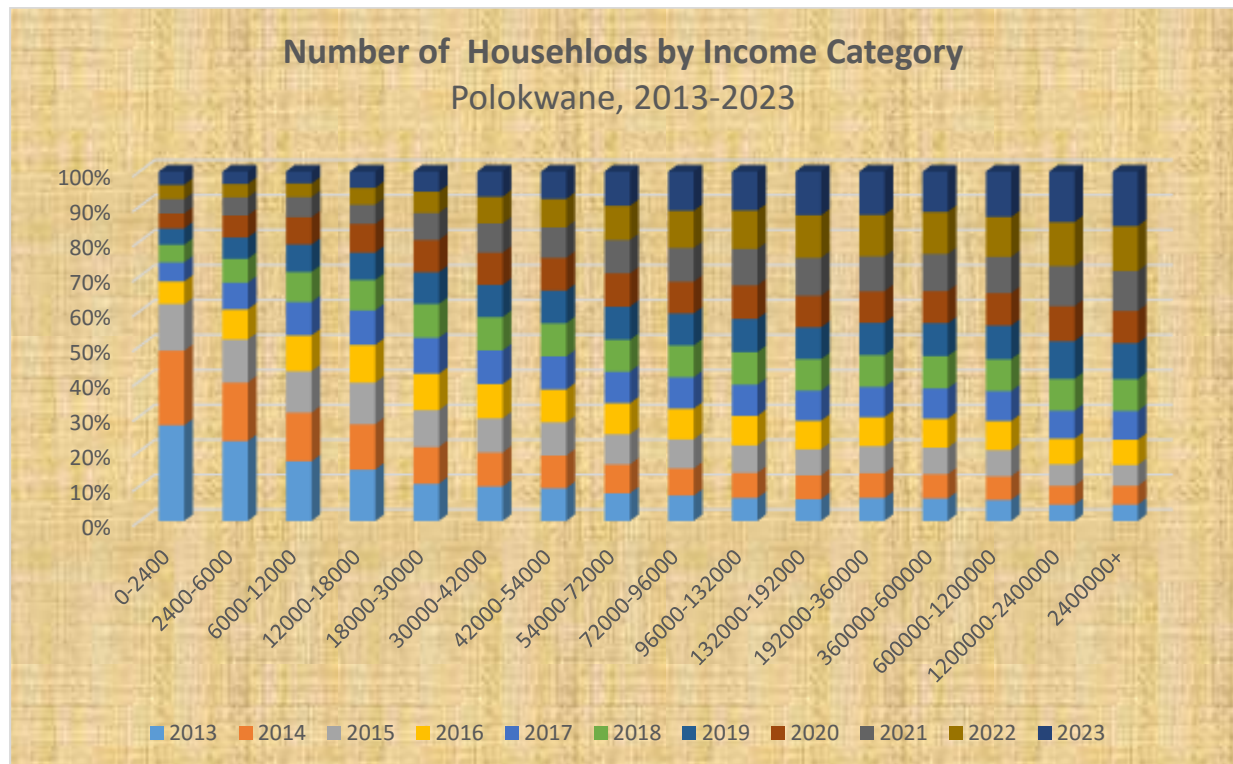
Table 23: Households by income category - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Income category	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
0-2400	18	28	121	1 174	64,60%	14,91%	1,54%
2400-6000	203	318	1 375	14 069	63,66%	14,74%	1,44%
6000-12000	1 463	2 354	10 184	99 481	62,17%	14,37%	1,47%
12000-18000	3 720	5 982	25 839	243 872	62,19%	14,40%	1,53%
18000-30000	13 892	23 001	102 688	888 228	60,39%	13,53%	1,56%
30000-42000	19 768	32 934	146 377	1 248 274	60,02%	13,50%	1,58%
42000-54000	20 202	33 883	152 053	1 257 497	59,62%	13,29%	1,61%
54000-72000	29 855	49 828	217 770	1 826 021	59,92%	13,71%	1,63%
72000-96000	30 551	50 462	217 167	1 947 789	60,54%	14,07%	1,57%
96000-132000	28 248	45 709	195 093	1 904 440	61,80%	14,48%	1,48%
132000-192000	29 299	46 372	193 617	1 971 037	63,18%	15,13%	1,49%
192000-360000	35 175	52 756	207 596	2 453 370	66,67%	16,94%	1,43%
360000-600000	21 262	30 346	110 493	1 562 811	70,06%	19,24%	1,36%
600000-1200000	16 341	22 163	77 019	1 377 665	73,73%	21,22%	1,19%
1200000-2400000	6 337	8 486	29 816	641 584	74,68%	21,25%	0,99%
2400000+	871	1 070	4 110	132 972	81,40%	21,18%	0,65%
Total	257 203	405 691	1 691 319	17 570 284	63,40%	15,21%	1,46%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

It was estimated that in 2023, 7.50% of all the households in the Polokwane Local Municipality, were living on R30,000 or less per annum. In comparison with 2013's 21.58%, the number is about half decrease. The 18000-30000 income category has the eighth highest number of households with a total number of 19 768, followed by the 192000-360000 income category with 35 175 households. Only 18 households fall within the 0-2400 income category.

CHART 20. HOUSEHOLDS BY INCOME BRACKET - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]



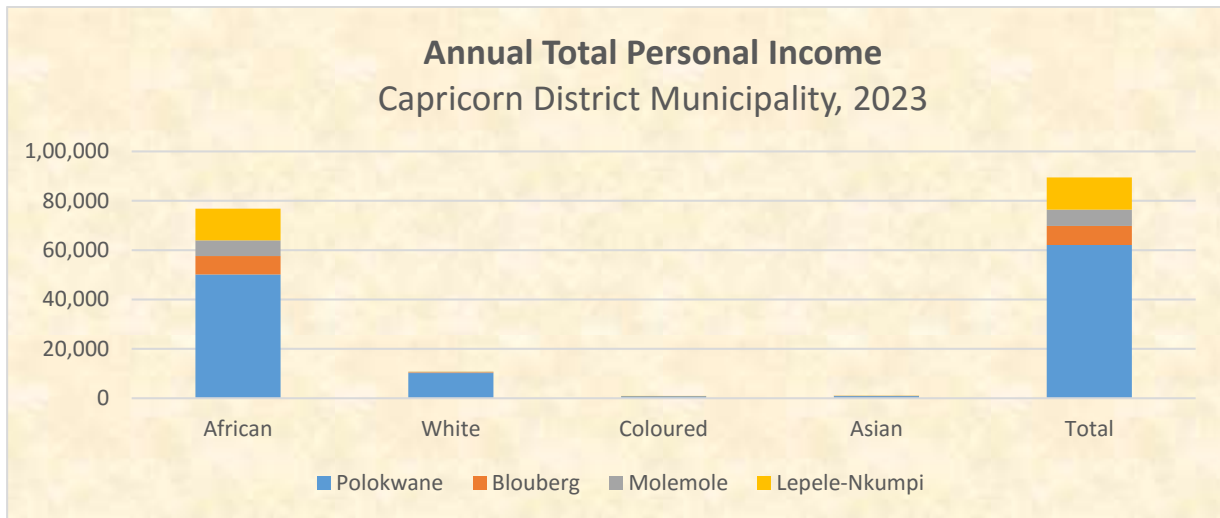
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

For the period 2013 to 2023 the number of households earning more than R30,000 per annum has increased from 78.42% to 92.50%. It can be seen that the number of households with income equal to or lower than R6,000 per year has decreased by a significant amount.

4.9.2 Annual total Personal Income

Personal income is an even broader concept than labour remuneration. Personal income includes profits, income from property, net current transfers and net social benefits.

TABLE 23. ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN [CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]



Source: IHS Global Insight 2024

The total personal income of Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to approximately R 62.06 billion in 2023. The African population group earned R 50.18 billion, or 80.82% of total personal income, while the White population group earned R 10.20 billion, or 16.43% of the total. The Asian and the Coloured population groups only had a share of 1.41% and 1.31% of total personal income respectively.

TABLE 24. ANNUAL TOTAL PERSONAL INCOME - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI [CURRENT PRICES, R BILLIONS]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2013	32 069	3 462	3 072	6 059
2014	34 735	3 741	3 333	6 616
2015	37 748	4 062	3 626	7 260
2016	41 404	4 454	3 979	8 018
2017	44 076	4 859	4 321	8 624
2018	46 862	5 270	4 665	9 455
2019	48 927	5 552	4 900	9 880
2020	47 541	5 459	4 796	9 581
2021	53 052	6 250	5 443	10 784
2022	58 492	7 147	6 152	12 113
2023	62 086	7 742	6 636	13 033
Average Annual Growth	6,83%	8,38%	8,00%	7,96%

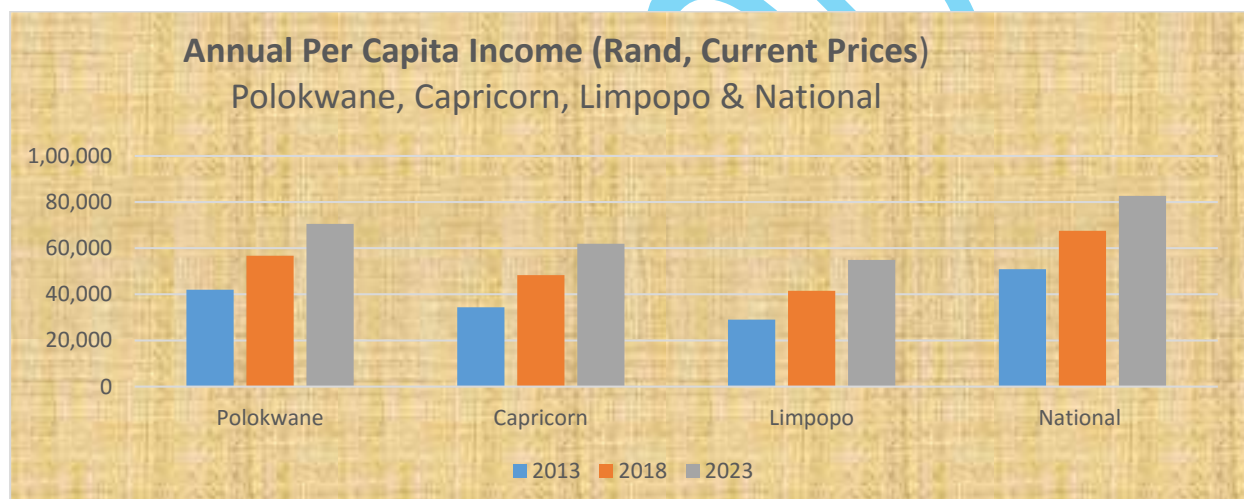
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

When looking at the annual total personal income for the regions within Capricorn District Municipality it can be seen that the Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest total personal income with R 62.08 billion which increased from R 32.06 billion recorded in 2013. It can be seen that the Molemole Local Municipality had the lowest total personal income of R 6.6 billion in 2023, this increased from R 3.07 billion in 2013.

4.9.3 Annual Per capita income

Per capita income is often used as a measure of wealth particularly when comparing economies or population groups. Rising per capita income usually indicates a likely swell in demand for consumption.

CHART 21. PER CAPITA INCOME - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2023 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The per capita income in Polokwane Local Municipality in 2023 is R70, 504 which is higher than both the Limpopo (R 54,906) and of the Capricorn District Municipality (R 57,272) per capita income. The per capita income for Polokwane Local Municipality (R 70, 504) is lower than that of South Africa as a whole which is R 82, 649.

CHART 22. PER CAPITA INCOME BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [RAND, CURRENT PRICES]

Population Group	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepelle-Nkumpi
African	205 503	164 554	179 438	199 775
White	895 786		927 151	
Coloured	353 633			
Asian	426 782			
Total	238 830	169 698	185 756	201 350

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest per capita income with a total of R 238,830. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality had the second highest per capita income at R 201,350, whereas Blouberg Local Municipality had the lowest per capita income at R 169,698. In Polokwane Local Municipality, the White population group has the highest per capita income, with R 895,786, relative to the other population groups. The population group with the second highest per capita income within Polokwane Local Municipality is the Asian population group (R 426,782), whereas the Coloured and the African population groups had a per capita income of R 353,633 and R 205,503 respectively.

4.9.4 Index of Buying Power (IBP)

The Index of Buying Power (IBP) is a measure of a region's overall capacity to absorb products and/or services. The index is useful when comparing two regions in terms of their capacity to buy products. Values range from 0 to 1 (where the national index equals 1), and can be interpreted as the percentage of national buying power attributable to the specific region. Regions' buying power usually depends on three factors: the size of the population; the ability of the population to spend (measured by total income); and the willingness of the population to spend (measured by total retail sales).

Index of buying power - Polokwane, Capricorn, Limpopo and National Total, 2023 [Number]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
Population	880 605	1 445 147	6 201 346	61 922 573
Population - share of national total	1,4%	2,3%	10,0%	100,0%
Income	62 086	89 497	340 494	5 117 844
Income - share of national total	1,2%	1,7%	6,7%	100,0%
Retail	4 938 329	7 137 270	27 519 752	1 368 047 000
Retail - share of national total	0,4%	0,5%	2,0%	100,0%
Index	0,01	0,01	0,06	1,00

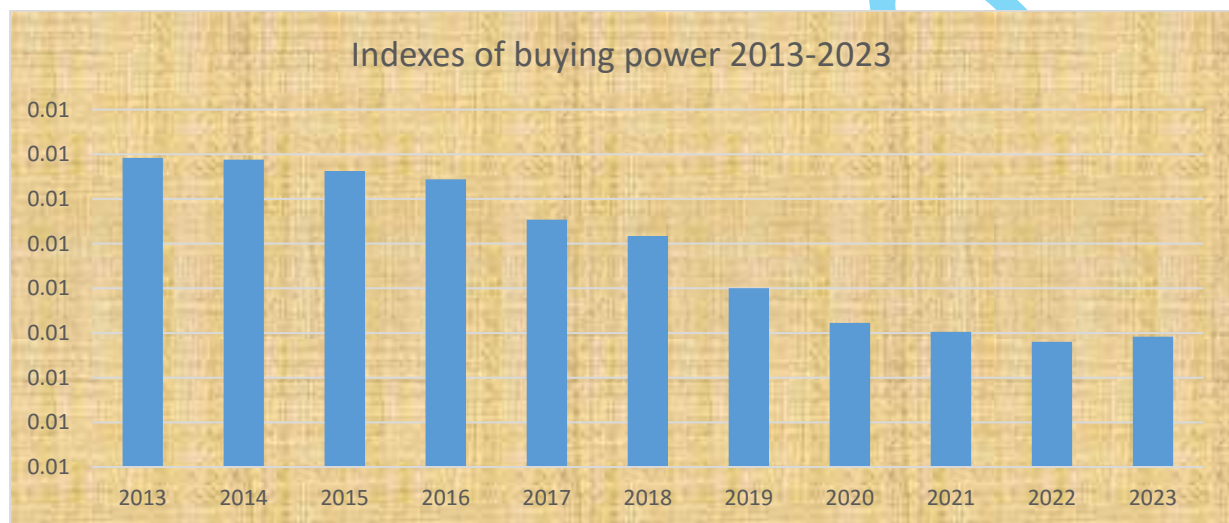
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality has a 1.4% share of the national population, 1.2% share of the total national income and a 0.4% share in the total national retail, this all equates to an IBP index value of 0.01 relative to South Africa as a whole. Capricorn has an IBP of 0.01, were

Limpopo Province has an IBP index value of 0.06 and South Africa a value of 1 relative to South Africa as a whole.

The considerable low index of buying power of the Polokwane Local Municipality suggests that the local municipality has access to only a small percentage of the goods and services available in all of the Capricorn District Municipality. Its residents are most likely spending some of their income in neighbouring areas.

CHART 23. INDEX OF BUYING POWER POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Between 2013 and 2023, the index of buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality was at its highest level in 2013 (0,01058387) to its lowest in 2023 (0,00976063).

The buying power within Polokwane Local Municipality is relatively small compared to other regions and increased at an average annual growth rate of -0.78%.

4.10 Development

Indicators of development, like the Human Development Index (HDI), Gini Coefficient (income inequality), poverty and the poverty gap, and education, are used to estimate the level of development of a given region in South Africa relative to the rest of the country.

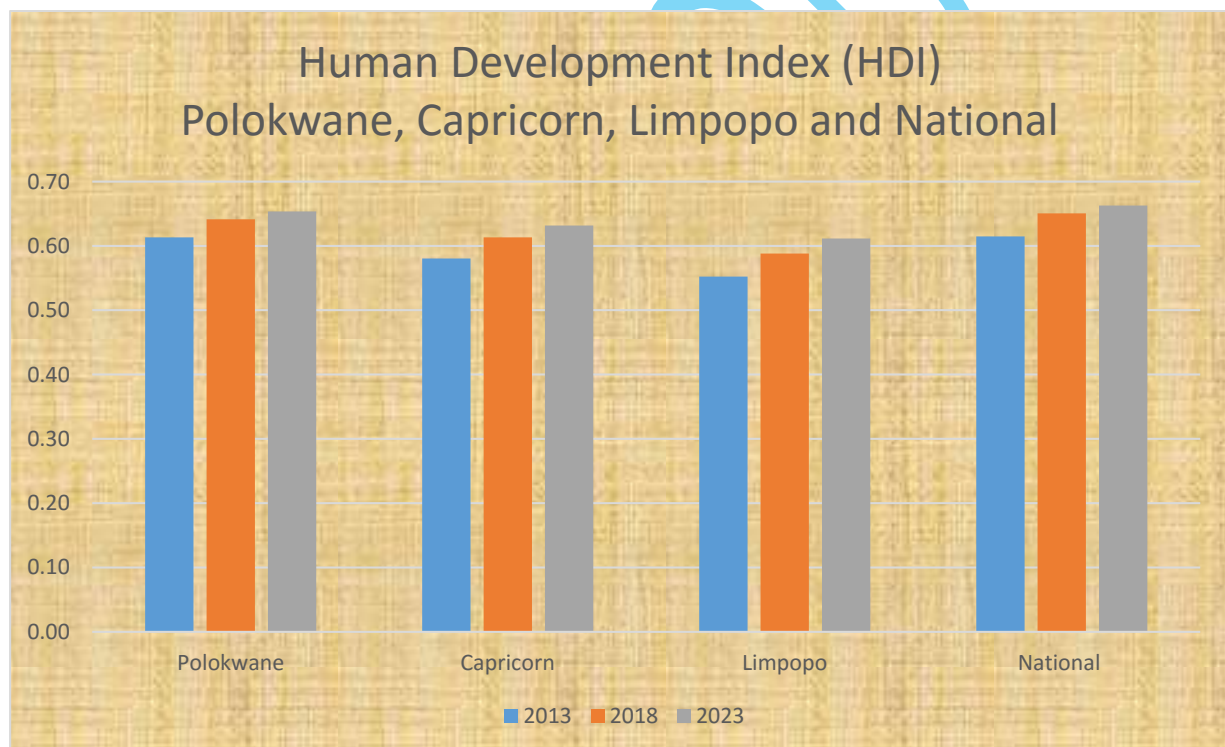
Another indicator that is widely used is the number (or percentage) of people living in poverty. Poverty is defined as the deprivation of those things that determine the quality of life, including food, clothing, shelter and safe drinking water. More than that, other "intangibles" is also included such as the opportunity to learn, and the privilege to enjoy the respect of fellow

citizens. Curbing poverty and alleviating the effects thereof should be a premise in the compilation of all policies that aspire towards a better life for all.

4.10.1 Human Development Index (HDI)

HDI is the combination of three basic dimensions of human development: A long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living. A long and healthy life is typically measured using life expectancy at birth. Knowledge is normally based on adult literacy and / or the combination of enrolment in primary, secondary and tertiary schools. In order to gauge a decent standard of living, we make use of GDP per capita. On a technical note, the HDI can have a maximum value of 1, indicating a very high level of human development, while the minimum value is 0, indicating no human development.

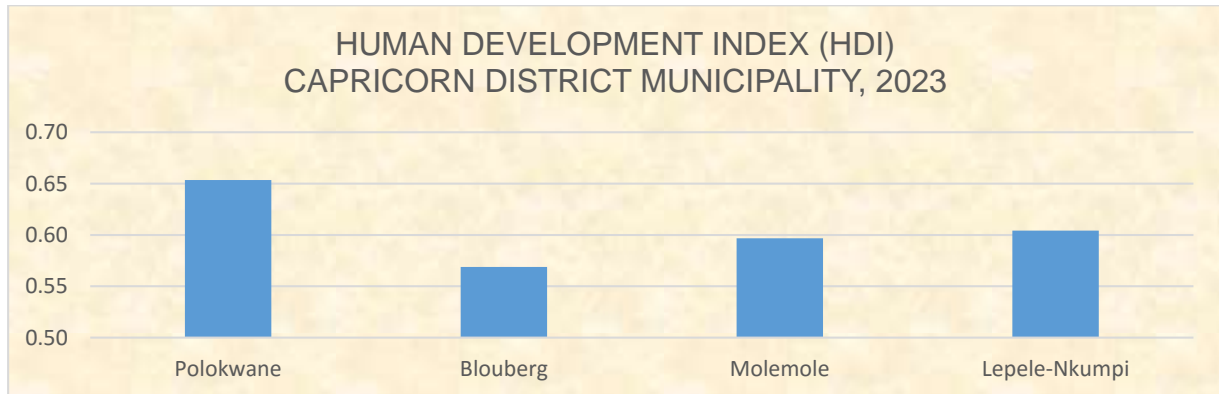
CHART 24. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013, 2018, 2023 [NUMBER]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023 Polokwane Local Municipality had an HDI of 0.65 compared to the Capricorn with an HDI of 0.63, 0.61 of Limpopo and 0.66 of National Total as a whole. South Africa recorded a higher HDI in 2023 when compared to Polokwane Local Municipality which translates to a lower human development for Polokwane Local Municipality compared to South Africa. South Africa's HDI increased at an average annual growth rate of 0.76% and this increase is higher than that of Polokwane Local Municipality (0.64%).

CHART 25. HUMAN DEVELOPMENT INDEX (HDI) - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [NUMBER]



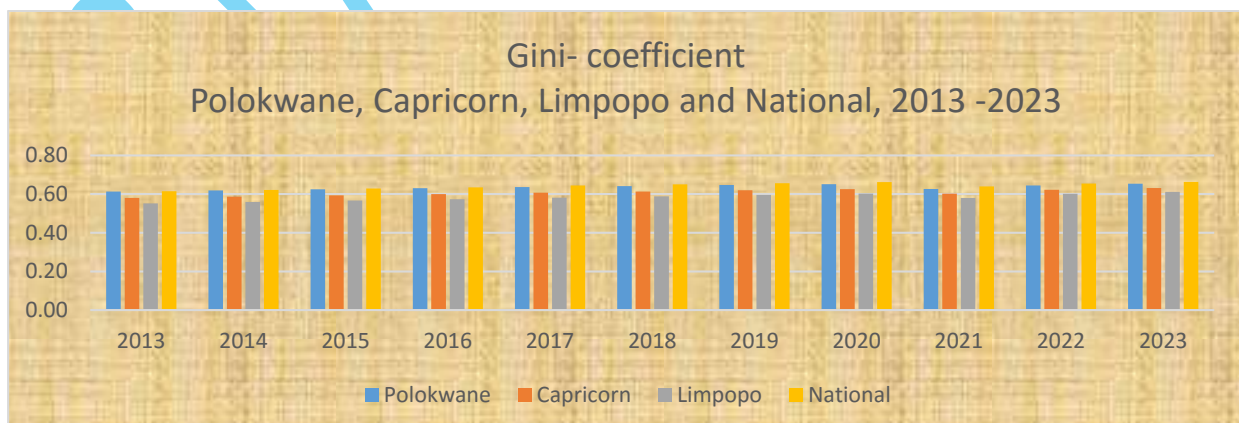
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In terms of the HDI for each, the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest HDI, with an index value of 0.65. The lowest can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.57.

4.10.2 Gini Coefficient

If the Gini coefficient is equal to zero, income is distributed in a perfectly equal manner, in other words there is no variance between the high and low income earners within the population. In contrast, if the Gini coefficient equals 1, income is completely inequitable, i.e. one individual in the population is earning all the income and the rest has no income. Generally, this coefficient lies in the range between 0.25 and 0.70.

CHART 26. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [NUMBER]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, the Gini coefficient in Polokwane Local Municipality was at 0.65, which reflects a decrease in the number over the ten-year period from 2013 to 2023. The Capricorn District

Municipality and the Limpopo Province had a Gini coefficient of 0.63 and 0.61 respectively. When Polokwane Local Municipality is contrasted against the entire South Africa, it can be seen that Polokwane has a more equal income distribution with a lower Gini coefficient compared to the South African coefficient of 0.66 in 2023. This has been the case for the entire 10-year history.

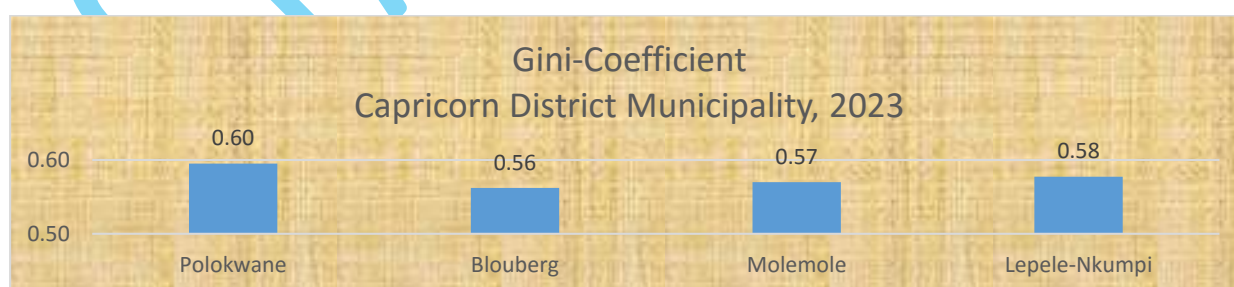
TABLE 25. GINI COEFFICIENT BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE, 2013, 2023 [NUMBER]

Financial Year	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2013	0,61	0,42	0,56	0,50
2023	0,58	0,40	0,52	0,46
Average Annual Growth				
	-0,50%	-0,39%	-0,87%	-0,84%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

When segmenting the Polokwane Local Municipality into population groups, it can be seen that the Gini coefficient for the African population group decreased the least amongst the population groups with an average annual growth rate of -0.50%. The White population group had the highest average annual growth of -0.39% from 2013 to 2023. The Gini coefficient for the Coloured population group decreased the most with an average annual growth rate of -0.87%. This implies that the African and Coloured population groups have not improved in terms of income equality within its own population group over the period. The Asian population group has seen no change in terms of income equality and the White population group has seen an improvement in income equality from 2013 to 2023.

CHART 27. GINI COEFFICIENT - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [NUMBER]

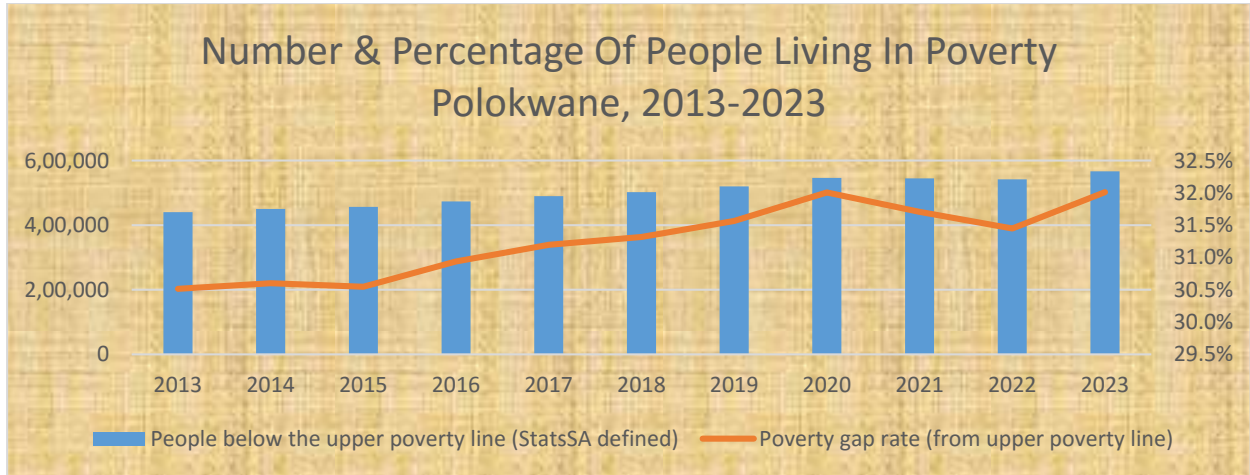


Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In terms of the Gini coefficient for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest Gini coefficient, with an index value of 0.60. The lowest Gini coefficient can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with an index value of 0.56.

4.11Poverty

CHART 28. NUMBER AND PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, there were 566 878 people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition, across Polokwane Local Municipality - this is 126 523 higher than the 430 355 in 2013. The percentage of people living in poverty has increased from 30.5% in 2013 to 32.0% in 2023, which indicates an increase of 1.5 percentage points.

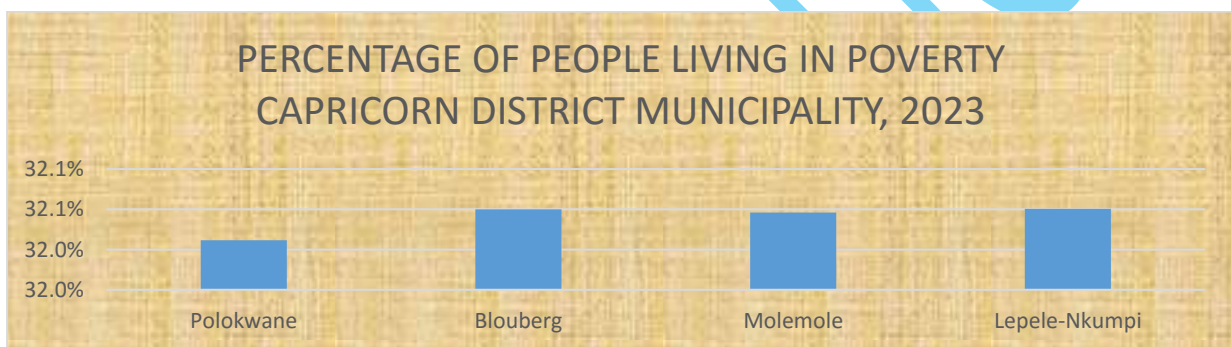
TABLE 26. PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	African	White	Coloured	Asian
2013	60,8%	1,2%	31,6%	7,3%
2014	61,1%	1,3%	33,1%	7,3%
2015	60,9%	1,3%	35,0%	7,1%
2016	62,1%	1,6%	37,6%	8,7%
2017	63,2%	1,7%	37,8%	10,7%
2018	63,8%	1,9%	36,1%	13,4%
2019	65,1%	2,2%	33,7%	18,6%
2020	67,4%	3,0%	32,7%	22,6%
2021	66,4%	3,0%	30,1%	19,6%
2022	65,3%	2,9%	30,5%	17,7%
2023	67,5%	0,0%	36,8%	19,2%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, the population group with the highest percentage of people living in poverty was the African population group with a total of 67.5% people living in poverty, using the upper poverty line definition. The proportion of the African population group, living in poverty, increased by 6.70 percentage points, as can be seen by the change from 60.8% in 2013 to 67.5% in 2023. In 2023 36.8% of the Coloured population group lived in poverty, as compared to the 31.6% in 2013. The White and the Asian population group saw an increase in the percentage of people living in poverty, with an increase of 1.2 and an increase of 11.9 percentage points respectively.

TABLE 27. PERCENTAGE OF PEOPLE LIVING IN POVERTY - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



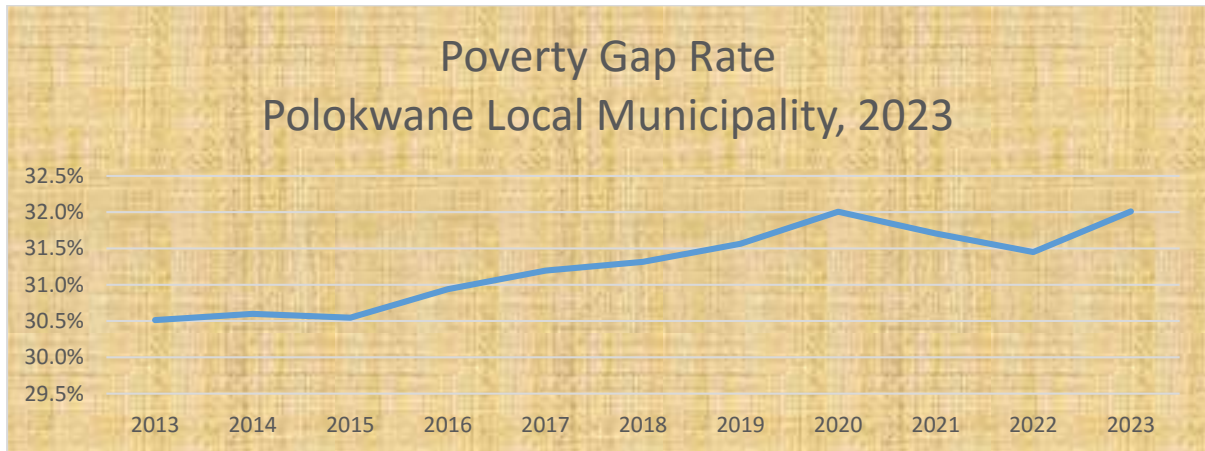
Source: IHS Global Insight 2024

4.11.1 Poverty Gap Rate

The poverty gap is used as an indicator to measure the depth of poverty. The gap measures the average distance of the population from the poverty line and is expressed as a percentage of the upper bound poverty line, as defined by StatsSA. The Poverty Gap deals with a major shortcoming of the poverty rate, which does not give any indication of the depth, of poverty. The upper poverty line is defined by StatsSA as the level of consumption at which individuals are able to purchase both sufficient food and non-food items without sacrificing one for the other.

It is estimated that the poverty gap rate in Polokwane Local Municipality amounted to 32.0% in 2023 - the rate needed to bring all poor households up to the poverty line and out of poverty.

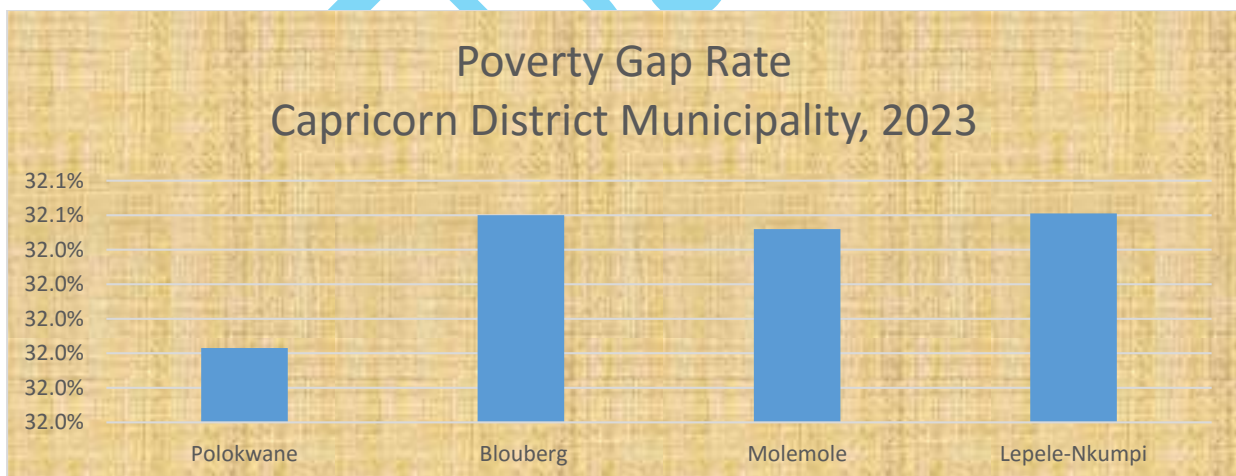
TABLE 28. POVERTY GAP RATE BY POPULATION GROUP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, the poverty gap rate was 32.0% and in 2013 the poverty gap rate was 30.5%, it can be seen that the poverty gap rate increased from 2013 to 2023, which means that there was an increase in terms of the depth of the poverty within Polokwane Local Municipality.

TABLE 29. POVERTY GAP RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

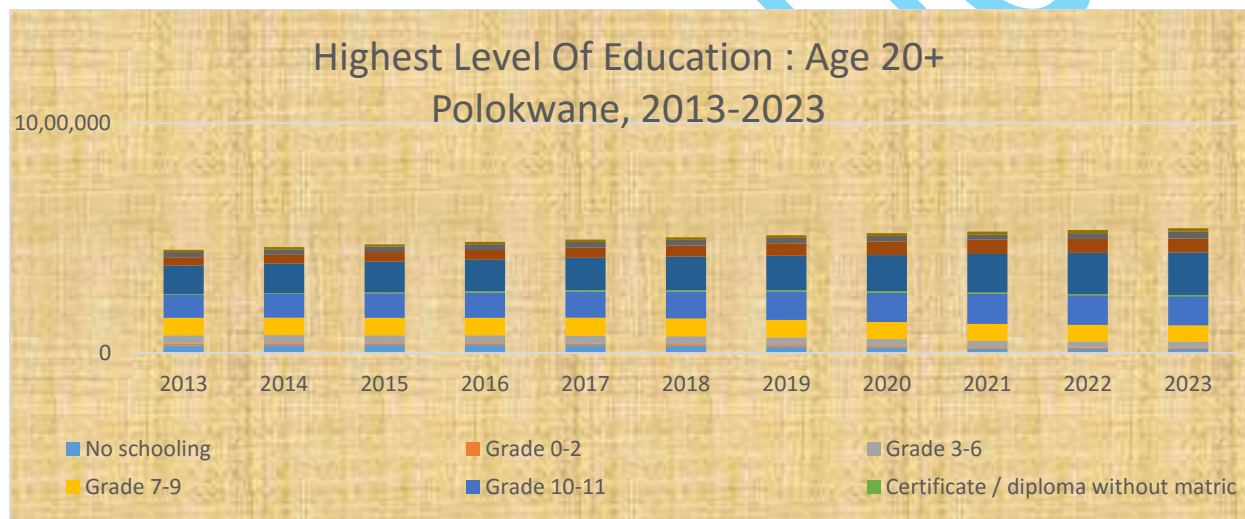
In terms of the poverty gap rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Blouberg Local Municipality and Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality share the highest poverty gap rate, with a rand value of 32.5% and 32.1% respectively. The lowest poverty gap rate can be observed in the Polokwane Local Municipality with a total of 32.0%.

4.12 Education

Educating is important to the economic growth in a country and the development of its industries, providing a trained workforce and skilled professionals required.

The education measure represents the highest level of education of an individual, using the 15 years and older age category. (According to the United Nations definition of education, one is an adult when 15 years or older. IHS uses this cut-off point to allow for cross-country comparisons. Furthermore, the age of 15 is also the legal age at which children may leave school in South Africa).

CHART 29. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 20+ - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Within Polokwane Local Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2013 to 2023 with an average annual rate of -5.88%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 123 634 to 184 245. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 4.07%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 3.29%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

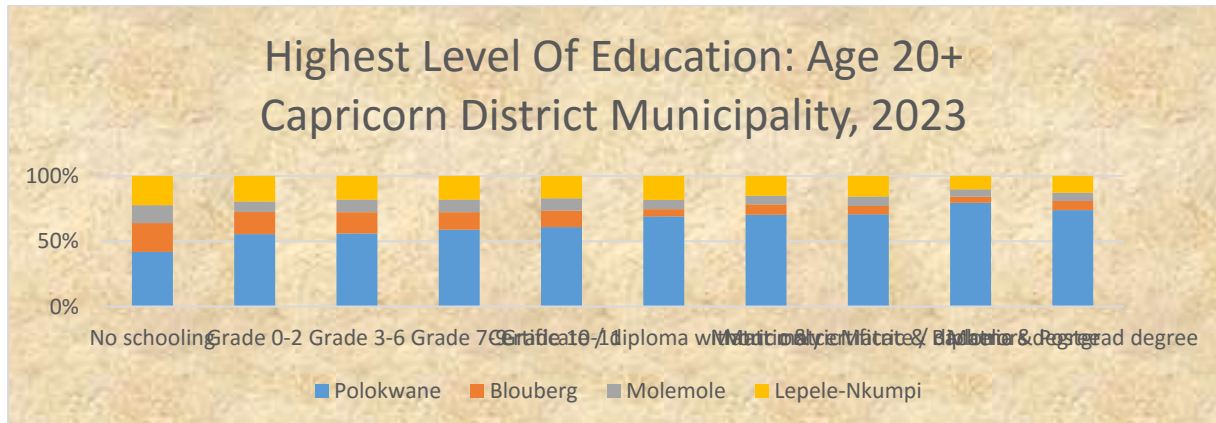
TABLE 30. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2023 [NUMBERS]

Highest level of education	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
No schooling	17 894	42 778	226 851	1 390 088	41,83%	7,89%	1,29%
Grade 0-2	5 585	10 066	53 731	428 643	55,49%	10,39%	1,30%
Grade 3-6	26 861	48 029	228 263	2 446 006	55,93%	11,77%	1,10%
Grade 7-9	70 034	119 083	563 219	5 734 873	58,81%	12,43%	1,22%
Grade 10-11	126 948	208 754	1 000 398	9 831 137	60,81%	12,69%	1,29%
Certificate / diploma without matric	5 357	7 761	26 154	141 091	69,03%	20,48%	3,80%
Matric only	184 245	262 379	1 022 156	13 743 519	70,22%	18,03%	1,34%
Matric & certificate / diploma	60 409	85 535	292 812	2 847 163	70,62%	20,63%	2,12%
Matric & Bachelor's degree	31 434	39 555	118 568	1 880 204	79,47%	26,51%	1,67%
Matric & Postgrad degree	14 041	19 037	60 003	1 120 279	73,76%	23,40%	1,25%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The number of people without any schooling in Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for 41.83% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 7.89% of the province and 1.29% of the national. In 2023, the number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality with a matric only was 184,245 which is a share of 70.22% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a postgraduate degree constitutes 73.76% of the district municipality, 23.40% of the province and 1.25% of the national.

TABLE 31. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+, POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Within Polokwane Local Municipality, the number of people without any schooling decreased from 2013 to 2023 with an average annual rate of -5.88%, while the number of people within the 'matric only' category, increased from 123 634 to 184 245. The number of people with 'matric and a certificate/diploma' increased with an average annual rate of 4.07%, with the number of people with a 'matric and a Bachelor's' degree increasing with an average annual rate of 3.29%. Overall improvement in the level of education is visible with an increase in the number of people with 'matric' or higher education.

TABLE 32. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+ - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2023 [NUMBERS]

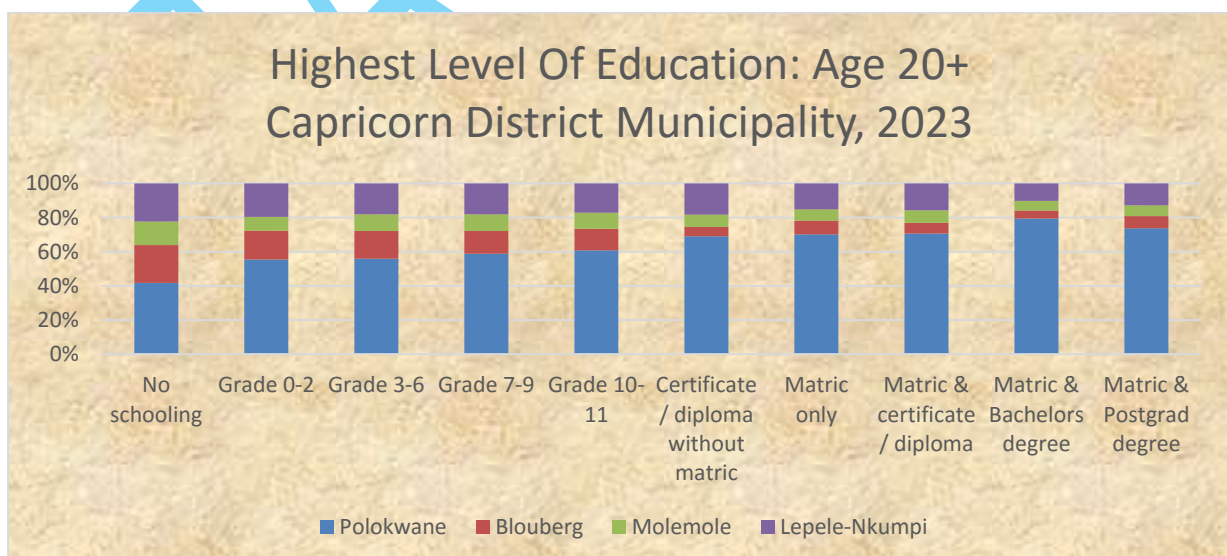
Highest level of education	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
No schooling	17 894	42 778	226 851	1 390 088	41,83%	7,89%	1,29%
Grade 0-2	5 585	10 066	53 731	428 643	55,49%	10,39%	1,30%
Grade 3-6	26 861	48 029	228 263	2 446 006	55,93%	11,77%	1,10%
Grade 7-9	70 034	119 083	563 219	5 734 873	58,81%	12,43%	1,22%
Grade 10-11	126 948	208 754	1 000 398	9 831 137	60,81%	12,69%	1,29%
Certificate / diploma without matric	5 357	7 761	26 154	141 091	69,03%	20,48%	3,80%

Highest level of education	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National	Polokwane as % of District	Polokwane as % of Province	Polokwane as % of National
Matric only	184 245	262 379	1 022 156	13 743 519	70,22%	18,03%	1,34%
Matric & certificate / diploma	60 409	85 535	292 812	2 847 163	70,62%	20,63%	2,12%
Matric & Bachelor's degree	31 434	39 555	118 568	1 880 204	79,47%	26,51%	1,67%
Matric & Postgrad degree	14 041	19 037	60 003	1 120 279	73,76%	23,40%	1,25%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The number of people without any schooling in Polokwane Local Municipality accounts for 41.83% of the number of people without schooling in the district municipality, 7.89% of the province and 1.29% of the national. In 2023, the number of people in Polokwane Local Municipality with a matric only was 184,245 which is a share of 70.22% of the district municipality's total number of people that has obtained a matric. The number of people with a matric and a postgraduate degree constitutes 73.76% of the district municipality, 23.40% of the province and 1.25% of the national.

TABLE 33. HIGHEST LEVEL OF EDUCATION: AGE 15+, POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLÉ AND LEPELE-NKUMPI 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.12.1 Functional literacy

Functional literacy describes the reading and writing skills that are adequate for an individual to cope with the demands of everyday life - including the demands posed in the workplace. This is contrasted with illiteracy in the strictest sense, meaning the inability to read or write. Functional literacy enables individuals to enter the labour market and contribute towards economic growth thereby reducing poverty.

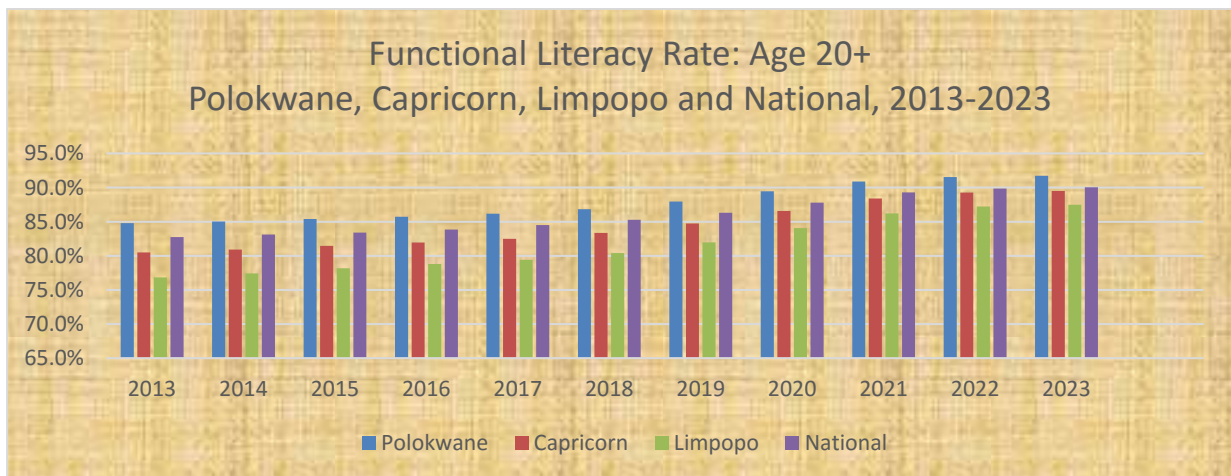
Functional literacy: age 20+, completed grade 7 or higher - Polokwane Local Municipality, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Illiterate	Literate	Total
2013	80 501	448 377	84,8%
2014	80 630	458 180	85,0%
2015	80 187	468 762	85,4%
2016	79 727	478 442	85,7%
2017	78 428	488 361	86,2%
2018	75 790	499 961	86,8%
2019	70 461	515 139	88,0%
2020	62 883	533 238	89,5%
2021	55 173	550 509	90,9%
2022	52 070	564 387	91,6%
2023	51 839	575 788	91,7%
Average Annual Growth			
	-4,31%	2,53%	87,8%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

A total of 575 788 individuals in Polokwane Local Municipality were considered functionally literate in 2023, while 51 839 people were considered to be illiterate. Expressed as a rate, this amounts to 91.7% of the population, which is an increase of 6.90 percentage points since 2013 (84.8%). The number of illiterate individuals decreased on average by -4.31% annually from 2013 to 2023, with the number of functional literate people increasing at 2.53% annually.

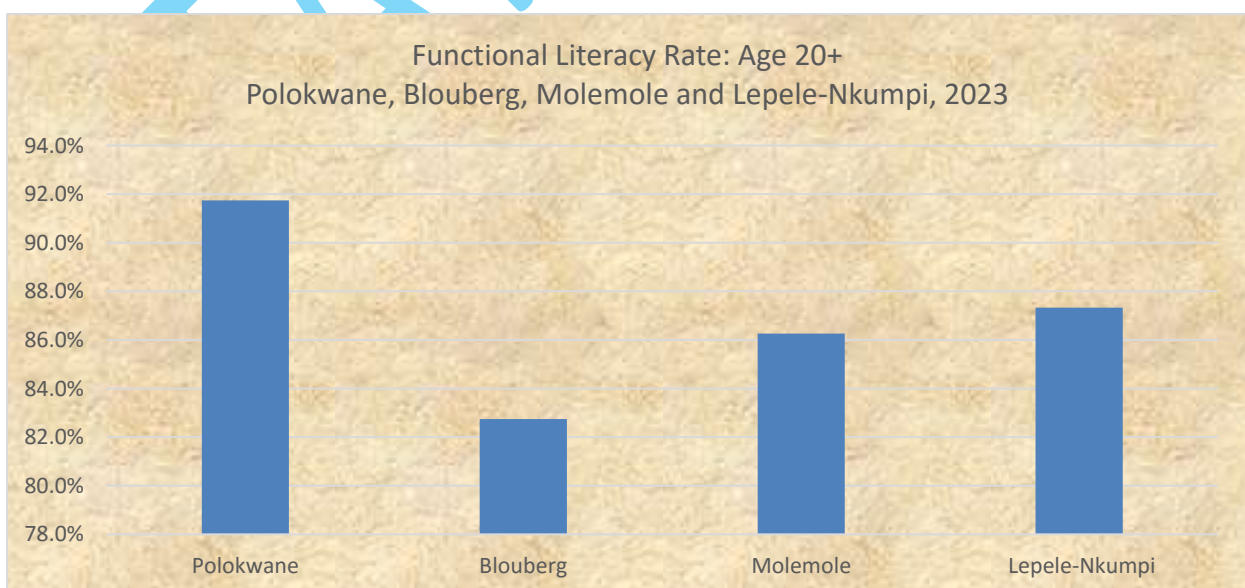
CHART 30. FUNCTIONAL LITERACY: AGE 20+, COMPLETED GRADE 7 OR HIGHER - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality's functional literacy rate of 91.7% in 2023 is higher than that of Capricorn at 89.5%, and is higher than the province rate of 87.5%. When comparing to National Total as whole, which has a functional literacy rate of 90.0%, it can be seen that the functional literacy rate is lower than that of the Polokwane Local Municipality.

CHART 31. LITERACY RATE - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]

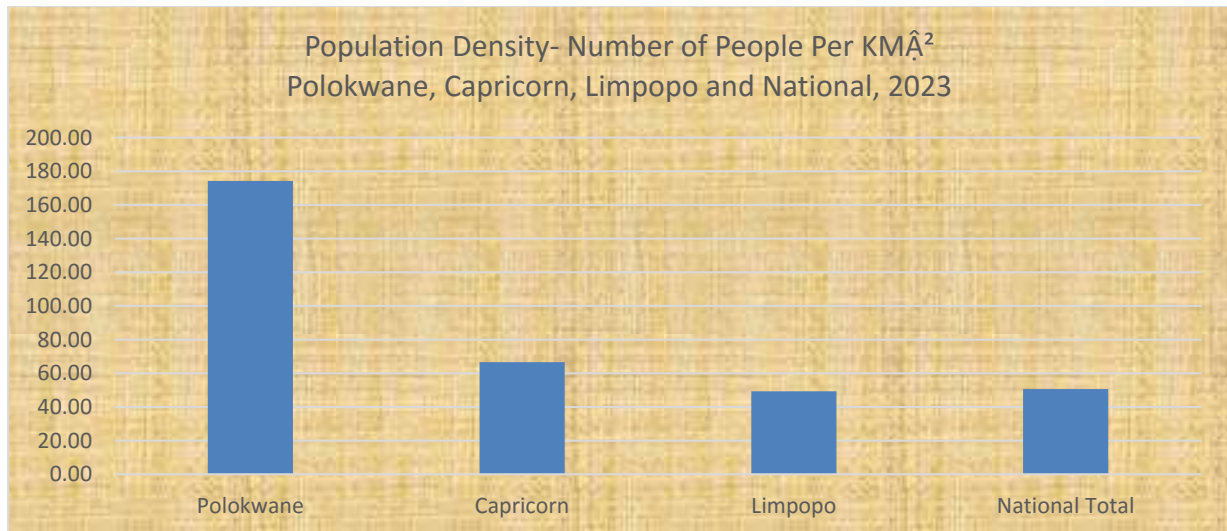


Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In terms of the literacy rate for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest literacy rate, with a total of 91.7%. The lowest literacy rate can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 82.7%.

4.13 Population Density

CHART 32. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2023 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, with an average of 174.25 people per square kilometre, Polokwane Local Municipality had a higher population density than Capricorn (66.58 people per square kilometer). Compared to Limpopo Province (49.31 per square kilometer) it can be seen that there are more people living per square kilometer in Polokwane Local Municipality than in Limpopo Province.

CHART 33. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2013-2023 [NUMBER OF PEOPLE PER KM]

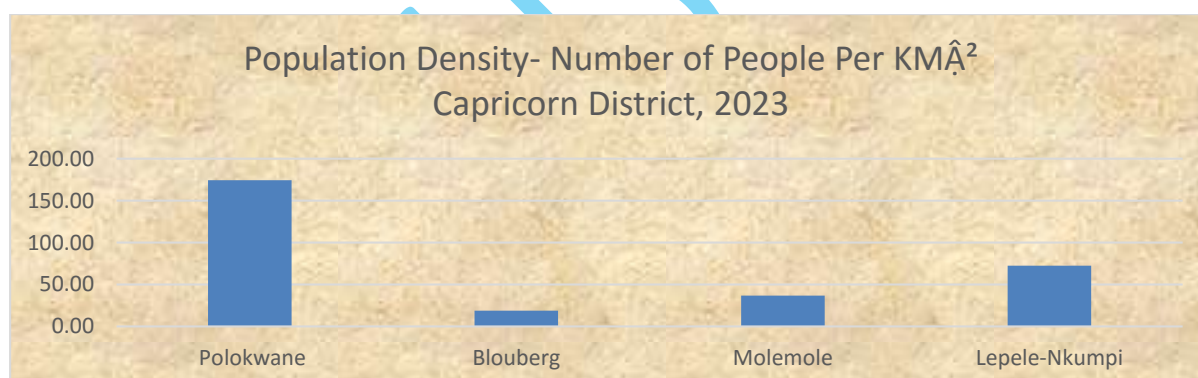
Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2013	151,06	18,31	34,92	67,12
2014	153,55	18,25	34,93	67,43
2015	156,12	18,23	34,99	67,84
2016	158,61	18,22	35,10	68,28
2017	161,08	18,25	35,24	68,79
2018	163,48	18,30	35,43	69,35
2019	165,85	18,38	35,65	69,93

2020	168,18	18,48	35,89	70,53
2021	170,11	18,55	36,08	71,04
2022	172,14	18,67	36,34	71,66
2023	174,25	18,82	36,65	72,34
Average Annual Growth				
2013-2023	1,44%	0,27%	0,48%	0,75%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, Polokwane Local Municipality had a population density of 174.25 per square kilometre and it ranked highest amongst its peers. In terms of growth, Polokwane Local Municipality had an average annual growth in its population density of 1.44% per square kilometre per annum. It was also the region that had the highest average annual growth rate. In 2023, the region with the lowest population density within Capricorn District Municipality was Blouberg with 18.82 people per square kilometre; it was also the region with the lowest average annual growth rate of 0.27% people per square kilometre over the period under consideration.

CHART 34. POPULATION DENSITY - POLOKWANE, BLOUBERG, MOLEMOLE AND LEPELE-NKUMPI, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In terms of the population density for each of the regions within the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane Local Municipality had the highest density, with 172.25 people per square kilometre. The lowest population density can be observed in the Blouberg Local Municipality with a total of 18.82 people per square kilometre.

4.14 Crime RATE

The state of crime in South Africa has been the topic of many media articles and papers in the past years, and although many would acknowledge that the country has a crime problem, very little research has been done on the relative level of crime. The media often tend to focus on

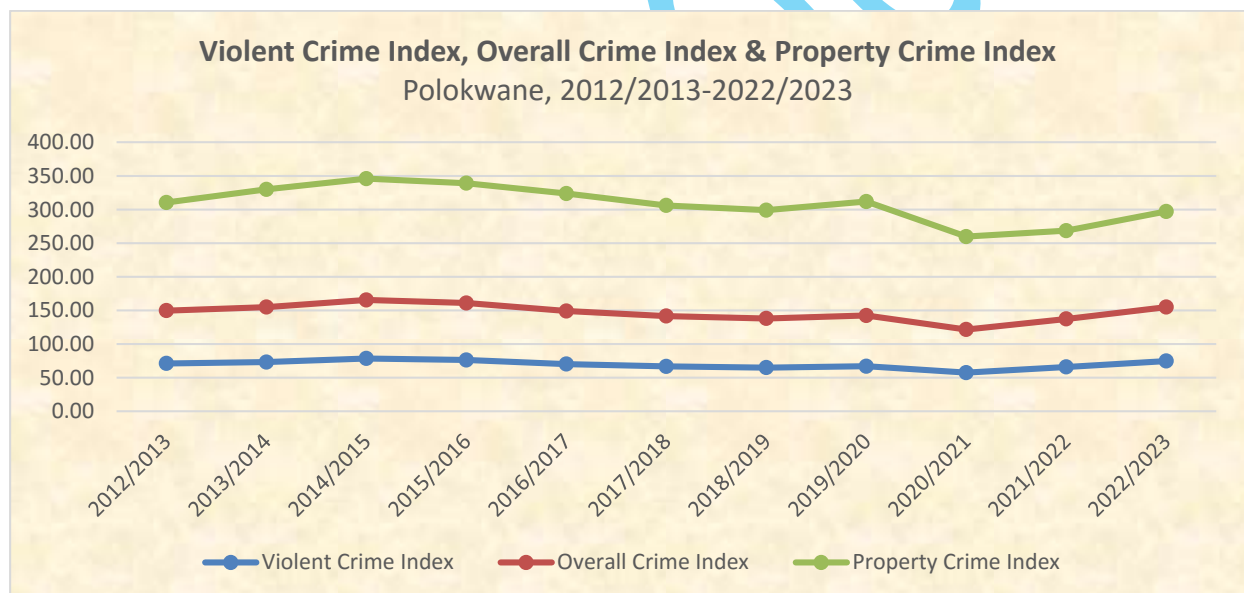
more negative or sensational information, while the progress made in combating crime is neglected.

4.14.1 Composite Crime Index

The S & P Composite Crime Index makes use of the official SAPS data, which is reported in 27 crime categories (ranging from murder to crime injuries). These 27 categories are divided into two groups according to the nature of the crime: i.e. violent crimes and property crimes. IHS uses the (a) Length-of-sentence and the (b) Cost-of-crime in order to apply a weight to each category.

4.14.2 Overall Crime index

CHART 35. IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2012/2013-2022/2023 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

For the period 2012/2013 to 2022/2023 overall crime has increased at an average annual rate of 0.21% within the Polokwane Local Municipality. Violent crime increased by 0.49% since 2012/2013, while property crimes decreased by -1.23% between the 2012/2013 and 2022/2023 financial years.

TABLE 34. OVERALL CRIME INDEX - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2012/2013-2022/2023 [INDEX VALUE]

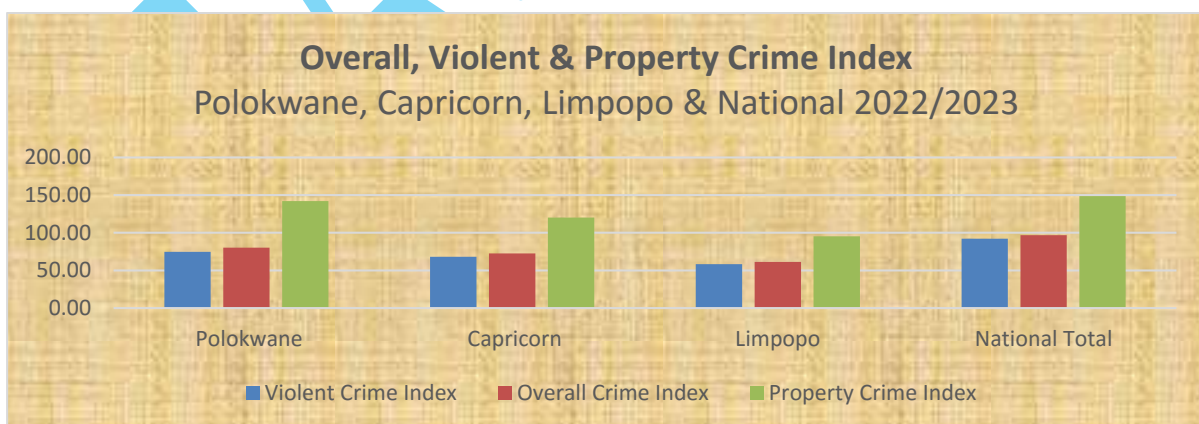
Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2012/2013	78,59	31,78	64,42	49,86
2013/2014	81,71	28,65	64,55	48,76
2014/2015	87,00	30,61	66,27	53,06

Financial Year	Polokwane	Blouberg	Molemole	Lepele-Nkumpi
2015/2016	84,72	33,60	73,09	60,36
2016/2017	78,88	31,71	69,30	52,04
2017/2018	74,87	35,86	68,73	52,95
2018/2019	73,02	37,59	77,13	54,72
2019/2020	75,49	36,06	78,95	53,86
2020/2021	64,15	30,79	65,15	53,82
2021/2022	71,40	39,06	73,38	54,67
2022/2023	80,29	38,50	77,09	67,16
Average Annual Growth				
2012/13-2022/23	0,21%	1,94%	1,81%	3,02%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2022/2023, the Polokwane Local Municipality has the highest overall crime rate of the sub-regions within the overall Capricorn District Municipality with an index value of 80.29. Molemole Local Municipality has the second highest overall crime index at 77.09, with Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality having the third highest overall crime index of 67.16. Lepele-Nkumpi Local Municipality has the second lowest overall crime index of 67.16 and the Blouberg Local Municipality has the lowest overall crime rate of 38.50. The region that increased slightly in overall crime since 2012/2013 was Molemole Local Municipality with an average annual increase of 1.81% followed by Blouberg Local Municipality with a moderate average annual increase of 1.94%.

CHART 36. IHS CRIME INDEX - CALENDER YEARS (WEIGHTED AVG / 100,000 PEOPLE) - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2022/2023 [INDEX VALUE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

From the chart above it is evident that property crime is a major problem for all the regions relative to violent crime.

4.15 Tourism

Tourism can be defined as the social, cultural and economic phenomenon which entails the movement of people to countries or places outside their usual environment for personal or business/professional purposes. Whether you visit a relative or friend, travel for business purposes, go on holiday or on medical and religious trips - these are all included in tourism.

4.15.1 Trips by purpose of trips

The main purpose for an overnight trip is grouped into these categories:

- Leisure / Holiday
- Business
- Visits to friends and relatives
- Other (Medical, Religious, etc.)

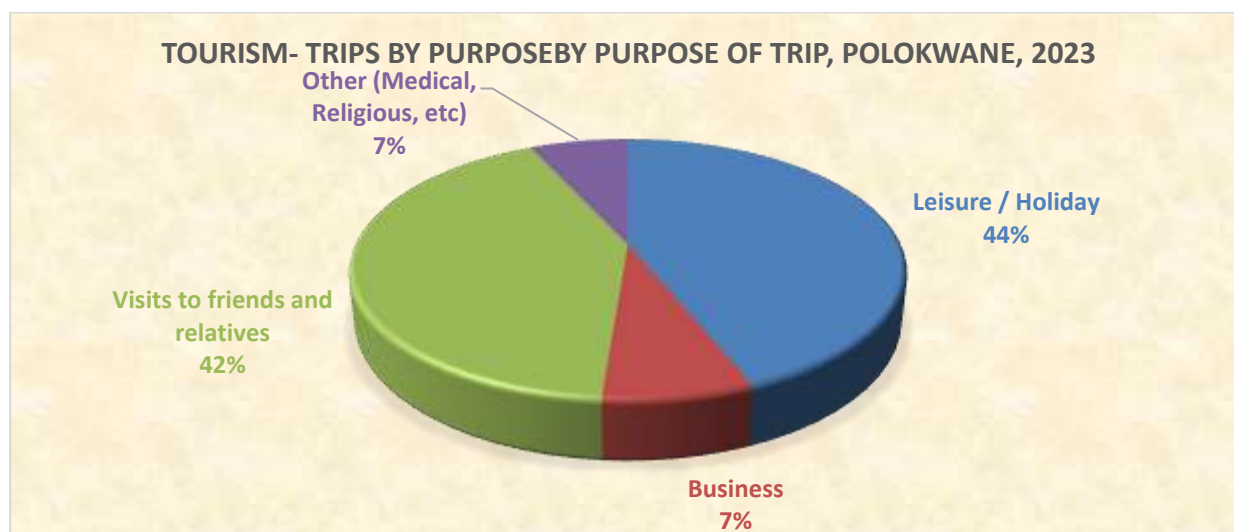
TABLE: NUMBER OF TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIPS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [NUMBER PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Leisure / Holiday	Business	Visits to friends and relatives	Other (Medical, Religious, etc)	Total
2013	106 782	103 549	776 346	364 888	1 351 564
2014	94 388	100 668	809 859	387 774	1 392 688
2015	83 374	98 566	822 921	387 764	1 392 626
2016	84 903	99 478	827 616	390 093	1 402 090
2017	91 786	89 810	774 915	370 388	1 326 899
2018	105 575	79 358	718 746	316 344	1 220 024
2019	120 752	70 553	614 301	232 000	1 037 606
2020	97 986	41 280	448 470	139 641	727 377
2021	119 373	38 626	338 837	91 651	588 488
2022	236 842	55 242	342 604	73 055	707 743
2023	379 393	64 187	362 290	59 638	865 508
Average Annual Growth	13,52%	-4,67%	-7,34%	-16,57%	-4,36%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In Polokwane Local Municipality, the visits to friends and relatives, relative to the other tourism, recorded the highest negative average annual growth rate from 2013 (776 346) to 2023 (362 290) at -7.34%. Business recorded the lowest number of visits in 2023 at 64 187, with a negative average annual growth rate of -4.67%. The tourism type that recorded the lowest growth was Leisure/ holiday tourism with an average annual growth rate of 13.52% from 2013 (106 782) to 2023 (379 393). Other (Medical, Religion, etc.) recorded 59 638 visits in 2023 with a negative average annual growth of -16.57 from 2013 (364 888).

**CHART 46: TRIPS BY PURPOSE OF TRIP - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023
[PERCENTAGE]**



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The Visits to friends and relatives at 42% has largest share of the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality. Leisure/holiday tourism had the second highest share at 44%, followed by Business tourism at 7% and the Other (Medical, Religious, etc.) tourism with the smallest share of 7% of the total tourism within Polokwane Local Municipality.

4.15.2 Origin of Tourists

In the following table, the number of tourists that visited Polokwane Local Municipality from both domestic origins, as well as those coming from international places, are listed.

TABLE 41: TOTAL NUMBER OF TRIPS BY ORIGIN TOURISTS - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [NUMBER]

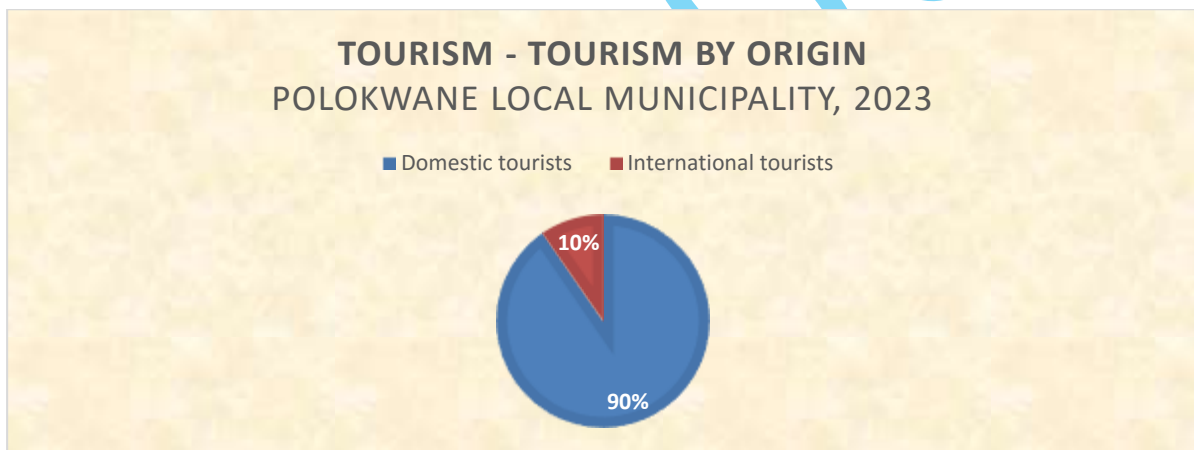
Financial Year	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
2013	1 218 107	133 457	1 351 564
2014	1 258 155	134 533	1 392 688
2015	1 268 066	124 560	1 392 626
2016	1 259 646	142 445	1 402 090
2017	1 178 218	148 681	1 326 899
2018	1 069 470	150 553	1 220 024
2019	892 828	144 778	1 037 606
2020	681 662	45 715	727 377
2021	557 856	30 632	588 488
2022	645 096	62 647	707 743
2023	782 614	82 894	865 508

Financial Year	Domestic tourists	International tourists	Total tourists
Average Annual Growth			
2013-2023	-4,33%	-4,65%	-4,36%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The number of trips by tourists visiting Polokwane Local Municipality from other regions in South Africa has decreased at a very low average annual rate of -4.33% from 2013 (1 218 107) to 2023 (782 614). The tourists visiting from other countries decreased at a relatively higher average annual growth rate of -4.65% (from 133 457 in 2013 to 82 894 in 2023). In 2023 International tourists constitute 9.58% of the total number of trips, with domestic tourism representing the balance of 90.42%.

CHART 47: TOURISTS BY ORIGIN - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

4.15.3 Tourism spending

It is important to note that this type of spending differs from the concept of contribution to GDP. Tourism spending merely represents a nominal spend of trips made to each region.

TABLE 43: TOTAL TOURISM SPENDING - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [R BILLIONS, CURRENT PRICES]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2013	5 501 575	6 718 407	18 454 218	253 328 244
2014	6 098 448	7 564 540	20 355 894	275 442 708
2015	5 530 399	6 850 113	18 945 390	253 885 070

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2016	6 206 115	7 514 994	20 567 487	277 552 316
2017	5 756 822	6 948 591	19 427 678	264 008 625
2018	6 524 941	7 827 664	21 874 500	293 241 923
2019	6 322 114	7 919 307	28 912 989	411 345 361
2020	3 535 430	4 413 223	16 849 653	241 187 177
2021	4 224 943	5 253 240	20 699 832	291 241 723
2022	6 894 272	8 589 608	32 939 332	455 268 676
2023	7 372 323	9 177 552	35 858 561	480 177 535
Average Annual Growth				
2013-2023	2,97%	3,17%	6,87%	6,60%

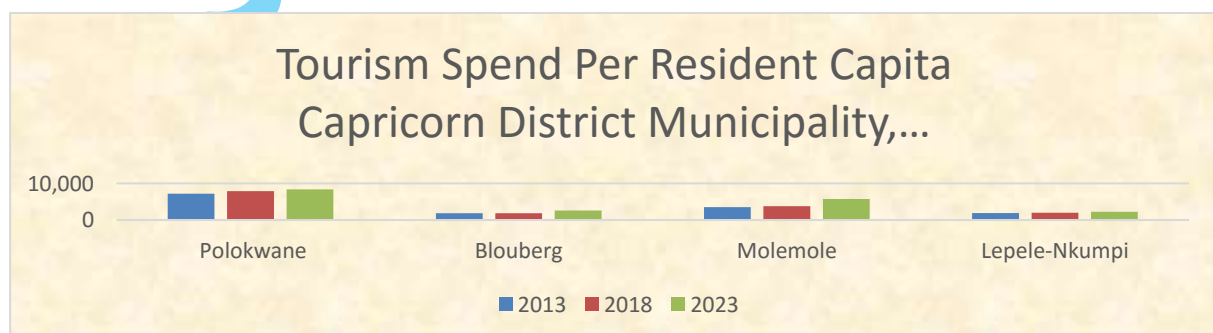
Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Polokwane Local Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 7.3 billion in 2023 with an increase in average annual growth rate of 2.97% since 2013 (R 5.50 billion). Capricorn District Municipality had a total tourism spending of R 9.1 billion in 2023 and an average annual growth rate of 3.17% over the period. Total spending in Limpopo Province increased from R 18.45 billion in 2013 to R 35.85 billion in 2023 at an average annual rate of 6.87%. South Africa as whole had an average annual rate of 6.60% and increased from R 253.3 billion in 2013 to R 480.1 billion in 2023.

4.15.4 Tourism Spend per Resident Capita

Another interesting topic to look at is tourism spending per resident capita. To calculate this, the total amount of tourism spending in the region is divided by the number of residents living within that region. This gives a relative indication of how important tourism is for a particular area.

CHART 49: TOURISM SPEND PER RESIDENT CAPITA - POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2013, 2018 AND 2023 [R THOUSANDS]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In 2023, Polokwane Local Municipality had a tourism spend per capita of R 8372 and an average annual growth rate of 1.51%, Polokwane Local Municipality ranked highest amongst all the regions within Capricorn in terms of tourism spend per capita. The local municipality that ranked lowest in terms of tourism spend per capita is Lepele-Nkumpi with a total of R 2254 which reflects an increase at an average annual rate of 1.73% from 2013.

4.15.5 Tourism Spend as a Share of GDP

This measure presents tourism spending as a percentage of the GDP of a region. It provides a gauge of how important tourism is to the local economy. An important note about this variable is that it does not reflect what is spent in the tourism industry of that region, but only what is spent by tourists visiting that region as their main destination.

TABLE 44: TOTAL SPENDING AS % SHARE OF GDP - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2013-2023 [PERCENTAGE]

Financial Year	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
2013	7,9%	7,4%	6,6%	6,5%
2014	8,1%	7,7%	6,8%	6,7%
2015	6,7%	6,4%	5,9%	5,7%
2016	6,8%	6,3%	5,8%	5,8%
2017	5,9%	5,5%	5,2%	5,2%
2018	6,3%	5,8%	5,5%	5,5%
2019	5,8%	5,6%	6,9%	7,3%
2020	3,2%	3,1%	4,0%	4,3%
2021	3,4%	3,3%	4,2%	4,7%
2022	5,3%	5,1%	6,4%	6,8%
2023	5,4%	5,2%	6,8%	6,8%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

In Polokwane Local Municipality the tourism spending as a percentage of GDP in 2023 was 5.4%. Tourism spending as a percentage of GDP for 2023 was 5.2% in Capricorn District Municipality, 6.8% in Limpopo Province. Looking at South Africa as a whole, it can be seen that total tourism spending had a total percentage share of GDP of 6.8%.

4.16 International Trade

Trade is defined as the act of buying and selling, with international trade referring to buying and selling across international border, more generally called importing and exporting. The Trade Balance is calculated by subtracting imports from exports.

4.16.1 Relative Importance of international Trade

In the table below, the Polokwane Local Municipality is compared to Capricorn, Limpopo Province and South Africa, in terms of actual imports and exports, the Trade Balance, as well the contribution to GDP and the region's contribution to total national exports and imports.

TABLE 45: MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE, CAPRICORN, LIMPOPO AND NATIONAL TOTAL, 2023 [R 1000, CURRENT PRICES]

	Polokwane	Capricorn	Limpopo	National
Exports (R 1000)	3 049 571	3 259 795	38 279 062	2 023 428 242
Imports (R 1000)	663 444	688 061	3 608 525	1 913 992 000
Total Trade (R 1000)	3 713 016	3 947 856	41 887 587	3 937 420 242
Trade Balance (R 1000)	2 386 127	2 571 735	34 670 537	109 436 242
Exports as % of GDP	2,2%	1,9%	7,3%	28,8%
Total trade as % of GDP	2,7%	2,2%	7,9%	56,1%
Regional share - Exports	0,2%	0,2%	1,9%	100,0%
Regional share - Imports	0,0%	0,0%	0,2%	100,0%
Regional share - Total Trade	0,1%	0,1%	1,1%	100,0%

Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

The merchandise export from Polokwane Local Municipality amounts to R 3.049 billion and as a percentage of total national exports constitutes about 2.2%. The exports from Polokwane Local Municipality constitute 2.2% of total Polokwane Local Municipality's GDP. Merchandise imports of R 663 million constitute about 0.0% of the national imports. Total trade within Polokwane is about 2.7% of total national trade. Polokwane Local Municipality had a positive trade balance in 2023 to the value of R 2 386 million.

CHART 49: IMPORT AND EXPORTS IN POLOKWANE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, 2013-2023 [R 1000]

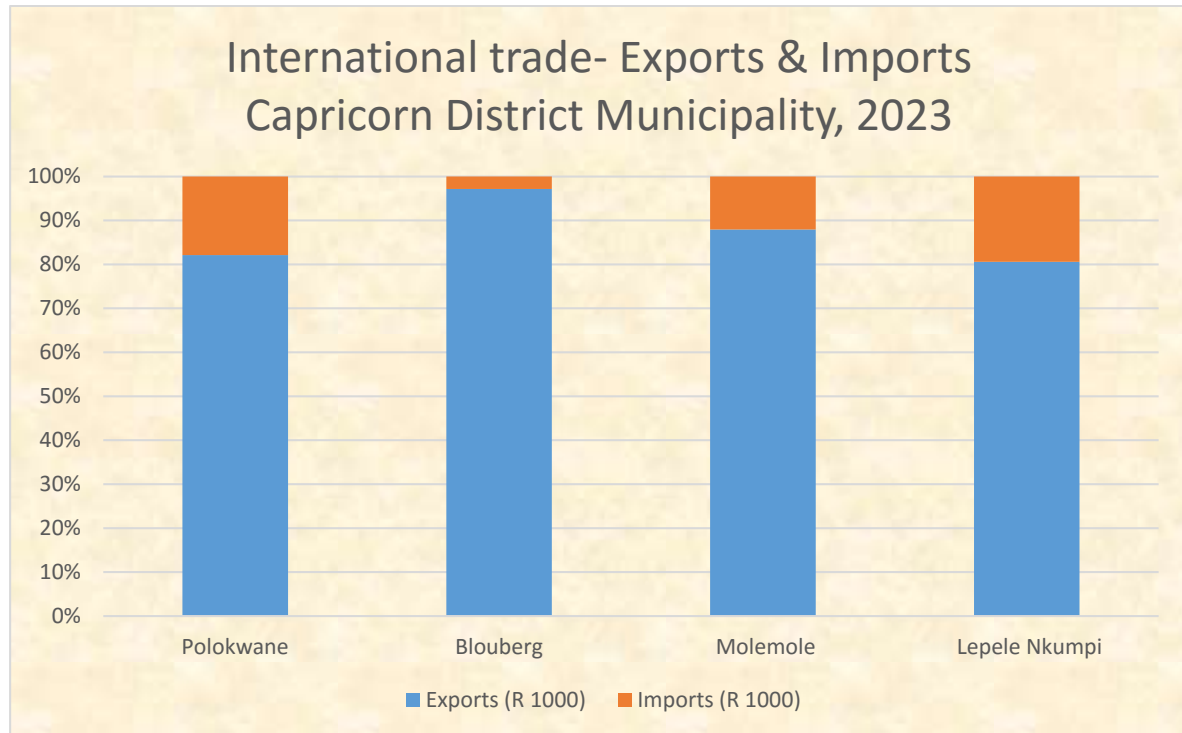


Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

Analyzing the trade movements over time, total trade decreased from 2013 to 2023 at an average annual growth rate of 4.70%. Merchandise exports increased at an average annual rate of 5.56%, with the highest level of exports of R 3.04 billion experienced in 2023.

Merchandise imports increased at an average annual growth rate of 1.49% between 2013 and 2023, with the lowest level of imports experienced in 2020.

CHART 50: MERCHANDISE EXPORTS AND IMPORTS - POLOKWANE AND THE REST OF CAPRICORN, 2023 [PERCENTAGE]



Source: S&P Global Market Intelligence 2024

When comparing the Polokwane Local Municipality with the other regions in the Capricorn District Municipality, Polokwane has the biggest amount of international trade (when aggregating imports and exports, in absolute terms) with a total of R 3.71 billion. This is also true for exports - with a total of R 3.04 billion in 2023. Lepele-Nkumpi had the lowest total trade figure at R 7.27 million. The Lepele-Nkumpi also had the lowest exports in terms of currency value with a total of R 1.41 million exports.

CHAPTER Five: Water and Sanitation Analysis

5.1 Water and Sanitation Directorate Overview

The Water and Sanitation Directorate consist of 3 SBU's: i.e.

- 1) Infrastructure Development Planning and Reticulation Design.
- 2) Reticulation, Distribution and Maintenance, Water Demand and Conservation.
- 3) Operations: Water and Wastewater, Quality Management and Laboratory Services.

5.1.1 Water Provision

Provision of water in accordance with the obligations of the municipality as Water Services Authority is a high priority.

To meet Polokwane Municipality's strategic vision, an Integrated Water Master Plan(IWMP) has been developed in phases, to ultimately address the full water distribution cycle i.e. from Source-to-Tap-to-Effluent discharge for all areas, and all water supply infrastructure within Polokwane Municipality. **(Approved by council)**

The supply areas consist of the City and urban areas as well as an extensive rural area, and both urban and rural areas are facing severe challenges in terms of water services.

Polokwane Municipality complies with the **sans 241 standards** on provision of portable water – PREP assessment is underway for the next Green Drop Audit.

5.1.2 Reliability of Water Supply in Polokwane

Residents of Polokwane are not getting reliable water supply due to identified water supply challenges i.e.

- 1) **Water abstraction restrictions** on the Polokwane System by Lepelle Northern Water Board
- 2) **Infrastructure challenges** on both the Ebenezer and Olifantspoort Bulk Water Schemes.
- 3) **Lack of backup power** at both Ebenezer and Olifantspoort plants to act as an alternative when there are power outages and load shedding.
- 4) **Theft and vandalism** of ESKOM Transformers and Borehole Pumping Equipment in rural areas.
- 5) **Illegal connections in RWS** that are designed to cater for RDP standards leaving some residents without water because of excessive water use.

5.1.3 Water Provision – Short Term Interventions

The Municipality has identified the water supply shortfall in the Urban Complex as a threat to the growth of the city and a threat to the Economy and implemented measures to turn the situation around:

- Polokwane Municipality took an initiative to engage in intensive **ground water development** to augment the supply with 34 Ml/d at peak operation.
- Three (3) Contractors are on site with 3 key projects to deliver the water at two water purification sites from wellfields developed around the City and Seshego,
- We Have constructed a new Water Treatment Works of capacity 10.4 ML in Seshego and the new Sandriver Water Treatment Plant with to purify the ground water from the wellfield projects.

5.1.4 Progress of Groundwater Developments projects

CONTRACT NAME	PROJECT VALUE	% PHYSICAL PROGRESS	START DATE	STATUS AND ESTIMATED COMPLETION DATE
Sandriver North Water Treatment Works	R 151 643 977	90%	4 July 2019	Dec 2024
Sterkloop and Sandriver South Wellfield Development and distribution	R 88 959 047	98%	25 June 2019	Dec 2024
Seshego Water Treatment Works	R 190 391 610	Practically complete	18 Nov 2019	Sept 2023
Sandriver North Wellfield and Polokwane boreholes development and distribution	R 108 569 468	97%	25 June 2019	Dec 2024
Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego boreholes development and distribution	R 75 390 102	Practically Completed	18 Nov 2019	Sept 2024

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.1.5 Water Provision – Long Term Interventions

- Upgrading of Dap Naude pipeline to provide an additional 4 MI/d to Dalmada – Polokwane Municipality has an allocation of 18 MI from Dap Naude dam and the current pipeline capacity allows for withdrawal of 14 MI/day from the dam. The municipality have started with plans to increase the pipe capacity to 18 MI/day by introducing an inline booster pump station or tower to build up pressure in the pipeline and also to replace aged sections of the pipeline, the preliminary inputs from the department is indicating that the total pipe line should be replaced in phases.
- Exploration of the Dieprivier Wellfield to deliver and additional 7 MI/d into the system. This will relief the supply from Ebenezer and more water can therefore be delivered in the City – The IRS is submitted and provisionally approved pending finalization of the WULA and Land acquisition issues.
- Implementation of the pressure management and Hydraulic re-modelling of the City network (put pressure zones in place) – Planning completed awaiting approval of BWS IRS.
- Continuation of the exploration of the Malmani Dolomites for an access to additional 21 MI/d – Pre-Feasibility conducted, the project has been submitted to Infrastructure SA for funding the development of the IRS and is at procurement stage.
- Finalize water reclamation at the new Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (50% of the effluent discharged) – Pre-Feasibility conducted, the project has been submitted to Infrastructure SA for funding the development of the IRS and is at procurement stage.

5.2 Powers and Function of Polokwane Municipality

In terms of the Constitution, Municipal Structures Act and other policy frameworks Polokwane Municipality is responsible for the following functions:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Water and Sanitation (Both portable and bulk supply system and domestic wastewater and sewage disposal system) ▪ Air Pollution ▪ Building regulations ▪ Childcare facilities ▪ Electricity and Alternative energy ▪ Firefighting services ▪ Municipal planning ▪ Municipal public works ▪ Storm water management ▪ Trading regulations ▪ Billboards and the display of advertisements in public places 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cemeteries ▪ Cleansing ▪ Control of public nuisances ▪ Local sport facilities ▪ Municipal parks and recreation ▪ Roads ▪ Noise pollution ▪ Pounds ▪ Public places ▪ Waste Management (refuse removal, refuse dumps and solid waste disposal) ▪ Street trading ▪ Street lighting ▪ Traffic and parking
--	---

5.3. WATER

Polokwane Municipality is a **Water Service Authority (WSA)** and also a **Water Service Provider (WSP)**. Every Water Service Authority has a duty to all customers or potential

customers in its area of jurisdiction to progressively ensure efficient, affordable, economical and sustainable access to Water Services [Water Services Act of 1997 Section 11]. Thus, a Water Service Authority has the duty to provide water services with the focus on: Ensure, Efficient, Affordable, Economical and Sustainable deliverables.

5.3.1 Principles of Water Service Provision

- To ensure: effectiveness, efficiency, viability, sustainability.
Requires: proactive approach, pre-thinking, deliberation, understanding, thus coordinated planning.
- Therefore: Every Water Services Authority must prepare a Water Services Development Plan for its area of jurisdiction [Water Service Act of 1997 Section 12].

Water is life – it is the most important resource to encourage both social and economic development within communities. There has been tremendous improvement in the provision of the basic service in the municipal area.

5.3.2 16 Regional Water Schemes (RWS)

Municipal water provision is divided into Regional Water Schemes. **Polokwane Municipality** has been sub-divided into **16 RWS** and each scheme is allocated **budget** for water reticulation:

1. Mothapo RWS,
2. Moletjie East RWS
3. Moletjie North RWS,
4. Moletjie South RWS,
5. Houtriver RWS,
6. Chuene/Maja RWS,
7. Molepo RWS,
8. Laastehoop RWS,
9. Mankweng RWS,
10. Boyne RWS,
11. Segwasi RWS,
12. Badimong RWS,
13. Sebayeng/ Dikgale RWS,
14. Olifantspoort Sand RWS.
15. Aganang East RWS
16. Bakone RWS

The municipal Regional Water Schemes depends on the following **water sources**:

5.3.3 Water Scheme Sources

Water source	RWS supplied	Average Daily Supply	Source Capacity
Ebenezer	Mankweng RWS		
	Rural (Mothapo RWS, Molepo RWS, Segwasi)	22 MI/Day	21 MI/day

Water source	RWS supplied	Average Daily Supply	Source Capacity
	RWS, Boyne RWS, Badimong RWS, Sebayeng RWS, Dikgale RWS)		
Olifants Sand	Chuene/Maja RWS, Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego, some portion of City and Mmotong wa Perekisi)	27.3 MI/day	27 MI/d
Dap Naude Dam	Olifants Sand RWS (Polokwane City)	12 MI/Day	18 MI/d
Seshego Dam & Boreholes	Olifants Sand RWS (Seshego)	7.0 MI/day	10 MI/d
Ebenezer	Olifants Sand RWS (Polokwane City)	16 MI/Day	11 MI/Day
City Boreholes	Augment water from dams	5,5 MI/Day	25,33 MI/d
Rural dams			
Houtriver Dam	Houtriver RWS	2,0 MI/day	3,9 MI/d
Chuene/Maja Dam	Chuene Maja RWS	1.2 MI/day	2,7 MI/d
Molepo Dam	Molepo RWS	1.5 MI/day	6 MI/d
Mashashane (Utjane) Dam	Moletjie south RWS	0.6 MI/day	1.5 MI/d
Rural Boreholes	Rural RWS	30 MI/day	30 MI/d
Total		125.1 MI/day	156.43 MI/d
Peak flow demand		163 MI/day	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

It is the responsibility of local government to make sure that adequate and appropriate investments are made to ensure the progressive realization of the right of all people in its area of jurisdiction to receive at least a basic level of services.

Polokwane Municipality is a water scarce City with more than 60% of its surface water sourced outside the boundary of the Municipality. To ensure the sustainability of water sources the municipality undertakes water conservation awareness campaign.

On annual basis funds are made available to improve the water accessibility to all **16 various Regional Water Schemes**. The first priority is to develop the sustainable bulk water sources and then develop or extend the internal infrastructure. The biggest problem to keep water sources sustainable is theft and vandalism on boreholes and reliable surface water.



As a part of water provision, the municipality provides free basic water to communities. Free Basic Water is offered to all rural Regional Water Schemes, for the Urban Regional Water

Scheme the free basic water is only given to the registered indigent people. According to the FBW policy, implemented by Local Government, households are entitled up to 6000 litres (6kl) of potable water every month at no cost. Households that use more than 6kl of free basic water must be responsible for the payments of further consumption.



Most of municipal Regional Water Schemes are reticulated with metered yard connections. The rural households with yard connections do not pay for the service. The municipality has intentions to recover costs in Regional Water Schemes or villages that are fully reticulated with metered yard connections and exploring the use of a flat rate system.


STATUS QUO



5.3.4 Water Provision Progress


Project Name	Ward	Scope of work	Project amount	Timelines	Jobs created	Villages	Number of households Served	Pictures
1. Aganang Mashamaite Water Supply Phase 1 (WSIG)	16	Equip borehole H04-1470. 75mm rising main for 695 m. 90 mm rising main for 1.25 Km. 110mm rising main for 1.46 km. 90 mm distribution lines for 1.96 km, reticulation pipeline for 12.81 Km. Supply and installation of a 300 KI elevated steel tank 486-yard connections.	R17 750 473.93	January 10, 2023/ 28 June 2023	40	Mashamaite (1 Village)	486	
2. Aganang Makgodu {Borekwa} Water Supply Phase 2 (WSIG)	16	• Equip borehole H04-2670. equipping borehole H04 154 • 90 mm Ø uPVC class 12 distribution lines for 2.34 km • reticulation pipeline for 9.34 km 36-yard connections.	R7 585 710.62	20 March 2023-July 27, 2023	36	Magodu Borekwa (1 Village)	36	
3. Badimong RWS phase 13 (WSIG)	28,30, 34	Installation of 12 Air Valves, Installation of 3 control valves, Construction of 3.3km rising main of pipe diameter ranging from 90mm to 160mm to connect to 2 x 200KI concrete reservoirs at Ga-Mailula village, Upgrading of existing motors and pumps from Two (2) boreholes, Electrification of 7 existing boreholes.	R 4,034 833.02	24 March 2023- September 29, 2023	26	Ga- Maiulula Village, Mpeperu, Thabakgone, Manhlanhle, Thune, Kgole Mamphaka	2652	No taps installed on this phase but the water is able to reach the reservoir as intended.


4. Mankweng Phase 12 (IUDG)	7, 25, 27,31	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •Construction of 10km ranging from 63 to 110 mm in diameter across villages in Mankweng. •Electrical connection of pump houses •Replacing of damaged existing pipes •Disinfection of the pipelines Construion of 61 standpipes	R11 033 100.27	23-Nov-2021-22-Oct-2022	27	Moremadi Park, Mantjana, Mankweng G ext, Gthoka (Makanye), Mamadimo Park and Makgwareng	623	
Aganang East: Ramalapa (WSIG)	43	Refurbishment of existing borehole equipment, Electrifying, equipping and commissioning of borehole. Supply of 90 rising main line pipelines for 3.5km. Installation of 110kl elevated steel tank. Installation of 110 mm Distribution line for 1.1km. Installation of 75 mm reticulation pipelines for 9 km. 360-yard connections.	R12 461 998.20	16 May 2022- November 16, 2022	39	Ramalapa	360	
6. Mohapo Phase 15 (IUDG)	31,24, 06	Nchichane Water 110mm diameter uPVC Bulcline 543m 200mm diameter uPVC Bulcline 1 441m 250kl Elevated steel tank Ramathope Village Yard connection 203 63mm diameter HDPE, 5 448m Mafiane Village -Yard connection 70,63mm diameter HDPE 2 933m Morongwa Village - Yard connection 292, 63mm diameter HDPE, 6 080m	R17 902 165.35	17 November 2021, 15 december 2022	30	Nchichane, Ramathope, Mafia ne and Morongwa Park.	365	

7. Moletjie North RWS phase 9 (WSIG)	35	<p>Equip, new borehole H04-3126 for Mphela village.</p> <p>Approximately 2,450.00m of uPVC water supply distribution pipelines with size Ø63mm is proposed for the extension and upgrading of the existing water supply distribution networks for the identified villages.</p> <p>310 yard connections</p> <p>New rising main 2100m for Mphela village.</p> <p>Supply of reverse osmosis water treatment plant with a capacity of 9m³/hour for borehole H04-0599 in Manamela village.</p> <p>Supply reverse osmosis water treatment plant with a capacity of 4m³/hour for borehole H04-2716 in Kgoroshi village.</p> <p>Palisade fencing for 12 boreholes (H04-1435, H04-0599, H04-2684, H04-0846A, H04-0846B, H04-2716, H04-3012, H04-0062, H04-3011, H04-2743, H04-2744, H04-3136) and 3 reservoirs in Mphela, Manamela, Kgoroshi, Ditenteng and Thantsha.</p>	R18 753 878.50	7 Dec -2023	45	Mphela, Manamela, Kgoroshi, Ditenteng and Thantsha villages.	310	
8. Moletjie East phase 15 (IUDG)	15, 36, 38	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2.5ML Command reservoir at Ramongoana and Mabotsa connections. • Connections to the 400kl and 800kl sump, booster pump station and pumping main. • Construct 45m of 75mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing borehole BH22 to the 800kl sump. • Construct 23m of 90mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing boreholes in Setati (BH0650, H04- 0783 & H04-0782) to the 400kl sump. • Construct 1260m of 100mm steel pipe gravity main from existing borehole from BH1702 • Construct 2650m of 110mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing borehole from BHO01 2. • Construct 2700m of 160mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing from 2.5ML 	R19 771 535.43	27 March 2023-19 December 2023	59	Moletjie East scheme	9532	


		<p>command reservoir to the Ramongoana service reservoir.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Construct 1 11m of 200mm uPVC Class 12 gravity main from existing pumping main from Matamanyane to the 800kl sump. 1403m extension of 315mm diameter uPVC gravity ring main (at Makgodu village) from the existing command reservoir in Mabotsa to the existing 2.5ML reservoir in Ramongoana. 160 m of gabions on the river crossing along Matamanyane Road. 						
9. Aganang Mars phase 1 (WSIG)	44	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drilling, equipping, electrification and commissioning of one (1) borehole; Switching one (1) borehole from diesel to electricity; equipping, electrification and commissioning of the borehole; 2 precast pump house Refurbishment of existing 108 kl elevated steel tank; Refurbishment of existing 200 kl concrete reservoir; Supply and installation of water lines as follows: 75 mm Ø uPVC class 12 rising main for 4 620 m; 90 mm Ø uPVC class 12 distribution main for 1 180 m; Supply and installation of 82 — metered yard connection. 	R 11 427 607.08	23 March 2023-08 November 2023	31	Mars	82	

10. Mas hashane Phase 2 (IUDG)	40	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 30122m length of 75mm diameter uPVC water reticulation network • 1764m length of 90mm diameter uPVC Rising mains bulk network • 400m length of 90mm diameter uPVC Distribution mains bulk network • Installation of One (1) 160kl elevated storage steel tanks • 623 erf connections • Equipping, Testing, Housing and Electrification of newly constructed boreholes BH-01, BH-02, BH-03 & BH-04 • Refurbishing two existing boreholes 	R 17 000 000	04 MAY 2023 -15 APRIL 2024	36	Kgasha Village	623	
11. Refurbishment of Mankweng Waste water treatment plant (IUDG)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Erection of Sludge Pump station Pump House Complete with Ventilation • MCC housing • Electrical Control Room, Electrical Panel and Entrance Doors Replacement • PST Siphons Replacement and Chemical Based Unblocking for replacement PST 1 • PST Siphons Replacement and Chemical Based Unblocking for replacement PST 2 • Honeycomb inlet retaining wall with as built drawing • Fully Installed Chlorination Room. • Complete Refurbishment of change rooms as well as offices • Installation of a new compactor, Steel grating, mechanical screen at inlet works • Replacement of PST's waste valves • Replacement of filter traps • Cleaning of humus tanks 	R 13 454 689	25-Apr-23-9 Oct-2023	12	Mankweng		

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replacement of waste and scum waste valves for humus tank 1 & 2 • Rewiring of chlorine dosing pump • Cleaning of anaerobic digesters • Replace digesters draining valves • cleaning of humus tank no1, no2, no3 and no4 at module 2 and jetting • Servicing or repairing of humus tank 1, 2, 3 & 4 waste valves at module 2 • Servicing or repairing of module 2 division box valves • Refurbishment of bio-filter 1 & 2 • Replacement of pipeline from humus pump station to inlet works • Construction of fire barriers or aprons around all concrete structures 						
12. Seshego WTW (RBIG)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Construction of Civil works including equipping of electrical and mechanical components and associated works for a Water Treatment Works of capacity 10.4 ML. Civil Structures include administration building, chlorine dosing building, chemical dosing building, flocculation clarifiers, clear water contact tank, upflow filter, treated water reservoir, surface water flocculation clarifier and sludge ponds. 	R114 760 579,19	18 November 2019-14 June 2023	99	All Seshego Zones		

13. Houtriver RWS phase 14 (IUDG)	9, 16, 18, 25	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • New 2km 160mm dia. Pumping main from the WTP to Madikoti reservoirs to replace the existing portion of it in Mabokelele. • 0.5 km of reticulation extensions in Mahwibitswane and Mashashi. • 3.5 km reticulation extension at Montinti Park. • 2km reticulation extension at Ga-Ramakgaphola. • Construction of pump houses and Equipping borehole Montinti Park and • H04_2965 to the Leokama borehole • Jojo tanks by Mabokelele village to house 2 of 4KW disinfection system comprising of filtration unit, Chlorinator and UV Tube. • 2 km x 160mm dia. Pumping main extensions from the 4 boreholes • The installing a new 267kl ground steel tank at Mahwibitshwane mountain. • Construct two off 8kW solar power supply grit which comprise 26 x 310W solar panels, • 2 x 1 Oki Jojo tanks to serve as pump tanks for the booster pumps for the boreholes H04_0049 and H04_3082. 	R14 077 293,4	20-02 2024	45	Motiniti, Ga ramagapola, Mahwibitswane, Mashashi, Mabokelele,	60	
-----------------------------------	---------------	---	---------------	------------	----	---	----	--

14. Molepo RWS phase 12 (IUDG)	4	<p>Molepo Regional Water Scheme Phase 12</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ga-Mogano – 2000m of bulk reticulation of diameter 90mm uPVC to and from Steel Tank. 150KL (Ga-Mogano) Elevated Steel Tank Equip borehole H16-0532 Construct a 2500m long, diameter 75mm uPVC rising main to the Ga-Sebati Reservoir Siting and equipping of new borehole Construct a 2000m long, diameter 75mm uPVC rising main for the new borehole Communal connections (25 off) 	R14 679 795,68	19 June 2023-	35	Ga-Mogano, Ga-Sebati	250	
15. Thakgalang Phase1 (WSIG)	37	Construction of 1074 VIPs	R16 579 985.83	12 Feb-24	65	Thakgalang	1074	
16. Sebayeng Dikgale Rural Sanitation (IUDG)	30, 31	Construction of 744 VIPs	R 12 650 000	23 Apr 24	37	Kgokong, Ga-Kama , Mamotintane , Ga - Matholo	744	

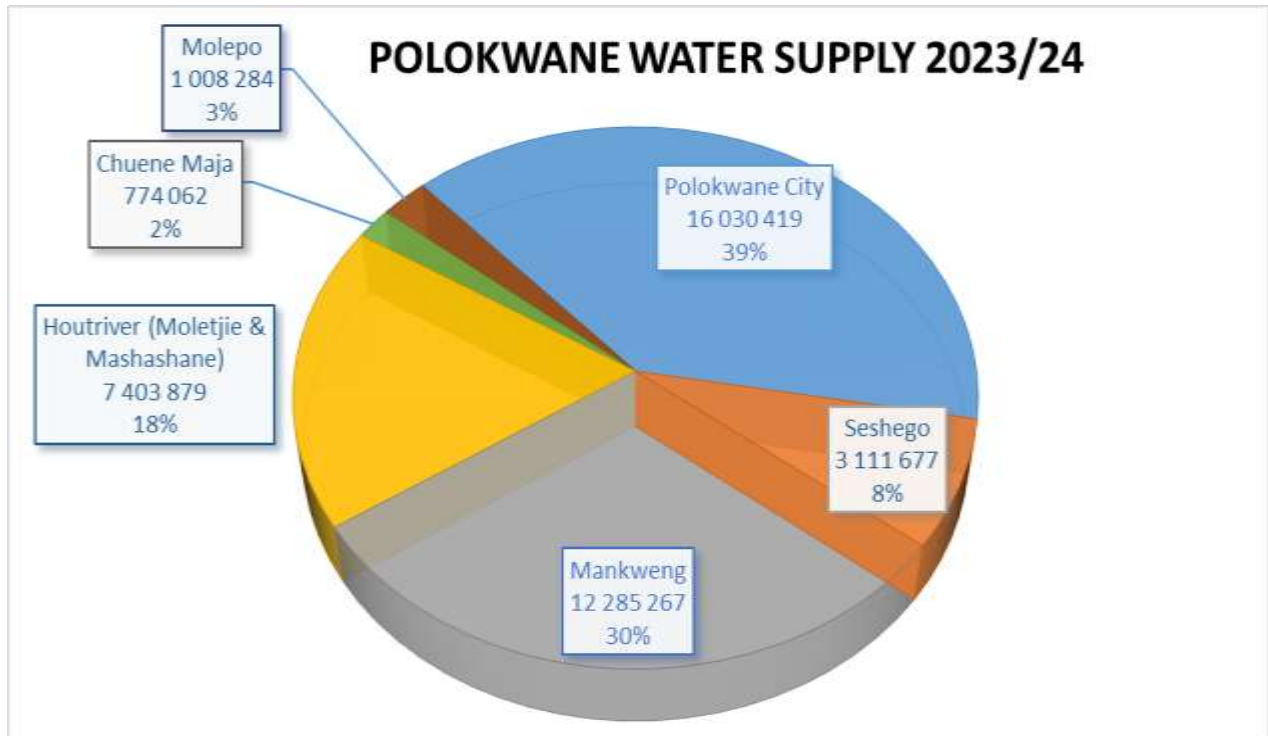
17. Mahoi Phase 2	43	Construction of 16 000m of 75mm diameter Construction of 8 000m of 90mm diameter Construction of 1 000m of 110 mm diameter Construction of 850 ERF connections Supply of 348 kl elevated steel tank 2 x Borehole equipping 2 x Pump house construction 2 x Electrification of boreholes	R 28 203 532.82	2 May 23-28 Mar 24		Ga-Mahoi	850	
-------------------	----	--	-----------------	-----------------------	--	----------	-----	---

STATUS Quo

5.3.5 Lepelle Northern Water supplied Schemes.

		Total per Source (KI)	Total 23/24 (KI)	
Polokwane City	LNW	11 097 775	16 030 419	Ebenezer + Olifantspoort
	Own Source	4 932 644		Mashal & Sand River North Boreholes + Dalmada Plant
Seshego	LNW	2 302 522	3 111 677	Olifantspoort
	Own Source	809 155		Seshego Plant & Sand River South Boreholes
Mankweng	LNW	7 879 731	12 285 267	Ebenezer
	Own Source	4 405 536		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Houtriver (Moletjie)	LNW + P - Hoop	160 689	7 403 879	Olifantspoort + Pelgrimshoop
	Own Source	805 670		Houtriver Plant + Mashashane
	Own Source	6 437 520		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Chuene Maja	LNW	402 363	774 062	Olifantspoort
	Own Source	255 059		Chuenespoort Dam
	Own Source	116 640		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area
Molepo	LNW	138 366	1 008 284	Ebenezer
	Own Source	605 786		Molepo Dam
	Own Source	264 132		Estimated from the number of working Boreholes in the area

5.3.6 Polokwane Water Supply 2023/24



5.3.7. Polokwane Groundwater Development

Output of the Groundwater Projects

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM131/2018**: Construction of Sandriver North Water Treatment Works - (18ML/day) to treat Polokwane boreholes (Sterkloop, Sandriver South, Sandriver North) – to be completed by **September 2024**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM132/2018**: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the Sterkloop and Sandriver South Wellfields. Equip 18 boreholes in Sterkloop WF and Sandriver South WF (6,3ML/d average supply; 12,6ML/d peak supply); Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and distribute to existing Doornkraal reservoir – to be completed by **December 2024**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM133/2018**: Construction of Borehole Infrastructure and Pumping Mains for the Sandriver North Wellfield and Polokwane Boreholes. Equip 32 boreholes in Sandriver North WF and Polokwane boreholes (6,4ML/d average supply; 12,8ML/d peak supply); Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and distribute to existing Krugersburg and Potgieter reservoirs – to be completed by **December 2024**

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM02/2019**: Seshego Water Treatment Works - (11ML/day) to treat Seshego boreholes (Seshego, Bloodriver, Pilgrimshoop) and Seshego dam (2ML/day) – **Completed**.

(Polokwane Groundwater Development) - **PM01/2019**: Bloodriver Wellfield and Seshego Groundwater Development and Pumping Mains - Equip 17 boreholes in Bloodriver and Seshego Wellfields; pump to new Seshego WTW (4,1ML/d average supply; 7, ML/d peak supply); pump to new Seshego Water Treatment Works and distribute to Perskebult and Seshego reservoirs. – to be completed by **December 2024**

5.3.8 Technical report approval

The following Regional Water Schemes (RWS) are in planning and awaiting approval of technical reports for further implementation

- **Moletjie North RWS** – This scheme previously had challenges with approval of technical report due to unacceptable water balance. A business plan and technical report was approved and a project implemented under Water Services Infrastructure Grant and completed in October 2023. The new technical report is under development for the next phase.
- **Moletjie South RWS** – This area is serviced by a network of 11 boreholes which present very low yields during dry seasons. Constant vandalism of borehole infrastructure. No reticulation in extensions and no access to any surface water sources, the technical report is currently approved, and a business plan is to be submitted for project implementation.
- **Badimong RWS** – This area has inadequate reticulation network, water supply security and connection to bulk surface water supply. Due to inability to obtain acceptable water balance, the project was catered under Water Service Infrastructure Grant which able to address Interim and medium term water interventions project was completed in 2023 and the new technical report is under development
- **Laastehoop RWS** – The technical report for the scheme is under development, the area has in the past installed systems which are currently not functional due to vandalism and challenges faced with inadequate electrical supply, the new phase aims to functionalise the existing infrastructure and add the necessary infrastructure to cover the population expansions.
- **Mankweng RWS** – The technical report is submitted for evaluation by the department of Water and Sanitation.
- **Moletjie East**- The new technical report is under development together with Geo-hydrological investigations to augment water supply in extensions such as those in Phomolong.

- **Molepo RWS-** The new technical report is under development.

5.3.9. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Water Projects)

1. Refurbishment of the Dap Naude water pipeline.

- The Reduction in RBIG funding has affected the refurbishment of the pipe line from Ebenezer Dam to the City.
- This project is of strategic importance in order to secure additional potable water for Polokwane CBD.
- Supply to be increased from 14MI/day to 17,9MI/day. Water is available but needs to be conveyed to Polokwane. Increase of approximately 4MI/day.
- It is important to note that the 2023 water balance suggests a total demand of 169MI/day and a supply capacity of 153MI/day with all water supply projects commissioned and functional by the end of 2024 there will be a shortfall of 16MI/day. This deficit will increase if budgets remain as is.
- It is therefore important for LNW to commission and FastTrack the implementation of the two bulk water scheme refurbishments to improve the security of water supply.

Consultant is busy with finalisation of the IRS that was submitted to department, department requested a session to discuss, plan was to replace a portion of the line, however there is an indication to replace entire line, in phases (lifespan has come to an end, pressures, need a new tower (water loses)/ booster pump stations)

2. Polokwane Distribution Pressure and Flow Management:

This project is of strategic importance in order to secure additional potable water for Polokwane CBD.

Progress has been made to reduce water losses through pipe breaks by replacing old AC pipes within the CBD of Polokwane. More work is needed to reduce water losses and to fine tune water balance requirements. Feasibility study is complete, the consultant is busy with Scoping and PDR

5.3.10 Free Basic Water

The provision of free basic water in Polokwane Municipality is determined by the indigent policy and register updated annually for those who stays in areas where cost recovery is ongoing, and all the rural villages are receiving free basic water.

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Rural/Urban	Number Customers
Water				
Free basic water.	6kl per month	50 villages received free Water monthly.	Rural	All households in rural areas

Basic service	The amount	limited	Free basic services provided	Rural/Urban	Number Customers
Water					
			68 villages receive free Water supplied by Lepelle Water Board.		
			153 villages receive free water supplied by boreholes.		

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

A statistical summary of the status quo assessment for water and sanitation services is provided per cluster in **Table** below:

Table: Water Service Levels

Service	Cluster	Service Level
Water	Mankweng/Sebayeng	67.9 % above RDP
	Moletjie	60.7 % above RDP
	Maja/Chuene/Molepo	44,3 % above RDP
	Aganang	59.0 % above RDP
	Municipal wide	82.04% access to water
	Municipal wide backlog	17.96%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

There is still a considerable backlog that must be addressed especially in the Maja, Chuene, Molepo, followed by Moletjie and Mankweng clusters.

The elimination of backlog is challenged by limited and /or unsustainable source of water found in the rural areas and continuous increase of new settlements in some clusters in the municipal area. Funding limitations also affect the eradication of backlog on the expected rate.

5.3.11 Water Quality

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa everyone has the right to an environment that is not detrimental to their health or wellbeing.

To ensure that water quality does not pose any health hazards to our people, Department of Water and Sanitation as the regulator has introduced the monitoring tool for water quality. According to DWS there is certain standard which both potable and waste water must meet.

Polokwane municipality obtained Blue drop for 2011 in the Mankweng and City water systems. The outlined ratings are from 2008 until 2015 assessment.

WATER SUPPLY SYSTEM	BLUE DROP CERTIFICATION	2008/2009	2009/2010	2010/2011	2011/2012	2014/2015
Polokwane City	95%	70.5%	95.70%	95.05%	92.03%	95.08
Mankweng	95%	70.5%	n/a	95.155	80.89%	86.07
Seshego	95%	42.5%	66.38%	89.65%	87.12%	86.81
Molepo	95%	70.5%	66.38%	79.89%	82.02%	85.38
Moletjie (Houtriver)	95%	70.5%	53.63%	76.57%	73.79%	85.26
Chuene/Maja	95%	70.5%	55.10%	81.44%	87.29%	88.09

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.3.12 Surface water quality test results

Surface water quality test results are as follows:

Determinant	Unit	Dap Naude	Ebenezer	Olifantspoort	Seshego Dam
pH	pH Unit	8.34	6.82	6.73	7.42
Turbidity	NTU	0.61	0.72	0.69	0.74
Conductivity	mS/m	2.46	4.83	77.63	77.70
Total Dissolved Solids (TDS)	mg/l	15.99	31.40	504.56	505.05
NO3	mg/l	0.40	0.13	0.28	0.35
SO4	mg/l	1.81	2.79	170.00	165.16
Alkalinity (m)	mg/l	8.80	15.83	115.90	115.09
Chloride	mg/l	4.25	6.91	85.95	62.40
Tot Hardness	mg/l	21.2	58.05	319.00	354.00
Ca Hardness	mg/l	20.00	23.25	123.25	135.00
Mg Hardness	mg/l	1.20	34.80	195.75	219.00

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

Polokwane Municipality Groundwater sources generally indicate elevated hardness levels, in excess of 300mg/l, which is defined as very hard water. Hard water is generally considered to be those waters that require considerable amounts of soap to produce foam and hard water also produces scale in water pipes, heaters, geyser and other units in which the temperature of the water is increased.

Although the South African National Standards 241:2015 do not specify a maximum limit for hardness levels the elevated hardness levels, when compared to the surface water sources, will lead to end-user complaints when the groundwater is introduced untreated into the reticulation system. It is therefore advisable to soften the groundwater sources to levels comparable to the Olifantspoort source to mitigate end-user complaints. Hard water is appropriate for human consumption similar to that of soft water. However, as hard water produces adverse actions with soap its use for cleaning purposes is unsatisfactory.

Table: City of Polokwane: Access to Safe Drinking water

Provision of Water	Yes	No	Unknown	Total
Households	202 107	75 714	2404	280 225
Percentage	72.1%	27.01%	1.01	100%

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

Table: Main Water Provision

Water provision (level of service)	2024
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling/house	67 119
Piped water inside yard	129 278
Piped water on community stand	17 344
Borehole in the yard	14 361
Rain water Tank in Yard	2 114
Neighbour's tap	12 159
Public / Communal tap	11 027
Water Carrier / tanker	16 747
Boreholes outside the yard	6 769
Flowing water or River / Stream	836
Well	224
Spring	142
Other	4 248
TOTAL	282 372

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

From the analysis, it is evident that population has increased from 280 225 to 282 372 households and the number of households with piped water inside their house have increased this figure includes 67 119 HH with water in the dwelling and 129 278 HH with water in the yard while 17 344 HH are receiving piped water on communal tap.

The municipality has **45 441** households with no access to piped water. The elimination of backlog is challenged by limited and /or unsustainable source of water found in the rural areas and continuous increase of new settlements in some clusters in the municipal area. Funding limitations also affect the eradication of backlog on the expected rate.

5.3.13. Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing water.

1. Lack of sustainable water sources for current and future demand, the municipality is currently receiving between 80 to 99Ml/d and unable to meet the peak flow demand of 163Ml/day. The municipality should invest in upgrading existing Dap Naude Dap water scheme to utilise its current yield to maximum capacity including possible increase of dam wall.
2. Shortage of water will have a serious impact on projects that the municipality and other sector department are planning. E.g., Polokwane extension 78 Police station, Polokwane extension 71, 108, 72, 79,106 and 107, Bendor extension 100, Ivy park extension 35. Upon completion, all these developments will have a major impact on our currently insufficient water sources.
3. Over reliance on boreholes in rural areas with risk of contaminating ground water by pit latrines.
4. Lack of cost recovery in rural areas.
5. Aging water infrastructure in the CBD, Council in partnership with Department of Water and Sanitation has started with a programme to eradicate this challenge by investing more than R420Million to remove all Asbestos pipes in the CBD and surrounding townships).
6. More than R380 million is also required to increase the capacity of water infrastructure to be able to cater for current and new developments.
7. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting.
8. Lack of maintenance plans and AS Built drawing to indicate the existing valves for water infrastructure. Some of the valves are buried under ground by residents while paving their drive ways which makes it difficult to locate them when doing maintenance or replacing burst pipes and as a result contributing to huge water losses.
9. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
10. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remains a challenge. Theft of iron manhole and valves covers is increasing and there is a need to change them to plastic and it a huge safety risk within the city.
11. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on water demand.
12. Lack of smart metering systems that can control water demand and supply, monitor losses (+R180Million required).
13. Lack of enforcement of regulations/bylaws.
14. Drought effects on surface water resources such as Molepo dam.

15. Vast distances and scattered settlements in rural water schemes make it expensive and difficult for water resources to reach all households.

5.3.14. Water Supply to schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with water	254
Number of schools remain to be serviced. Currently they have boreholes in the schools	56

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.4. SANITATION

Sanitation is about dignity. The availability of sanitation facilities not only improves the dignity of people, but also promotes their health. Areas without proper sanitation systems give rise to water borne diseases like cholera, diarrhoea, typhoid, etc. It is therefore important that the Municipality prioritise the service, particularly considering the backlog (rural sanitation) and the national target.

5.4.1 Sanitation Provision

Polokwane municipality sewer systems are **overloaded** due to the increase in population and economical activities in areas of **Seshego, Mankweng and Polokwane City**.

WWTW System	Design Capacity	Average Inflow
Polokwane WWTW	27 MI/Day	40 – 50 MI/day
Seshego WWTW	7.6 MI/Day	06 – 07 MI/day
Mankweng WWTW	7.6 MI/Day	06 – 08 MI/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.4.2 VIP Sanitation Programs in Rural Areas

- The municipality continues to implement **VIP sanitation programs** in rural areas to ensure that proper sanitation is provided, and ground water is protected.
- Sludge management is still a challenge

- Capacity of the sewer pipeline network is also overloaded and requires upgrades (Requires Sanitation Master Plan for the entire area with waterborne system).

5.4.3 Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project



Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project



Moletjie Cluster Rural VIP Sanitation Project

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU (2024)

5.4.4 Green Drop Audit.

- Green Drop – The municipality was assessed on green drop compliance in November 2022 after the programme was halted for some few years.

- The municipality did not perform well in the outcome of the **Green Drop Audit**.

5.4.5 Sanitation Provision - (Medium- & Long-Term Solutions)

- Polokwane municipality has bulk Sanitation IRS that was approved in 2021.
- The municipality has completed 2 of the 3 Outfall Sewers and the remaining project is 60% completed.
- **Phase 2A** – (Construction of Earth Works) has been completed and Phase 2B – Construction of Civil works is under construction and currently sitting at 23%
- Ensure that groundwater water protocol is budgeted for to ensure that the groundwater resources are monitored for possible contamination.
- Ensure that funds are budgeted/ring-fenced for implementation of the faecal sludge handling particularly in rural areas. (**Emptying of VIP Toilets**).

Table: Toilet Facilities (Households)

Type of toilet facility	2020
Flush toilet connected to a public sewerage system	103 180
Flush toilet connected to a septic tank or Conservancy tank	6 044
Chemical toilet	1 686
Pit latrine / toilet with ventilation	40 575
Pit latrine / toilet without ventilation	102 965
Ecological toilet (Urine diversion, enviroloo etc.)	282
Other	25 756
None	4248

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

Major progress has been made in the provision of sanitation services in Polokwane since 2001, there major improvement in the provision of this service. However, with the improvement the municipality will not meet the Millennium Development Goal that every household must have access to healthy and dignified sanitation facility.

The municipality is currently having a huge backlog of sanitation facilities (VIP) and an amount of more than R500 million is required to eradicate it. The backlog figure includes 86 132 pit latrines that are not constructed according to the approved standards and as such it poses a risk of water borne diseases.

5.4.6. Free Basic Sanitation

For Improved provision of basic and environmental services in a sustainable way to our communities, each financial year Polokwane Municipality construct the Ventilated Improved Pit latrine (**VIP**) in rural Villages according to the priority list of the ward.

5.4.7. Wastewater Treatment Plants

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Waste Water Treatment Plants to support current and future development, the municipality is currently in a process of building:

- 1) New Regional waste water treatment.**
- 2) Seshego Waste Water Treatment Plant.**
- 3) Mankweng Waste Water Treatment Plant.**

As well as Refurbishment of the Waste Water plants.

Two of major projects on the construction of outfall sewer lines are complete while one is still under construction.

5.4.8. Impact of reduction in RBIG funding (Sanitation Projects)

The following projects are greatly affected by the Reduction of RBIG funding:

1. Polokwane Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant is the biggest with 26 ML/day capacity and the current load standing at 34 ML/day.

Plans are in place to construct the 100 ML/day Regional Waste Water Treatment Plant for the whole Polokwane Municipal sewage load and to cater for new developments (however there is limited budget). A contractor is also appointed on site for the refurbishment of the over loaded Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant a second phase of refurbishing and upgrades to the existing plant.

The construction of the New regional waste water treatment plant has been divided into 5 functional phases each with 20ML/day capacity has also had to be separated into three separate contracts, namely and Earthworks contract, A civil and structural contract and finally a Mechanical and electrical contract, the earthworks contract has been completed by end of June 2021. The second contract, is under construction and is scheduled to be completed, July 2025.

2. Upgrading and refurbishment of Mankweng treatment plant (intended to cater for the University of Limpopo growth).

The Reduction in RBIG Funding has also affected the plans for the Mankweng Sewer Plant, and Mankweng is a nodal point, the University of Limpopo has applied for funding with regard to student accommodation, there is a serious need of New Sewer Plant in Mankweng.

The treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Mankweng area and further plans by the University to develop student accommodation. This project cannot be delayed. The current treatment capacity is under strain and the effluent quality is compromised.

The project for refurbishment of Mankweng wastewater treatment has been completed in October 2023. The upgrade project is under planning and development of the IRS is underway.

3. **Upgrading and refurbishment of the Seshego wastewater treatment plant.**

The planning is at advanced stage, the treatment facility is in dire need of refurbishment and upgrading in light of the growth of Seshego. The current treatment capacity is under strain and the effluent quality is compromised.

The project for refurbishment of Seshego wastewater treatment plant has commenced on the 30th March 2023 and it is anticipated to complete on the 30th September 2023.

5.4.9 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Sanitation.

1. The risk of contaminating ground water in rural areas due to huge backlog of pit latrine that is not according to the approved standards.
2. Lack of funding to eradicate rural backlog (more than R500 million is required).
3. Lack of funding for construction of regional waste water treatment plant. According to master plan 1st phase was supposed to be at implementation by now, more than R1, 2 billion required). DWS has completed the feasibility study for new regional wastewater works and is co funding the project through RBIG.
4. Aging sanitation infrastructure (some of old sewer lines in Seshego are running under houses or very close to the houses and should be moved).
5. Uncoordinated allocation of new settlement in rural areas by traditional authorities has a major impact on municipal planning and budgeting (VIP).
6. Lack of maintenance plans for sewer infrastructure.
7. Limited operation and maintenance of infrastructure due to shortage of funds.
8. Theft and vandalism of the existing insufficient infrastructure remains a challenge.
9. Illegal extension of houses (back yard rooms) has an impact on sewer treatment plant. Boyne is the home of two biggest churches and proper sanitation structure is needed to avoid future water contamination.

5.4.10 Sanitation in Schools

Description	Polokwane Municipality
Total number of schools	310
Number of schools supplied with sanitation	296
Number of schools remaining to be serviced with Sanitation	14

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.4.11 Rural Household Sanitation

Polokwane municipality is constituted by a composition of households that are 65% rural and the balance being urban. There is currently no formalised sewerage collection and network in the rural areas. Sanitation in rural areas is managed through construction of VIP toilets to eradicate the backlog in access to sanitation.

Polokwane Municipality is made up of **7 Clusters and 45 wards** that should be equally provided with services guided by the community needs i.e.

Clusters	Wards No.
Mankweng Cluster	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
Moletjie Cluster	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster	1,2,3,4,5
Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster	24,29,32,33,30,31
Aganang Cluster	40,41,42,43,44,45
City Cluster (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
Seshego Cluster (exempted from the VIP Allocation)	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

The two urban clusters i.e., **City and Seshego** Cluster are exempted from the allocation of VIP toilets as they have sewage system in place. Council focuses on allocating VIP toilets in the rural Clusters.

5.5. BACKLOG OF BASIC SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog	Order in terms of Highest Backlog
Water		202 107 (72.1%)	52 800	5 th
Sanitation		134 695 (48.1%)	120 212	3 rd

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog	Order in terms of Highest Backlog
Electricity	254 907	242 015 (87.2%)	12 892	6 th
Housing		160 980 (90.4%)	93 927	4 th
Waste		104 402 (48.1%)	150 505	2 nd
Roads (7 495km)		1 419km (19.6%)	6100 KM translate to 80.4%	1 st

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.5.1 Regional Water Scheme (RWS) –Demand and Shortfall

RWS Analysis

Regional Water Supply Scheme (RWS)	Current ground water abstraction	Current surface water source	Demand	Surplus/Shortfall
Mothapo RWS	3 618 Kl/day	1 514 Kl/day	3 292.3 Kl/day	1 839.7 Kl/day
Laaste Hoop RWS	725.8 Kl/day	445 Kl/day	798.7 Kl/day	372.1 Kl/day
Mankweng RWS	320.8 Kl/day	10357 Kl/day	12 017.7 Kl/day	-1 339.9 Kl/day
Sebayeng-Dikgale RWS	6 391.4 Kl/day	224 Kl/day	5 503.3 Kl/day	1 112.1 Kl/day
Badimong RWS	827.3 Kl/day	1691 Kl/day	2 473 Kl/day	45 Kl/day
Segwasi RWS	250.6 Kl/day	394 Kl/day	265 Kl/ day	379.6 Kl/day
Boyne RWS	103.7 Kl/day	867 Kl/day	701.3 Kl/ day	269.4 Kl/day
Molepo RWS	733.7 Kl/day	1 100 Kl/day	1 537.7 Kl/day	296 Kl/day
Chuene Maja RWS	324 Kl/ day	2 700 Kl/day	2 179 Kl/day	845 Kl/day
Moletjie South RWS	3 727 Kl/day	1 000 Kl/day	2 977 Kl/day	1 750 Kl/day
Moletjie North RWS	810 Kl/day	0	611.3 Kl/	198.7 Kl/day
The Hout River RWS	1 657 Kl/day	2 000 Kl/day	2 096 Kl/day	1561 Kl/day
Moletjie East RWS	4 055 Kl/day	0	2 627 Kl/day	1 428 Kl/day
Aganang East	3 108 Kl/day	0	1 545 Kl/day	1 563 Kl/day
Bakone RWS	4 394 Kl/day	0	2 229 Kl/day	2 165 Kl/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

Backlogs to the access of water services are mainly attributed to:

- Availability
- Sustainability
- Proximity
- Storage Requirements
- Treatment requirements
- And affordability

5.6. SMART METERING

The City of Polokwane Smart City Vision articulates the future development path. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the City launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City that embraces Smart Living and Smart People as some of its building pillars. This Smart City concept is carried within the City's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

During the 2017 State of the City address, the Executive Mayor has articulated a number of initiatives that are out of the ordinary that the City will be embarking on towards attaining the goal of becoming a sustainable City that is geared towards improving service delivery.

For a couple of years, City of Polokwane has been announcing that the municipality is experiencing serious challenges with regards to water and electricity losses as a result of burst pipes and illegal connections, among others. These losses accounted to loss of Millions of rand's annually in revenue to the municipality and distribution losses to the community.

The other challenge is around billing systems. The plan is to come up with smart solutions to these challenges. The City have come up with a programme that commissioned feasibility studies to check the technical aspect of the challenges experienced in relation to financial sustainability and concluded that in order to deal with all the underlying challenges the municipality first need to deal with the bulk infrastructure which is the replacement of AC pipes. At the same time will have to change all the meters with new technologies to address issues of human intervention (meter readers) and to improve the level of satisfaction to the consumers.

City of Polokwane have launched the **Smart Metering project** to members of the media and the community of Polokwane. The main aim was to connect with our stakeholders who are our customers so that they get to know that the project has resumed and not get surprised when people come to their homes for installation.

Prepaid smart meters are to be installed for all electricity users - both large power and small power users - making this roll-out probably the largest project to be undertaken by the City of Polokwane. The objectives of the project are to help the City overcome problems of inaccurate billing and encourage conservation of resources like water and electricity.

Furthermore, Smart Metering project will secure revenue losses for the municipality and bolster our financial position going forward. This will enable the municipality to free up resources that can be used to improve service delivery in other areas.

Most importantly, Smart Metering project aims to give power to the consumers because of its multiple benefits. Some of the benefits are as follows:

- Consumers having control over their usage or consumption, ease of access to purchases,
- Avoidance of unanticipated black-outs and disruptions.
- Customer service will be greatly improved through elimination of queries related to electricity billing, which account for the majority of customer queries.
- Earlier recognition of faults will become easier through increased data access.
- Illegal connections can also be identified quickly, thereby reducing technical losses.
- There are also job creation and small business opportunities arising from system installation and operation of vending systems.

The new Smart Metering system also allows for remote and local reading of the meter as well as detection of any tampering with the system. The official installation of the smart meters to households has begun as a pilot project. The installation commenced at Nirvana Area and once completed, the project will move to other areas in the City, Seshego and Mankweng.

The smart meters will be rolled out in both prepaid and post-paid mode. The meters are replaced at **no cost** to the consumers. At the same time the City is embarking on a project to convert all household conventional electricity meters to prepaid. All the government Departments and other large consumers will be on smart conventional and those who are serial defaulters will be put on prepaid immediately. Also, this will be done at no cost to the consumers. This project is a strategic focus project to ensure that the City is gearing towards the attainment of a Smart City and a Metro in the near future. The future is prepaid.

All Polokwane residents will soon get smart **electricity and water meters** installed as part of the City's Smart Meter Project which aims to improve service, monitor power consumption and reduce our residents' costs related to consumption of water and electricity. This project is a significant milestone towards the City objective to upgrade and improve the efficiency of services to our Communities.

Water New Pre-Paid Meters



Electricity New Pre-Paid Meters



5.7. AC Pipes Replacement

Objectives of AC pipe replacement:

- Renewing infrastructure assets that has reached the end of its useful life.
- Reducing water losses through burst pipes.
- Saving scarce resources - water and money.
- Improving reliability of the network and standard of service.
- Reducing maintenance costs.

- To improve revenue collection.

Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement project including (Seshego, CBD and Annadale) is complete, a project to install the Scada Monitoring system will commence.

5.7.1 Challenges -AC Pipes Replacement

Some challenges experienced:

- The replacement of pipes in a 'live' network in built up areas with many hidden services is in many ways a very difficult task.
- Increasing the size of pipes in areas constrained by existing storm water pipes, electricity, fibre etc. is extremely difficult.
- Higher extent of rock/ hard material encountered than expected.
- Scarce water sources added to challenges, impacting negatively on the execution of work, testing pipes and connecting users.

5.7.2 Phase 2 – AC Pipes Replacement

Further replacement of AC Pipes:

- Planning for the next phase of pipe replacement has started.
- Council must consider all service and infrastructure needs and priorities because funding is limited.
- There is an urgent need for augmenting the currently inadequate water sources – this is the most critical current need.
- The remaining extent of AC Pipes amounts to approximately 370 km.
- Limited funds prevent replacement of all pipes, focus will be on pipes that are in very poor condition, and pipes critical for the network.

5.7.3 Remaining extent of AC Pipes Replacement per cluster

The estimated remaining extent per cluster is as Reflected on the table Below:

Cluster	Total Scope (km)
City Cluster	131.0
Mankweng Cluster	103.0
Molepo/Chuene/Maja Cluster	49.0
Moletjie Cluster	1.1
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	10.0

Cluster	Total Scope (km)
Seshego Cluster	76.0
Total	370.1 km

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.8 Construction of Borehole Infrastructure for Sandriver North Wellfield

Project descriptions include:

- I. Equip 32 boreholes in Sandriver North Wellfields and Polokwane (6.4Mℓ/d average supply; 12Mℓ/d peak supply).
 - II. Pump to new Sandriver North Water treatment works and.
 - III. Distribute to existing Krugersburg and Potgieter reservoirs.
- **Project is progressing well at 94%.**

5.9 Water Losses

Water loss	June - 2024		June - 2023		June - 2022	
	Units	Units	Value	Units	Units	Value
Loss	R 120 431 545 (@R10.50/kl)	11 469 671 KL	R 109 757 487	13 550 307 KL	7 991 916 KL	R 46 832 629
Percentage	28 % (difference between purchased & sold water)		32,2 % (difference between purchased & sold water)		34 % (difference between purchased & sold water)	
Technical loss (Real Losses)	23 % estimated** Values obtained from IWA Water Balance Compiled by the Water & Sanitation Directorate		26,6 % estimated** Values obtained from IWA Water Balance Compiled by the Water & Sanitation Directorate		10.4 % estimated** Values obtained from WCWDM report conducted by WRP on behalf of SWPN, ABInBev & Anglo	

Non-technical loss (Apparent Losses)	5 % estimated** Values obtained from IWA Water Balance Compiled by the Water & Sanitation Directorate	5.5% estimated** Values obtained from WCWD report conducted by WRP on behalf of SWPN, ABInBev & Anglo	5.5% estimated** Values obtained from WCWD report conducted by WRP on behalf of SWPN, ABInBev & Anglo
---	--	--	--

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.9.1 Causes of Water losses

Technical losses

- Revenue losses due to bulk supply breakdowns
- Pipe bursts (Mainly AC Pipes)
- Leaking Valves & Fire Hydrants

Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters
- Unread meters
- Wrong meter readings
- Water Quality and meter age

5.9.2 Water losses Mitigation Strategy

(1) Work stream – Bulk Water Supply & Bulk Meters

Objective:

- Provide bulk water balances to proactively establish accurate assessment of water losses in bulk water supply system – Water balance is now monitored through newly installed bulk meters on the inlets and outlets of the reservoirs (*Project is currently in commissioning phase*)
- Replace/upgrade old infrastructure – AC Pipes replacement phase 2 planning concluded and is awaiting funds to implement the project in areas that still have old pipes (prepare and submit plans for funding to continue with Phase 2)
- Ensure adequate working bulk meters at all required supply points - Municipality has just completed a project for installation of Bulk meters, installation of top consumer meters (SAB, Coca Cola, Enterprise, etc) and monitoring systems. (*Project was completed in June 2022*)

(2) Assistance to the Poor and School Leak Repairs

Objective:

Ensure that internal water losses are identified and repaired - All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

3. Leak Repair Contractor

Objective:

To reduce water losses identified by the leak detection team by the appointment of repairs and maintenance contractor – All leaks identified on the network are continuously repaired by our internal maintenance team and appointed term contractors depending on the complexity.

(4) Valve & Fire Hydrant Audits

Objective:

- ✓ To ensure all valves and fire hydrants are located, working and are on the record system – All valves and fire hydrants are continuously monitored to ensure that they are on a good working condition and fire hydrants are monitored for theft of water

5.9.3 Longer term plan to address Water losses.

Longer term plan to address Water losses - distribution and revenue.

- 1) **Pipe bursts** – Phase 1 of the AC pipes replacement is completed and planning for phase 2 underway.
- 2) **Bridged meters** – continuous meter audits are conducted.
- 3) **Incorrect meter readings** – program to change all meters to prepaid to avoid wrong readings is being rolled out in phases.
- 4) **Faulty meters** – all meters are being changed to prepaid.
- 5) **Installation of bulk meters** – appointed service providers are given job cards to install Bulk Meters at reservoir outlets.

5.9.4 Progress in addressing water Provision Backlogs

- Progress **to-date** in the provision of basic services is at **87%**.
- Addressing source developments for Regional Water Schemes (with or without approved Technical Reports).
- Continuing with the implementation of Capital Works Programs under **IUDG, WSIG and CRR**.

5.9.5 Planned water expenditure towards new infrastructure

Planned new expenditure by source

Funding Source	IDP Budget 2023/24	Program
IUDG	R 114 973 251	Capital
WSIG	R 72 700 000	Capital
CRR	R 21 097 209	Capital

RBIG	R 161 539 000	Capital
Total	R 370 309 460	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.10 Strategic issues facing municipal water business (Water resilience)

5.10.1 Water Resource Security

The calculated daily water demand (including water losses) for Polokwane City, Seshego and Perskebult has been calculated as follows: (WMP).

Year	Supply Reservoir Demand (ML/day GAAD)					Total (ML/day)
	Krugersburg	Potgieter	Doornkraal	Seshego	Perskebult	
2017	28.3	34.8	8.4	23.2	5.0	99.6
2020	29.3	36.9	10.2	23.8	5.5	105.7
2025	33.3	40.9	15.4	27.7	6.0	123.4
2030	36.5	44.0	17.1	30.8	6.5	134.9
2035	38.9	47.3	18.7	35.8	7.0	147.7
2040	43.5	51.6	27.8	48.0	8.0	178.8
2045	56.9	54.6	31.4	54.6	9.0	206.4

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.10.2 Polokwane City Water Supply

Currently Ebenezer WS = 12 ML/day and Olifantspoort WS = 26 ML/day. A water supply shortfall in excess of 37 ML/day was calculated if water losses are included.

Resource Name	Average Supply to Polokwane City (Current)
Polokwane Boreholes	6.9 ML/day
Pelgrimshoop Boreholes	1.2 ML/day
Dap Naude Dam	10 ML/day
Seshego Dam + Borehole	7 ML/day

Resource Name	Average Supply to Polokwane City (Current)
Ebenezer Dam (LNW)*	12 ML/day
Olifantspoort RWS (LNW)*	26 ML/day
TOTAL	63.1 ML/day

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.10.3 Quality of Polokwane Drinking water: (Compliance with SANS 241)

Polokwane Municipality runs its own water quality laboratory. Samples from different points are collected on a weekly basis. Compliance with SANS 241 (South African National Standard drinking water) is monitored daily. Weekly reporting on the Blue Drop portal is maintained.

5.10.4 Network Management

- **Pipe bursts and Billing inaccuracies** are the biggest contributor to NRW.
- **Response** is maintained on a **24/7** basis.
- Less than **5%** of the network gets replaced per year in response to bursts.
- **Sewer spillages** are reported as a daily feature due to blockages of the pipes by **tree roots, objects flushed through the toilet, fats from food outlets and storm water deposited into the system** through gullies.
- **No replacements** of sewer reticulation network have been done.

5.10.5 Waste Water Treatment

- (Compliance with licence conditions; capacity, condition and operational performance of wastewater treatment plants)

Due to the **age of our plants**, we have challenges with **license compliance issues**. For the current water balance, **we are the peak of the design capacity**. However, as we are increasing sources, **we will run out of capacity soon**.

The construction of the **New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works** will address the capacity backlog. **Plans for refurbishment** of our plants **are concluded** and the Grant funding approved (**projects for all three plants are shovel ready**).

5.10.6 Water Resilience Summary Risk Assessment

In line with the provided Table **below**, the responded questions help the City of Polokwane to understand the issues pertaining to water business. The essence of this question help the City comprehend perceived risk over the next 5 years in terms of the following categories- (very low, low, moderate, high, very high).

Table: Summary Risk Assessment

Perceived risk (over next 5 years) of ...	v low	low	mod	high	v high
Significant water restrictions being imposed			X		
Episodes of drinking water unsafe to drink	X				
Regular water supply interruptions (or less frequent but lengthy interruptions)				X	
Significant pollution of rivers / inland water bodies as a result of a failing sewer network or poor performance of wastewater treatment works		X			
Unsound technical decisions compromise service as a result of critical technical skills gaps		X			
Unsound technical decisions compromise service as a result of undue political interference		X			
Deterioration in assets and service quality as a result of inadequate spending on maintenance and rehabilitation/replacement of assets				X	

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.10.7 HR for Water and Sanitation Directorate (Professional Engineers)

Number of registered professional engineers in water & sanitation department.

- **x3 are candidates** of registered professional engineers in water & sanitation department.

Critical skills vacancies (Number of posts at Professional level or above vacant or with acting position, out of year-on-year posts

- Professionals Level = **Level 6-4**

No.	Description	Job Level	Positions	Filled	Vacancies	Budgeted
1.	Director	0	1	0	1	1
2.	Manager (O&M)	1	1	0	1	1
3.	Manager (Purification)	1	1	1	0	1
4.	Manager (Infrastructure)	1	1	0	1	0

No.	Description	Job Level	Positions	Filled	Vacancies	Budgeted
5.	Assistant Manager (O&M)	3	1	0	1	1
6.	Assistant Manager (Infrastructure)	3	1	1	0	1
7.	Assistant Manager (Laboratories)	3	1	1	0	1
8.	Assistant Manager (Purification)	3	1	0	1	1
9.	Snr Engineering Technician (Infrastructure)	4	1	1	0	1
10.	Quality Scientist (Purification)	4	1	1	0	1
11.	Chief Chemist (Purifications)	4	1	1	0	1
12.	GIS Officer	4	1	1	0	1
13.	Engineering Technician (Infrastructure)	5	2	2	0	2
14.	Engineering Technician (O&M)	5	1	1	0	1
15.	Snr Technical Assistant (Infrastructure)	6	4	3	1	4
16.	Superintendent (O&M)	6	3	3	0	3
	TOTAL		22	15	6	21

Number of posts at artisan level, out of year-on-year posts); Staff per 1000 customer.

- Artisan's level = Level 9-7
- Number of Positions= 55
- Number Vacant= 20
- Number Filled= 35

Acting positions

No.	Description	Job Level	Acting
1.	Director	0	0
2.	Manager (O&M)	1	1
3.	Manager (Purification)	1	0
4.	Assistant Manager (O&M)	3	1
5.	Assistant Manager (Infrastructure)	3	0
6.	Assistant Manager (Purification)	3	1
7.	Plant Supervisor (Purification)	8	2
8.	Plumber (O&M)	9	4
9.	Fitter & Turner (Roaming Team)	9	1
	TOTAL		10

5.11 Smart Meters

5.11.1 Smart Meters Support and Enquiries

In order to deal with the Smart Meters challenges, the City of Polokwane has come up with measures to Support and Resolve the Community enquiries regarding the new Smart Meters. i.e.

- Now there is a Dedicated Office to handle Smart meter was established i.e., **Office No. 110 Civic Centre (Head Office)**. For:
 - New connections: **-Applied through building section at Civic Centre.**
 - Shifting of a water meter: **-Office No. 110 Civic Centre.**
 - Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: **- Office 110 Civic Centre.**
 - Stolen water meter: **Office 110 Civic Centre.**
 - Smart meter request: **WhatsApp Number: 068 290 8736. Landline: 015 290 2376**
 - Leakages, Low batteries and Conversions: **WhatsApp Number: 068 290 8736. Landline: 015 290 2376**

5.11.2 Turnaround Time when attending Complains.

- New connections: **0-14 days.**
- Shifting of a water meter: **0-7 days.**
- Damaged water meter and CIU replacement: **24 hours.**
- Stolen water meter: **24 hours.**
- Smart meter request: **1 month.**
- Leakages and Low batteries: **24 hours.**
- Prepaid conversions: **0-7 days**

5.12 WATER TANKERS

In Clusters that have shortage of water, the City of Polokwane is Relying on **water tankers** to provide water to the community on daily and weekly basis. The table below indicates the schedule per cluster:

Cluster	Total Number of Areas Supplied by Tankers	Dates of Supply	Comments
City	4	Daily	Areas tankered in the city are due to low reservoir levels resulting in insufficient system pressures to supply high lying areas.

Cluster	Total Number of Areas Supplied by Tankers	Dates of Supply	Comments
Seshego	1	Daily	New Development.
Moletjie	42	Weekly	Areas tankered in Moletjie are due to insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Mankweng	20	Weekly	Areas tankered in Mankweng are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Molepo/Chuene/ Maja	16	Weekly	Areas tankered in Molepo/Chuene/Maja are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes, Lepelle Northern Water and lack of a water distribution networks.
Sebayeng Dikgale	17	Weekly	Areas tankered in Sebayeng / Dikgale are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Aganang	24	Weekly	Areas tankered in Aganang are due insufficient water supply from the boreholes and lack of a water distribution networks.
Total	124		

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.12.1 Municipal Water Tankers Fleet



Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.13 Municipal Boreholes Status Quo

5.13.1 City of Polokwane Boreholes Status Quo Report

Boreholes Status Quo			
Cluster	Total No of Boreholes	Total Number of Boreholes Operating	Total Number of Boreholes Not Operating
City	41	31	10
Seshego	12	10	2
Moletjie	138	81	57
Mankweng	56	44	12
Molepo-Chuene Maja	40	38	2
Sebayeng Dikgale	52	48	4
Aganang	143	118	25
Total	482	370	112

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.14 Pump Station Status Quo

5.14.1 SUMMARY OF MUNICIPAL PUMP STATION STATUS QUO IN ALL CLUSTERS

Municipal Pump Stations			
Cluster	Total No of Pump stations	Total Number of Pump stations Operating	Total Number of Pump stations Not Operating
City	7	7	0
Seshego	1	1	0
Moletjie	1	1	0
Mankweng	2	2	0
Molepo-Chuene Maja	7	6	1
Sebayeng Dikgale	1	1	0
Aganang	1	1	0
Total	21	20	1

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.14.2 Names of the Pump Stations and Status Quo

	Cluster	Pump Station Name	Status
1	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja low lift	Operating
2	Chuene-Maja	Chuene Maja high lift	Operating
3	Chuene-Maja	Matabole	Operating
4	Chuene-Maja	Nare Letsoalo	Stolen Transformer. Reported to Eskom
5	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 2	Operating
6	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 3	Operating
7	Chuene-Maja	Molepo Pump station 1	Operating
8	Mankweng	Monakadu	Operating
9	Mankweng	Mothiba Pump Station	Operating
10	Sebayeng-Dikgale	Solomondale Pump station	Operating
11	Moletjie	Bloodriver Pump station	Operating
12	Seshego	Seshego Pump station	Operating
13	City	Sand River North	Operating
14	City	Sand River	Operating
15	City	Ivy Dale Pump station	Operating
16	City	Ext 34	Operating
17	City	Marshall Street	Operating
18	City	Dalmada Treatment	Operating
19	City	Serala View	Operating
20	Aganang	Utjane Pump station	Operating
21	Dap Naude	Dap Naude	Operating

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.15 CHALLENGES WATER SERVICES

- Lack of sustainable water sources for current and future demand, the municipality is currently receiving between **110 to 120 MI/d** and unable to meet the peak flow demand of **163 MI/day**.
- Lack of As-Built drawings for the City and Mankweng
- Eradication of water supply backlog in RWS.
- Eradication of Sanitation backlog (**+68 000 HH**).
- Refurbish components of existing sewer plant to reduce the smell.
- Electrification of boreholes in RWS by ESKOM.
- Lack of capacity at the Mankweng wastewater treatment works, which creates challenge on future developments.
- Illegal yard connections in rural areas.

- Illegal disposal of sewage in storm water drains at Mankweng (Private University Residence).
- Shortage of staff that results in excessive overtime.
- Lack of rural sanitation maintenance plan.

5.16 Interventions to solve the Challenges.

- Two new water treatment plants, one in construction and one is complete, progress is 75 % anticipated project delivery **2nd quarter 2025**.
- Refurbishment of Dap Naude Pipeline and Constriction of a new booster pump station.
- Upgrading and refurbishment of Seshego and Mashashane Water Treatment Works.

Water supply system 1. Water Shortage

- Refurbishment of City boreholes and intensify security.
- Implementation of Groundwater Project – Equipping of drilled boreholes, Bulk pumping lines and modelling (to produce supply zones, pressure zones, as built drawings).

2.Waste Water Treatment Works (WWTW) overloaded.

- Upgrading of Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works to 32MI/day (current capacity by 26 MI/day). Phase 1 completed;
- Construction of first 20MI/day module of the Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (RWWTW).
- Enhance the current operations (Capacity building to current personnel and filling the vacant positions).

3.Aging Infrastructure

Water

- Replacement of Asbestos Cement pipes (AC).
- Remodeling the water supply system (to locate valves, have as built drawings).

Sanitation

- Modelling the sewer system / Sewer Master Plan (for upgrading and refurbishment purpose)

4.Uncoordinated New Settlements

- All land developments to be coordinated through Planning Directorate.

5.Transformers, cable theft and vandalism/ Delay from Eskom to energise the boreholes.

- Develop security plan.
- Engage Eskom on their turnaround time for energizing of new boreholes and replacing the stolen transformers.

6.Private water supply by LNW to Municipal Residence

- Dalmada water users supplied directly from LNW.
- Engage with LNW and Dalmada Water users for Municipality to take over the water supply responsibility.

7.Maintenance of Rural Households Sanitation.

- Development of rural sanitation maintenance plan.

8. Over reliance on contractors.

- Build capacity to the internal personnel for the specialize functions e.g., boreholes and pump stations.

5.16.1 WHY REGIONAL WASTE WATER TREATMENT PLANT

The City has **three (3)** Waste Water Treatment Plants i.e.

- 1) **Polokwane,**
- 2) **Seshego and**
- 3) **Mankweng.**

Polokwane Waste Water Treatment Plant is the **biggest** with **26 MI/day** capacity and the current load standing at **34 MI/day**. Plans are in place to construct the **100 ML/day Regional Waste Water Treatment Plant** for the whole Polokwane Municipal **sewage load** and to cater for new developments (however there is limited budget).

For the purposes of increasing the capacity of the Waste Water Treatment Plants to support **current and future development, the** municipality is currently in a process of building:

- 1) **New Regional Wastewater treatment 20MI/day.**
- 2) **Seshego Wastewater Treatment Plant (Refurb).**
- 3) **Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Plant (Refurb)**

5.16.2 New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant



New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant



New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant



New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant



New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant



New Regional Wastewater Treatment Plant

5.16.2 Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works



Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works 1

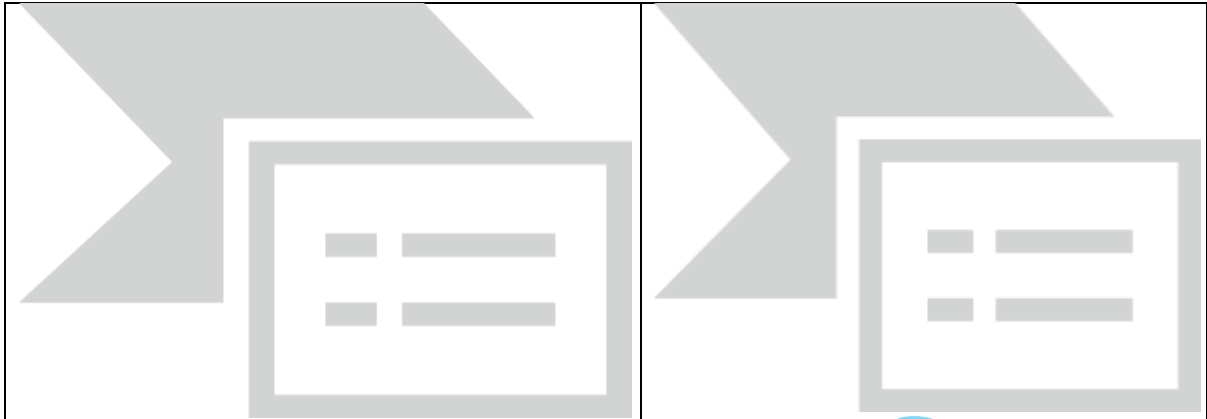


Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works 2



Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works 3





Construction of Seshego Water Treatment Works 4

Source: PLK Water and Sanitation SBU

5.16.3 Construction of the Sand River North Water Treatment Works.



5.17 Polokwane Water Utility - Metro Vision

Polokwane Municipality is earmarked to be the first future Metropolitan Municipality for Limpopo Province.

For the municipality to reach that status it will have to satisfy number of requirements in terms of criteria and amongst those will be the City's development growth and the crux of that development is **water**.

Sustainable bulk water supply to the city will ensure that all lined up **catalytic projects** which are also meant to boost the City's opportunity to become a metro become successful.

Other Metropolitan Municipalities have successfully established their own water entities which successfully supply their own water and carry out maintenance.

Johannesburg Metro has established its own Municipal Water Entity called Johannesburg Water (CoJ) as its sole shareholder.

On the side of Ekurhuleni Metro, they have established East Rand Water Company (ERWAT) established in 1992 as Section 21 Company.

Polokwane Municipality sources **60%** of its water from outside the boundary of the Municipality the majority of which is supplied by **Lepelle Northern Water (LNW)**.

Water is bought from LNW for **R9/kl**. For the **2020/21** financial year, bulk purchases for water totaled **R 191 088 675.00** according to the audited financial statements

An external mechanism of water & wastewater service provision would imply that the full responsibility for the provision of all or a ring-fenced part of water & sanitation services, which may include **repairs, maintenance, upgrading, renewal and expansion** of the works (possibly even including the development of new works) is transferred to the **proposed utility**, which is then by implication a new WSP under the WSA.

The WSP is solely and autonomously responsible for the execution of the particular ring-fenced service, held accountable by the WSA based on an output specification, and carries substantial technical, operational and financial risk.

In such instance, output specification driven, performance-based agreement will be required between the city and its Water Utility.

5.17.1 KEY WATER INFRASTRUCTURE

Bulk Surface water abstraction system:

- Dap Naude Dam (18 MI/day)
- Seshego Dam (2 MI/day)
- Molepo Dam (6 MI/day)
- Houtriver Dam (1.6 MI/day)
- Mashashane/Utjane Dam (0.5 MI/day)
- Chuene Maja Dam (2.7 MI/day)

Bulk Ground Water System:

Ground water is classified according to two main supply schemes or systems, namely the **Polokwane groundwater system** and the **Seshego System** (also incorporating the surface water abstraction from Seshego Dam) to bring additional **20 MI/day**.

Water Treatment Works

- Dap Naude/Dalmada Water Treatment Works (**18 MI/day**)
- New Seshego Water Treatment Works (**10.4 MI/day**)
- New Sand River Nort Water Treatment Works (**18 MI/day**) ***
- Molepo Water Treatment Works (**6 MI/day**)
- Houtriver Water Treatment Works (**1.6 MI/day**)

- Mashashane/Utjane Water Treatment Works (0.5 MI/day)
- Chuene Maja Water Treatment Works (2.7 MI/day)

Wastewater Treatment Works:

- Polokwane Wastewater Treatment Works (27 MI/day)
- Seshego Wastewater Treatment Works (9 MI/day)
- Mankweng Wastewater Treatment Works (8 MI/day)
- New Regional Wastewater Treatment Works (20 MI/day) ***

(***indicates Projects that are under implementation.)

Other Infrastructure Includes but not limited:

- Sewer Pumps Stations.
- Raw Water & Portable Water Pump Stations.
- Bulk water and Bulk Wastewater pipelines.
- Bulk & Service Reservoirs.
- Reticulation Pipelines.
- Bulk and Domestic Meters.

5.17.2 Recommendations for Polokwane Water Utility

It is recommended that the Municipality:

- Engage in a **pre-feasibility** fact finding exercise to determine the potential of establishment of a water utility, it may be beneficial to engage with **Metros** regarding their successful transition to an establishment of water utility, specifically regarding any lessons learnt during their process.
- Conduct a study as per Section 76 of MSA to determine the service delivery mechanism, implications and overall feasibility, this study needs to be comprehensive and include as a minimum the MSA and WSA requirements.
- The current human capital may be affected. Engagement with labour **Unions** should be undertaken, and a resolution will be required concerning the existing staff.
- The recommended procedure is that the current staff employed by the city will be required to be transferred to the Utility for training and skills development.

5.17.3 SAVE Water Campaign



5.17.4 Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10

Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10 project has reached 64% completion. The project aims to enhance water access for the villages of Sebayeng, Dikgale, Potse Ntsima and Syferkuil, benefiting 118 households.

In addition to advancing infrastructure, the project has created **34 jobs**, supporting the local economy and offering valuable opportunities for community members.



Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10



Sebayeng/Dikgale Regional Water Supply (RWS) Phase 10

5.17.5 Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project

The Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project, is approaching completion with an impressive **92%** of the work finished. This initiative aims to improve access to clean water for the residents of **Kalkspruit and Mangongoa** villages.

The project, initiated to address the critical need for reliable water infrastructure, has made significant progress in recent months. Importantly, it has created **29 jobs**, thereby contributing to the local economy and providing valuable employment opportunities for community members.

The construction and installation phases have been carefully managed to ensure timely completion and adherence to high-quality standards. As the project nears its final phase, efforts are focused on the final testing and commissioning of the water supply systems.



Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project



Kalkspruit/Mangongoa Water Supply Project

CHAPTER Six: Energy Services Analysis

6.1. ENERGY SERVICES

Polokwane Municipality distributes electricity in the City/Seshego cluster while Eskom is the service provider in the rest of the Municipal area. **99%** of dwellings in the City/Seshego cluster are supplied with electricity. Streetlights and High Mast lights are installed annually in various areas of the municipal area of jurisdiction.

The number of households with access to electricity increased from 231 317 in **2020** and to 232 172 in 2021 and 233 372 in 2022. The 2022/23 increased to 234 516 while 2023/24 moved to 235 789 households with access to electricity.

Households for Polokwane municipality increased from 178 001 in 2011 to 239 116 in 2016 (Stats SA 2016), making the current access to electrification to 98.07%. Guided by the Information from the Global Market Intelligence (2023) the total number of Households in the Municipality has increased to **254 907**. This reduced the access to electricity from 98,07% to 92%. The new backlog is 19 118.

Although the backlog percentage seems less, the growth rate of the City makes the municipality to fail in making sure access to electricity by all. The municipal area increased in 2016, incorporating major parts of former Aganang municipality (76.93%) into Polokwane and thus adding backlog numbers.

6.1.1 Completed Project - Supply and installation of electrical network in Polokwane Ext 40

This project is completed with 142 houses energised.



electrical network in Polokwane Ext 40, (146 households), including street lights



electrical network in Polokwane Ext 40, (146 households), including street lights

6.1.2 After Electrification Photos for Polokwane Ext 40



After Electrification Photos for Polokwane Ext 40



After Electrification Photos for Polokwane Ext 40



After Electrification Photos for Polokwane Ext 40

6.1.3 Energy Master Plan

The **Energy Master Plan** has been reviewed in 2018/19 and has been approved by Council 2020. The draft master plan is prepared on the basis of 5 years' growth Projection. The analysis of the energy master plan forms the basis of a recommendation regarding the anticipated demographic and economic growth factor that should be provided for in terms of additional electricity demand during the next five years. The current challenge is capacity challenge in Eskom licence area and the high rate in which low-cost houses are constructed in the urban area, Polokwane Ext 78 and Ext 133, 134, 127 and 40 to name a few, thus creating urban backlog of 10658.

Table: Distribution of households with its main source of energy for lighting

Main source of energy	No of Households
Electricity from mains	235 789
Other sources of electricity (e.g., generator, etc.)	302
Gas	419
Paraffin	2038
Candles	8383
Solar	800
Other	394
None	554

Main source of energy	No of Households
Unspecified	435
Total	249 114

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

In comparison with the 2011 Census there is tremendous improvement of the number of households with access to electricity in 2024. The global Market intelligence (2023) indicates total households as 354 907, making a new backlog target of 19 118 households without access to electricity.

6.1.4 Free Basic Electricity

Free basic electricity is the amount of electricity which is deemed sufficient to provide basic electricity services to a poor household.

Polokwane municipality provides **50kWh** of free electricity to registered consumers in the Eskom supply area reduced from 16012 to 15240 configured consumers and 14372 collecting reduced to 14622 collecting. The number reduced due to load shedding and people resort to other alternatives, mostly solar. In Polokwane and Seshego (Polokwane license area) 100kWh is allocated monthly to 8663 households from 13134 registered beneficiaries. In Aganang cluster, 3995 households are benefitting from FBE whilst 500 households are benefitting from Free Basic Alternative Energy (FBAE). There are additional 1300 solar home systems allocated within rural municipal area, and planned for completion by September 2024

Challenges

1. Non collection by some beneficiaries
2. Free Basic Electricity provided to able people while some indigents do not benefit.
3. Insufficient staff to verify and approve indigence in Eskom and municipal license areas.
4. Budget constrains to provide 100kWh in Polokwane license area, the national allocation is 50kWh for FBE.

Table: Free Basic Electricity Provision

Basic service	The limited amount	Free basic services provided	Number Customers	The level and standard
Electricity				
Eskom Area	R194.40 per month	14372 collected	15240	50kWh at RDP standard (20amp connections)

Municipal License Area	R144.51 per month	8 663 collected	7941	100 kWh (20-amp connections)-
------------------------	-------------------	-----------------	------	-------------------------------

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.5 Free Basic Alternative Energy (solar light system)

Polokwane municipality had in the past in conjunction with Department of Mineral Resources and Energy provided solar light system to households that will not be provided with electricity in five years' time. The contract ceased since it was between the service provider and Department of mineral resources and energy. New application for inclusion in the non-grid electrification has been sent to Department of Mineral Resources and Energy, response was an allocation of 1300 home solar systems in April 2024 and appointment of service provider from June 2024. The 300 units installed to date and expected completion date is September 2024.

Polokwane municipality is providing this service to 500 households with solar light, cooking gel and gel stoves to Aganang cluster, a cluster service provisioning that formed part of basic conditions for incorporating former Aganang municipality with Polokwane. The numbers also fluctuate as and when the areas get electrified. 445 households benefited for 2016/17 financial year till 2018/2019. From 2020 to date 500 beneficiaries are served.

Challenges

1. Financial constrains to provide the FBAE (free basic alternative) service.
2. The approval of the submitted application
3. No enough staff to verify beneficiaries.

6.1.6 Solar Water Geysers

Polokwane municipality received 10 000 units to be allocated to low-cost housing and indigent residences of wards **8, 11,12,13,14,17,19 and 37** within City and Seshego clusters with an additional 6000 added at a later stage. Council approved the criteria in considering people who were living in low-cost houses and paying services to the municipality first. The program is planned to be rolled all over the municipal area as and when new allocations are provided. Currently 4 geysers installed with seven incidences of hot water bursts that resulted in four people with minor injuries. Polokwane, DMRE and the Department and Labor are busy with investigations and had to put the project on hold. A total of 14213 out of 16000 units installed to date. The challenge was that there were copper pipes stolen from storage and about 920 units will be affected.

6.1.7 Solar geysers Installed at Seshego Ext 71 and 75



Solar geysers Installed at Seshego Ext 71 and 75
Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.8 The two types of solar water geysers installed at Mohlakaneng



The two types of solar water geysers installed at Mohlakaneng
Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.1.9 Solar water geysers Challenges

1. Geyser allocation to a moving target as new low-cost housing are allocated annually.
2. Water cut offs delays the project
3. Budget Constrains
4. Warn out roof structures and rotten corrugated irons.
5. Appointments and roll out by the department of mineral resources and energy.
6. Cases of inappropriate material provided, e.g., plastic taps, tap screws instead of bolt and nuts.
7. Roof leaks, etc.
8. Asbestos roof replacement added the demand
9. Outstanding case for tubular geysers by the department with manufacturers

6.1.10 Challenges/Achievements by the Municipality to provide Energy.

- Capacity Provisioning – the municipality will not be able to sustain future developments unless new programmes are implemented to provide electricity capacity. Projects were identified to strengthen the supply which, amongst others, includes construction of Bakone substation (completed), construction of Bakone to IOTA 66kV line, construction of Matlala substation, construction of 66KV lines from Matlala substation to Alfa and Sigma substations respectfully as well as construction of a 90MW solar farm through PPP which are currently at planning stage.
- Delays in implementation of other strategic projects identified in the master plan due to budget constrains will result in lack of capacity in future which might require the implementation of internal load shedding.
- Illegal connections and bridging of electricity meters are contributing to electricity losses. A service provider has been appointed to help with revenue enhancement.
- Ageing infrastructure
- Theft and vandalism of cables has been reduced in substations, but thieves are now targeting other areas such as household connections, miniature substations and low voltage cables in the industrial areas, streetlight and meter box covers. Storage of equipment by street venders and people living in streets are breaking locks for mini substations.
- Theft of transformers which supplies residents and borehole pumps is very high in rural areas and is causing disruption of service delivery.
- ESKOM has upgraded Boyne and Nobel substations and now busy upgrading University substation and new Rampheri substation is at 98% completion stage construction. Network strengthening is also taking place in strategic areas within the municipality.
- A company was appointed to install prepaid meters for Domestic customers and Smart metering solutions for business and bulk supplied customers within the city/Seshego area.
- Retrofitting of Library lights and installation of roof PV in Library Gardens (completed) and New Peter Mokaba stadium designs are completed.
- Installation of check meters to verify the bill from Eskom, has been completed.

- A service provider has also been appointed to upgrade the current meters for Token Identifier (TID) compliance and replace meters that cannot be upgraded to be able to recognise new tokens post November 2024.

6.1.11 BACKLOG OF ENERGY SERVICES

Below is the current status of existing backlog in Energy services, as per global market intelligence of 2023.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog	Order in terms of Highest Backlog
Electricity	254 907	242 015 (87.2%)	12 892	6 th

Source: Global Market Intelligence 2023

6.1.12 Rural Areas Electrification

Each year the City of Polokwane get INEP (Integrated National Electrification Plan) grant Budget to electrify rural areas that still do not have Electricity. Council has approved electricity Priority list that guide the Process. there is so much progress in this Programme, however, being delayed currently due to capacity constraints on Eskom networks.

6.1.13 Polokwane/Seshego Urban Complex Technical Assessment

Electricity Services

Level of Service	Grid Electricity Service - connected and metered (conventional and or pre-paid).
Overview	The Municipality distributes electricity in the Polokwane City/Seshego Functional Area while Eskom is the service provider in the rest of the Municipal area.
Capacity and Backlog	<p>The electricity backlog in the Polokwane Electricity Supply Area is 10800. New township development in the Seshego (Extension 133, 134, 127,126) area have not been electrified but the process of building more low-cost housing continues.</p> <p>ESKOM currently supplies Polokwane Municipality from two substations namely the Pietersburg Substation and the Silica Substation. Indications are that the demand on the Pietersburg Substation exceeds the secure capacity of the supply lines by 45% but does not exceed the secure capacity of the 132kV / 66kV transformers. The demand at the Silica Substation does not exceed the secure capacity of the incoming lines or the secure capacity of the 132kV /66kV transformers. ESKOM has the following upgrading/strengthening strategies:</p> <p>Pietersburg Substation:</p>

Eskom is currently busy with the planning for the construction of a new 132kV supply line from the Eskom Witkop Main Transmission Substation to the Eskom Pietersburg Substation. This line will have a capacity of 195MVA and is expected to be completed in 2026. At the completion of this line the secure capacity of the supply lines to Pietersburg Substation will be 172MVA which will be sufficient until 2028.

After completion of the new line one of the existing lines will be upgraded as well to have a capacity of 195MVA. The date of completion of the upgrading of this line is currently unknown. Completion of the upgrading of this line will bring the secure capacity of the supply lines to, Pietersburg Substation to 281MVA. This upgrade falls outside the 10-year planning window.

Silica Substation: No upgrading for the substation is planned.

Seshego Metering Point - Sigma Substation: No upgrading for this metering point is planned.

Pietersburg Substation: area: Bakone substation next to Silica substation is completed while Bakone - Iota 66kV line and the Bakone intake substation is scheduled for completion in year three (3) after which the 66kV lines feeding into the old Pietersburg area will have a firm capacity of $4 \times 80\text{MVA} = 320\text{MVA}$. This is sufficient for the foreseeable future demand.

Seshego area: Supplied from Eskom Pietersburg substation to the Seshego metering point by a single non-firm 66kV line with a capacity of 42MVA which is concerning for the following reasons:

It is mostly a wood-pole line with poles dating from 1976/1977. This indicates that the line is 48 years old and has reached the end of its lifespan.

The supply is not firm, and a breakdown of the line could result in a lengthy period without electricity for the entire Seshego.

It is recommended that this line be replaced due to the age of the existing line.

It is further recommended for the Construction of Matlala and Dendron substations with its connector 66kV lines to make a complete 66kV ring in Seshego area as well

Bakone Intake Substation: The Bakone substation is completed in 2023.

Alpha Intake Substation: The 66kV supply line to Sigma substation is currently supplied from the Eskom Pietersburg substation and is under control of Eskom. This situation is unacceptable, especially when the 66kV system will be modified to become a firm supply when control of the system must be by the Municipality. To correct the situation, Eskom moved the metering point to Alpha/Pietersburg substation but not yet transferred ownership of the line to Polokwane municipality.

The existing transformer substation has sufficient capacity for the 10-year study period. In the long-term new transformer substations are required with the proposed establishment of Tweefontein, Dendron and Matlala to unlock the development of the areas.

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

The largest contributor to service charges is **electricity services** with a contribution of 68% followed by water services accounting for approximately 18% of the total service charges levied.

6.1.14 The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at EXT 78 - Phase 2

Project Description

STANDS) –Multiyear Project: The Supply and Installation of Electrical network at Polokwane EXT 78 - Phase 2 (1210). **850 households were completed and energised while 637 are planned for 2024/25 financial year.**

6.2 Electricity Losses

The municipality has managed to decrease electricity losses to **12,09%** in the 2023/2024 financial year. Automatic meter reading has been installed on all Large Power Users allowing constant monitoring of 503 large consumers. This automatic meter reading systems, meter audits and ad hoc operations to identify illegal connections are used to reduce energy losses. The municipality has also established a Revenue Protection Unit to assist with finding illegal connections, meter tampering and meters that are not on the financial system.

6.2.1 Causes of electricity losses

(a) Technical losses

- Transmission/distribution losses (**Inherent resistance of conductors to conduct electricity**).
- Transformer losses (**Copper and iron losses**).

(b) Non-Technical Losses

- Bridged meters.
- Illegal connections.
- Unread meters.
- Wrong readings.
- Meters not on the system.

6.2.2 Longer Term plan to address Electricity losses (distribution and revenue)

(a) Non-Technical Losses:

- Continuous meter auditing.
- Implement a check and area metering solution to identify where the main losses occur – area metering, substation and feeder levels.
- Purchase “**smart ready**” **pre-payment meters** to replace tampered and faulty meters.
- Back to basics approach and improve and enhance the customer service programmes and education programmes in the field.
- Ensure that all consumers are metered and are paying for the energy consumed.

(b) Technical Losses:

- Contribute to approximately **6-8%** of total losses depending on the loading and the age of the networks.
- **Re-prioritise** spending to increase the funding for upgrading and refurbishing of electrical networks.
- **Develop Maintenance Plans** to improve the performance of networks to reduce the technical losses.
- Consider network operations **under optimum “open point”** conditions to avoid long feeders and high resistances.
- Maintain networks to the standard as prescribed by **NRS standards and NERSA licence conditions**
- Electrical meters to be installed on all municipal buildings, street and traffic lights to account for own use which is now shown as losses.

6.2.3 Electricity Losses (Key Findings)

Electricity loss	June 24		June 23		June 22		Jun-21	
	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value	Units	Value
Loss	73 244 186 .07 kWh	R 143 061 602, 88	61 524 449 kWh	R 89,291,536, 16	78 885 211 kWh	R 103,603, 776.84	103 721 777 kWh	R 115,503,8 59.95
Percentage losses	12,22%		10,42%		11,8%		15%	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Electrification)

The municipality is electrifying houses on a **priority list** that was approved by council in **2017** with approximately **637** houses to be electrified in the fy 24/25.

Challenges Experienced

- ✓ Funding deductions – A certain number of houses are planned and included in the IDP and then needs **to be reduced** when the DORA is published.
- ✓ Capacity shortages on Eskom networks.
- ✓ Site allocation by Indunas/Kgoshi's are generally **not planned properly** and are sometimes in **wetlands**.
- ✓ Additional houses **built after** the planning was finalised is a challenge.
- ✓ DMRE allocation per house **too little** to cover the actual cost.
- ✓ Number of additional houses is **increasing faster** than what is electrified.

- ✓ **CoGHSTA** is implementing housing projects without funding for electricity.

Progress in addressing backlogs in basic services (Public lighting)

Public lighting

Only **five high mast lights** are installed per year due to funding shortages on CRR and as and when CRR funds are available.

Solar lighting technology, even though not as effective as Grid connected lighting, is going to be used in 2022/2023 for the first time to avoid high connection costs and capacity constraints in the Eskom supply areas. It will also assist with lighting up high crime areas during load shedding and load reduction.

The municipality has huge numbers of outdated, high consumption streetlights on the networks. These streetlights are being replaced with LED and lately solar lights to decrease the consumption and maintenance costs.

Challenges Experienced

- The demand for high mast lights is **much higher** than what is installed.
- Eskom connections are **very costly** and takes for ages to be completed.
- Capacity constraints on Eskom networks hampers the completion of most of the high mast light projects.
- Energy services is implementing **solar High Mast lights** as a resolution to this.
- Recommending that all new public lights be powered from solar.

New infrastructure

- New infrastructure is planned and implemented by means of the **Energy Master Plan** which was approved by Council in **2020 Fy**.
- The City is, however, **growing faster** than what can be funded from the CRR.
- The municipality is currently in **negotiations with Eskom and NERSA** for **taking over** some of the **Eskom networks** that are in close proximity of municipal networks and that are falling in the **SDF** and or is creating unsafe islands within the Polokwane supply area.
- The municipality is busy **advertising** for the installation of **Power Banks** to reduce the **Eskom Maximum Demand** and the installation of a **Solar Farm** to reduce the consumption on the Eskom Bill is also in an advanced planning stage.

New infrastructure

Power Bank and Solar Farm Projects

- The municipality is busy advertising for the installation of **Power Banks** to reduce the **Eskom Maximum Demand**.
- The project will be implemented on a Risk Based Approach with minimal to **zero expenditure for the municipality**.
- Service providers will recoup their capital layout from a share of the savings on the Eskom Bill.
- Further to the **Power Banks project**, the municipality embarked on a feasibility study for the installation of a **Solar Farm project**, in which the **DBSA** got involved and found it to be a viable project with the potential of becoming a **regional supplier** that can include supply to smaller neighbouring municipalities.
- The 100MW approval by government suits this project ideally.

**Planned expenditure towards (new infrastructure, operations; maintenance and planning)
(Projects Planned for the next three years)**

Projects planned for the next three years	Required Budget
Completion of Bakone Substation	Completed
Bakone to Iota 66kV connector line	R110m
Securing of servitudes for 66kV Ring Feeders	R6,7m
Matlala Substation	R188M
New Pietersburg Substation	at implementation stage
Sigma to Matlala 66kV connector line	R110m
Tweefontein substation	R60m
Electrification of houses	R208m
Replace street lights with LED luminaires	R240m

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.2.4 Maintenance Plan for Electrical Infrastructure

Maintenance Plan

- A **Maintenance Plan** is currently being developed with the assistance of the Asset team to plan and implement maintenance of infrastructure in an **organised and auditable fashion**.
- Funding allocation towards maintenance of infrastructure will in future be much easier.
- The City is currently **not honouring** its licence agreement with **NERSA** as far as maintenance of infrastructure is concerned.
- The funding allocation towards the maintenance of infrastructure currently stands at
 - Maintenance budget = R14m
 - Replace meter boxes and 11kV Oil switchgear = R1,6m

6.3 Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

Introduction

Polokwane municipality has been issued with the licence to distribute Electricity in the City and Seshego areas. The other areas and townships are supplied by Eskom who has capacity challenges already and busy improving that through construction of substations. Electricity is one of the basic service deliveries KPI for any licenced Municipality. The process of capacity provisioning includes construction and/or upgrading of substations and switching stations to be able to provide electricity as and when required. The delays in construction of substations means that some new developed areas will not be able to be provided with electricity.

Discussions

Annually the municipality do budget for the provisioning of bulk electrical infrastructure. CRR and INEP are used to provide infrastructure and electrification projects. Budget constrains causes some projects to be done way after their proposed construction period, which means some developmental areas will lack capacity to be connected. Township developments continues as some are done through private developers and some by COGHTA. Those by COGHTA are provided with gravel roads, water and sanitation. Electrical capacity provisioning is done by developers for private developments and by Polokwane Municipality for COGHTA and municipal developments.

6.3.1 Approved Townships List that Require Electrification

The following table is a report from Planning and Land Use management unit indicating the approved townships and those on planning to be implemented. Most of them shows water and sanitation completed, while electrical and taring of roads requires municipal budgets to be done.

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
1	Polokwane X 72	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income Low income	500 Government employee housing 300 RDP Units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections	R 64 000 000.00 R33 000 000.00 RDP subsidies required

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
						Water and Sanitation Installed	
2	Polokwane X 76	Erf 15953 and Erf 15934 Polokwane X 76	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	240 housing units Residential 4	High density Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	R96 000 000.00 CCG & top up subsidies secured. R 9 600 000.00
3	Polokwane X 78	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units Residential 1 Mixed 2100 RDP units 500 high densities 400 GAP	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Res 1 Res 4 Res 1 Water and Sanitation Installed	R 240 000 000.00 R168 000 000.00 funding required. R128 000.00 CCG & top up subsidies required. R4 000 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
4	Polokwane X 79	Farm Doornkraal	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income	500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	R 40 000 000.00

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
5	Polokwane X 106	Portion 171 of the farm Doornkraal 680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	208 units Residential 1-190 Residential 2-18	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	R 6 640 000.00 RDP subsidies
6	Polokwane X 107	Portion 191 of the farm Doornkraal 680 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category, Student Accommodation and Social Housing.	638 units 238 RDP 200 social housing Student accommodation 200 Residential 1-142 Residential 2-854	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Res 1 High densities Student beds Res 1 GAP Market Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	R 51 040 000.00 R26 180 000.00 required. R51 200 000.00 R29 319 781.00 Funding required. R1 420 000.00 FLISP subsidies required. R8 540 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
7	Polokwane X 86	Remaining Extent of Portion 45 of the farm	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category	564 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections .	R 45 120 000.00

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
	Doornkraal 680 LS				Water and Sanitation Installed	
8	Polokwane X 121	To be verified	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category 300 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, Electrical Connections . Water and Sanitation Installed	R 24 000 000.00
9	Polokwane X 126	Engelsch edoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category 500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, electrical Connections . Installation in progress for Water and Sanitation	R 40 000 000.00
10	Polokwane X 127	Farm Engelsch edoornboom 668 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income category 500 units Residential 1	Tared Road Network and storm water drainage, electrical Connections , Water and Sanitation.	R 40 000 000.00

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
11	Polokwane X 133	Farm Klipfontein 670 LS Farm Stoefontein 678 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	3000 units 2 000 RDP 1 000 market Residential 1 GAP	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation. RDP GAP market	R 240 000 000.00 R220 000 000.00 subsidies required. R10 000 000.00 FLISP subsidies required
12	Polokwane X 134	Farm Vogelstruisfontein 667 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Mixed income Groups	2290 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	R 366 400 000.00
13	Nirvana X 5	Holding 74 and 75 Ivydale AH	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income category	100 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	R 16 000 000.00
14	Seshego C	Seshego	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 100 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation Installed	To be verified R 16 000 000.00
15	Mankweng Unit C X 1	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Middle income category	402 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network,	R 16 080 000.00
16	Mankweng Unit F	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 500 UNITS Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	R 80 000 000.00

A Ten-Year Township Development Plan (Energy Capacity Provision in Polokwane)

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
17	Mankweng Unit G	Mankweng	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	To be verified 500 UNITS Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	R 80 000 000.00
18	Mamadimo Park	Portion 54 of the Farm Syferkuil 921 LS	Approved Proclaimed	Low Income Category	1007 units Residential 1	Tarred Road Network, electrical Connections, Water and Sanitation.	R 161 120 000.00
19	Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1	Annadale	Approved Proclaimed	Social Housing	494 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity High density	R 19 680 000.00 R135 000 000.00 CCG & top up subsidies acquired
20	Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	51 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	R 2 040 000.00
21	Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	55 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	R 2 200 000.00
22	Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	R 2 200 000.00
23	Erf 8634 Pietersburg	Polokwane	Approved Proclaimed	To be verified	50 units Residential 4	Upgrading of Bulk Infrastructure Capacity	R 2 200 000.00
TOTAL						R 1 659 320 000.00	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.3.2 Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)

The above developments require electricity and in some areas the construction of a substation or switching station to make sure there is capacity available for electrical connections. The following summary shows the cost implementation to provide electricity as some shown above are costs for reticulation without capacity provisioning.

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Polokwane Ext 72	300 @ R 6 000 000	500 @ R 12 000 000	R 18 000 000	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 76		240 @ R 6 000 000	R 6 000 000	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext 78	3000 @ R 60 000 000	3000 @ R 75 000 000	R 75 000 000	Busy with 2000 sites. 1000 households completed It requires the completion of new Pietersburg to connect all sites. Portion 2 could be connected from Emdo temporary.
Polokwane Ext 79	500 @ R 10 000 000		R 10 000 000	Bulk capacity available from Alpha substation, however, increase of feeder cables are required.
Polokwane Ext. 86	564 @ R 11 280 000		R 11 280 000	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)

Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Polokwane Ext 106	208 @ R 5 000 000		R 5 000 000	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Luthuli 9L feeder. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext. 109
Polokwane Ext. 107	438@ R8 760 000	200@ R5 000 000	R 13 760 000	Capacity not available, can be connected temporarily from Emdoring. New 11KV switching station to be built through developers at Polokwane Ext.109
Polokwane Ext. 121	300@R 6 000 000		R 6 000 000	No capacity. It depends on completion of New Pietersburg substation.
Polokwane Ext.126	500 @ R 10 000 000		R 10 000 000	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Polokwane Ext. 127	500 @ R 10 000 000		R 10 000 000	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Polokwane Ext.133	2000 @ R40 000 000	1000 @ R 20 000 000	R 60 000 000	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)

Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Polokwane Ext.134	2290 @ R 46 000 000		R 46 000 000	No Capacity. It depends on the construction of Matlala substation but could be connected temporary to Zone 5 line
Nirvana X 5	100 @ 3 000 000		R 3 000 000	Capacity available and could be connected from Epsilon substation through Southern Gate way substation.
Seshego C	100 @ R 2 500 000		R 2 500 000	Capacity available and can be connected from Zone 3 Or zone 6 ring
Mankweng Unit C X 1	402			No capacity but Eskom to confirm
Mankweng Unit F	500			Completed
Mankweng Unit G	500			Completed
Mamadimo Park	1007			Completed
Erf 514 and Erf 515 Annadale Ext 1 (Garena)	494 @ R 15 000 000		R 15 000 000	Busy and capacity available from Gamma substation
Erf 6403 Portion 1 Pietersburg	51 @ R 1 600 000		R 1 600 000	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	55 @ R 1 700 000		R 1 700 000	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 6403 Portion 2 Pietersburg	50 @ R 1 500 000		R 1 500 000	Capacity available through Le-Rouxville
Erf 8634 Pietersburg	50 @ R 1 500 000		R 1 500 000	Capacity available from Epsilon substation

Urgent, Current and Medium Projects for Consideration (1 to 3 years and 3 to 5 years)				
Total townships	Total Low cost	Total Middle/High Income	Total Estimated Costs	Comments
Design and Construct New Matlala Substation including feeder line from Alfa substation			R 197 000 000	The designs should be completed in the 2022/23 financial year
Design and Construct New Pietersburg substation			R 66 000 000	Designs completed and required R66 000 000 including 3X11KV cables from Gamma to New Pietersburg substation, however, it is dependent on the upgrading of Gamma Substation
Upgrading of Gamma substation			R 70 000 000	To add 1X20MVA transformer, the feeder bay, the substation building extension and switchgear.
Completion of Bakone Substation			R 20 000 000	To complete the Bakone Substation ready to connect a 66kV feeder to IOTA substation
Build 66kV Feeder between Bakone and IOTA Substations			R 60 000 000	To build a 66kV feeder that will connect Bakone and IOTA Substations to enable firm supply to all the municipality's substations. Design completed, busy with servitude negotiations
Total Budget Required			R 710 840 000	

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.4 Electricity Master Plan

The Electrical master plan shows the developments and projects to be implemented, when to implement those projects and the cost estimates. If network infrastructure development could be done as indicated in the Master Plan, the above challenges could be avoided. The Master plan indicates that the designs for New Matlala, 66KV substation had to be started in 2020/21 financial year. It only started in the 2023/24 financial year and how far behind schedule the developments are behind schedule.

6.5 Future Township Developments

The table below indicate the future municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of **engineering services**. These will be considered at five to ten-year plan and estimates shown will be revised in five years to come.

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
1	Not yet allocated	Portion 158 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 112 000 000.00 R21 000 000 for Electrical connection from Epsilon
2	Not yet allocated	Portion 159 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 112 000 000.00 R21 000 000 for Electrical connections from Epsilon
3	Not yet allocated	Portion 160 Sterkloop 688 LS	Planning Process	Middle income	700 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 112 000 000.00 R21 000 000 for Electrical connections from Epsilon

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.

#	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
4	Ivydale Ext 35	Ivydale AH	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1 Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 102 400 000.00 CCG & top up subsidies required. R 12 000 000 (electr)
5	Polokwane X 40	To be verified	Planning Process	Middle income	To be verified 400 UNITS Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 64 000 000.00 R76 057 141 (electr) Has court order and will be done once the place starts to be occupied
6	Ga Mothapo Integrated Human Settlement	Ga Mothapo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Mixed Income	5000 To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 800 000 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
7	Farm Hardetyd and Vrederust	Mamabolo Traditional Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 80 000 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
8	Solomdale /Sebayeng	Dikgale Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 80 000 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
9	Makgoba Village	Makgoba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	300 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service	R 24 000 000.00

Future Municipal owned townships to be budgeted for installation of Engineering Services.

	TOWNSHIP NAME	PROPERTY DESCRIPTION	STATUS	INCOME CATEGORY	ESTIMATED NUMBER OF RESIDENTIAL UNITS	ENGINEERING SERVICES REQUIRED	ESTIMATED COSTING FOR INSTALLATION
						reticulation including roads	Electricity provision by Eskom
10	Mothibaskraal Village	Mothiba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	500 units To be verified Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 80 000 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
11	Vlakfontein Juno Village	Matla Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	415 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 66 400 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
12	Boanatlou Village	Maraba Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	58 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 9 280 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
13	Mankgaile Village	Molepo Tribal Council	Planning Process	Low income	600 units Residential 1	Bulk infrastructure and Service reticulation including roads	R 96 000 000.00 Electricity provision by Eskom
						TOTAL	R
						Total	1 699 680 000.00
						Electrical	R 151 057 141

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.5.1 Energy Services Challenges

The Polokwane City being the Capital of Limpopo Province, and the business hub, coupled with urbanisation contributes to high backlog into service delivery. The ageing infrastructure also needs to be considered, thus sharing the budget of electricity provisioning projects. Commitment of multi-year projects may allow annual budget provisioning to some of the projects.

Discussions with Cigicell revealed that their current funding models does not make provision for the implementation of projects of this nature. They, however, agreed to investigate the possibility of funding such projects and will revert to the municipality in due course.

IUDG was identified as another source of funding. The fund was used to co-fund R12,000,000.00 for the installation of the Bakone to Iota 66kV feeder in the 2022/2023 financial year.

6.5.2 Financial Impact

The municipality should provide at least an annual budget of **R150 000 000** per year for the next five years for electrical capacity building and township developmental projects. A total of **R740 840 000 million rand** is required to implement the medium term (**next 5 years**) projects.

6.5.3 Recommendations

That Energy services be provided with a column to indicate the capacity availability in the identified townships to be developed and the substation to tap on the approved township developments and future projects, That Budget allocation to an amount of **R150 000 000** per annum be provided for urban electrification, That COGHTA be requested to provide budget for electricity to its developmental projects.

That the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy be requested to fund urban capacity provisioning for urban electrification projects, a funding model be negotiated with CIGICELL to assist the municipality with the implementation of electrical projects.

City Planning and Property Management is aware of the projects and support that Energy services plan accordingly.

That municipality plan an all-inclusive budget when they build new low-cost housing from 2023/24 onwards

6.6 The Electrification Acceleration Process

The acceleration process helped the municipality to complete all its villages in 2017/18 financial year and started electrifying extensions and newly established villages. In 2018/19 financial year, Polokwane municipality absorbed major portion of the former Aganang municipality, and created a cluster called Aganang with five wards (40,41,42,43,44 and 45).

Electrification in Aganang was also completed except extensions and new villages. In 2018/19 the new priority list was included that included Aganang cluster. It was discovered later that

one of the conditions to incorporated Aganang was to make sure that each financial year, there should be an electrification project in Aganang cluster as well. This was a Resolution of Council when Aganang was Merged to Polokwane Municipality.

The National Treasury instructed the municipality to pay back the loan from 2017/18 financial year and the annual electrification processes reduced as the municipality was supposed to be pay back the loan in two financial years. The INEP allocation had then to be divided into two, a portion to continue with the work and a portion paying back the loan. CRR money could not be used because there is no revenue generation from rural electrification and was found to be an unfunded mandate to use CRR in rural Polokwane.

6.6.1 Rural Electrification Backlog

The current rural electrification backlog is **19 371** as per priority list and **8629** as per statistics 2016. The urban electrification backlog is **10 800** which covers the newly established townships in Seshego and Polokwane.

6.6.2 Challenges of Rural Electrification

1. Insufficient budget.
2. Housing development projects by COGHSTA which provides housing, water and roads but no electricity.
3. The way in which traditional leaders allocates sites need improvement.
4. Capacity challenge by Eskom.
5. Fast growing villages around the city.

6.7 Installation of High Mast Lights in rural areas

Polokwane municipality Council adopted the priority list for installation of to supply wards High Mast lights in Rural Villages. Each Financial year a budget for High mast is approved.

The Provincial Government Through the Office of the premier have Requested to Municipal Council to Prioritize Traditional Council Offices First in process of installation of High mast Lights. As part of intergovernmental Relation Polokwane Municipality has started to install Apollo lights at Tribal Offices.

6.7.1 Challenges of High Mast lights

1. Insufficient budget
2. Eskom capacity and delays in energizing
3. Monthly maintenance costs and unstable consumption payments costs

6.7.2 High Mast Lights Recommendations

That High Mast Lights be included in UIDG funding, That CCR budget be allocated for urban electrification. That COGHSTA be requested to fund electrification as well as public lighting within their housing provisioning. That solar technology be used for high mast lighting. That communication be sent out to affected communities on the status of their uncompleted High Mast lights

6.7.3 Electrification Project in progress at Seshego Zone 8 (Ext 133)



Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.7.4 Electrification Project in progress at EXT 78



Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.7.5 Construction of Bakone Substation Completed



Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.8 Solar Streetlights

The City of Polokwane is working on a comprehensive plan to restore the functionality of these lights promptly to address the concern of cable theft.

The City acknowledges the urgent need to address faulty street lights across the city and beyond. Communities have indicated to the Municipality significant safety concerns. Many residents have reported that their streets are completely dark at night, creating an environment conducive to criminal activity.

The plan includes both short-term measures to address immediate safety concerns and long-term strategies to ensure ongoing maintenance and reliability. Part of the plan involves installing a new type of street light. Unlike traditional lights, which rely solely on grid power, these new installations harness solar energy, making them more resilient to power outages and reducing their environmental footprint.

The City of Polokwane has already installed these solar-powered lights across various parts of the city, including the main entry and exit in Ben Harris Street in Westernburg. Residents expect similar installations on other streets to help alleviate crime.

The City of Polokwane is committed to creating safer and well-lit public spaces for all residents, adding that repairing street lights in areas prone to criminal activity is a top priority of the Energy Directorate.

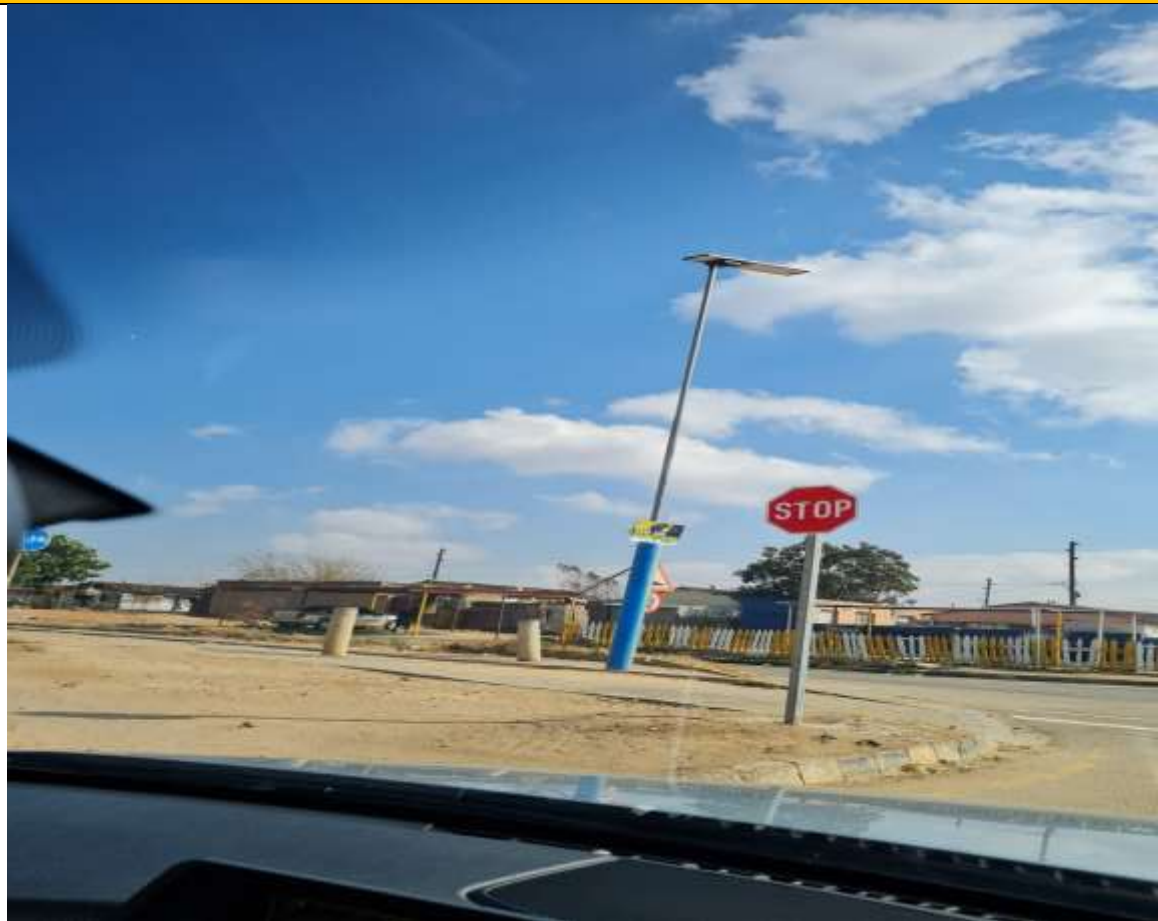
6.8.1 Solar streetlights at Extension 44



Solar streetlights at Extension 44



Solar streetlights at Extension 44



Solar streetlights at Extension 44

Source: PLK Energy Services Directorate

6.8.2 Streets lights Repairs Programme

City of Polokwane Energy Directorate teams have been working overnight to ensure our city's street lights are shining bright Again. Most of the Streets lights in the City of Polokwane are not Working Due to Cable Theft Problem. A lot of progress has been made is restoring the Streets lights. This Restoration of Streetlights Will Continue until all corner of our city is beautifully illuminated.

Streets lights repairs at Seshego



Streets lights repairs at Seshego



Streets lights repairs at Seshego

6.8.3 Extension 78 Streetlights Repairs



Extension 78 Streetlights Repairs



Extension 78 Streetlights Repairs

CHAPTER Seven: Environmental and Social Analysis

7.1. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS

Every citizen has the right to an environment which is not harmful to their health or well-being and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

People depend on healthy ecosystems and sufficient natural resources to support their livelihoods. Ecosystem services provide physical resources such as clean air, water, food, medicinal plants, wood as well as the aesthetic value. The viability of these ecosystem services is a key factor in the economy, essential to poverty eradication and our national goals of shared and accelerated growth. Polokwane Municipality has a role to play in the management of biodiversity assets and ecological infrastructure. The municipality of Polokwane carries key responsibilities of implementing the important environmental legislations as well as several national strategies and policies relating to biodiversity and sustainable development.

7.1.1 Climate Description

Polokwane Municipality lies in the summer rainfall region and has a warm climate. Frost is rare. The highest temperatures occur during December and January. The daily average high temperature is 28.1 degrees Celsius in January, and the highest recorded temperature is 36.8 degrees Celsius. The average minimum winter temperature is 4.4 degrees Celsius in July with a record low of -3.5 degrees Celsius in 1964. The mean annual daily variation is 15 degrees Celsius.

The mean annual precipitation for the region is 478mm. Most precipitation falls between October and March with the peak period being December/January. Rainfall between the months of May and September is generally low with the average precipitation rate for the period June to August being 4,6mm.

Large-scale surface airflow over the region is dominated throughout the year by easterly and north-easterly winds. October and November are typically windy with wind speeds up to 13.8m/s. The frequency of southerly winds increases during June and July.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF,

7.1.2 Pollution Levels - Air Quality

The purchase of an air pollution monitor was approved during the 2015/2016 budget. The monitor will be used in different areas every quarter.

- Polokwane Smelter (SO_x, solid particulates, NO_x).
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates).
- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes).
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust).
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide).

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.3 Topography

The Municipal area is divided into two rough topographical units, namely 'Moderately Undulating Plains' (mainly the eastern half of the municipal area) and 'Strongly Undulating Plains' in the west. The Polokwane Municipal area is situated on the so-called 'Pietersburg Plateau', which is bordered in the south by the Strydpoort Mountains, in the west and north by the Waterberg Mountains and in the east by the Great Escarpment. The highest part of the Plateau lies in the south near the Strydpoort Mountains which forms the watershed between the Oliphant's and Sand River systems.

There are a number of ridges which form constraints on development due to their visual exposure, potential as recreation or educational sites, former importance as sacred sites (likelihood of heritage sites) and likelihood of supporting sensitive plant communities.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.4 Geology

The underlying geology consists of medium-grained, yellowish, laminated sandstone of the Makgabeng Formation of the Waterberg Group. It is also characterized by granite, biotite granite-gneiss, pegmatite, lava and pyroclasts.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.5 Hydrology

There are 19 Catchment Areas represented in the municipal area. This includes 9 small portions of larger catchments outside the Municipal boundaries and the remaining 10 catchment areas are within the municipal boundary.

The Sand River catchment is drained by the Sand and Blood river. These are indicated as perennial streams but are often dry in the winter. The Blood river has its origin in the west of the Municipal Area and flows eastward between Blood river and Seshego. It is impounded in the Seshego Dam, and also joins the Sand River to the north of Polokwane City. The City of Polokwane has a number of storm water retention dams and storm water channels that eventually discharge into the Sand River via the Sterkloop Spruit and open storm water channels. There are a number of important wetland areas in the catchment. These areas support rare or endangered frog species and plant and red data bird species.

The utilisation of water in the catchment is mainly underground water abstraction via boreholes. There are a multitude of boreholes pumping into a number of reservoirs and tanks of various sizes in the municipal area. This aquifer is under threat from two major pollution sources, namely, the Polokwane Cemetery and the Seshego Sewerage Works.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.6 Vegetation

There are 6 Vegetation Types that occur in the Polokwane Municipal Area. The largest Veld-Types are as follows: Pietersburg Plateau False Grassveld, Sourish Mixed Bushveld, Sour Bushveld, Mixed Bushveld, North-Eastern Mountain Sourveld and a relatively small area of Low Veld Sour Bushveld.

The veld is currently badly degraded and overgrazed and requires intervention from the municipality. North Eastern Mountain Grassveld occurs in the southern parts of Molepo-Maja-Chuene cluster and in the eastern part of the Mankweng cluster, along the Strydpoort Mountains, including 280 bird species, 22 butterfly species, 4 frog species, 12 mammal species, 6 reptile species and 5 scarab species.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.7 Soils

The Pietersburg Plateau contains mainly grey iron-containing lateritic soil types that have been formed over the granite. These are sandy or gravel in texture and usually contain a hard iron containing bottom layer of hard pan. The area also contains, in certain areas, non-leached, black clay soil while to the West, light brown sandy soil of the Waterberg Sandstone and Lime deposits occur. The escarpments are also characterized by the round granite mounds that were formed by the intrusion of younger granites.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.8 Heritage Resources

The fact that the municipality has not yet undertaken a comprehensive heritage survey of the entire municipal area, the heritage information on record is very limited. There are heritage sites that are currently recorded, namely, the **Bakone Malapa site** on the Chuenespoort Road which has been developed as a Museum and Mankweng **Rock Art Site** located in Mankweng which is linked to the Turf Loop Dam and provides other recreation activities such as hiking, picnicking and water sports. Other sites that provide good research material are the **Irish House Museum, Hugh Exton Museum and the Art Museum**.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC)

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) forms a unique heritage in Limpopo Province. Every year, mainly during the Easter holidays and in September, millions of ZCC congregation members flock to this area for worship. The municipality has to capitalise on this unique advantage besides the fact that there is a by-pass directing these people to travel along the periphery of the City. Businesses in Polokwane should take advantage of this unique opportunity and gear it to provide a service to these people e.g. Open until late at night. There is a need for the municipality to develop a heritage database that will be looking at the Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS).

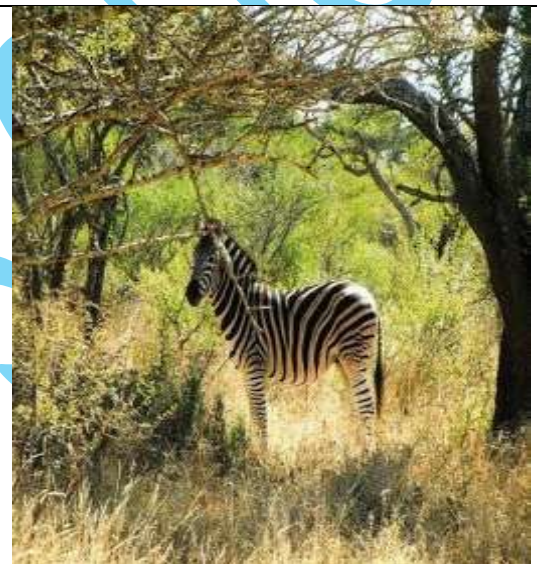
Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.9 Protection and Conservation of ecosystems (Biodiversity)

Polokwane Game Reserve is just a 10 minutes' drive from the City Centre Covering **3200** hectares, this scenic reserve is one of the largest municipal reserves in South Africa.

The Game Reserve still has its unspoilt bush veld and meandering drives and it's also a home to 52 game species. Amongst the favourites are the rare white rhino (currently placed in a secure environment outside the reserve, sable antelope and giraffe. The centre of the city has a large bronze statue of necking giraffe so the animal's association with the City is a special one. The park is also the nesting place of approximately 200 bird species. It is a shining example of preservation of the threatened Pietersburg Plateau False Grassland and plant Oenthusiasts will discover 110 different grasses, approximately 280 flowering plants and 68 tree species. It is eco-tourism at its best.

It is important to note that, the following sensitive areas within Polokwane municipality must remain protected from development (i.e. no development within 150m):



Polokwane Game Reserve 1



Polokwane Game Reserve 2

Polokwane Botanical Reserve (one of only two habitats worldwide for endemic endangered **Euphorbia Clivicola**, a large Aloe marlothii 'forest', high geological and microclimate diversity, over 20 tree species) which is the highest and therefore the most visible point in Polokwane.

Flora park wetland (a seasonal wetland harbouring the only known community of endemic **Haemanthus montanus** bulbs and a rare form of Serapegia);

Polokwane Frog Reserve (breeding grounds for 12 Frog species including endangered Giant Bullfrog).

Buffer Zone along the Sand River of 100m on either side of the channel. The profusion of Syringa and other invasive weeds must be addressed as part of a planned rehabilitation strategy.

The **Suid Street drainage channel** (a dense stand of Vachelia karroo), which provides an ideal linear open space.

Unprotected Sensitive plant communities – The endemic plant communities (e.g., **Euphorbia clivicola** and **Euphorbia groenewaldii**) and other sensitive communities of high biodiversity around wetlands and ridges in the Polokwane area are not protected in any way and are therefore under threat from development, removal, habitat destruction, etc.

Source: Polokwane Municipality SDF

7.1.10 Euphorbia Clivicola

The Clivicola is located on the farm Krugersburg in Pietersburg Extension 11. The plant is a critically endangered species and has been listed as a CITES Schedule II species. It is only found in **Polokwane** and **Percy Five** in the whole wide world. The plant needs to be protected for the sake of future generations. Less than 300 plants are left in the habitat.

7.1.11 Euphorbia groenewaldii

Another endangered species that needs to be protected is the groenewaldii. The species forms part of the biodiversity of the Pietersburg false plateau. Plans are in place to fence off the area where these plans are located through creation of botanical garden.

7.1.12 Giant Bullfrog - Pyxicephalus adspersus

Common name	Scientific name	Status in Polokwane
Giant Bullfrog	Pyxicephalus adspersus	Restricted to a few seasonal wetlands scattered throughout the Polokwane Municipal Area

The **Giant bullfrog** (*Pyxicephalus adspersus*) is a species of frog in the Pyxicephalidae family. It is also known as the **pixie frog** due to its Latin name. Its natural habitats are dry savanna, moist savanna, subtropical or tropical dry shrubland, intermittent freshwater lakes, intermittent freshwater marshes, arable land, pastureland, and canals and ditches. This is a large frog, with males weighing 1.4 kg (3.1 lb), though can easily exceed 2 kg (4.4 lb); females are half the size, making it unique among frogs, as in most amphibian's females are usually larger than males. Males can reach 23 cm (9 inches) while females are much smaller. The Giant Bullfrog is the largest amphibian found in southern Africa. Areas has been identified within the Polokwane Municipal areas which serve as habitat for this species. the species needs to be protected.

7.2. CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING

When talking about climate, allusion is made to the long-term average weather patterns of a given region (i.e., temperature, pressure, precipitation). In this context, climate change then refers to perceived increases in the long-term average temperature of the earth's climate system. This temperature increase alters typical processes of ice formation and melting, changes the hydrological cycles and modifies the air and ocean currents. As a consequence, social, biological and ecological systems are also affected; and there is a strong threat on food supply, health, availability of water resources, economic growth, etc.

The understanding of climate change has been growing and today scientist is 95% certain that the perceived increases in global temperature are mostly caused by the concentration of Greenhouse Gases (GHG) in the atmosphere and other human activities. Solar radiation penetrates into the earth warming its surface; however only a fraction of this radiation is returned back to the space as most of it is trapped by the accumulation of these GHG gasses. The trapped radiation goes back to heat up the earth's surface, increasing its temperature just as a greenhouse operates.

Most of the GHG are present naturally in the atmosphere in small proportions; however, since the industrial revolution their concentration has notably risen. This rise has primarily been linked to the combustion of fossil fuels driven by the demand for energy, goods and services, and to the conversion of natural ecosystems to intensive land use.

Climate change is becoming increasingly apparent in Limpopo Province. The usual manifestations of climate change are evident by the long-term changes in weather indicators such as rainfall or temperature. Polokwane Municipality, as a secondary city, should play a role in planning and implementing Climate change mitigation strategies.

Rainfall

Typical rainfall for the Limpopo province ranges from 200mm in the hot dry areas to 1500mm in the high rainfall areas, with most of it happening between October and April. Rainfall in the province varies significantly between years. There has been a perceptible decrease in the total rainfall on much of the eastern part of Southern Africa including most of the Limpopo River Basin This can have serious impacts on the water balance of the region, affecting the largely rural population dependent on agriculture.

Drivers and Pressures

Without a doubt, the main drivers of climate change are population and economic growth. As the population numbers increase, more people aspire to higher material standards - creating an even greater demand for goods and services as for the energy to provide these. Transportation, industry, commerce, and the residential sector are the greatest contributors to GHG emissions, due to their high demand of energy which is supplied from non-renewable sources. The energy sector is responsible for about 89% of the national emissions of CO₂, mainly from energy industries (57%), transportation (9%) and manufacturing and construction (9%) Other sources of emissions are industrial processes and agriculture and land usage.

Source: Limpopo Environmental Outlook Report

7.2.1 Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies

Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies

- a) Does the City of Polokwane Have Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies?
 - **No, the City of Polokwane don't have climate change response strategy/plan.**
- b) **IF No** -What is the plan for Developing the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies?
 - **The City of Polokwane just got funded by GIZ through assistance of DFFE to start developing climate change response plan.**
 - **The city has Greening Programme that is rolled out across the City –Programme of planting trees to Reduce the Greenhouse Gases in the atmosphere**
- c) **If Yes** -When was it Developed?
 - **N/A**
- d) Was the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies Adopted by Council?
 - **N/A**
- e) What are the **Challenges** in the Implementation of Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies.?
 - **Funding was a challenge.**
- f) Does the City of Polokwane Need Support on the **Climate Change Functions**?
 - **Yes, the City of Polokwane Need Support on the Climate Change Functions**
- (f) Was there any Previous Engagement with **National/Provincial** Department of Environmental Affairs Regarding the Climate Change Response Plans/Strategies -Briefly Explain what the engagement was all about and what was Resolved?
 - **Yes, engaged DFFE to assist in securing funding through GIZ and now GIZ is in the process of appointing service provider to assist in developing such a plan.**
- g) Does the City of Polokwane have an allocated Budget to address the **Climate Change Functions**?
 - **NO,**

Solar Energy

As part of Free Basic Electricity, the municipality has provided households with solar **Panels**. Plans are in place to increase the provision of **solar Panels** to other parts of the municipality.

7.2.2 Environmental Challenges

The following is a generalized summary of the existing Environmental problems encountered within the municipal area:

- Waste Management
- Mine and Industrial site rehabilitation
- Sinkholes.
- Depletion of Soil nutrients
- Soil erosion
- Reduction in scenic value
- Deforestation
- Overgrazing
- Invasive alien's plants
- Unprotected Sensitive plant communities
- Borrow pits.
- Illegal Sand mining
- Aging urban forest

General Challenging issues

There is a need to develop and maintain rural cemeteries, burial sites and recreational facilities. There is no proper control and coordination of identification process of suitable land that should be utilised for burial purposes; burial site ends up being established on environmentally sensitive areas. However, the municipality has completed the process of engaging traditional authorities in identifying ideal or suitable sites for the establishment of regional parks and regional cemeteries in rural areas.

7.2.3 Major Environmental Achievements

Item	Progress
Greening	Polokwane Municipality planted 13815 trees in 2023/2024 financial year
Arbor day celebration.	The municipality successfully hosted and celebrated National Arbor Day 2023/24 at Extension 78 Polokwane
National Arbor City Awards	Polokwane Municipality entered Arbor City competition and obtained position one.

Item	Progress
Invasive Alien plant control	Most of invasive alien plants were removed from Sterkloop channel.
Kroomdraai Plantation	<p>Polokwane Municipality through Asset Management Business Unit has appointed Valuer to perform valuation count valuation of plantation Kroomdraai forest. Council owns portion 4 No 1025 Kroomdraai plantation farm which is located at Haenerstburg, with these GPS coordinates 23° 54'10.59" S 29° 56.09.51" E.</p> <p>The farm is about 49 hectors of which 41 hectares in planted. The main use of the land is forestry with pine trees (<i>Pinus elliottii</i>). The valuation was completed in June 2023. Polokwane Municipality has advertised the tender for harvesting the plantation and reinvesting the proceeds by planting new trees</p>
Future environmental plans	The State of the Environment Report, the Strategic Environmental Assessment report and the Environmental Strategic Framework report to be reviewed, the consultant has been appointed with assistance of DFFE to assist in finalizing the Environmental Management Plan and the compilation of Environmental policy.
Cemetery Management system	A new online system is being introduced for Cemetery Management in collaboration with the GIS section of the Planning SBU.
Tree inventory	Already captured 13815 trees on GIS
Maintenance of parks	Detailed activity-based operational/maintenance plans have been developed for all the parks within the Municipality
EPWP	Environmental Management have two projects funded through EPWP grant, namely rural bush clearance and Nursery management

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.4 Provincial Intervention for Environmental Management – LEDET

LEDET Interventions For Environmental Management				
PROGRAMME NAME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION/TY PE OF STRUCTURE	PROGRAMME DESCRIPTION	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
Environmental Empowerment Services	Limpopo Green Schools competition	Schools' competition to promote green economy	Capricorn	All locals

LEDET Interventions For Environmental Management				
PROGRAMME NAME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION/TYPE OF STRUCTURE	PROGRAMME DESCRIPTION	DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY	LOCAL MUNICIPALITY
	Tree planting	Promote planting of trees to mitigate for climate change	Capricorn	All locals
	Environmental knowledge Capacity building	Environmental capacity building workshops to wards committees and Traditional Leader	Capricorn	All locals

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.5 Approved Capital Projects

	Project Name	Project Description	Budget
1	Greening Programme	Procurement and planting of trees.	R 1 024 575.00
2	Construction of Ablution Facility at Tom Naude	Construction of ablution facility at Tom Naude Park	R 728 423.00
3	Grass cutting equipment	Procurement of grass cutting equipment	R 2 293 850.00
4	Upgrading of Game Reserve Facilities	Refurbishment of Game Reserve Facilities (Chalets, kudu house and lapas)	R1 304 348.00
5	Development of regional parks in Rural areas	Development of regional park in Rural areas	R 894 657.00
6	Upgrading of municipal nursery	Repair of cooling system and repair of propagation area	R 928 922.00

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.6 Completed Project - Construction of Ablution facility at Tom Naude Park



Completed Project - Construction of Ablution facility at Tom Naude Park

7.2.7 Upgrading of Municipal Nursery (During and After repairs of glasshouse)



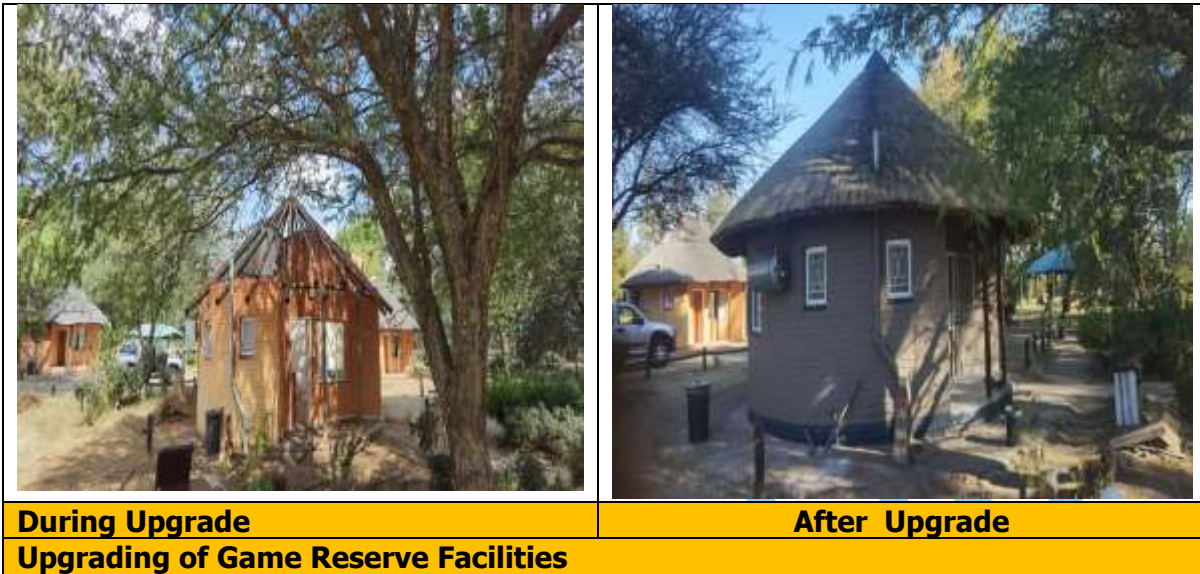
During Upgrade



After Upgrade

Upgrading of Municipal Nursery (During and after repairs of glasshouse)

7.2.8 Upgrading of Game Reserve Facilities



7.2.9 Polokwane Environmental Forum

Polokwane Environmental Forum was established by City of Polokwane with the aim of addressing the environmental challenges in a coordinated manner within Polokwane City. Environmental management SBU being the custodian of the forum. Environmental challenges such as illegal dumping and illegal sand mining just to mention the few are addressed during the meetings. Meetings for the Forum are held once quarterly. The following are the key external stakeholders i.e., LEDET, Capricorn District Municipality, DEA, SAB, Polokwane Anglo Smelters, Coca Cola and University of Limpopo. Internal SBU's that are part of stakeholders include Waste, Environmental Health, Water, Environmental Management, Planning, Energy and GIS.

7.2.10 Capricorn District Environmental Forum

This forum is coordinated at District level (**Capricorn District**) and of which Polokwane Municipality is an active member of the forum.

7.2.11 Arbor Day Celebration and Greening Programme

Polokwane Municipality has celebrated Arbor day through tree planting and provision of fruit trees under the theme "**Forests and health**". The municipality has provided over 2000 fruit trees to the community of Luthuli and Extension 78, while ornamental trees were planted in schools, churches, sidewalks, parks, households etc.

Arbor Day Celebratio



Tree Planting at Ext 78 by Honourable Deputy Minister Ms Makhotso Soytu



MEC Mr. Rogers Monama planting trees during Air Quality Day at New look Primary School



Honourable Executive Cllr Mayor Makoro John Mpe Planting a tree at New Peter Mokaba Stadium in September 2023 during IERM convention



Trees planting during World Wetland Day Celebration at Polokwane Game Reserve

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.2.12 2023 National Abor City Award Winner

The City of Polokwane was the overall winner of the 2023 National Abor City Awards Competition. For years the City of Polokwane has always been excelling in Greening and Cleaning spaces within its Jurisdiction. The award serves as testimony that the Municipality gives prominence to tree planting and Waste Management.



Overall winner of the 2023 National Arbor City Award

7.2.13 Polokwane is the winner of the Provincial Greenest Municipal Competition 2024



Polokwane is the winner of the Provincial Greenest Municipal Competition 2024

7.3 Maintenance of Parks and Open Spaces (48 x Municipal Parks)

The City of Polokwane like other municipalities has both the developed and undeveloped parks which are 48 in total and requires continuous maintenance. There are strategic Municipal Parks which are fully developed which includes the following parks:

- Civic Centre Park
- Flora Park Dam
- Tom Naude

- Mankweng Unit C Park
- Mankweng Unit A Park.

All parks have irrigation systems but due to water Challenges in the City of Polokwane, Council has taken a decision to place irrigation of all parks on moratorium. With irrigation our parks were going to be in better shape. below is the list of all Municipal Parks which also provides maintenance plan and their status quo.

7.3.1 48 x Municipal Parks Maintenance Programme

Park Maintenance Programme

Park Maintenance Programme				
	Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required
1	AGANANG OFFICE AND TRAFFIC	Litter picking	Refuse bags, gloves	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks, spade, rakes, refuse bags, gloves	03
		Hard surface, cleaning and application of herbicide	Hard brooms	03
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers,	07
2	RAINBOW PARK	Litter picking, sweeping and weeding of hard surface	Refuse bags and spades	05
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
		Painting of benches and children's play equipment	Paints and brushes	02
		Sandpits	Weeding	02
		Preparations and Establishment of flowerbeds	Spades, folks and pik	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	
3	TOM NAUDE PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags, gloves	05
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks, spade, rakes, refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	07
		Grading of parkrun route	Grader	01
		Weeding of hard surface (scrubbing)	Spades	05
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02

Park Maintenance Programme

Park Maintenance Programme				
Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required	
	Painting of children's play equipment	Paints and brushes		02
4	SABC PARK A	Litter picking	Refuse bags, gloves	03
		Weeding	Forks, spade ,rakes,refuse	03
		Hard surface and application of herbicide	Chemicals, knapsack, spades,	03
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers, brush cutters,	07
		Pruning of shrubs	Hedge pruner	02
5	ZONE 4 PARK	Litter picking and sweeping of hard surface	Refuse bags, gloves	06
		Weeding of flower beds	Forks , spade,rakes,refuse bags,gloves	05
		Hard surface and application of herbicide	Chemicals,knapsack,spades,rakes,respirator,chemical gloves	6
		Grass cutting		15
		Pruning of shrubs	Pruning shear	02
6	TRIANGLE PARK	General cleaning/litter picking	Spades, forks, refuse bags, gloves	05
		Weeding of flower beds	Spades and folks	05
		Grass cutting	Lawn mowers	04
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pruning shear	02
7	EXT 76 PARK	General cleaning/litter picking	Spades, forks, refuse bags, gloves	05
		Maintenance of sandpit	Spade,rake	05
		Grass cutting	Tractors and brush cutters	15
8	MANKWENG UNIT A PARK	Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades.	05
		Hard surface treatment	Spades, rakes, chemicals, knapsacks	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck,	05
9		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	03

Park Maintenance Programme				
	Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required
	MAMOTINTANE PARK	Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades	05
		Flower bed maintenance	Forks and rakes	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
10	MANKWENG UNIT C PARK	Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades.	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	05
		Hard surface-Sweeping	Brooms, spades,	03
11	FLORA PARK DAM	Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Maintenance of sand pits	River sand, rakes, spades	05
		Flower bed maintenance	Forks and rakes	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
12	RSA PARK (MOTOR CITY)	Litter picking	Refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Weeding of walkway	Spades	04
		Weeding of flower beds	rakes, spades	05
		Trimming and pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
13	CIVIC CENTRE GARDENS	Litter picking and sweeping of hard surface	Leaf blower and refuse bags	05
		Maintenance of sand pits	rakes, spades	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Forks and rakes	05
		Deadheading of flower beds		03
		Pruning of shrubs and trees	Pruning shear and pole pruner	02

Park Maintenance Programme

	Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required
14	CONNIE VAN RENSBURG	Cleaning of sandpit	Spades	05
		Litter picking	Refuse bags, truck	05
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
15	RSA DAM	Litter picking	Refuse bags	05
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
16	SEBAYENG PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	05
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	03
17	WESTERNBURG PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters, tractor	10
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
18	WESTERNBURG PARK (RDP)	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
19	ALOE PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	03
		Pruning of shrubs	Pole pruner	02
		Removal of old children's play equipment		05
20	OOST SKOOL PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Weeding of flower beds	Spades	04
21	KOBIE VAN ZYL	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees and shrubs	Pole pruner	02
22	SESHEGO ZONE 8 PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	04
23	STERPARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02

Park Maintenance Programme

	Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required
24	LADANNA PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
25	ZEN PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
26	NIRVANA PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
27	EDUAN PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
28	EXT 22 IVY PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Cleaning of sandpit	Spades	03
		Tree staking	Poles	02
		Pruning of trees	Pole pruner	02
29	ZONE 3 PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
30	EMDO PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Pruning	Pole pruner	02
31	WILGE PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
32	MACDONALD PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Cleaning of children's play area	Spades and folks	05
33	HERMAN PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
34	RHEBOK PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
35	VALENCIA PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
		Weeding of Sand pit	Spades	03
		Weeding of flowerbeds	Spades and folks	05
36	SCHALK PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
37	GERT DU TOIT PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05

Park Maintenance Programme				
Name of the Park	Activity	Service/material required	Labour required	
	Weeding of Sand pit	Spades	05	
38	BENDOR SIRKEL PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Grass cutting	Brush cutters	05
39	GRASMERE PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
40	PENINA PARK	Litter picking	Refuse bags	02
		Ranch fencing (repair)	Ranch poles	02
		Trimming of trees	Pole pruner	02

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.2 Grass Cutting Teams

The grass-cutting teams consists of permanent staff and temporary laborers only brought in during rainy seasons to ensure there is enough capacity to deal with the fast-growing grass. Due to lack of capacity, grass cutting teams from various areas (Seshego, Mankweng, City) are at times clustered together in one area with their tractors and brush cutters to ensure there is an immediate impact. The grass cutting teams are as follow:

CLUSTER /AREA	PERMANENT EMPLOYEES
1. Mankweng	7
2. Seshego	3
3. City	13
4. Game Reserve	5
5. Cemeteries	0
6. Nursery	5
Total	33

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.3 AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme

AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)
BENDOR
Veldspaat drive from Munnik to Sasol garage
De Meer sidewalk from Veldspaat to Logan open area

AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)
The Crescent Open area
De Wet sidewalk from Outspan to De Meer
Vharanani street Sidewalk from Outspan to De Meer
Hillary open area
Hyde close
DE Villiers and Outspan Open area
Eduan Park
Logan sidewalk and Open area
De Meer Open area
Stadium peripheries
Suid street area from De Wet to Dorp street
Ster Park
Aquarius and Virgo Open area
Ster Park sidewalks
Apollo open area
Open Stands
Serala View
Sidewalks
Ivy Park and Ivy dale
Ext 34 entrance and sidewalks
Campbell street from Marshal to N1 South
CBD
Sidewalks
NIRVANA
Safire street open area
Ladana
Vermiculite from Makro to Nelson Mandela drive
Witklip drive
Corner Vermiculite and Nelson Mandela drive Open area
Spelenkon street open areas
Staff hostel in Asbes street
MANKWENG AREAS
Sebayeng Entrance
Mankweng entrance from dumping towards Nkerase
Open area between Zone 1 and Toronto towards R71
Mamadimo Valley from unit C to Stop sign towards Mamadimo park sports ground
SESHEGO AREAS
Old road from circle centre to Traffic open area, Lesedi open area next to the ground
N1 South circle to Seshego zone 5 crossing
Ext 71 open area and taxi rank
Road from zone 8 AFM church to Juju Valley side walk

AREAS for Grass Cutting Programme (Location)
Zone 5 B, C, and D
Zone 4 Skotipola from circle to Blood river Robot
Khensani drive from circle to Hostel traffic lights
Ext 40 and Ext 44 open areas
Mahlasedi park Vermiculite from Micro to N. Mandela drive
Zone 8 outline from corner Helen Joseph to and Mandela
Entrance Legae la batho from traffic lights to Ext 75 and Madiba park to from Traffic light to Ext 73

Source: PLK Environmental Management SBU

7.3.4 Availability of Alien Invasive Species Eradication Plan

Within the Environmental Management SBU of the City of Polokwane, there is a sub-unit dealing with Horticulture, there are dedicated team of Horticulturists who are responsible for alien invasive eradication programme.

The programmes involve physical removal of alien species in the municipality jurisdiction. The programme is implemented through **EPWP**.

The plan covers the entire City of Polokwane and its being implemented in terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983); National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No 10 of 2004) and others.

7.4. National Arbor City Competition

The Polokwane municipality continues to participate in the Arbor City Competition an initiative of the National Department of Forestry and Fisheries. The municipality remain the overall winner of the Arbor City Competition in 2023/24 Financial Year

7.5. AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Polokwane Municipality in collaboration with the National Department of Forestry Fisheries and The Environment held a successful 17th National Annual Air Quality Governance Lekgotla at The Ranch Hotel for intergovernmental coordination and cooperation in respect to the air quality management and provides a platform where governmental officials gather to discuss the progress made by all spheres of government on the implementation of National Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004). This was an opportunity for government officials to share experiences, best practices, and solutions to address common challenges faced by government in air quality management field.

7.5.1 Air Quality Management Plan developed and adopted/approved by Council.

The City of Polokwane Environmental Health Section has developed the Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) which was adopted by the Council.

Table: Status of Polokwane Sector Plans

Municipal Plans	Sector	AVAILABLE	NOT AVAILABLE	DEVELOPMENT STAGE	UNDER REVIEW
Air Management Plan	Quality	X			

Air Quality Management Plan provides the “**blueprint**” upon which City of Polokwane and will continue to implement air quality management effectively and efficiently within the City over the next coming years to ensure good air quality for our children and future generations.

Section 24 of the Constitution states that ‘Everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health and well-being’ and to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation; promote conservation; and secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.’ The Constitution further places an obligation in terms of section 152(1)(b) and (d) on the part of Local Government as stipulated in sections 4(2)(d) and 4(2)(i), 73(1) and (2) of the Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 to ensure that the right to a clean and healthy environment is fulfilled.

The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 (AQA) requires Municipalities to introduce Air Quality Management Plans (AQMP) that set out what will be done to achieve the prescribed air quality standards. After five years, the AQMP must be reviewed, the goals realigned and a revised AQMP should be developed. As part of their legal obligation,

An AQMP describes the current state of air quality in an area, how it is changing over time and what can be done to ensure clean air is achieved and maintained. An AQMP provides objectives and sets a course of action to attain air quality management goals. It identifies and addresses significant sources of impact using appropriate solutions to ensure that health effects and environmental impacts are minimized.

7.5.2 Submission of AQO Annual Report & report on implementation of Air Quality Management Plan

AIR QUALITY

The ambient air quality is measured in three places in Polokwane City, namely, the Civic Square, Annadale (close to the industrial area) and Seshego. The information from the monitoring station indicates that the readings for the City of Polokwane are well below the values for other South African Cities.

There are a number of air pollution risks in the Municipal area that must be recognized:

- Polokwane Smelter (SO_x, solid particulates, NO_x)
- Municipal Landfill (odours, carbon monoxide, methane, particulates)
- Industrial Activities (coal burning and related processes)
- Ready-mix Materials quarry (dust)
- Motocross track (dust, noise, carbon monoxide)
- Old Asbestos dump/factory, Industrial (Asbestos fibres, dust)

7.5.3 Developed an Air Quality By-Laws

The City of Polokwane has developed the Air Quality By –Laws which was adopted by Council the Public Participation Public Notice as published on local Newspapers, Municipal Website, Municipal Notice Boards.

7.5.4 Air quality monitoring stations and monitoring of ambient air quality pollutants

The following equipment have been placed around Polokwane municipality jurisdiction:

- a) One station is situated at Greenside Primary school (CDM)
- b) One is station is situated in the Polokwane Game Reserve (Anglo Smelters)
- c) In the financial year 2023/2024 a new air pollution monitor was donated to Polokwane Municipality worth the value of **R6 000 000** from the Department of Economic Development, Environment and Tourism Limpopo.
- d) The Air Quality Monitor is situated at Polokwane Municipality Fire Department.

7.5.5 Designation of Air Quality Management Officer

Designation of Air Quality Management Officer –

- a) Does the City of Polokwane have a Designated Air Quality officer? **(Yes or No)**.
 - **Yes**
- b) **If No** -why has the City not appointed the Air Quality Designated Officer – (Elaborate more on the Plans to Rectify this).

c) **If Yes** -How many officers are Designated as Air Quality officer?

➤ **01**

d) When were they appointed by Who? (e.g., MM)?

2023 by MM

e) List the Names and Positions of the Air Quality Designated Officer at the City of Polokwane.
P Ramabulana

f) What are the Duties and Responsibilities of the Air Quality Designated Officer?

- **Coordinates matters relating to air quality management within the municipality.**
- **Developed the air quality management plan.**
- **Enforcing compliance with the requirements of the regulations developed in terms of the AQA: enforcing the dust control regulation as are of principle responsibility and providing input-role regulation of activities declared as controlled emitters (small boiler operations and temporary asphalt).**
- **Monitoring of ambient air quality – baseline monitoring. Parameters being measured are particulate matter (PM10), sulphur dioxide, nitrogen dioxide, ozone and carbon monoxide.**
- **Responding and resolving complaints from the members of the public pertaining to air pollution.**
- **Monitoring compliance in terms of noise caused by activities.**
- **Monitoring compliance in respect of reasonable steps taken prevent air pollution.**
- **Participating in local and district forums for environmental management& air quality management.**
- **Partaking in joint inspections with the environmental management inspectors.**

g) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by Air Quality Designated Officer.

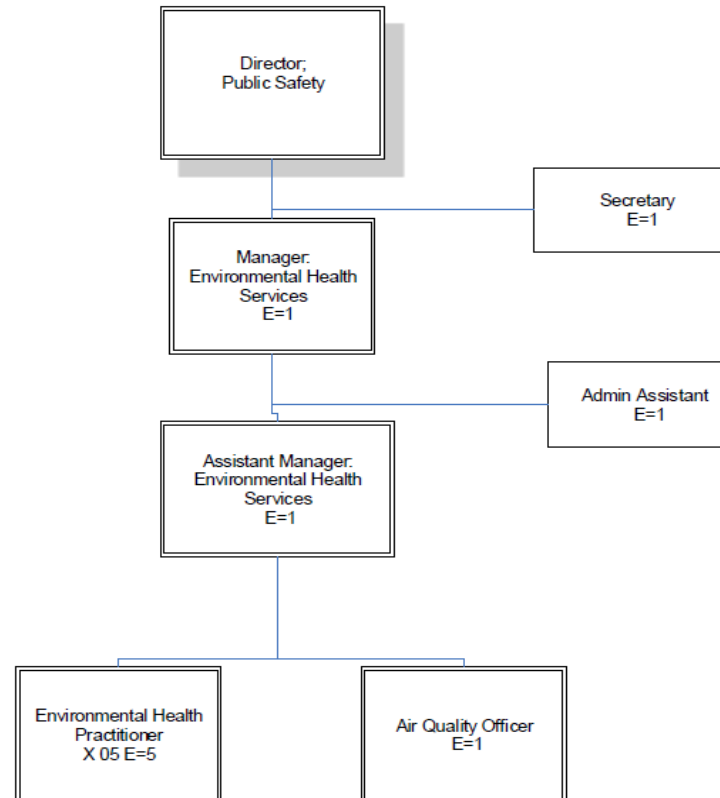
- **Procurement of proper air pollution monitoring equipment and payments of software licenses being stipulated on the service level agreement.**
- **This can be corrected by having proper service level agreements when purchasing the equipment.**

7.5.6 Approved Organogram Structure for Environmental Health SBU

There is an appointed official under Environmental Health SBU. Below is City of Polokwane approved Organogram Structure for Environmental Health SBU reflecting the position of **Air Quality Officer** which is currently filled.

Public Safety Environmental Health Services

Annexure 8.3



7.5.7 Conducting of industry inspection.

The industry inspections are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

7.5.8 Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs

Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement are being conducted by municipal officials on a quarterly basis.

Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement by EMIs (Environmental Management Inspectors)

- a) Briefly Indicate the compliance, monitoring and enforcement conducted by Polokwane Municipality together with the CDM district.
 - **Continuous environmental compliance, monitoring and enforcement are conducted by Polokwane Municipality EMI's in most cases jointly with CDM, LEDET and DMR EMI's on both green and brown aspects**
- b) Does the City of Polokwane have Officers that are appointed as **EMIs**?
 - **Yes**
- c) How Many Officers were appointed as EMIs?
 - **Six in number (4 Environmental Management SBU and 2 Waste Management)**
- (c)) What are the areas of Focus by EMI of Polokwane Municipality?
 - **Focus on Brown and Green issues**
- d) List the Names and Positions of Officers that are appointed as EMIs for the City of Polokwane.
 - (i) **PITJADI MB: SUPERINTENDENT: NATURAL RESOURCES**
 - (ii) **SEOLOANE MF: SUPERINTENDENT: OPEN SPACE**
 - (iii) **MABASO RJ: NATURE CONSERVATIONIST**
 - (iv) **MAMAILA FA: SENIOR SUPERINTENDENT: WASTE**
 - (vi) **MATUMBA TW: ENVIRONMENTAL EDUCATIONAL OFFICER**
 - (v) **MEISIE MM MANTHATA: ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH**
- e) What are the Duties and Responsibilities of the EMIs at the City of Polokwane?
 - **To enforce the provisions of NEMA, NEMWA, NEMAOA, NEMBA and NEMPA**
 - **To conduct routine inspections**
- f) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by EMIs.

- **Lack of budget to procure specific uniform for EMI's and other supportive tools of work.**
 - **Environmental enforcement must be subunit on its own, EMI's must be responsible for Enforcement as their key performance areas. Additional Personnel is needed**
 - **Training should be continuous because we are dealing with legislation that changes from time to time**
- g) Were the EMIs in the City of Polokwane Trained /Attended any Training before they are appointed as EMIs -Elaborate Briefly on the Training attended or Conducted for EMI's
- **Yes, training was provided by DFFE for one month.**

7.5.9 Allocation and availability of Air Quality Management related work budget

The allocated budget is insufficient. There is a need for Council to allocate more budget on Air Quality Management related work. Over the previous financial years IDP, air quality related projects were developed, and allocated budgets.

7.6 ENVIRONMENTAL GOVERNANCE AND CROSS CUTTING ISSUES

7.6.1 Municipal Projects consider EIA.

It is reflected under the IDP Projects phase. All Municipal projects that trigger Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) listing notices are subjected to EIA process.

Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) is an environmental decision support tool, which provides information on the likely impacts of development projects to those who take the decision as to whether the project should be authorized. The purpose of an EIA is to determine the potential environmental, social, and health effects of a proposed development, so that those who take the decisions in developing the project and in authorizing the project are informed about the likely consequences of their decisions **before** they take those decisions and are thereby more accountable. It is intended to facilitate informed and transparent decision-making while seeking to avoid, reduce or mitigate potential adverse impacts through the consideration of alternative options, sites or processes.

7.6.2 Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties

The EIA commence are now being done. The Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) register under EAPASA are mandated to comment on the EIA application as interested/or and affected parties.

Municipal commenting on EIA as Affected and Interested Parties

- a) Briefly indicate if Polokwane Municipality Provide comments as interested and affected parties on EIA Application?
 - **Yes, the Polokwane municipality through Environmental Management SBU has dedicated official providing comments on the received EIA reports.**
- b) Which other SBU /Directorate within the Polokwane Municipality are involved in the EIA Application comments (Specify the SBU and their areas of Focus on EIA application).
 - **Environmental management services focus on whole review of EIA applications.**
- c) Explain the Process for Approval of EIA Application at the City of Polokwane.
 - **Polokwane Municipality only review and offer formal comments of the EIA application for the competent Authority consideration.**
 - **LEDET, DFFE, DMR.DWS are the competent Authorities to issue Approval in the form of Environmental Authorisation (EA).**
- d) What is the Turnaround Time for Polokwane Municipality to Provide Comments on EIA applications?
 - **The turnaround time is 14 days.**
- e) What systems have been put in Place by Polokwane Municipality to ensure that all Major **Municipal Infrastructure Projects** are Complying with EIA requirements as specified in the Legislation?
 - **There is a need to Put in place team of Environmental Management Inspectors to monitor compliance and include environmental management unit in all project planning meetings**

7.6.3 Environmental Outlook

For Environmental Outlook the City of Polokwane rely on CDM and LEDET plans. The City has not yet developed its own environmental Outlook.

7.6.4 Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)

EMFs are part of the suite of Integrated Environmental Management (IEM)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) are tools that are used to support informed decisions regarding the management of environmental impacts that arise out of human activities and developments.

Environmental Management Frameworks are one of the tools that can attempt to achieve the desired developmental and ecological balance by utilizing early identification and mapping of sensitive ecosystems and resources to assist in pre-empting potential future land use conflicts.

Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA) is a process of prior examination and appraisal of policies, plans, and programmes and other higher level or pre-project initiatives. The City of Polokwane developments decisions are guided by these two main Environmental tools.

Environmental Management Framework (EMF)/ Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA)

- a) The City of Polokwane (**EMP**) **Environmental Management Plan** is more than **5 years** and needs to be reviewed. -explain when this will be Conducted as the **EMP** is Outdated.
- **Once the budget is allocated for the renewal of EMP, the preparation will start immediately.**

7.6.5 Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness

Environmental advocacy/ empowerment/ education and awareness which addresses air quality management, biodiversity, conservation, climate change, waste management, etc.

The City of Polokwane Municipality has a well-established team of officials that handles the environmental education and awareness programmes to the community. The City of Polokwane has established **Polokwane Environmental Education Centre** and other designated officials (Waste Education Officers) whose responsibilities is to educate the public about environmental management issues.

7.6.6 Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions

Availability of an organizational structure supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Coastal Management, Waste Management, Intergrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

The City of Polokwane has an Approved Organisational Structure that has a Directorate called Community Services headed by the Director, all unit that deals with environmental aspect are located under this Directorate i.e. (**Environmental Management SBU, Waste SBU, and Environmental health SBU**).

The SBU's are headed by a Managers that is responsible for Unit daily functions that include supporting environmental functions such as Air Quality Management, Biodiversity and Conservation, Climate Change, Waste Management, Intergrated Environmental Management, Environmental Advocacy and designation of officers in line with NEMA/SEMA requirements.

7.6.7 Allocation and availability of budgets for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA

Each Financial year, the City of Polokwane allocate a Budget for staffing of environmental unit, environmental advocacy, EMF, SEA and EIA, etc. including Projects in all those SBU.

7.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT

7.7.1 Waste Management Services Municipal Wide

INTRODUCTION

The **Waste Management SBU** strives to provide **efficient, effective and appropriate** waste management services to all waste generators, while recognizing the contributions made by private sector in enhancing the provision of these services as contained in the integrated waste management plan within these legislative prescripts:

- ❖ Waste Act & Environmental Management Act.
- ❖ Norms and Standards.
- ❖ Municipal Integrated Waste Management Plan.
- ❖ Municipal policies and Bylaw.

7.7.2 Vision and Mission-Waste SBU

Vision

- A clean and litter free environment for all through best innovative waste management practices.

Mission objectives

- To have all general waste collected, reused, recycled, and disposed of in an environmentally friendly manner.

7.7.3 CORE FUNCTIONS OF WASTE SBU

- Awareness and education to change public mindset about best waste management practices.
- Waste minimization i.e., **Reduction, Reuse and Recycling** of waste before disposal
- Waste storage, collection, transportation & disposal at licensed landfill sites.
- Cleaning and clearing of illegal dumping.
- Street cleaning services (manual litter picking and mechanical street sweeping in the CBD).
- Rural waste management including EPWP litter picking.
- Hazardous waste monitoring with special reference to medical waste: competency of province.

7.7.4 Personnel (Waste SBU)

Personnel-Waste SBU

- ✓ 1 x Manager
- ✓ 1 x Assistant Manager Operations.
- ✓ 1 x Assistant Manager Awareness (vacant)
- ✓ 2x Admin Assistant, 1 x Admin clerk.
- ✓ 2 x Senior superintendents.
- ✓ 3 x Supervisor, 4 x Acting Supervisors.
- ✓ 19 X Operators,

- ✓ 2 X Drivers, 7 X Acting drivers, 112 X Labourers.
- ✓ 75 X Temps working as loading labourers.
- ✓ 175 X Temps Street cleaning.
- ✓ 24 X Temps for street sweeping.
- ✓ 14 5EPWP beneficiaries (rural).

7.7.5 TYPES OF EQUIPMENTS REQUIRED

TYPE OF EQUIPMENT	QUANTITY	AREAS OF OPERATION	SHORTAGE
TLB	3	City, Mankweng & Seshego: Clearing of illegal dumping, Clearing of transfer stations	3 X TLB
Tipper trucks	3	Work with TLB's	Minimum of 2 X trucks per TLB
Grab trucks	2	Clearing of commercial and communal skip containers	2 X multipurpose 2 X Contracted
Multipurpose	3	Cleaning of rural skip containers	
Roll on roll off	3	Clearing of Transfer stations & skip containers in hospitals, industries. Skip containers in hospitals, schools, large industries	2X City 1X Seshego 1X Mankweng To purchase 2X ROROTrucks
Compactors	7 new 4 old trucks	Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters waste collection City outer CBD routes Mankweng, Sebayeng and Dikgale waste collection	2 Seshego for residential and rural areas 3 Mankweng Urban & 2 rural collection
Fleet Africa compactors	14	Daily collection of waste from businesses and institutions, rural weekly collection	8X City 7X Seshego 2X Mankweng
4 Ton Trucks	5	Collection of litter picking & street cleaning bags	2X City 2X Seshego 2X Mankweng

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.7.6 SERVICE LEVEL STANDARDS: OPERATIONS

CATEGORY	EQUIPMENT	FREQUENCY
Residential	Compactor	Once a week
Business	Compactor	Daily
Transfer Station	Roro and FEL	Daily
Industrial	Load lugger and Grab	Week days
Communal Skip	Gran and Load Lugger	Daily
Illegal Dumping	Tipper trucks	Week days
Street Sweeping at Night CBD	2X Street Sweepers	Daily
Litter picking	4-ton trucks	Daily

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.7.7 weekly waste collection service

SERVICE PROVISION

- **103 776** x Households receive weekly waste collection service in all urban areas: **City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng.**
- **53 x villages** receive weekly waste collection service in rural areas.
- Clearing and cleaning Illegal dumping **weekly in all hotspots**
- **14 x recycling companies** operational at Weltevreden landfill site.

7.7.8 WASTE FACILITIES (Landfill sites and Transfer Stations)

Landfill sites: Total 02

- Weltevreden Landfill site.
- Aganang Landfill site.

Transfer stations: Total 07

- City: Webster & Ladanna.
- Mankweng: Dikgale, Makotopong, Mankweng & Mankweng Buy Centre.
- Seshego: Makgakga & Vaalkop.
-

7.7.9 Rural Skips Distribution Summary

CLUSTER	NUMBER OF SKIPS	CHALLENGES
Maja/Chuene/Molepo	10	Insufficient equipment to service/clean them
Mankweng/ Sebayeng/ Dikgale	31	
Aganang/ Moletjie/ Seshego	28	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.7.10 CURRENT WASTE PROJECTS: 2023/24

PROJECT NAME	SCOPE OF WORK	BUDGET AMOUNT
Extension of Landfill site	Licensing of the new extension	1 000 000
Molepo Transfer Station		500 000

PROJECT NAME	SCOPE OF WORK	BUDGET AMOUNT
	Fencing, earth works for ramp and retention wall, guard house, bore borehole and elevated tank	
6 & 9 M ³ Skip containers	Purchase of skip containers	1 500 000
240 litre bins	Purchase of 240 litre bins	1 000 000
Construction of septic Mankweng transfer station	As built designs for licencing	500 000
Educational material	Purchase of awareness and education material	500 000
No dumping Boards	Purchase of No Dumping Boards	500 000
Ga-Maja Transfer station	Planning, Design and Drawings	1 000 000
Ga-Chuene Transfer station	Planning, Design and drawings	1 000 000

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.7.11 CONTRACTED SERVICES UNDER WASTE MANAGEMENT

3 Contracted services for these areas:

- City: CBD (2 compactors and 2 Street Sweepers s
- City Residential 3 waste compactors
- Business and skips in the city and industrial areas 2 Grab Trucks

IN-HOUSE SERVICES

Replaced outsourced services:

- ✓ 6 x Compactors for Seshego residential areas
- ✓ 3 x Compactors for Mankweng and Sebayeng.

7.7.12 IMPLEMENTATION OF BY-LAW

- Compliance monitoring of the By-Laws will also need to be implemented.
- The By-Laws put in place the necessary institutional and legal frame works.
- A critical component to the implementation of the IWMP is the supporting legal framework and budget.
- Law enforcement IS A CHALLENGE- lack of personnel.
- Issuing of fines and impounding of vehicles to be investigated.
- Fines imposed to be reflected in municipal billing to be investigated.

7.8 Challenges for cleanliness of the City

- Attitudes on Littering and illegal dumping by general public – only two officials allocated to deal with this anomaly.
- Down town untidy due to uncontrolled hawkers, car washers, illegal mechanics, job seekers, street kids sleeping in the city streets and illegal occupations.
- Contributing factors include mainly lack of adequate pole and pavement bins.
- Stakeholders that must be involved: Environment, Roads & LED SBUs, Law Enforcement, Ward Councillors.
- Illegal dumping-building rubble on open spaces & general waste in rural areas
- Lack of support for Ward by the public during cleaning campaigns.
- Lack of adequate personnel (aging staff, budget constraints to fill vacant positions timeously).
- Removal of planted no-illegal dumping boards for selling scrap yards for cash.
- Long turn-around time for repairs of trucks and aging fleet to render an effective service, e.g., cleaning of communal skip containers especially in rural areas.
- Weltevreden landfill site is remaining with only 1year lifespan and the process of extension is very slow.

7.8.1 Designation of Waste Management Officer

Designated Waste Management Officer has been appointed Recently.

7.8.2 South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) reporting

The City of Polokwane is timeously reporting on SAWIS portal as required by the Act. **(Waste Information System).**

The South African Waste Information System (SAWIS) developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) in 2005, is a system used by government and industry to capture routine data on the tonnages of waste generated, recycled and disposed of in South Africa on a monthly and annual basis.

Publicly available reports generated from SAWIS are available through SAWIC 'Waste in South Africa. The Waste Information Centre provides the public, business, industry and government with access to information on the management of waste in South Africa. The Centre also provides users with access to the South African Waste Information System (SAWIS).

7.9. Designation of Waste Management Officer

Designation of Waste Management Officer

- a) Does the City of Polokwane have a Designation of Waste Management Officer?

➤ **Yes**

b) **If No** -why has the City not appointed the Designation of Waste Management Officer - (Elaborate more on the Plans to Rectify this).

➤ **N/A**

c) **If Yes** -How many officers are Designated as Waste Management Officer?

➤ **1**

d) When were they appointed by Who?

➤ **2023, appointed by MM**

e) List the Names and Positions of the Designated Waste Management Officer at the City of Polokwane.
Not yet appointed
Mr. Adolf Mamaila

f) What are the **Duties and Responsibilities** of the Designated Waste Management Officer?

- **Implementation of IWMP as required by the Waste Act**
- **Implementation of Council Polices and and By –Laws**
- **Financial planning and management of the unit and budgeting**
- **Project conception, implementation, and management**
- **Liaise with internal and external stakeholders.**
- **Coordinate and implement performance management system within the department.**

g) Elaborate on the **Challenges and Corrective** Actions Faced by Designated Waste Management Officer.

Challenges

- **Lack of adequate of personnel eg Awareness and education officers, operators of trucks, general workers for loading bins, supervisors to ensure that the work is done and completed according to service level standards**
- **Lack of adequate equipment eg, compactors, Grab trucks, Tipper trucks and FEL for clearing illegal dumpings and Load luggers.**
- **Lack of adequate equipment such as skip containers, 240 litre bins, pavement bins and No Dumping Boards.**
- **Growing and unabated illegal dumping in rural areas as well**

Proposed solutions

- **Adequate budgeting annually to acquire adequate personnel, equipment and trucks to render an effective and efficient waste management service to the community.**
- **Councillors to assist with education about best waste management practices in their constituencies.**

Waste management

Waste management is one of the critical services rendered by municipalities. The availability and/or unavailability of this service have a direct impact on the quality of life of citizens, their health as well as the degradation of physical environment.

Waste management embraces "prevention, generation, characterization, monitoring, treatment, handling, recycling and residual disposition of solid wastes at the approved landfill sites. There are various types of solid waste that include municipal (residential, institutional, commercial), agricultural, and special (health care, household hazardous wastes, sewage sludge). Functions relating to waste management include:

- Awareness and education to change the attitude of the public.
- Waste minimization (reduce, re use and recycle) The 3 Rs.
- Waste generation, storage, collection and transportation.
- Waste treatment where waste is hazardous.
- Landfill disposal sites of waste
- Environmental negative impacts considerations
- Financial and marketing aspects
- Research, Policy and regulation
- Education, awareness and training
- Planning and implementation

Polokwane Municipality is able to handle this function satisfactorily as there is a full-fledged unit established to focus on waste management. Waste collection is currently rendered in the city, Seshego, Mankweng, and Sebayeng Townships from **103 776 HH**. Municipal trucks collect waste **once a week** at residential areas/suburbs/Townships and **daily** at businesses and industrial areas). A Plan is underway to roll out this full service to rural areas as contained in the IWMP. At the moment, **53 rural villages** receive weekly waste collection service. EPWP litter picking is being done in all wards but not all villages, the challenges being equipment and personnel. All collected wastes are transported to Weltevreden and Aganang municipal Landfill sites, which are both licensed. The Aganang landfill site receive waste mainly from Moletjie and Aganang clusters.

Currently in the Aganang Clusters, Waste Removal Services is Rendered in the following areas i.e.

- 1) **knobel hospital**
- 2) **Post office**
- 3) **Mashashane crossing.**
- 4) **Maphepha centre**
- 5) **SASSA**
- 6) **Matlala police station**
- 7) **the local market and**
- 8) **Tibane shopping centre.**
- 9) **Kgabo park**
- 10) **Vlakfontein**

Furthermore, street cleaning is not rendered in all wards due to limited budget for Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

7.9.1 Integrated Waste Management Plan (IWMP)

The City of Polokwane has developed and adopted an IWMP which embraces the concept of waste Management Hierarchy as follows:

- Waste Avoidance or prevention
- Waste Minimisation-reduce, reuse & recycle.
- Waste treatment
- Waste disposal

Integrated Waste Management Planning (**IWMP**) is a basic requirement for all municipalities as stipulated in the **National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)** (NEMWA). The Waste Act requires that the IWMP must be adopted for a period of five years and reviewed every five years as well. The primary objective of IWMP is to integrate and optimise waste management planning in order to maximise efficiency and minimise the associated environmental impacts and financial costs, and to improve the quality of life for all South Africans.

The National Waste Management Strategy provides a set of goals that municipalities must achieve in order to give effect to the Waste Act. It contains an action plan with various targets to be achieved by municipalities.

Polokwane IWMP not yet endorsed by MEC of LEDET

Polokwane IWMP not yet endorsed by MEC of LEDET

- a) What are the Plans to ensure that Polokwane **IWMP** is endorsed by MEC of LEDET?
 - **Polokwane municipality has yet to review the current approved IWMP (2017), including performance thereof and submit to MEC LEDET.**

7.9.2 Recycling and Recovery of Waste

Polokwane Municipality IWMP Goal is to promote recycling and the recovery of waste; in a tabular format and this would be represented as follows:

Table: Promote Recycling and Recovery of Waste

Immediate goals	Short term goals	Medium term goals	Long term goals
Establish mechanisms for promoting separation at source (develop waste minimisation plan with clear programmes, project, budget and timelines for implementation.	Roll out separation at source to 30 % of households	Roll out separation at source to 70 % of households	100% households receiving separation at source
Conduct a feasibility study to determine whether there is a need to establish buy back centres	Develop plans to establish buy back centres	Buy back centres established	Utilization of buy back centres.
Develop a composting strategy/plan to divert garden waste from landfill sites	Establish a compost recycling plant	Compost recycling plant fully operational and is operated in a sustainable manner	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.9.3 Refuse Removal Trends

Table: Refuse Removal

Municipality	Removed by local authority/ Private company			Communal refuse dumps			No rubbish disposal		
	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020	2018	2019	2020
Polokwane	43.08*	43.332%	43.4%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%	56.92%	56.67%	56.6%

Source: Stats, S.A,

There is an improvement in areas that had no service at all since 2017. As indicated earlier, the unavailability of such a service has a direct impact on the health of the citizen as well as the physical environment. A high number **56.6%** of households in rural areas still use communal dumps in comparison of households with access to refuse removed by local authority/private company of **43.4%**.

Currently, only City / Seshego and Mankweng / Sebayeng clusters have conventional waste management services in place. There are now two landfill sites licensed and two transfer stations in the CBD area. In the **Mankweng/Sebayeng** there is one transfer station. There are three rural transfer station at **Makgaga, Vaalkop, Dikgale and Makotopong** that were completed and operational.

Planning of Westernburg and Seshego transfer stations is completed and budgeted on the outer years of 2203/4 for construction. Additional budget for rural transfer stations on the MTREF capital budget is required for transfer stations at **Maja/Chuene, Aganang cluster to take the service close to the residences**. Ladanna transfer station is without paving, proper retention walls and ramping. There is also a need to budget for it in order to comply fully to Norms and Standards for construction of transfer stations.

The bulk of rural areas normally do not have conventional waste management methods, illegal dumping characterised these areas without such services. A certain level of Rural Waste Collection service under the EPWP incentive Grant is undertaken in all **wards** municipal wide. The employees render litter picking service three days per week and the waste is collected by waste municipal trucks and disposed of at the two landfill sites.

One more rural transfer station is budgeted for on the MTREF namely Molepo for 2022/3. It is therefore important for the municipality to develop and implement a municipal-wide waste management plan in rural areas with clear sustainable service levels (IWMP). In order to promote the notion of waste recycling, DEA constructed and donated the **Mankweng Buy back centre** to Polokwane Municipality and the municipality is in the process of appointing a new service provider after the old one has expired.

According to the IWMP there are additional Buy back centres that must be established in rural areas as well to support and promote waste minimisation in those areas. Waste recycling should also be introduced in all rural transfer stations in order to intensity recycling and create basic job opportunities.

7.9.4 Licensed Landfill Sites

The City of Polokwane has **X 2 licensed landfill**, both fully operational namely, Weltevreden and Aganang landfill sites. The municipality also has **7 transfer stations in total**:

- 7 x permitted.
- 1 x ROD (Record of Decision) for Mankweng transfer station but not permitted, New plans were drawn to finalise the licensing thereof.

7.9.5 Waste Management Challenges

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lack of adequate trucks and long turn-around time for repairs to render effective service in rural 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Purchase of adequate trucks, compactors, tipper trucks and ROROS to render effective and efficient service in the urban and rural areas.

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
<p>areas, illegal dumping and industrial cleaning resulting in over usage of overtime.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weltevreden landfill site is remaining with only one years' lifespan. • Landfill site does not charge disposal fee currently 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Repairs of waste trucks to prioritised as there are no relief trucks during breakdowns. ▪ The feasibility study of the landfill site was completed, and the licensing process is still going on. ▪ Implementation of waste disposal charges at the landfill sites to be re- introduced to argument revenue
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shortage of personnel for refuse removal. Some staff members are old and sickly and on light duty resulting in over usage of temporary workers on waste collection and transfer stations as well 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous budgeting and filling of vacant positions is imperative especially operators, labourers, supervisors and Awareness and education officers to enhance efficient service delivery
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is no full refuse removal service in rural areas only 53 villages receive weekly service. • There are no transfer stations in all clusters.eg Maja/Chuene, Mashashane and Matlala areas. • Ladanna transfer station upgraded with walling around, water connection and guard house. The working area is not paved, ramp and retention are also dilapidated. • There are no transfer stations at Westernburg and Seshego resulting in lots of illegal dumping. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Construction of rural transfer station will be implemented at Ga Molepo with capital budget of R 500 000 this financial year. There is also planning for both Maja and Chuene transfer stations in 2023/24 but need to budget for additional transfer station at Westernburg, Seshego and other rural clusters. • A waste minimisation strategy /plan with clear programmes and projects with timelines to be finalised and implemented

Challenges	Measures to address challenges
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The municipal area is characterised by lot of illegal dumping from building rubble due to inadequate awareness and education officers and inadequate law enforcement. Down town is untidy due to illegal activities by hawkers, illegal outdoor advertising, car washers, illegal mechanics, street kids, job seekers who sleep in the streets on municipal properties. Lack of adequate street pavement bins in the CBD 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All budgeted positions of senior superintendent, operators, supervisors, awareness and education officers to be advertised and filled. Outsourcing of litter picking in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng. A pilot outsourcing using cooperatives to be undertaken first in the City. Working together with other SBUs to control all illegal activities (Housing SBU) and the sweeping of sand in the CBD (Roads and Storm Water SBU) Waste awareness and education plan compiled and awaiting approval
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mankweng illegal dumping area is licensed for closure but without budget for rehabilitation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mankweng pit to be budgeted for closure and rehabilitation as it continues creating pollution of the environment.

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.9.6 Waste Management Status Quo

	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
1.	IWMP	The approved IWMP to be reviewed after five years, which will be October 2022
	By-Law	By-Law approved by Council and is now gazetted. The fines and penalties are also approved already by the Chief Magistrate
2.	Waste collection in rural areas	EPWP litter picking, and collection is being done in all 45 wards. 53 villages are currently receiving weekly waste collection service and there is a need to extend to other villages in all wards. Additional acquisition of

	ACTIVITY	PROGRESS
		trucks and personnel will ensure that the service is rolled out to other villages
3	Plan\program on waste collection in the City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	A schedule on waste collection is in place and it also guides the placement of personnel and allocation of trucks
4.	Weltevreden landfill site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cashier house is completed, and the landfill site has been classified as a high-risk area to collect cash at the site instead rates and taxes accounts of end users will be debited, including the use of coupons and other smart options. • Landfill external auditing is continuing and being done every year. • Awaiting the issuance of licensing by end of July 2023
6	6 and 9 M ³ skip containers for rural transfer stations.	To appoint a three-year service provider to supply and deliver skip containers for rural areas. The allocated budget is not adequate to make inroads in rural areas
7.	Aganang landfill site	To provide Budgeting for items of paving, retention wall and ramping
8	Upgrading of Ladanna transfer station	<p>Construction of ablution facilities, sewer and water connections have been completed and functional.</p> <p>Outstanding items of paving, retention wall and ramping to be budgeted for.</p>

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.9.7 Waste Collection in Rural Areas

EPWP litter picking will be done in all **45 wards** with a total budget of R 2 520 000 for the first six months and the remaining months with Partnership with DFF In-House Greening and Cleaning programme until June 2024. Approval and implementation of rural waste strategy is part of IWMP.

7.10 Waste Management Services Status Quo

7.10.1 Status Quo on Rendered Services

NO	TYPE OF SERVICES	PLACES RENDERED	FREQUENCY	Transport Mode
1.	Residential kerb side collection	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Once a week	In house compactors
2.	Businesses	Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily	3 in house compactors
3.	Street sweeping and litter picking	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and week days only	2 x outsourced sweepers and 1 X 19 M ³ compactor truck. 210 x temporary employees for manual litter picking
3.	Industrial areas and communal skip containers	City, Seshego, Mankweng and Sebayeng	Daily and when necessary	In house Load luggers, Grab trucks and ROROS. 2 x Grabs adhoc rental
4.	Transfer stations and illegal dumping	City, Seshego, Mankweng, Sebayeng and rural areas	Daily and when necessary	In house tippers & TLB and ROROS
5.	Rural villages and EPWP	Villages in all rural wards	Once a week	In house compactor trucks and 4-ton trucks

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.10.2 Rural Waste Transfer Stations and landfill sites status quo

Rural Transfer Stations

NO	NAME OF FACILITY	SPATIAL LOCATION	STATUS	Period of establishment and operation
1.	Makgaga rural transfer station	Makgaga ward 10	operational	2016
2.	Vaalkop rural transfer station	Vaal kop ward 9	operational	2019
3.	Dikgale rural transfer station	Ga –Dikgale ward 33	operational	2020
4.	Makotopong rural transfer station	Makotopong ward 24	Operational	2020
5.	Webster garden transfer station	C/o Webster and Suid streets Flora Park ward 20	Operational	1998
6.	Ladanna transfer station (Need upgrading)	Vermikuleit street Ladanna ward 20	operational	2002
7	Mankweng transfer station	Mankweng ward 31	Operational	2005
8.	Molepo garden transfer station	Ga-Molepo ward 4	Planning and design completed	2023/24
9.	Aganang rural landfill site	Aganang ward 45	Operational	2021
10	Weltevreden general medium with insignificant water production (G:M: B -) landfill site	Polokwane ward 20	Operational	1998

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.10.3 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Maja/Chuene/Molepo Cluster)

City Depot: Maja/Chuene/Molepo cluster

No	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	Thogoaneng along 37 road	Chuene	1	2
	Thogoaneng along Bergeneck road			
2.	Feke	Maja	2	2
	Koppermyn			
3.	Between Mothapo and Mothiba ngwanamago	Molepo	5	2
	Moremadi along powerlines		5	
4.	Rampheri	Molepo	4	2
	Boyne (close Shell garage)			
5.	Thaba		3	2
Total Allocated				10

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.10.4 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Moletjie and Aganang clusters)

Seshego Depot: Seshego, Moletjie and Aganang clusters

No	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
1.	Kgabo park	Aganang	45	2
	Between Rampuru & Ceres			
2.	Kalkspruit cross	Aganang	42	2
	Kgoroshi & Sechaba			
3	Setumong next to Matlala taxi rank	Aganang	43	2
	Dibeng village			
4.	Vlakfontein	Aganang	44	2
	Tibane Crossing			
5.	Opposite Mashashane clinic	Aganang	40	2
	Opposite mohloung police station			

No	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Number of skips Containers
6.	Diana clinic	Aganang	41	2
	Naledi clinic			
7.	Kwena Moloto	Moletjie	10	2
	Letsokwane			
8	Mmakgodu	Moletjie	36	2
	Kgohloane			
9	Moletjie crossing	Moletjie	18	2
	Around Boetse Sec school			
10	Makgofe Ga-tladi	Moletjie	16	2
	Motinti			
11	Madihorong	Moletjie	15	2
	Matamanyane			
12	Rankuwe	Moletjie	35	2
	Ga manamela			
13	Ramogoana	Moletjie	38	2
	Hlahla			
14	Sengatane	Moletjie	9	2
	Doornspruit			
Total				30

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.10.5 Skip Containers Distributed to - (Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters)

Mankweng depot: Mankweng and Sebayeng/Dikgale clusters

No.	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Proposed skips allocation
1.	Nobody Mothapo Thagalang (between Nobody and Maboi)	Mankweng	07	3
2.	Thoka, Boipuso and Thoka Reservoir	Mankweng	27	2
3.	Moremadi Moremadi Powerline	Mankweng	27	2
4.	Mentz Malesa /Badimong	Mankweng	34	3
5.	Ga Mothiba Magwareng to Mamatlho School	Sebayeng	24	2

No.	Areas with Illegal Dumping	Cluster	Ward	Proposed skips allocation
6.	Ga Mothiba Ngwanalaka	Sebayeng	24	1
7.	Tshware	Mankweng	30	2
8.	Mamahule R71 Gate	Mankweng	06	1
9.	Mentz Dubula next to Illegal Landfill	Mankweng	28	2
10	Madiga	Sebayeng	29	2
Total				20

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU (2021)

7.10.6 Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection Service Once a Week

Rural Villages with Communal Waste Collection

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
Maja/Chuene cluster	Moshate Ga Chuene, Marulaneng, Maja Moshate, Ga Phiri, Mapelaneng, Makatsane, Lekgothoane, Laastehoop, Mojapelo, Dithlopaneng, Tshebela, Mankgaile, Mountainview Pae Pae and Mmotong wa Bogobe	15
Moletjie cluster	Blood river, Mmotong, Makgofe, Moletjie Moshate, Mmakgodu, semenya, Ga Hlahla, Letsokwane and Kwena Moloto	09
Aganang Cluster	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Business Areas • Municipal offices and Traffic, • Tibane Shopping Centre, • knobel Hospital, Sassa Department, • Maphepha stores, Matlala SAPS & • Small Business Centre (Post Office, • Garage &Indians shops) 	12

Cluster	Name of Villages	Total Number of Villages
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kgomo school <p><u>Villages:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mandela, Madiba, Moshate, Maubane, Mapeding, Venus, Kgoroshi, Saiplaas, Moetakgare, Tibane Rampuru, Kgabopark, Ramashoana 	
Mankweng, Sebayeng/Dikgale cluster	Kotishing, Ramathopye, Malesa Mentz, Ga Mothiba, Segopye, Masealama, Mamotintane, Mamahule 1&2R71 , Mothiba Ngwana Laka, Makotopong, Moremadi, Tsatsaneng and Ramogale	17

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU (2021)

7.10.7 Plan to improve Cleanliness of the City CBD

- Intensify supervision of litter picking in the CBD by rotating the limited Assisting supervisors.
- Re-arrange the current cleaning program in the CBD by grouping all the litter pickers to clean in the morning and afternoons while there less congestion, during the day to be taken to concentrate on hot spots areas during peak periods.
- Ensuring that the list of hot spots such as taxi ranks, bus stops and hawker's areas are marked or ticked daily by supervisors to make sure they have been attending to adequately.
- To ensure that skip containers are cleaned daily and twice at hot spots areas, such as, De Hoek, Dahl Street, Biccard street and Oriental Plaza/Indian Centre by the contractor.
- To coordinate with Law Enforcement SBU to issue notices and fines to transgressors since the waste By-Law has been approved and gazzeted
- To ensure Awareness and Education to businesses, hawkers and taxi areas is done and flyers in this regarded distributed to all in the CBD.
- To ensure that night shift street sweeper contractor is effective by allocation of a supervisor at night on alternating shift basis for three hours utilizing overtime.
- Remove old damaged and defaced pavement bins and replace them where necessary.

7.10.8 Waste Management Challenges and Intervention

- a) The previously decreased number of litter pickers will be increased to original quantities in order to improve cleanliness in the CBD and other areas.
- b) Certain number of temporary litter pickers are allocated to trucks because of shortage of permanent staff for loading of bins. There are 10 x temporary laborer's positions which were advertised in the second quarter, and they are filled as yet.
- c) Congestion and littering caused by car washers, hawkers and people sleeping on streets.
- d) Displacement and damage of refuse containers by vagrants, job seekers and street kids.
- e) The operations of multidisciplinary By-law enforcement task team will be intensified to prevail over these challenges on a continuous basis in relation to 2.3 and 2.4 above.
- f) Shortage of Awareness and Education officers. The whole municipality is manned with **one officer** instead of six. In addition to filling of the vacant positions, Ward Committees who head Waste Management desks and Councilors to oriented on basic education and awareness during their community meetings so that they can play a key role in combating unhygienic throughout the municipal area. LEDET and Municipal Communication to be partners in this initiative.

7.10.9 Management of illegal Dumping in the City, Seshego and Westernburg

Areas with illegal dumping challenge in City, Seshego and Westernburg

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in City and Westernburg			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sterpark 	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
• De wet and R 71	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• Mall of the north on R81(Behind Farm Yard)	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• RSA	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• N1 South	monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• Buite street taxi holding area	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On daily basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
• Lawton street	weekly with TLB and tipper truck	On weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
	EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month		No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Saphire street Nirvana 	monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	On monthly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Covydale and Buys street 	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	Westernburg transfer station(temporary) to be cleaned each Tuesdays and operated for closure.	Two skips in coydale street shifted further from the residents. New Westenburg transfer station planned Budgeted capital project with a budget of R 556 098
List of areas with illegal dumping challenge in Seshego			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emdo, Legae la batho, Madiba park, Phase 3, extension 76, 71 and 73 	Monthly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on monthly basis	New Seshego transfer station is planned /Budgeted with a budget of R 906 098.

List of illegal dumping in the City and Westernburg	Current status in terms of Removal	Monitoring Schedule	Plan to address the illegal dumping identified
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Zone 1 next to Biko park, Zone 2 next to Moletji drive 	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	Education and awareness, planting of No dumping boards and Law enforcement
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bridge between hospital view and Madibapark 	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alf Makaleng street 	weekly with TLB and tipper truck EPWP litter pickers utilised once a month	on weekly basis	

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.10.10 General Method of Dealing with Illegal Dumping

- Cleaning by TLB and Tipper trucks as per drawn program.
- Manual litter picking utilising EPWP urban cleaners.
- Awareness and education and law enforcement
- Planting of No Dumping Boards.
- Illegal dumping sites are cleaned on weekly basis.

7.10.11 Challenges in addressing illegal dumping problem.

- Lack of adequate equipment. E.g., Only one set of 1 X TLB and 2 x Tipper trucks per cluster

- Regular break downs with long turnaround time for repairs of the fleet
- Continued unabated illegal dumping of building rubble by unscrupulous developers especially at night.
- Transplanting/stealing of No Dumping Boards and being sold at scrap yards by street kids and job seekers for cash.
- Despite weekly house to house waste collection, communities continue to dispose waste at open spaces and corners of streets.
- Lack of transfer stations at Seshego, Westernburg and other areas. Those available are far apart and not accessible to other villages.

7.10.12 Progress Report on Waste Management Capital Projects

NO	PROJECT NAME	WARD NO	BUDGET	PROGRESS / STATUS QUO
1.	Extension of landfill site	Ward 20	1 000 000	Licensing will be issued to enable the commencement with designing and construction of the project Consultant for designing and construction supervision appointed
2.	Seshego transfer station	Ward 8	906 098	Planning and designs completed
3.	Westernburg transfer station	Ward 11	556 098	Planning and designs completed
4.	Molepo transfer station	Ward 03	500 000	Planning, Design and Drawing completed
5.	Ga Maja Transfer station	Ward 02	1 000 000	Planning and designs completed
6.	Ga Chuene transfer station	01	1 000 000	Planning and designs completed

NO	PROJECT NAME	WARD NO	BUDGET	PROGRESS / STATUS QUO
7.	6&9M3 Skip containers	All wards	1 500 000	Procured 26 Skip containers

Source: PLK Waste Management SBU

7.11 By-Law Enforcement & SECURITY

The Municipality has an obligation in terms of Sect 152 (1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 108 of 1996, to promote safety and healthy environment; and to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government. These objectives are achieved through constant crime prevention operations with other Law Enforcement Agencies. The SBU is sub-divided into the following three (3) sub-units:

1. Law Enforcement

The sub-unit provides the following services within the municipality:

- Enforcement of municipal by-laws
- Conduct crime prevention operations with other law enforcement agencies.
- Conduct crime awareness campaigns.
- Provide VIP Protection.
- Investigation of internal crime/incident cases
- Participate in the activities and meetings of Community Policing Forums and Community Safety Forums within the municipal jurisdiction,
- Coordinate protest marches and picketing's in line with the provisions of the Regulations of Gatherings Act.
- Attend to community protests and illegal land use activities.

- Provide safety and security during council meetings, municipal and external events organized through Joint Operations Committee (JOC).

2. Asset Protection

The sub-unit renders the following services:

- Provide 24/7 security services to protect municipal properties, assets and employees,
- Conduct security awareness to municipal employees and contractors operating within the municipality.
- Coordinate suitability checks/vetting of municipal employees and private companies rendering service to Polokwane Municipality with the assistance of State Security Agency (SSA).
- Conduct security inspections, risk assessments and surveys at municipal premises.
- Facilitate Technical Surveillance Counter Measure (TSCM) at critical premises with the assistance of SSA.

3. Emergency Control Centre

- Provide 24/7 emergency call centre services.
- Provide technical access control and support of automated access into municipal buildings (e.g., motorized gates, automated access control systems, biometric access control system, walkthrough metal and parcel scanner).
- Provide, maintain and monitor CCTV Surveillance camera networks and IP related equipment.

7.11.1 SBU challenges and intervention

The table below illustrates the challenges and the interventions to address them.

Challenges	Interventions to address these challenges.
Shortage of resources (staff, equipment and funding).	- Fill all budgeted vacant posts and to request for additional funding for Security systems and equipment
Insufficient Budget for the procurement of new and the replacement of CCTV cameras; and Access control systems; repairs and maintenance	- To request for additional funding for the procurement of new CCTV cameras and access control equipment; and for repairs and maintenance.

Challenges	Interventions to address these challenges.
Lack of human capacity on CCTV and Access Control system repairs and maintenance.	- To fast-track the appointment of technicians for the repairs and maintenance of CCTV and Access Control equipment.
Insufficient office space for By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU	- To secure dedicated office space for the entire SBU
Shortage of pool cars for law enforcement and security	- To request for budget in the next financial year
Increased vandalism and theft of municipal infrastructure (cable theft and vandalism of municipal infrastructure).	- Shift system introduced to protect municipal infrastructure 24/7
Increased displaced/vagrants sleeping in the streets.	- To engage relevant Government Sectors for interventions (psycho-support and accommodation).
The increased hair braiders and illegal street traders	- Fill vacant and budgeted posts of Law Enforcement Officers to increase policing across all clusters.

Source: PLK By-Law Enforcement & Security SBU

7.12. SAFER CITY CONCEPT

A multi-sectoral joint operations work stream has been established to conduct law enforcement operations to address lawlessness and nuisance in the city. Municipal SBU's, NPO's, community structures on safety, state organs such as SAPS, Department of Social Development, Department of Home Affairs, and others, are party to the Safer City Concept. The Safer City operations are conducted once a week focussing on by-laws transgressions, illegal water and electricity connections, illegal land use, and general crime prevention operations.



Joint operations - Stop and search during safer city operation



Search for expired goods during operations



Joint Crime Prevention Operation with different stakeholders

7.13 DISASTER MANAGEMENT AND FIRE SERVICES

7.13.1 Fire Services Status Quo

Polokwane Fire Services cover the Municipal area of jurisdiction with three Fire Stations that are manned 24 hours 7 days a week. There are many Major Hazardous Installations within the area of jurisdiction and specialised institutions. The municipality has grown geographically and has widened the

scope of responses required on the services. As a result, fire risk profile has increased exceeding the capability and capacity of the Unit to respond. Fire Services have limited staff complement to attend incidents and ensure fire prevention across the municipality. These limitations have tremendous bearing on the capacity of the service to respond, conduct law enforcement, Inspections, implement fire safety legislations, By-laws, Fire investigation reports, building plans, new development plans, Flammable liquids and Hazardous substances as required in terms of Fire Brigade Services Act.

7.13.2 Polokwane Main Fire Stations

There are **three** existing Fire Stations in the jurisdiction of the municipality, namely, Main Fire Station in Ladanna, Satellite Fire Station at the Civil Airfield, Silicon Road and Mankweng Fire Station.

Clusters outside the city excluding Mankweng do not have Fire Stations. Areas like Moletji, Aganang, Matlala, Mashashane, Maja Chuene Molepo and Sebayeng clusters do not have Fire Sub Stations where personnel can be fulltime deployed. Council has budgeted **R3m** for the planning of three sub stations namely, **Moletji, Matlala and Maja Chuene/Molepo areas**. There is a need to acquire land to start with the drawing designs and further build Fire Sub stations to render 24/7 service in those clusters. Fire personnel are being deployed at Aganang Offices to attend and respond to any incident in the cluster. There is a need to allocate sufficient budget to build the Substations in those clusters. These Fire Sub Stations will also require enough response capability and capacity to render effective and quality service.

The Subunit has managed to conduct routine inspections for premises in the municipality. It has scrutinised building plans for new development and upgrades. It has inspected flammable liquid installations, vehicle permits, dangerous goods and events for the total of 632 inspections. The Unit has the project to service fire protection and pressure equipment for municipal buildings. This project is aiming at prolonging the lifespan and retain the functionality of the equipment.

Partnership between Capricorn District Municipality with Santam has yielded some positive results. Santam has offered the municipalities ICS training courses, Emergency Control Room Operator, SANS 10400, Fire Risk Assessment and Prevention Strategies to the two municipalities. It has further procured 13m rope, 5x carabiners, 1 x 50m webbing, 2 x class 3 harness, 2 x helmet and 2 x mailon.

The municipality has also procured rescue ropes, ancillary lifesaving equipment, and hydraulic equipment. Four personnel have been taken for specialised courses on high angle, water rescue and urban search and rescue training.

7.13.3 Challenges of Fires Services Unit:

Shortage of staff makes it difficult to respond timeously to the requests for fire management services by the residents. There is high rate of resignations due to existing working conditions. The municipality continues to procure most of the lifesaving equipment and require maintenance as they are being used. Some are old, obsolete and cannot be relied upon during operations or incidents. Vehicles are not thorny issue to the successful and timeous response to fire incident. Some are not operational and cannot be relied on. Fire fleet is currently over-utilised, requires major maintenance and the budge for maintenance is too limited to fix and repair all of them.

There is poor maintenance for existing infrastructure and facilities is adding to the problem of dilapidation. Limited budgetary constraints negatively affect service delivery and capital projects allocations. This includes the safety of fire vehicles

The municipality is developing at a faster pace and that requires lot of inspections and approval of fire safety components. Serious staff shortages in strategic positions specifically in the Fire Safety Section where the workload has tripled, and the staff component has shrunken. The appointment of additional adequately qualified instructors at both Fire Safety and Operations Section is needed. This requires that all vacated positions must be filled, and additional staff be budgeted for in the coming years to address staff shortage in line with national fire standard as stated in NFPA 1710.

The Fire Safety component is seriously lagging in the execution of its duties. The demand for approval of safety plans and inspection has increased. Shortage of staff creates very serious gap for approval and inspection to ensure compliance. The workload is ever increasing, and the present staff compliment just cannot cope with it. Building inspections as well law enforcement (including newly promulgated by-laws) is being done with limited staff available in the section. Shortage of staff has impact on the amount of law enforcement to be done and as such the risk of fire and illegal activities will continue unabated including the enforcement and National Veldt and Forest Fire Act of 1998.

Lack reliable of water supply and low water pressure for firefighting is being a dominant challenge for Fires Services in the municipality. This is complemented by old and shortage of water tankers, fire engines and rapid intervention vehicles to extinguish fires. The maintenance cost for fire fleet has risen and is not sustainable.

Fire hydrants are burning issue for several years now. They are full of dirty items which break the pumps during the fire incidents. The current fire hydrants require fire hydrants cover to protect them. There is a need to move from the old above surface hydrants below or undercover hydrants. Items

found in most fire hydrants are damaging the pumps for the fire vehicles since they are not cleaned, clearly mark, and maintained.

It is very common now to see fire hydrants and booster connections stuffed with papers and plastics etc., especially in dark nights this will damage pumps and hamper operations. The newly promulgated Fire Emergency By-law compels Fire Services to commit itself to Fire Safety and requires it to carry out specific duties that are putting the Municipality at serious risk. Unsafe or non-compliant buildings in town and rural areas coupled with lack of proper water systems are a major problem for the municipality.

However, The SBU is having a project to service and maintain fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, hoses and heels for municipal buildings. This project helps to prolong life span and effective use of these fire suppression equipment.

7.13.4 Accredited Fire-Fighting Course

Fire Training Section has been accredited by SAESI to conduct training as per course accreditation. There is sufficient capacity to conduct accredited fire-fighting training course in the station. These courses are offered to both internal and external moderators. The demand for the course has increased exponentially for the past three years. The Unit is awaiting approval of additional courses from SAESI for the extension of training scope with the view build internal capacity to the internal staff and to generate more revenue.

However, the approval of new courses will require additional staff capacity to cope with the demand. The approval of the additional courses must be matched by requisite facility to meet the demand. The budget allocation for the upgrading of the training is not sufficiently budgeted for. It is also important to finalise Memorandum of Understanding with GAAL (Polokwane Airport) or the proposed "Ike Maphoto Airport" to comply with aviation laws and other surrounding municipalities to render services where urgently needed.

7.13.5 Disaster Management Status Quo

Disaster Management Disaster Management role in terms of the Disaster Management Act (Act 57 of 2002) to ensure that the appropriate prevention, mitigation and disaster response initiatives have been

implemented. Disaster Management performs a response coordinating role, ensuring that multi-disciplinary coordination is in place and communication between responding agencies is efficient.

Disaster Management Plan has been developed and adopted by council. The Unit is playing a major role in safety and security planning to ensure safe event in the municipality. The Unit is continuing to ensure compliance to safety at sports and other mass events. It is a permanent stakeholder in Event Safety and Security Planning Committee in all Premier League matches and other designated major or medium risk mass events. Both private and public sector are trained on emergency planning and management particularly on evacuation drills or exercises. The Sub-Unit offers training to the stakeholders in matters of evacuations. The Sub-Unit further participate in National Key Point activities in terms of Critical Infrastructure Act.

The Sub unit also conducted about 80 awareness campaigns to the schools and other public facilities. About 17 institutions have been assisted on evacuation drills. The Subunit has responded 1372 victims of incidents and disasters. It has offered victims hygiene packs, blankets, emergency lights, and 6 temporary shelters in the form of shacks.

The Unit together with Capricorn District Municipality Disaster Management Centre and Provincial Disaster Management Centre and supported by SASSA offers immediate disaster reliefs to the victims of incidents. Victims of disasters are being referred to Home Affairs and Social Development Departments for further assistance. Disaster Management Advisory Forum meetings is being held on quarterly to solicit technical advice on matters related to disasters. The previous two flooding incidents have actuated National Disaster Management Centre (NDMC) through the advice of the Provincial Disaster Management Centre (PDMC) to declare other municipalities in the province a disaster area.

This resulted with National Treasury allocating Disaster Emergency Grants and Disaster Recovery Grants to upgrading and rehabilitate earth channels and storm water system adjacent to Buite clinic and excelsior streets, Doloriet and Blaawburg and Nelson Mandela and Doloriet. The total of amount of R18.7 million was allocated for that purpose.

7.13.6 Challenges of Disaster Management Unit

Like Fire Services, Disaster Management has limited capacity to respond and have few disaster capabilities to render its services effectively. Lack of resources is limiting the capacity of the Subunit to plan and respond quicker to assist the victims. There are insufficient personnel members and limited budget to cater other preventative activities in the municipality. Therefore, additional personnel are required to cater the entire clusters.

There is challenge in terms of budget to execute certain legislative mandate. There are limited capacity within the Unit and the staff is not exposed to sufficient training to adjust with the recent developments related to disaster management fraternity. Communities in rural areas are allocated residential sites in flood plain areas. The allocation exposed communities to loss of properties and municipal infrastructure. There is a need for the municipality to engage traditional councils to stop allocating land without first getting advice from the municipal Land Use Management Unit.

7.13.7 Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet



Source Polokwane Fire and Disaster Fleet

7.14 TRAFFIC AND LICENSES ANALYSIS

7.14.1 Traffic and licenses services

Polokwane Municipality has Traffic and Licences services resorting under Directorate: **Public Safety**.

The Strategic Business unit ensures the following services:

- All road traffic law enforcement functions- Municipal-wide
- Licensing services are conducted at 03 licensing centres.
- ✓ Mankweng Licensing Centre.
- ✓ City/ Ladanna licensing Centre and

- ✓ Aganang Licensing centre.

7.14.2 Roles and responsibilities: Traffic and Licenses

Traffic and licensing provide the following key performance areas:

- Traffic related escort duties, regulation, and control
- Traffic law enforcement
- Road Traffic safety awareness
- Accident's scene management, securing and recordings.
- Speed checks and collection of outstanding fines.
- Driver and vehicle fitness
- Enforcement of municipal by-laws and parking offences
- Management of parking
- Other services such as internal and external training needs and law enforcement courses.

The following traffic services are conducted only within the **City cluster** as a result of infrastructural and legislative requirements:

- Vehicle Mass measuring
- Pound and impoundment of vehicles (of which the pound facility must still meet specific required standards with phase 1 thereof completed).
- Vehicle roadworthiness test (enforcement).
- Accident responses, recordings and capturing after hours due to minimal staff compliment at cluster level.

7.14.3 City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet

City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet



City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet



City of Polokwane Traffic Fleet

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

7.14.4 City of Polokwane Main Traffic Department at Ladanna



City of Polokwane Traffic Department at Ladanna



Service Counter



Waiting Area



Eyes Test Machine



Service Counter



Licence Card



Motor vehicles licence Renewal Forms

7.14.4 Revenue Enhancement Streams

The following are available revenue streams:

- Traffic fines.
- Authorized warrants of arrest
- By-law enforcement and vehicle impoundments
- Licensing services and
- Other miscellaneous traffic related activities

7.15 Licensing Services

The Following services are rendered on an Agency Basis on behalf of the Department of Transport and Community Safety upon entering into MOU.

- Registration and licensing of motor vehicles
- Roadworthy tests on Vehicles
- Applications and examining of learners and driving licenses.
- Authorizations to drive municipal motor vehicles.
- Applications for professional driving permits
- Applications and testing of instructor certificates.
- Weighing of motor vehicles for tare determination and examine overloading on vehicles.

7.15.1 Computerised Learners Testing Facility

The Municipality in conjunction with the Department of Transport implemented the Computerized learners license facilities at City and Aganang clusters with the intention of rolling it further to Mankweng cluster.

7.15.2 Licensing Transactions Over a period of 12 months

The tables below depict transactions performed in licensing units for the period July 2020/21, 2021/22, and 2022/23 over a period of 12 months' specific financial year. The codes are translated as follows:

TXN: Transaction.

- **02:** Vehicle Registrations,
 - **63:** Driving License Issue,
 - **71:** Learners License Issue.
- **The licensing transactions has been grouped per Cluster for easy reference.**

CITY CLUSTER

CITY CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	2613	2765	2565	2811	3132	2191	2279	2421	2526	2732	2461	2319	30 815
63	1352	1322	1504	1572	1812	1159	775	1048	1488	1378	1504	1646	16 560
71	29	35	42	65	56	45	62	90	129	108	134	123	918

CITY CLUSTER (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022

TXN	JUL 21	AUG 21	SEP 21	OCT 21	NOV 21	DEC 21	JAN 22	FEB 22	MAR 22	APR 22	MAY 22	JUN 22	TOTAL
02	2730	2560	2578	2747	2081	2029	2438	2289	2289	142	2520	2079	26482
63	1736	2039	1631	1583	1503	1451	1547	1473	1473	673	2951	447	18747
71	181	198	143	308	235	224	333	375	375	145	371	2216	5104

CITY CLUSTER (JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023)

JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023													
TXN	JUL 22	AUG 22	SEP 22	OCT 22	NOV 22	DEC 22	JAN 23	FEB 23	MAR 23	APR 23	MAY 23	JUN 23	TOTAL
02	2287	2610	2493	2380	2615	1955	2626	2273	2579	1961	2847	2465	29090
63	2007	2312	2209	2134	2270	1770	2134	1842	2195	2033	2236	2124	25566
71	551	437	454	370	428	390	422	488	606	474	578	667	5865

JULY 2023 TO JUNE 2024

TXN	JUL 23	AUG 23	SEP 23	OCT 23	NOV 23	DEC 23	JAN 24	FEB 24	MAR 24	APR 24	MAY 24	JUN 24	TOTAL
02	2418	2276	2433	2702	2596	2029	2920	2401	2389	2862	2474	2417	30417
63	2262	2316	1963	2577	2398	1739	2749	2453	2184	2355	2366	2103	27465
71	763	768	683	861	766	750	806	848	860	781	939	871	9696

Mankweng Cluster

MANKWENG CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	184	163	139	150	135	138	113	158	173	118	150	113	1734
63	456	368	407	447	446	397	302	437	517	547	571	626	5521
71	59	70	90	99	109	76	128	104	85	149	132	143	1244

MANKWENG = (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022													
TXN	JUL 21	AUG 21	SEP 21	OCT 21	NOV 21	DEC 21	JAN 22	FEB 22	MAR 22	APR 22	MAY 22	JUN 22	TOTAL
02	138	158	171	170	145	155	164	145	147	142	145	139	1819
63	486	636	448	616	650	644	704	632	854	673	901	583	7827
71	141	183	143	141	190	162	183	173	194	145	208	216	2079

MANKWENG = (JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023)

JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023													
TXN	JUL 22	AUG 22	SEP 22	OCT 22	NOV 22	DEC 22	JAN 23	FEB 23	MAR 23	APR 23	MAY 23	JUN 23	TOTAL
02	181	214	168	164	207	180	177	228	179	126	146	145	24142
63	826	707	627	717	699	684	753	679	710	520	633	653	8208
71	220	214	188	194	202	126	221	200	207	148	66	-	1986

MANKWENG = (JULY 2023 TO JUNE 2024)

JULY 2023 TO JUNE 2024													
TXN	JUL 23	AUG 23	SEP 23	OCT 23	NOV 23	DEC 23	JAN 24	FEB 24	MAR 24	APR 24	MAY 24	JUN 24	TOTAL
02	146	174	127	122	116	111	150	159	130	192	137	147	1711
63	694	765	722	722	752	651	852	738	701	678	700	670	8533
71	1												1

Aganang Cluster**AGANANG CLUSTER= (JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021)**

JULY 2020 TO JUNE 2021													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	43	30	44	50	35	35	25	35	35	24	35	20	411
63	456	333	432	603	523	529	521	491	590	560	624	629	6 291
71	367	310	324	407	168	224	319	381	383	378	415	374	4 050

AGANANG CLUSTER- (JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022)

JULY 2021 TO JUNE 2022													
TXN	JUL 20	AUG 20	SEP 20	OCT 20	NOV 20	DEC 20	JAN 21	FEB 21	MAR 21	APR 21	MAY 21	JUN 21	TOTAL
02	31	13	-	-	3	24	23	23	24	19	26	35	221
63	752	427	-	-	68	480	566	575	724	642	614	511	5259
71	371	209	-	-	28	24	267	238	217	224	214	210	2211

AGANANG CLUSTER- (JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023)

JULY 2022 TO JUNE 2023													
TXN	JUL 22	AUG 22	SEP 22	OCT 22	NOV 22	DEC 22	JAN 23	FEB 23	MAR 23	APR 23	MAY 23	JUN 23	TOTAL
02	24	37	20	29	43	31	18	32	24	20	30	17	325
63	685	555	479	457	441	402	524	421	492	415	388	418	5677
71	257	187	181	157	93	238	231	198	165	152	144	247	2250

AGANANG CLUSTER- (JULY 2023 TO JUNE 2024)

JULY 2023 TO JUNE 2024													
TXN	JUL 23	AUG 23	SEP 23	OCT 23	NOV 23	DEC 23	JAN 24	FEB 24	MAR 24	APR 24	MAY 24	JUN 24	TOTAL
02	23	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	21	29	28	29	149

63	531	81	-	-	-	-	-	-	224	389	354	323	1902
71	264	59	-	-	-	-	-	-	56	128	116	100	723

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

7.15.3 Polokwane Road Accidents Statistics

The table below depicts yearly accident Statistics recorded within the City of Polokwane Municipality:

Financial Year	Accidents Statistics (Total)
2011/12	2317
2012/13	1704
2013/14	1927
2014/15	1860
2015/16	1004
2016/17	1908
2017/18	1862
2018/19	1942
2019/20	1696
2020/21	2341
2021/22	1995
2022/23	1780
2023/24	1680

Source: PLK Traffic and Licences SBU

The above figure highlights only accidents with Minor or no injuries and including minor damages on the affected vehicles. All accidents with fatalities are recorded and captured by The South African Police Services and including investigations thereof.

7.15.4 Traffic and Licences Challenges:

The following are current challenges:

- Offices need structural refurbishments. (Dilapidated)
- Inadequate traffic and licensing facility.
- Licensing services continuously disrupted due to Network disruptions
- Centralized City licensing facility which is unable to cope with the influx.
- Inadequate parking facilities for both customers and employees.
- No waiting area facilities at Mankweng licensing stations
- Shortage of personnel.
- Inadequate specialized vehicles- (Motor bikes and tow trucks)

7.15.5 Measures to address Challenges:

Measures to address challenges:

- Refurbishment of the current facility and including structural expansion in place for the period 2023/2024 and 2024/25.
- Decentralization of services including satellite stations at strategic areas (Rates Hall, clusters and other service points thus accommodating' "one stop shop" idea.
- New technological innovations including wireless, etc. thus relieving the current load on the conventional IT system.
- Satellite stations to cater for shorter travelling costs and time.
- Decentralization of Traffic services with licenses thus accommodating law enforcement operations.
- Whilst gearing towards being a Metro Municipality, gradually fund the newly approved positions on the recently approved Organogram thus avoiding pressure of reaching the targeted personnel number required for All services within Metro-Municipality.
- Procure specialized Vehicles such as Law Enforcement Motorbikes, adapted/specially made tow trucks for easy maneuvering during law enforcement operations.
- Decentralization of infrastructural facilities namely Vehicle Test yards, Vehicle pounds and other related at all clusters

7.16. ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH

Polokwane Municipality provides environmental health services only for the “City area”. The Services in the other areas are done by the Capricorn District Municipality (CDM). There is no service level agreement entered into between the Polokwane Municipality and Capricorn District Municipality as it is a district function. The devolution process is not completed. The relocation of Environmental Health Services to the District Municipality will have a negative impact on Polokwane because of the different work activities and co-operation with other SBUs.

Services rendered are inter alia control and monitor of food premises, food control, food sampling, inspection of schools and pre-schools, inspection of accommodation establishments and air pollution control. The National Health Act 61/2003 sec 34 determine that “until a service level agreement contemplated in sec 32(3) is concluded, municipalities must continue to provide, within the resources available to them, the health services that they were providing in the year before this act took effect “.

Although the above-mentioned functions are executed, the authorization of Polokwane Municipality has been withdrawn according to Government Notice 37297 of 4 February 2014:

- Section 10(3)(b)-Authorization of Environmental Health Practitioners in writing
- Section 11-Powers, duties and functions of inspectors
- Section 24-Right to prosecute per provision of environmental health services in the municipal area is limited as the available practitioners do not meet set standards. The standards determine that there must be 1 x EHP per 15 000 populations. Currently there is a shortfall of 12 of employees compared to the standards to cover the whole population.

7.17 SPORT AND RECREATION ANALYSIS

Sport and Recreation has the potential to serve as a tool for development as well as catalyst for social and personal change. It is also worth noting that sport and recreation builds stronger, healthier, happier and safer communities, a vehicle for positive social change. The priority of the municipality is to enhance participation in Sport and Recreation activities which include hosting of municipal, district, provincial, international Sports and Recreation events. The municipality also assist sport structures with the aim of attracting major events that will market the City as sporting hub and that have an impact on the local economy. The focus continues to be provision of sport equipment and grading of rural

sport facilities, conducting sport and recreation programmes and maintenance of existing infrastructure.

Sport is used in promotion and marketing of Polokwane through presenting major events in order to establish Polokwane as the sport hub of the Limpopo Province. The municipality continues to provide a marketing platform for the City through the hosting of the national sporting activities such as the premier league matches. The national event attracts TV coverage beyond the borders of the country, giving a glimpse into the sporting facilities that exist within our city.

The municipality has hosted other events that have directly benefitted the communities within the municipality such as the **Indigenous and Golden Games, the Mayoral Cluster Races, and the City Marathon Road Race**. Polokwane Mayoral Marathon has been classified as Comrade Marathon qualifier.

Currently Sport and Recreation also coordinates programmes that are aimed at raising funds for charity and providing bursaries for needy community members by hosting the Mayoral Charity Golf Day and the City Marathon Road Race. Through partnership with the sponsors, the municipality continue to raise monies in order to fund needy students from Polokwane. There is hoped to continue amassing sponsorship that would make it possible to spread beneficitation to a far greater audience than what is being reached at the moment. The partnerships with professional football clubs have provided the City with opportunities to contribute towards local economic development in that premier league matches played at the New Peter Mokaba Stadium contributes to local retail and hospitality establishments enhancing their revenue generation.

The municipality continuously promotes sport by hosting municipal cluster marathons, indigenous and golden games. This are hosted at ward to cluster level and finally municipal level. Holiday programmes are presented to the community during the school holidays to ensure that children who are on holiday spend quality time.

Polokwane Municipality has launched a programme that is Polokwane Mayoral Football and Netball tournament, which is running from ward, cluster and lastly at the municipal level. The main aim is to enhance talent identification while promoting Sport in the municipality. Polokwane Municipality will continue to strive to be a winning team in promoting Social Cohesion. The municipality continues to fulfil the constitutional mandate of social cohesion by actively maintaining facilities and bringing major events to such through the Directorate Community Services.

These events not only give access to the multitude of participants, but they generally contribute to economic growth of the City. Events and facilities are deliberately used to empower disadvantaged communities and individuals, providing them access to schooling, recreational activities as well. The notion of Sport and Tourism should be looked at quite seriously and deliberate programmes to be packaged in conjunction with other relevant stakeholders in the Economic cluster. The hosting of national and international games should provide an impetus to investors and role players in the hospitality and tourism sector to want to partner more and more as such programme would be proving to be catalysts for the business growths.

Polokwane Municipality also conduct skills development and capacity building workshops through federations for various sporting codes.

7.17.1 Municipal Swimming Pools

Municipality has several Swimming Pools within its area. ie City **CBD** Swimming Pool, **Seshego** Swimming Pool, Nirvana Swimming Pool, **Westernburg** Swimming Pool

Municipal Swimming Pools



Source: PLK Sport SBU

7.17.2 New Peter Mokaba Stadium

Figure: New Peter Mokaba Stadium



New Peter Mokaba Stadium



Source: PLK Sport SBU

The new Peter **Mokaba Stadium** is one of the five stadiums that was constructed to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa. It was built next to the old Peter Mokaba Stadium and is currently being used for all types of events over and above Soccer, Rugby and meetings. Already the venue is popular for school tours, hosting of lifestyle activities and offices.

Peter Mokaba Stadium holds much historical significance in South Africa. It was named after one of the renowned sons of the struggle and emancipation of South Africa against the apartheid regime. **Peter Mokaba** was born and bred in Polokwane and was renowned for his fighting spirit and for his inspirational leadership.

Although the Peter Mokaba Stadium was built with a capacity for **45 000** spectators, this was reduced to **41 700** for the World Cup purposes, however for national events the safe capacity is 43 500 according to standard set out in the SASREA ACT. Interestingly, the stadium's design was inspired by the **baobab tree**, which is often said to look like it is upside down, with its roots emerging out of the ground and reaching for the sky. The stadium's steel structure gathers together at each corner of the stadium and is supported by structures that resemble massive tree trunks.

There is a VIP area that accommodates up to **500 VIPs**, a VIP reception area and lounge, as well as offices and storage areas. The stadium is less than five kilometres from the City centre of Polokwane. This area boasts a number of other sights and activities, including the Polokwane Museum, Polokwane Bird and Reptile Park.

A number of major events have been hosted at the two venues, including Rugby matches, weddings, conferences, political rallies, IEC centre during elections, religious gatherings and meetings.

7.17.3 Two Premier Soccer League Teams Hosted at the new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium

The new and old Peter Mokaba Stadium host four Premier Soccer League teams in the Limpopo Province, namely **Polokwane City FC, Sekhukhune United FC, Kaizer Chiefs FC and Supersport United FC**. The teams will be hosted over a period of three seasons subject to them retaining PSL status. A total of over 40 odd matches are scheduled to be played in both stadias. In the 2024/2025 season Magesi FC will be hosting majority of their home matches at the Seshego Stadium which has been upgraded to host major events including athletics. The upgrades will enable the locals to walk to the stadium to watch their favourite premier league matches.

7.17.4 Horticultural Services

Horticultural Sub-SBU render services to all sport facilities (sport fields, community halls, swimming pools, showground and shooting ranges) at all cluster of Polokwane Municipality. Horticultural services include landscaping, pitch maintenance and refuse removal especially in City, Seshego and Mankweng clusters. Grass cutting (turf grass and wild grass) and tree felling is done to all facilities that falls under sport and recreation SBU.

Marking of soccer, rugby, softball, athletics, cricket and other sporting codes including all indigenous games is done within the SBU. Rolling of cricket pitch and preparation of all types of events that are hosted in our facilities is also a responsibility of horticultural service team.

7.17.5 Sport and Recreational Facilities

Polokwane Municipality is also responsible for managing sport and recreation facilities which are leased out on long- and short-term basis bringing in revenue and ensures that the maintenance of such facilities is done in terms of council policies and used in terms of Sport and Recreation Act 2, of 2010, for hosting of events.

Various outdoor and indoor sports and recreation facilities including community halls that are used for professional and leisure activities. The indoor facilities include **Jack Botes Hall** which host meetings, weddings, funerals, music concerts and legislature sittings. **Ngoako Ramathodi indoor centre** which hosts activities like indoor soccer, netball, basketball, volleyball, karate and also serves as a community hall for hosting of music events, community meetings and funerals. The Polokwane Indoor recreation centre caters for activity such as gymnastics, badminton, squash, kickboxing and a gymnasium (Virgin active).

Outdoor facilities include Golf club, Cricket, Tennis, Korfbal, Jukskei, shooting range, Motorsport, 4X4 Motor Vehicle Track, Close Circuit Motorcycle track, Model Flying Aeroplanes, Rugby, Softball, Bowling, Soccer. The **Old Peter Mokaba stadium** remains the only facility in the province that complies to host national and international athletics events. The municipality also has various facilities with all-weather surfaces and artificial grass surfaces which ensures that sports and recreation activities can be played under various conditions.

7.18 New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane

7.18.1 Profile information on New International Softball Stadium in Polokwane

1. Background to the project.

The City of Polokwane has been identified as the home of softball. the City of Polokwane is one of the Municipalities benefitting from the Ring-Fenced MIG (UIDG) Sport Allocation to the total amount of R85 m in three (3) financial years. The planning of the project commenced during the 2019/20FY, where Polokwane Municipality was allocated an amount R 25 000 000.00. However, due delays caused by the National Lockdown announced in March 2020, the finalization of the Procurement process was delayed. Construction of the project commenced during 2020/21 financial year and was affected by delays after the main contractor terminated the contract and left site. A new contractor has since commenced with construction after delays due insufficient funding.

The City of Polokwane has been allocated an amount of R **184 000 000.00** for a period of three years. The funding will be utilized for the Construction and professional fees of Polokwane Softball in Polokwane city cluster within Polokwane Municipality.

The project involves the Design, Planning and Construction of an International Softball Stadium in Polokwane. The project consists of design and construction of 3 Softball Fields, a practice field and associated 3500-seater Concrete Grandstand for field A, steel and timber Grands for fields B and C and associated buildings

The detailed scope of works is as follows:

Associated Facilities & infrastructure for the whole stadium

- Grandstand Building (with facilities for visiting and home teams, administration, media, VIP, storage, ancillary spaces, ramps, staircases, part circulation spaces and ablutions.
- Ablution facilities for all Fields (A, B, C and 2 practice fields) located in the Grandstand Building
- Electrical, Mechanical and Fire prevention works.
- Sewer collection and reticulation works, water supply and reticulation work.
- Roadworks for entry and exit to site, internal and circulation road works and parking.
- Public plaza works.
- Landscaping to spaces around the Grandstand, Stand B and the public plaza.
- Secured Kids Play Area

Main Field A

- Field A Grandstand with roof (3500-seating)
- Field A, 6260m² (International Standard) with netting and safety requirements as per manual
- Earth Berm (Future seating), Dugouts, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification

Field B

- Field B (Area 6260m²) (International Standard)
- Field B Seating Stand (1000 spectators)
- Earth Berm, Steel Structure Pavilion, Bullpens and batting cages
- Lighting and electronic requirements as per client specification
- Field C
- Field C (Area 6260m²) prepared for match standards and conditions.

2 x Practice Fields

- Open grassed area practice field of area 8250m² (75m x 110m).

The Polokwane Municipality has certain financial expenditure obligations to achieve (e.g., expenditure of allocated budgets within the required financial year). The Polokwane Municipality would try by all means to balance out the available budget with the actual expenditure claimed for work done.

2. Status of the project.

The overall progress is at 69% towards completion with the following breakdown:

- Preliminary & General 61%
- Building and Grandstand Works 38%
- Specialist Works-Civil Works 56%
- Specialist Works-Mechanical Works 0.00%
- Specialist Works-Electrical Works 16%

3. Expected completion date.

Construction of the works started **12 December 2020** and was scheduled to be completed by **26 September 2022** (21 Months Duration).

The contractor is behind schedule and a valid extension of time was applied for and granted. Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme.

A realistic completion date is revised to **February 2024**.

4. How will the community benefit?

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) for Polokwane Municipality has also noted the need for recreational facilities and has provided for such a development in the current 5-year plan. The Construction of an International Softball Stadium will attract tourists together with international events like World Olympics and World Cups Games. This will boost the local tourism industry.

5. Expected number of jobs to be created (temporary and permanent).

A cumulative number of local work (unskilled labour) opportunities created to date is **41** at cumulative wages of **R 568 129,12**

6. No of youth to benefit.

28 Youth male, **10** Youth female and **1** person living with a disability have been employed on the construction project.

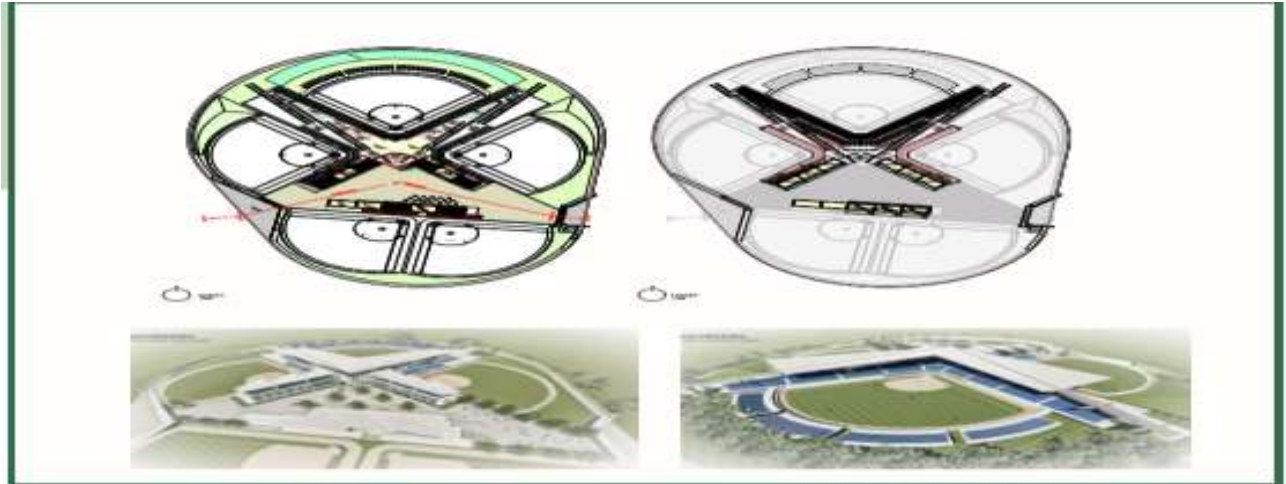
7. Challenges and possible interventions.

The contractor is behind schedule and a valid extension of time was applied for and granted.

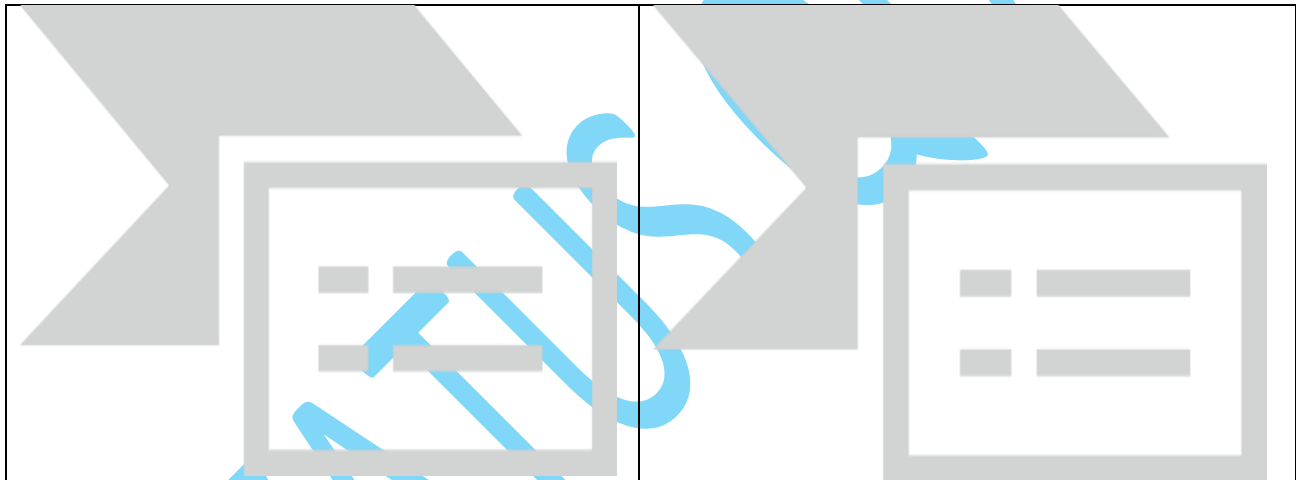
Intervention meetings have been held with the Contractor to get a commitment to put in place a catch-up plan. The Contractor has started increasing resources on site as agreed with the Project Team in order to catch up with the programme and there is a visible improvement.

The contractor has highlighted cash flow challenges due to price escalations on material caused largely by the pandemic. The municipality is assisting with paying for material directly through cession agreement and the contractor has submitted a variation order that is currently under review.

7.18.2 Softball Stadium Concept Designs



7.18.3 Construction of Softball Stadium Progress



Construction of Softball Stadium Progress



Construction of Softball Stadium Progress



Construction of Softball Stadium Progress

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.19 SPORTS GROUND GRADING STATUS QUO

Sport and Recreation does not have a grader for blading of sports ground in all 45 wards. The annual target is to grade 12 sports grounds per ward which equals to 540 for the entire municipal area.

The achievement of the set target is affected by unavailability of a grader. To continue with the grading services, the grader is borrowed from Roads and Transport over the weekends.

Despite the challenge, grading has been done for 6 clusters and 36 wards with 97 grounds done: For purposes of becoming more efficient in grading sports grounds, a new Grader has to be budgeted for in the next financial year.

CLUSTER	NUMBER	WARDS
1. Mankweng	21 Sports Fields, 3 for each ward	7, 25, 26, 27, 28,30, 34
2. Sebayeng Dikgale	6 Sports Fields, 1 in each ward	06,24,31, 32, 33,29
3. Molepo/Chuene/Maja	10 Sports Fields= 2 in each ward	01, 02, 03, 04, 05
4. Moletjie	28 Sport Fields= 4 in each ward	09, 10,15,16, 18, 35, 36, 38,
5. Seshego	30 Sport Fields = 5 in each ward	11, 12, 13, 14, 17 and 37
6. Aganang	6 Sport Fields = 1 in each ward	40, 41, 42,43,44,45
7. City	5 Sports field for ward 8 only	08, 19,20,21,22,23,39
	Total 106	Total 39 Wards Done

Source: PLK Sports SBU

7.19.1 Sports Field Grading Program

The grading of fields is mainly seasonal and such services are mainly required during the festive season when tournaments are held and during the Easter weekends when such tournaments are continuing to be held in the communities.

The SBU does not have a functional grader for the entire municipality. Essentially a minimum of two graders are required at any given time to become efficient and address the back logs. This plan does not include ad hoc requests.

Sports Field Grading Program

Clusters:	Overall Grounds per cluster:	Grounds per ward:
Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster (6 wards)	18 Grounds	3
Mankweng Clute (7 wards)	21 Grounds	3
Moletjie Cluster (8 wards)	24 Grounds	3
Molepo/Maja/Chuene Cluster (5 wards)	15 Grounds	3
Aganang Cluster (6 wards)	18 Grounds	3
Seshego Cluster (6 wards)	18 Grounds	3
City Cluster (4 wards)	12 Grounds	3

Clusters:	Overall Grounds per cluster:	Grounds per ward:
Overall grounds:	63	

Source: PLK Sports SBU

The above-mentioned grading plan take into consideration raining season and the fact that at times, sports field can be graded twice in a space of two or three months because of heavy rains. During Easter weekends, requests are also ad hoc and are treated on a first come basis and availability of equipment.

The lack of budget to maintain the sport and recreational facilities is a huge risk as most of the facilities are not in compliance with fire and disaster requirements. Sport and Recreation operates over 62 facilities mainly within the city bounds.

7.19.2 TENNIS COURT RENOVATIONS

The City of Polokwane has successfully completed a project aimed at promoting sport tourism in the province. Through extensive renovations, the municipality has rejuvenated **15 tennis courts** within the city CBD and an additional **2 courts in Seshego Cluster**, setting Polokwane's position as a hub for athletic excellence and leisure activities.

The need for renovating tennis courts and other sport and recreational facilities cannot be over-elaborated as these spaces serve as vital community assets, nurturing physical activity, social interaction, and a sense of belonging among residents.

Tennis South Africa's approval of the renovated courts to host national and international events is a proof to the quality and standard of the upgrades. This endorsement not only showcases Polokwane's readiness to welcome athletes and visitors from across the globe but also opens doors to economic opportunities and cultural exchange, further enriching the fabric of the community.

with the Tennis Courts renovations will play a significant role in driving Polokwane's development and growth. The transformation of these tennis courts signifies our municipality's keenness to providing world-class sporting facilities for our residents and visitors,"

By investing in projects like these and creating an enabling environment for investment through initiatives such as land donations, the city is laying the foundation for sustainable development and prosperity in Polokwane.

The renovation project included essential enhancements such as high mast lights for night games, fencing around the playing area for safety and security, practice walls, and upgraded playing surfaces with new nets. While these improvements mark a substantial step forward, there is acknowledgment

of the need to further develop ablution facilities and expand parking areas to accommodate larger crowds effectively.

Polokwane Municipality remains steadfast to improving its sport and recreational infrastructure to meet the evolving needs of its residents and visitors. Through continued investment and strategic partnerships, the municipality aims to unlock the full potential of Polokwane as a destination for sport tourism.

Tennis Courts Renovation Programme



Source: PLK Sports SBU (2024)

7.19.3 Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Seshego Stadium is currently undergoing upgrades so that the facility can bring an even better sporting experience. Upon completion, the stadium will meet PSL standards, allowing us to host some of the prestigious games at Seshego Stadium. Seshego Stadium is being upgraded to accommodate hosting of PSL matches and athletics at the local level, district and provincial level. Magesi FC the newly promoted outfit from Moletjie will be using the facility as their home ground starting in 2024 2025 season



Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Upgraded turnstiles
Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Clear view fence

7.19.4 Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium Finalisation



Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium



Completed Project -Upgrading of Seshego Stadium

Source: PLK Sports SBU (2024)

7.19.5 Mayoral Charity Golf Cup

Learners from less privileged families stand to benefit bursaries from the money raised during this event. The Funds will support indigent students in the Polokwane area to gain access to tertiary education.

The annual event also sees local golfers, businesspeople and politicians come together at the club to support the noble initiative.

This is not a new concept to the people of Polokwane. The municipality, through the executive mayor Office, host this important event since **2011** to change the lives of vulnerable or less privileged children within our communities.

The aim is to assist Students to gain access to tertiary education through the Mayoral Bursary Fund. It is through these event contributions that less privileged children will continue to have a meaningful place in the development and economy of our country.



Polokwane Golf Club



Source: PLK Sports SBU (2024)

7.19.6 Polokwane City Marathon

Polokwane City Marathon is now an Annual event playing a pivotal role in driving economic growth and positioning the city of Polokwane as a vibrant hub of tourism investment, and opportunity.

The City of Polokwane aspires to be more than just a city and that it aims to be a beacon of excellence, innovation, and progress.

As the City continue on its journey towards metropolitan status, it is imperative that we leverage the potential of sports to propel us forward. The City understand the profound importance of sports and the undeniable benefits it brings to individuals, communities, and society as a whole.

Distances for Polokwane City Marathon

- 42.2km
- 21.1km
- 10km
- 5km

Polokwane City Marathon is Hosted at the New Peter Mokaba Stadium as the **Starting Point**.



Polokwane City Marathon



Polokwane City Marathon



Polokwane City Marathon

Source: PLK Sports SBU (2024)

7.20 CULTURAL SERVICES

7.20.1 Cultural Services

The provision of cultural services is an important function of Polokwane Municipality in supporting social cohesion and promoting Local Economic Development through thriving cultural industries. The Strategic Business Unit (SBU) Cultural Services is responsible for libraries, museums, heritage and

cultural programs – Promotion of Reading (Libraries); Promotion, Management and Conservation of Heritage Resources (Museums) and Presentation of Cultural Programs (Cultural Desk).

7.21 Libraries

7.21.1 Challenges and Interventions for Libraries

The Municipality renders a flagship library service in the **CBD (City Library)** and operate branch libraries in **Mankweng, Matlala, Moletjie, Nirvana, Seshego and Westernburg**. The Municipality provide library materials on loan to users within the municipal jurisdiction, Polokwane Place of Safety’s resource centre, Siloe School for the Blind and four old age homes.

The Provincial Department of Sport, Arts and Culture (DSAC) provided a library at Molepo area which is operated jointly by Polokwane Municipality and DSAC. Part of the Molepo-Chuene-Maja cluster office has been converted for library purposes but is not yet operational.



City Library



Moletjie Library

Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

Current Services:

The Polokwane Municipal Libraries renders information service to the community and provides reading materials for a variety of purposes, e.g., education and cultural development, self-improvement and recreation. In order to promote and cultivate a culture of reading, the libraries section actively engages with the community through various “outreach” programs. The following are the core functions:

Provision of information: The Reference & Study section of our libraries are frequented by users from various parts of the province. User groups are tertiary students; secondary school learners doing research for school projects; primary school learners and their parents; persons requiring information to enhance their general knowledge and to improve their personal circumstances.

Books for informal reading: Municipal Libraries provide a variety of materials suitable for informal/leisure reading. One improves his/her reading skills by consistently engaging in reading. The libraries provide books for self-development and cultural development.

Circulation service: Circulation of books remains an integral part of every library's services. While anybody may read as much as they can free of charge inside our libraries, a borrower of books must enrol as a library member (prescribed rules & subject to payment of the relevant fees) before being allowed to borrow library material for home use.

Provision of study space: Library users need space to study, the environment of such space should be conducive for studies – calling for good lighting levels, good ventilation, etc. The libraries made study areas available to accommodate daily visitors, allowing them the use of all books in the library. This is a growing need in our libraries. There are also requests for after-hours utilisation of study areas – which we try to provide during peak times.

Internet and Wi-Fi: The libraries currently offer a limited number of Internet connections to users to aid learners, students and upcoming entrepreneurs. A connection is free for one hour per day and is sponsored by the “Conditional Grant for Public Libraries” – Free Wi-Fi is limited to the study section of the City Library but covers branch libraries entirely. The **Mzansi Libraries On-line project**, initiated by the National Library of South Africa, promised relief with extra ITC equipment to be provided to some of our libraries. The office of the Premier also provided Free Wi-Fi (LCX Public Wi-Fi), which was discontinued in January 2022.

Technological Aids: To render distribution of information effectively all service points have dependable photocopiers/reprographic resources. Our libraries offer photocopying at cost to users. All our libraries **urgently need the installation** of updated 3M Book theft Detection systems to ensure that patrons borrow books legitimately. This Theft Detector Systems project was budgeted for during the 2021/2022 FY, but due to the inability to appoint a service provider it did not materialize.

Library Outreach and awareness programs: The municipal libraries continuously present holiday programs, conduct outreach to schools to inform learners about libraries, assist in establishing reading clubs and provide library orientation for new user's /school groups. Municipal libraries support the celebration of National events like South African Library Week (SALW) and World Book Day in order to promote the use of libraries and reading.

Challenges:

Vacancies:

The large number of vacancies funded (9) and unfunded (48) have remained unfilled. Positions provided on the organogram but not budgeted for, is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. This has a negative effect on staff morale as the current staff feel exploited and overworked.

Grading of library staff:

The current grading of qualified librarians (who holds a four-year degree) on levels lower than posts that require a three-year degree or even only a diploma is a justified complaint amongst library staff. An anomaly is the requirement of a degree for librarians, yet the position of Library Assistant does not

require a tertiary qualification other than Matric. This situation must be URGENTLY rectified to normalise this formal situation. Library Assistants must possess at least a national Diploma.

All Polokwane libraries are open to the public from 08:30 to 16:30 on weekdays due to disputes about remuneration after normal working hours. Libraries are operational on weekends and not public holidays.

User fees:

The current policy regarding user fees should be revisited. Statistics on membership numbers (new as well as existing) indicates that our numbers do not meet targets due to the fact that many users prefer to visit the library to do the reading at the library instead of paying for membership which allows the user to use the reading material at home. Benchmarking amongst other municipal libraries indicates that Polokwane remain as one of few municipalities that still impose membership fees. The meagre amount of revenue collected does not justify the risk involved in handling and transporting said income.

Book stock development:

The current book collection can be regarded as stale, outdated and irrelevant. Library book stock needs constant replenishment and updating in order to provide in the informational and educational needs of the community. Every library should have an up to date, well balanced, representative and relevant book collection to give library users the best possible resources that will enable them to excel. Due to escalating publishers' prices our limited budget barely allows for maintenance. Annual funds required to provide books for envisaged new libraries must be appropriated. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be approximately R2 000 000 to enable the institution to be provide the users with the latest editions of reference works.

No library expansion program:

Interpretations of the so called "Unfunded Mandate" is hampering the expansion and rendering of library services in Polokwane. Rural areas where people need to travel great distances to reach the nearest library are affected, contributing to poor performance at schools. Areas identified in earlier IDP documents should be prioritized. Alternative forms of accommodation, (for example modular- and container libraries) should be considered for satellite libraries.

The existing City Library's position in the CBD is not ideal for library purposes. No parent will allow his child to face the traffic in order to visit the library for leisure reading. Insufficient parking makes it even difficult to bring users by car. Transport costs/availability is also a limiting factor for users that use public transport. In addition, the building cannot easily be extended to accommodate the ever-increasing number of users. Council, DSAC and the Province are currently developing a larger "**Cultural Precinct" at Bakone Malapa.**

It is important that in order to guide library development and align it with developmental goals, a library master plan be developed. Such a plan should be aligned with the IDP in order to provide services where communities prioritize the need for library services.

ITC and connectivity:

While Internet access and Wi-Fi can aid library services all remote locations experience various IT related problems, where slowness/lack of bandwidth is hampering service delivery. The allocation of funds for the appointment of unfunded positions of Education Assistants (Internet) must be prioritized. This will propel the library services towards the 2030 smart city vision.

Inter-Governmental Relations:

Limited assistance to fund libraries is being received from the Limpopo Department of Sports Arts and Culture through the “Conditional Grant” allocations. Needs related to books, equipment, ITC, personnel and maintenance is communicated to DSAC on a regular basis. The “partnership” between the department and municipalities leans to favour municipalities that can’t afford to render services.

Status of library buildings:

Our existing library buildings can be regarded as functional. There are challenges regarding ventilation, lighting levels, floor finishes, roof leakages. In almost all cases library usage exceeds expectations/projections at the planning stage. Library facilities are unable to cope with inflow of students during peak and exam times.

There is a backlog regarding maintenance tasks at all of the libraries. Our libraries and museums’ maintenance depends on the maintenance priority list of the Facilities and PMU Management teams. This leaves Cultural Services in a vulnerable position. Services such as water, sanitation, roads infrastructure and energy receive preference.

Interventions:

Staff matters.

- HR/Council to address staff related challenges v/s service delivery.

User fees

- Council to take a decision about the abolishment of library membership fees and introduce measures that will ensure the well-being of the municipal book collection in accordance with GRAP 17.

Library expansion

- Find sources for funding of new library infrastructure e.g., MIG in order to provide branch libraries. Identify existing infrastructure in clusters that may be converted for library use. Invest in a mobile library service that can visit and utilize the new one-stop-service centres.
- Provide new City Library as part of Cultural Precinct in partnership with Limpopo DSAC.
- Prioritize funds for a Library master plan.
- Council to increase the allocation for maintenance and repairs of existing library infrastructure.
- Council to approve a program to replace all 3M Tattle Tape book detection systems to avoid the theft of our book stocks.

Book stock development

- Council to commit sufficient funding to renew and expand the library’s book collection. The procedure of asset control of damaged, outdated and lost books should be revisited. The proposed annual budget for this purpose must be in excess of R2 000 000. **The current allocation (2024/2025) is R1 400 000.00.**

ITC and connectivity

- IT SBU must urgently address network problems, slow connection, insufficient licenses for Papyrus and other software.

Inter-governmental relations

- SLA between Polokwane Municipality and Limpopo DSAC is renewed annually.

7.22 Museums

The aim is development of museums and heritage through research; collection; education; protection and conservation.

7.22.1 Objectives of the Museum

- Upgrade all existing museum exhibitions to acceptable modernized standards, representative of all communities.
- Upgrade collection and its management systems
- Undertake heritage studies to eventually include the whole municipal area and to develop Cultural Resources Management plans (CRMP) for areas identified as heritage sites.
- Engage museums in extensive research to accumulate data that will be necessary for the development and up-keeping of museum norms and standards.
- Engage the museums in aggressive collection of objects that are worthy/necessary for research, exhibition, and conservation.
- Ensure proper conservation of museum collections as well as heritage sites.
- Upgrade infrastructure and amenities at museums and other heritage sites.
- Undertake museum related research and collection of specific books to enhance available information to public and academics.
- Be involved in internship programs related to museums, tourism, and heritage related services.
- Equip museum staff with necessary knowledge relevant to the sector (museums)
- Engage in outreach programs to schools to promote museums.
- Engage in job creation through EPWP program.
- Take part in the Local Geographic Naming of Polokwane Municipality
- Steer and take lead in directing the future of the vulnerable state of public statues and heritage in general, through the newly established heritage committee.

7.22.2 Museums located within the City

The are other 4 museums that are located within the City:

1. **Irish House Museum-** A cultural history museum where history and culture of people within Polokwane; Limpopo and beyond is exhibited. An exhibition budget has been put in place and currently the project is being executed to change the one currently on show. Currently the first phase of the exhibition has been completed. An exhibition budget allocation of approximately R2 million is needed to finalize the second phase of the project.
2. **Hugh Exton photographic Museum-** A museum of photography which contains a collection of the renowned photographer, Mr. Hugh Exton who captured more than twenty thousand photographs on glass negatives. Since the exhibition is old, there is a need for exhibition update

in this museum and provisional, budget has been set aside in the multiyear budget to prepare for a change in the exhibition in this museum.

3. **Polokwane Art museum-** a museum of art where painting, works on wood and sculptures are housed and maintained/conserved. Budget is needed to address challenges relating to the updating of the museum.
4. **Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum** Bakone Malapa is regarded as a living museum, the Bakone Malapa Northern Sotho Open-Air Museum is one of several museums and national monuments that bear testimony to South Africa's peoples.

It is an Open-air Museum, where tribesmen practice long-standing traditions to enlighten visitors about the traditions of Africa's people, Bakone Malapa is a reconstructed village in the style used by the northern Sotho about 250 years ago designed to demonstrate the daily life of the Bakone, a highly sophisticated subgroup of the northern Sotho tribe. The cultural village includes two homesteads or lapas that display and explain fire making, maize grinding and beer brewing as they would have been carried out years ago. There are also handcraft demonstrations that include pottery, basketry, and bead work and most of these locally made crafts are then sold from the local craft shop.

The guides are excellent story tellers and the village's architectural and cultural styles come alive through their eyes as they take one through the village's traditional way of life. the museum is more than a cultural village alone. There is a bird sanctuary, a game reserve, hiking trails and outdoor recreation areas.

7.22.3 Irish House Museum



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.22.4 Hugh Exton Photographic Museum



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.22.5 Polokwane Art Museum



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.22.6 Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum.



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.23 Heritage Sites

The museum services are also responsible for the management of heritage objects, both movable and immovable within Polokwane Municipality. The best-known heritage sites are the Irish House Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic museums due to their aesthetic and history attached to the presence today in the development of the City of Polokwane. These buildings are currently in use as museums and are Council owned. There are other buildings which could be noted such as churches and privately owned properties which still holds significant status in the City's development and in a well-preserved condition.

Eersteling monument-The first **gold mine** in the country before the discovery of Pilgrim's Rest and lately, the Witwatersrand Gold mine. The remains of these mine are still visible on site.

British Fort Marabastad monument-This fort was the site of a Boer Siege in 1880, where 140 soldiers were held for a period of 104 days. The Fort was declared a National Heritage site by the then National Monument Council (NMC), now South African Heritage Resources Authority (SAHRA) and Concentration camp-a concentration of graves for those who participated and succumbed the 1899-1902 war.

7.23.1 Eersteling Monument



Source: PLK Cultural Services SBU

7.23.2 Other heritage sites that have been identified

Other heritage sites that have been identified by means of surveys are **Moletjie heritage site** (Rock Art) and **Mothapo rock art site** and it is planned to Investigate / study them further for tourism development purposes.

Overall survey of heritage sites at Moletjie and Maja Chuene has been completed but detailed studies still need to be done. Excavation of a heritage site at Moletjie Ga-Legodi has been done. A conservation Management Plan needs to be done, which will include the Rock Art Site in this area. Heritage sites at Ga-Dikgale have been completed recently and therefore detailed studies are awaited. Specific site study of the site at Mothapo has been identified to be made. Heritage Sites have been identified in part within the newly incorporated areas of Aganang such as Percy Fyfe Nature Reserve to mention one. The museums continue to comment on structural demolition applications for developmental purposes.

Challenges:

Vacancies:

The large number of vacancies, as well as positions provided for on the organogram but not budgeted for remain vacant. This is detrimental to the upkeep of service standards. It also generates a lot of unhappiness as staff feels exploited and overworked.

Budget is always a problem for the development of museums to fully function. Museum's budget is always given low preference and they (museums) are expected to draw visitors to Polokwane as a Centre Hub and a Gateway to Africa. The absence or low budget cannot afford to draw new museum audience and therefore additional allocation of funds is a necessity for continuous visit to the museums.

The status of public Art is not earning full enjoyment as far as municipal holistic budget allocation is concerned. The museums are unable to render preservation as well conservation of public art due to either lack of budget or public consultation. The transformation of Industrial Art Park into a business site will ultimately lead to compromise into the City's public art space. Although progress is already at an advanced stage, the relocation of these works of art will need to be properly taken into consideration and must be under strict care of art experts.

7.24 Cultural Desk

This division of Cultural Services responsible for implementing cultural initiatives targeted at:

1. Developing cultural practitioners, particularly performers and writers
2. Creating sustainable cultural industries that make a significant economic contribution to Polokwane Municipality and the region
3. Fostering and strengthening social harmony among Polokwane Municipality residents across racial, age and gender divide
4. Creating partnerships of strategic importance with other government spheres, business, funding bodies and projects of mutual interest
5. Our cultural initiatives primarily serve young artists, schoolchildren, and vulnerable groups like elderly people, individuals in prison, and children in safe or caring environments.

7.24.1 Key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection

Key initiatives under the Cultural Desk Subsection include the following:

The following are key programs within the Cultural Desk Subsection: Cultural Competitions; Holiday Program, Mayor's Debate Tournament, Outreach Programs and Annual Polokwane Literary Fair

1. Cultural Competitions

- Cultural Competitions take place in all the clusters of the municipality, culminating in Municipal Finals which has a standardized financial reward for winners in each category. They include poetry, storytelling, stand-up comedy, drama, music and dance. These competitions serve as a platform to unearth and nurture raw talent.

2. Holiday Program

- It is a day-long cultural activity held on a chosen holiday in year with a different theme each year. It is used as an instrument for social cohesion where people from various groups/generations come together to share cultural experiences and knowledge.

3. Polokwane Annual Mayoral Debate Tournament

- This program is aimed at fostering the culture of conversations through reading and research. It is aimed at young learners who are equipped with debating and presentation skills throughout the tournament. This program prides itself for producing learners who go on to become Top Matric Achievers yearly.

4. Outreach Program

- This program is aimed at taking Cultural Desk services to the people through stakeholder consultations as well as min cultural activities carried out during planned visits to our stakeholders.

5. Annual Polokwane Literary Fair

Started in 2012, the Annual Polokwane Literary Fair is a critical arts initiative championed by Polokwane Municipality in collaboration with key strategic partners.

The Fair has enjoyed partnerships with such premium brands as the South African Book Development Council (the now defunct council was the *custodian of the **National Book Week and South African Book Fair***), (JIAS) Johannesburg Institute for Advanced Study (*a joint initiative of the University of Johannesburg in South Africa and Nanyang Technological University in Singapore*), Department of Correctional Services, Nal'ibali, Radio Stations, Book Clubs, Local Business and Social Clubs. These partnerships have boosted the profile of this fair nationally, courted continental curiosity and ensured important crosspollination of artistic ideas.

In the years that the fair was staged, it has managed to grow from a modest gathering of literary enthusiasts to a major calendar event within social and academic circles in South Africa – a catalyst for sustainable development through literary arts.

The following are **the Fundamental Objectives** upon which the Polokwane Literary Fair is founded:

- Creating a Sustainable Literary Industry that contributes towards the local economy by skilling literary practitioners (writers, publishers, editors, distributors) and building dependable markets (readers and audiences)
- Promote and agitate for a culture of conversations and partnerships of strategic importance

These objectives are realised through **Key Content Drivers**, delivered through the Children's Program and the Main Program:

- Workshops, Seminars and Master Classes

- Conversations (panel discussions, interviews and book launches)
- Visual Arts Exhibition
- Performances (music, poetry, storytelling and live visual art)
- Outreach to privileged stakeholders (prisons, old age facilities, orphanages and schools)
- Lifetime Awards
- Corporate Social Investment

Central to successful implementation of the fair are its **Esteemed Participants:**

- Featured Artists (Writers, Poets, Visual Artists and Musicians)
- Expert Guests (Presenters, Panelists, Facilitators and Moderators)
- Beneficiaries (CSI Stakeholders and Hosting Venues for the Outreach Program)
- Audiences/Customers

7.24.2 Cultural Desk Challenges

1. Financial Resources

- Financial Resources remain the largest hindrance to proper implementation of Cultural Programs. The flagship Polokwane Literary Fair needs an allocation of R3 million. The current allocation of R600 000 caters for smaller collaborative programmes which are implemented throughout the financial year.

2. Infrastructure

- According to cultural organizations, the province needs to do a lot to promote culture, and local artists should be given the chance to flourish by being given access to public theaters and other relevant spaces. There are no public theatres in Polokwane and Limpopo Province and this has resulted in high demand for the free use of facilities by cultural organizations, which can currently only be granted use free of charge subject to certain conditions, during the week (Monday to Thursday). Venues under Cultural Services, such as the Library Auditorium and activities rooms, are used extensively by non-cultural structures in order to generate revenue for the municipality.

3. Policy

- There is a need to formulate policy that will allow subsidization of cultural stakeholders in terms of use of municipal facilities and related resources as well as addressing matters relating to partnerships by such stakeholders with municipalities on various programs.

CHAPTER Eight - Good Governance and Public Participation Analysis

8.1 Performance Management System (PMS)

The 2001 Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations stipulates that a municipality's Performance Management System (PMS) must entail a framework that describes and represents how the municipality's cycle and processes of performance planning, monitoring, measurement, review, reporting and improvement will be conducted, organized and managed, including determining the roles of the different role- players.

In line with the said legal requirement this framework is a policy document that will set out the requirements that the Polokwane Municipality's PMS will need to fulfil, the principles that informed its development and subsequent implementation, the preferred performance model of the Municipality, the process by which the system will work, the delegation of responsibilities for different roles in the process and a plan for the implementation of the system.

8.1.1 THE LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORK FOR PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

The major PMS policy instruments is the 1998 White Paper on Local Government supported by the Batho Pele principles, which policies was given legal stature through the adoption of the Municipal Systems Act in 2000 (Act 32 of 2000). The said Act requires all municipalities to:

- Develop a performance management system.
- Set targets and monitor and review the performance of the Municipality based on indicators linked to their Integrated Development Plan (IDP).
- Publish an annual performance report on performance of the Municipality forming part of its annual report as per the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA).
- Incorporate and report on a set of general (sometimes also referred to as national) indicators prescribed by the Minister responsible for local government
- Conduct, on a continuous basis, an internal audit of all performance measures
- Have their annual performance report audited by the Auditor-General
- Involve the community in setting indicators and targets and reviewing municipal performance.
- It is also important to note that the MFMA contains various important provisions related to

municipal performance management. It requires municipalities to annually adopt a Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) with service delivery targets and performance indicators. Whilst considering and approving the annual budget the Municipality must also set measurable performance targets for each revenue source and vote. The Municipality must lastly compile an annual report, which must include a performance report compiled in terms of the Systems Act. In terms of a circular issued by National Treasury provision is also made for the compilation on an annual basis of departmental SDBIPs.

Further, legislation that governs performance management in local government includes the Municipal Systems Act (MSA), the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (MPPMR), the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), the Municipal Performance Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers directly accountable to the Municipal Manager and the Framework for Programme Information (FPPI) issued by National Treasury.

Polokwane Municipality has an approved Performance Management Policy. The reviewed regularly to accommodate the performance changes in the municipal environment. The latest review on the Performance Management Policy was done on the **29 April 2024** during the approval of the 2024/25 IDP. The reviewed PMS became effective from the 1st July 2024 and it will effective until the 30th June 2025. The Policy has been renamed Polokwane Municipality Organisational Performance and Senior Managers Individual Policy.

8.1.2 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT STANDARD OPERATING PROCEDURE MANUAL

Polokwane Municipality has developed the PMS Standard Operating Procedure in 2017. The SOP serves as a guide on how performance management should be undertaken in the municipality. Further, it ensures that performance management is done in a uniform manner across all the business operations of the municipality. The SOP has not been reviewed as there are no changes in the performance management environment that warrants a review.

8.1.3 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

In order to ensure that performance management gets implemented at Polokwane, the organisational structure made provision of a Business Units that should management performance. The organisational structure has four (4) position, and the breakdown of the positions are that of the PMS Manager, Assistant Manager and two (2) PMS Coordinators. All the four (4) positions are currently filled and there is no vacancy. One PMS Coordinator resigned and her last day of employment was the **31st July 2024**. Furthermore, PMS received an employee from Internal Audit through horizontal transfer. The employee joined the section on the **1st August 2024**.

The institutional arrangements for individual performance management, the function is located in Corporate and Shared Services under Human Resources with effect from the 1st July 2023. The Human Resources SBU oversees the implementation of the individual performance management in line with the provisions of the Local Government Municipal Staff Regulations of 2021.

8.1.4 PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT AND MEASURES AT VARIOUS LEVELS

Performance management can be applied to various levels within any organization. The legislative framework as set out above provides for performance management at various levels in a municipality including organizational (sometimes also referred to as municipal, corporate or strategic) level, departmental (also referred to as services, operational or section/team level) and lastly, individual level.

8.2 ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE

At organizational level the five-year IDP of a municipality forms the basis for performance management, whilst at operational level the annual SDBIP forms the basis. The IDP is a long-term plan and by its nature the performance measures associated with it will have a long-term focus, measuring whether a municipality is achieving its IDP objectives. A SDBIP (both for the municipality as a whole and that of a department) is more short-term in nature and the measures set in terms of the SDBIP, reviewing the progress made with implementing the current budget and achieving annual service delivery targets.

The measures set for the Municipality at organizational level is captured in an organizational scorecard structured in terms of the preferred performance management model of the Municipality.

8.3 INDIVIDUAL PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT OF SENIOR MANAGERS

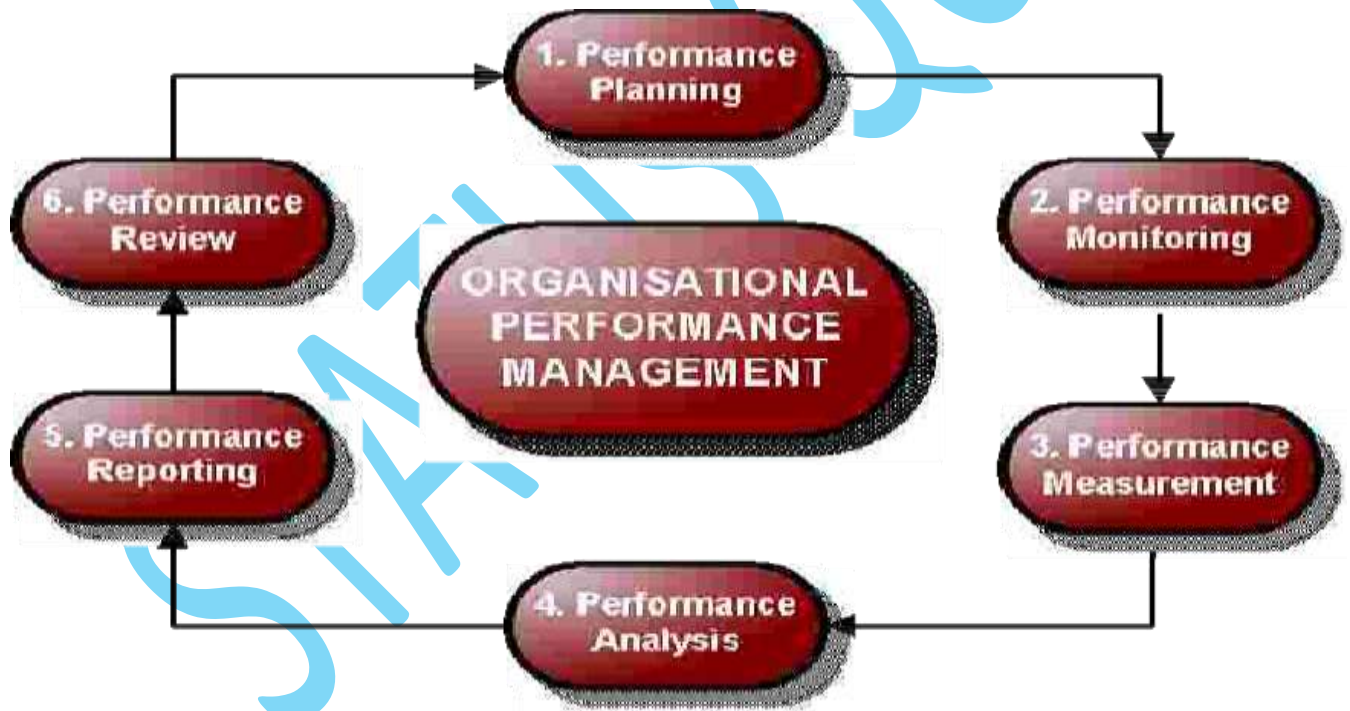
PMS SBU is responsible for individual performance management of senior managers. The individual performance managers are governed by the Performance Regulation of Municipal Managers and Managers directly reporting to the Municipal Manager. All senior managers in Polokwane Municipality signed their annual performance agreements within one month after the start of each financial year. This includes senior managers who are acting. Senior managers have signed their 2024/25 performance agreements and there are published in the municipal website.

8.3.1 PERFORMANCE ASSESSMENTS AND EVALUATION OF SENIOR MANAGERS

Individual performance assessments and evaluations for senior managers were conducted. Starting with the 2022/23 annual assessments and the 2023/24 mid-year assessments. The assessments were conducted in line with the provisions of the Regulation. A report was tabled in council on the **30 July 2024** by the Audit and Performance Audit Committee Chairperson. The annual performance evaluation for 2023/24 will be conducted in November of 2024.

8.3.2 THE PROCESS OF MANAGING PERFORMANCE

The annual process of managing performance at organizational level in the Polokwane Municipality involves the steps as set out in the diagram below:



Source: PLK PMS SBU

8.4 Alignment of the IDP, Budget and SDBIP

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) outlines how the challenges of sustainable development in a Municipality are to be met through strategic interventions and service delivery over the five-year period. The IDP is developed by the Municipality in conjunction with the community and a credible IDP must be supported by a realistic budget. The IDP is supported by a Municipal Scorecard which sets out the key deliverables over the election period in a log-frame format.

8.5 Performance Reporting

The PMS Policy of Polokwane Municipality makes provision for the reporting timeframes. The timeframes are guided by the IDP/Budget and PMS Process Plan that gets approved by Council. Furthermore, the reporting timeframes is in line with the provisions of the MFMA and the MSA. Polokwane Municipality compiles performance management reports quarterly, which is 30 days after the end of each quarter. Furthermore, performance assessment report is compiled during the first half of each financial year, that is in January every year. At the end of the financial year, an annual performance report is compiled and submitted to the Auditor General for auditing with the financial statements. Polokwane Municipality is being consistent in terms of ensuring that the performance management system is functional, and all legislative reports are compiled and submitted to the relevant stakeholders.

8.5.1 Automated Performance Reporting System

Polokwane Municipality automated the performance reporting system since 2016. The municipality has embraced the convenience of utilising the web-based reporting system, which makes it easy and convenient to do performance management. The effectiveness of the automated performance reporting system relies on the access to internet and the technological competency of the municipal staff. Reporting in the automated system is done by managers as the inputters and directors as the reviewers of the performance information. The automated system also provides internal audit unit with rights to audit inside the system. The Executive Management of Polokwane Municipality on the 4th August 2022 resolved that institutional performance reporting should be done on monthly basis as a build-up to quarterly reporting. This will assist management to proactively address issues of poor and under-performance before the quarterly reporting is done.

8.6 Audit of Performance Management Information

The Performance Management System Policy of the municipality makes provision for the auditing of the performance information. This is consistent with the provisions of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act of 2000 as amended. Auditing of performance information is done by internal audit and external auditors from Auditor General South Africa. Internal Audit, audits the quarterly reports that are processed to council on quarterly basis. Whilst AGSA audits the annual performance report that is

submitted with the annual financial statements every year on the 31st August. Furthermore, performance information is processed through to Audit Committee.

The Office of the Auditor General audits performance information on an annual basis as per the provisions of section 46 of the Local Government Municipal Systems and further as a requirement of the Public Audit Act. The outcome of the 2022/23 audit of performance report improved for the developmental area, Basic Service Delivery. In the 2021/22 the outcome was qualified and an improvement in the 2022/23 to unqualified. The developmental area, Local Economic Development was not sampled for auditing in the 2021/22 financial year. However, it was audited in the 2022/23 financial year and the outcome of the audit is Qualified Opinion. The basis for qualification was usefulness, completeness and reliability. The audit of 2023/24 performance information will commence in **September 2024** and will be concluded in **November 2024**. AGSA will express an opinion on the outcome of the audit.

8.7 PMS Challenges

- ❖ Inadequate review of performance indicators to ensure consistency.
- ❖ Ineffective internal controls on performance management and adequate implementation of Internal Audit findings.
- ❖ Incomplete listing of reported achievements for key service delivery areas.
- ❖ Inadequate reviews of portfolio of evidence to ensure completeness of reported performance.

8.8. MUNICIPAL CLUSTER OFFICES

8.8.1 Number of Municipal Clusters and their Wards

Polokwane Municipality Consists of 7 Clusters that should be provided with services. The number of wards is now 45 wards. The Name of the Clusters are:

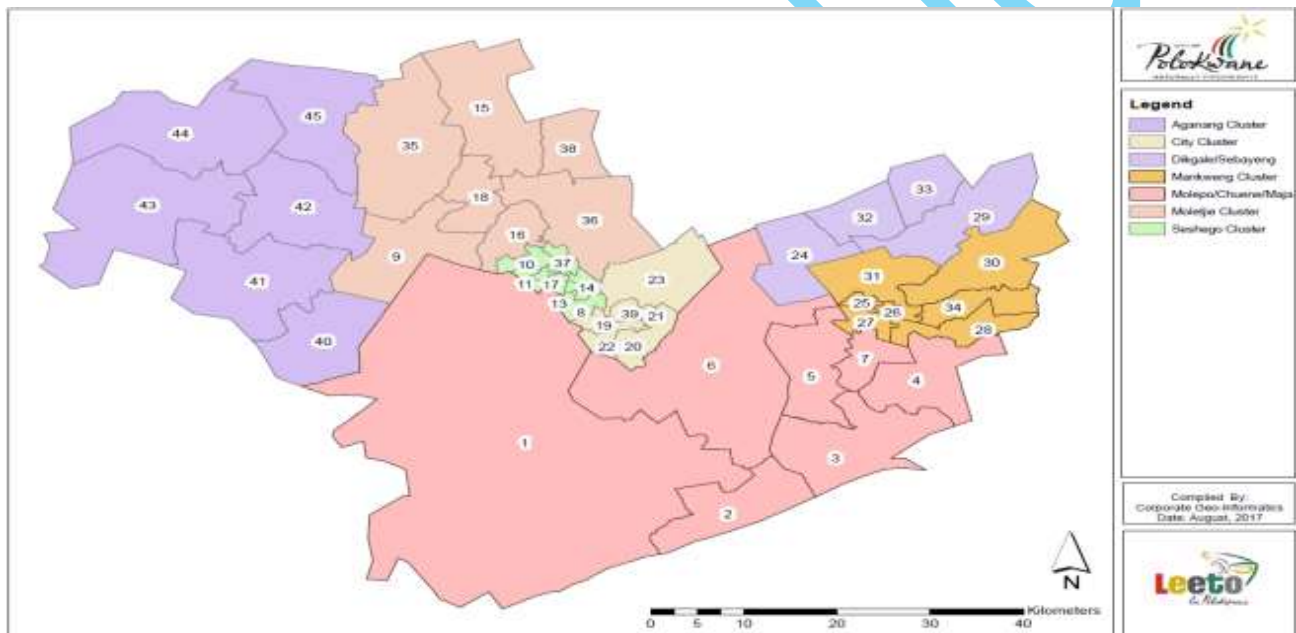
	Clusters Name	Wards No.
1	Mankweng Cluster	06,07,25,26,27,28, 34
2	Moletjie Cluster	09,10,15,16,18,35, 36,38
3	Molepo / Chuene / Maja Cluster	1,2,3,4,5
4	Sebayeng / Dikgale Cluster	24,29,32,33,30,31

	Clusters Name	Wards No.
5	Aganang Cluster	40,41,42,43,44,45
6	City Cluster	08;19,20,21,22,23,39
7	Seshego Cluster	11,12,13, 14,17,37

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

8.8.2 Polokwane Cluster Map Reflecting Location of 45 Wards

Map: Polokwane Cluster Map



Source: Polokwane G.I.S SBU: 2021

8.9 Municipal Cluster Offices

Cluster offices were established with the sole purpose of advancing Batho Pele Principles, entrench a responsive citizen-centric government and governance framework and a non-partisan service delivery amongst others. Council deemed it necessary to create a platform that would address systematic challenges faced largely by communities at the peripheral jurisdiction of the Municipality where community members had to travel long distances to access services while on the other hand the turnaround time would invariably be long due to the proximity of the Municipal area.

Cluster model invariably provides a strategic platform to bring to effect, efficient, reliable and accessible service delivery, thus adhering to the basic principles as enshrined in section 152 of the constitution.

Secondly, the model was a consciously calculated intervention to close the growing social distance between communities and civil services. The distance has undoubtedly contributed immensely on the service delivery protests which have inherently reduced over the years since the inception the Cluster SBU in this municipality. The organisational structure has forty-six (46) position, and the breakdown of the positions are that of the Manager, six (6) Assistant Managers, six (6) Admin Assistants, eighteen (18) Cleaners and fifteen (15) general workers/ groundsmen. Only twenty-seven (27) positions are currently filled. All Clusters have Municipal Offices that assist in Monitoring of Service Delivery. The Municipal Offices are as Follows:

8.9.1 City Cluster Office - Municipal Head Office

The **Civic Centre** will remain the **Municipal Head Office** and will also accommodate staff that is deployed to work in the City Cluster. It has been recommended that rates halls be incorporated into the Westernburg and Nirvana Community Centres, municipal offices in Ladanna and the Thorn-hill shopping Centre to provide residents around these areas with access to officials with regards to queries on their accounts and other municipal services. Relocation of staff that is deployed to other clusters (to their respective cluster offices or depots) will provide an opportunity for essential refurbishment to be done to the Civic Centre and also alleviate the problem of office accommodation at the Main Building.

8.9.2 Molepo-Chuene-Maja Cluster Office

The existing municipal cluster office at Mothiba Ngwanamago in the Maja area, is suitably located in terms of centrality, population concentrations and numbers as well as access roads. Access will be further improved once the existing tarring of the road from Polokwane via Silicon Smelters is completed. The office however needs to be extended to meet the deployment requirements of staff as well as the municipal services to be provided in the cluster area.

It is recommended that a secure site be established from where mobile services can be made available to residents in the Molepo area. The site has already been identified at Rampheri village in the Molepo area. This will allow mobile service providers such as Departments of Health, SASSA, SAPS, Home Affairs to move in and utilize the facility to render services to the local community. Office

accommodation requirements are summarized in the table at the end of this section, with concept-level proposals from an architect provided in the following section.

8.9.3 Mankweng Cluster Office

There are currently three satellite offices situated at Unit A, B and C in Mankweng as well as a Community Library and a Fire Station. An approval has been granted for the development of a Thusong Service Centre at Ga-Makanye Village in Ward 27 to cater for the needs of the local community within the Cluster. The Thusong Service Centre programme is a government initiative to extend government services and information to communities in an integrated manner. This could form the nucleus of an office precinct for Mankweng, with an Education Circuit office and other sector departments such as Home Affairs, Social Development, Health and parastatals to follow.

Secure site is recommended to be established for mobile services at the primary road intersections between the settlements of Thune, Mongwaneng & ga-Mamphaka. This will improve access to municipal and other government services for residents on the periphery of the Mankweng cluster who have to travel long distances to access government services. Service providers such as Departments of Health, SASSA, SAPS, Home Affairs can on scheduled days utilize the facility to render services to the local community.

There is also a need to consider establishing a Municipal Depot to accommodate all heavy duty and other vehicles particularly from the Engineering and Community Services Directorates that are rendering services to the local community. It is also likely that the proposed Transfer Station for the Integrated Rapid Public Transport Corridor between the City and Mankweng will eventually be constructed in this vicinity. The new office must have a discernible image that will form part of the Polokwane Smart City brand.

8.9.4 Sebayeng-Dikgale Cluster Office

The existing Municipal Cluster Office in Sebayeng town is suitably located, but the facility needs to be upgraded and expanded according to the cluster staff deployment requirements. A secure site is also recommended at Segopje village in the Mamabolo area to provide mobile services to benefit the local community. Several sector departments such as Health, SASSA, Home Affairs and parastatals have been engaged in this regard and have shown keen interest. The project implementation will be done in phases based on funds availability while operations will commence with the completion of the first phase. ICT connectivity must also be significantly improved. A depot is required for Engineering and

Community Services to best render services to the local community. There is also a need for a Community Library in the cluster area.

8.9.5 Seshego Cluster Office

Seshego is currently having three municipal offices situated at Zone 1, 3 and 8 and are suitably located to serve as rates halls and providing other municipal services for the local communities and should therefore be retained as such for local neighbourhoods.

A new Cluster Office, branded according to the Polokwane Smart City Vision, is proposed to be developed in close proximity to the Seshego Circle Mall. This is the most accessible point in the Cluster, and it is located close to the Seshego Hospital. It is also densely populated. The vacant land is available for this project. The Transfer Station for the proposed Rapid Public Transport Corridor between the City and Seshego is earmarked for the same vicinity. The proposed new cluster office should provide motor vehicle licensing services and form part of the Seshego Precinct Development Plan. However, the land swop process will determine how swiftly this remarkable initiative will commence, taking advantage of the Neighbourhood Development Grant.

In a rapidly changing world, space is increasingly becoming a scarce resource as productivity and work efficiencies are crucial to the success of any institution. Space planning is therefore vital in addressing this challenge. Although the Municipality is currently implementing the open floor plan, decentralization of more services to the outlying cluster areas could go a long way in alleviating the problem of office space at the main building.

8.9.6 Aganang Cluster Office

Aganang area that has been incorporated into Polokwane Municipality is now serving as the seventh Cluster area under Polokwane Municipality. The municipal complex at Ceres (LS 599) has been converted into a Cluster Office with fifty-three (53) Offices, three (3) Boardrooms, a Community Hall and a Council Chamber. The facility has a separate Traffic Testing Station with six (6) Offices, a Boardroom and a Learners Testing Classroom.

In order to facilitate effective and efficient communication between Civic Centre and the Cluster office, there is a need to upgrade and maintain the ICT network infrastructure. It is also proposed that more staff be deployed to the Cluster in order to enhance the delivery of services. There is a need to

establish a community library at the Cluster Office as well as expansion of the provision of municipal services to satellite offices at Matlala One-Stop Centre and Mophonong Satellite Office in Mashashane.

8.9.7 Moletjie Cluster Office

The existing municipal office at Koloti is suitably located to serve as a cluster office due to its centrality with regard to the population settlement pattern and the primary transport corridors. However, this facility will require infrastructure upgrading and expansion according to staff deployment needs. Access from the main road will also have to be improved. The Cluster is also equipped with a functional **Thusong Service Centre** at Moletjie Moshate some few meters from the municipal cluster office with nine (09) sector department rendering services. Polokwane Municipality has leased a building from Moletji Traditional Authority for Thusong Services Centre. The Centre has **won awards in 2019 and 2024** respectively as best performing Thusong Service Centre among others in South Africa.

8.9.8 Award for best performing Thusong Service Centre (Moletjie Moshate Thusong Service Centre)



Award for best performing Thusong Service Centre - Thusong Service Centre at Moletjie Moshate

8.10 Cluster Offices Challenges

- **ICT:** Poor Network Connectivity at Cluster Offices – Sebayeng/Dikgale, Molepo/Chuene/Maja, and Aganang
- **Office accommodation:** Inadequate office space at the existing cluster offices to accommodate the anticipated number of employees to be deployed at these offices particularly Moletjie, Sebayeng/Dikgale, Molepo/Chuene/Maja, Seshego and Mankweng.
- **Hostel Accommodation (Barracks):** Inadequate hostel accommodation for employees attached to the Fire Services and Water and Sanitation at Unit A in Mankweng cluster.
- **Municipal Depots:** Lack of municipal depots in the different cluster areas. The Municipality is currently leasing a Facility in Seshego (LIMDEV Building) with unsatisfactory conditions. The facility is used by Roads and Storm Water, Environmental Management and Waste Management Strategic Business Units. In Mankweng cluster, the municipality is using the prefabricated facilities from the Department of Water Affairs to accommodate employees of Roads and Storm Water and Water and Sanitation strategic business units.
- **Under-utilised office Under-utilised office** - The Municipal complex at Ceres has a total of 53 Offices, 3 Boardrooms and a Community Hall. Out of the 53 Offices, 37 are vacant and remain under-utilised.
- **Ablution facility:** lack of ablution facilities to cater for the immediate needs for the offsite staff. Employees have to travel back to the satellite office on a regular basis thus hampering productivity due to time spend travelling to and from the satellite offices.
- **Delayed land swop process-** The delayed appointment of a Conveyancer that is expected to register the properties at Deeds Registry Office, impacts on the progress for appointment of consultants and subsequent utilisation of Neighbourhood Development Grant for new Seshego Cluster office as part of the Precinct plan.
- **Insufficient project budget allocation-** projects take time to be completed due to insufficient budget allocation which impacts the entire service access drive for rural communities. Equally, such projects are prone to vandalism and construction price escalations as they are implemented fragmentally over an extended period of time.

8.10.1. Proposed intervention on Identified Challenges

- **ICT:** There is need to upgrade the ICT infrastructure at Cluster offices in order to facilitate efficient operational communication between the Civic Centre and the cluster offices and also to accelerate service delivery to communities.
- **Office accommodation-** it is recommended that a new Cluster Office be developed on a vacant land across the Circle Mall in order to form part of the Seshego Precinct Development Plan. The location is central in terms of the residents of the cluster area and will offer convenient access for all modes of transport. The existing satellite offices in Zones 1, 3 and 8 will continue operating as Rates Halls for local neighbourhood.
- It is further recommended that a Thusong Service Centre be developed in Mankweng Cluster to provide not only municipal services but also those provided by other government departments, non-governmental organisations and parastatals.
- There is need also to upgrade or expand the existing office facilities at Moletjie, Sebayeng/Dikgale and Molepo/Chuene/Maja in line with the numbers of employees and services rendered at the respective offices.
- Hostel accommodation- there is need to construct a new hostel facility for employees doing night and stand-by shifts in Fire Services, Water and Sanitation, Energy and other Emergency related services in Mankweng cluster.
- **Municipal depots-** Construction of depots in Seshego, Mankweng and Moletjie clusters as a first priority and with consideration also of the other cluster areas such as Aganang, Sebayeng/Dikgale and Molepo/ Chuene/Maja.
- **Decentralization of more municipal services** - More municipal services are to be decentralized to cluster areas in particular Aganang which may also be converted into a Thusong Service Centre. The Department of Social Development and SASSA are already rendering services around the same area.
- Construction of ablution facilities on municipal properties including parks to cater the need of the offsite staff.
- **Finalisation of land swop process-** appointment of a Conveyancer to facilitate the properties at Deeds Registry Office, will impacts positively on the planning process for new Seshego Cluster office as part of the Precinct plan.
- **Sufficient project budget allocation-** all targeted project can be implemented and operationalised within two financial years to reduce vandalism, allocate impactful service

delivery systems for communities on the outskirts of the City and fast track decentralisation of services.

8.10.2 CORE RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CLUSTERS-SBU

The Cluster-SBU has a core responsibility of executing the Municipal Cluster model to decentralise the delivery of services. Through this model, the municipality has been able to decentralize services to the far-flung rural areas. The idea behind the Cluster model is to bring government services closer to the people and bringing services closer to the communities. Service decentralization in the clusters, has contributed towards promoting active community participation in the decision-making processes of Polokwane Municipality.

Section 153 of the Constitution stipulates that each municipality should structure and manage its administration, budgeting and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community and to promote social and economic development of the community.

8.10.3 CLUSTER OFFICES AND THEIR LOCATIONS

NO	CLUSTER	LOCATION	BUILDING
1	Aganang Cluster	Main Offices, Moletjie (Ceres)	Municipal Building
		1 Stop Centre, Setumong	Municipal Building
		Mohlonong Satellite Office, Mashashane	Municipal Building
2	Mankweng Cluster	Mankweng Unit C	Municipal Building
		Mankweng Unit B	Municipal Building
		Mankweng Unit A	Municipal Building
3	Moletjie Cluster	Moletjie Moshate	Municipal Building
	Moletjie Thusong Service Centre	Moletjie Moshate	Municipal Building
4	Molepo/Chuene/Maja	Mothiba Ngwanamago	Municipal Building
5	Sebayeng/Dikgale Cluster	Sebayeng Township	Municipal Building
6	Seshego Cluster	Zone 3, Seshego	Municipal Building

NO	CLUSTER	LOCATION	BUILDING
		Zone 8, Seshego	Municipal Building
		Zone 1, Seshego	Municipal Building

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

8.10.4 CURRENT STAFF COMPONENT ACROSS CLUSTERS

Number of positions	Filled	Vacant	Budgeted	Non-budgeted
45	27	18	3	15

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

8.10.5 SERVICES RENDERED IN THE VARIOUS CLUSTER OFFICES

NO	CLUSTER	SBU
1	Aganang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Traffic & Licensing ➤ Roads & Stormwater ➤ Public Participation ➤ Waste Management ➤ Cultural Services (Libraries) ➤ City Planning & Property Management ➤ Fire and Rescue ➤ Water and Sanitation (Maintenance) ➤ Environment ➤ ED & T (Rotational)
2	Mankweng	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Traffic & Licensing ➤ Waste Management ➤ Environment Management ➤ Fire & Disaster Services ➤ Water & Sanitation ➤ Roads & Storm Water ➤ Cultural Services (Libraries) ➤ Property Management ➤ Public Participation ➤ Records Management ➤ Finance (revenue collection & Customer Care)

NO	CLUSTER	SBU
		➤ Security & By-Law Enforcement
3	Moletjie	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Public Participation ➤ Water & Sanitation ➤ Roads & Storm Water ➤ Traffic ➤ Cultural Services (Libraries) ➤ Waste Management
4	Molepo/Chuene/Maja	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Public Participation ➤ Water & Sanitation ➤ Roads & Storm Water ➤ Traffic ➤ Waste Management ➤ Cultural Services (Libraries) ➤ Energy Services
5	Sebayeng/Dikgale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Traffic Management ➤ City Planning & Property Management ➤ Public Participation ➤ Waste Management ➤ Roads & Storm Water
6	Seshego	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Clusters ➤ Traffic Management ➤ City and Regional Planning ➤ Public Participation ➤ Waste Management ➤ Cultural Services (Libraries) ➤ Roads & Storm Water ➤ Environment (Cemeteries & Parks) ➤ Revenue Services ➤ Water & Sanitation

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

8.10.6 CLUSTERS CAPITAL PROJECTS

PROJECT NUMBER	PROJECT NAME/DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION
CWP_03	Construction of Segopje Mobile Service Centre	Segopje

Source: PLK Clusters SBU

8.11 INTERNAL AUDIT

8.11.1 Definition and mandate of Internal Audit

The International Professional Practices Framework defines Internal auditing as an independent, objective, assurance and consulting activity designed to add value and improve an organization's operations. It helps an organization accomplish its objectives by bringing a systematic, disciplined approach to evaluate and improve the effectiveness of risk management, control, and governance processes.

According to chapter 14, section 165 of the MFMA, each municipality and each municipal entity must have an internal audit unit. The MFMA allows the IAA to be outsourced to assist the municipality or the municipal entity to develop its internal capacity. However, the Council or the board of directors should ensure that it is cost-effective to outsource.

The Internal Audit Function of Polokwane Municipality has been established in terms of Section 165 of the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003). The primary objective of Internal Audit division is to assist the Municipal Manager and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee in the effective discharge of their responsibilities; Internal Audit provide them with independent analysis, appraisals, recommendations, counsel and information concerning the activities reviewed, with a view to improving accountability and service delivery.

Section 62(1) (c) (ii) of the MFMA requires internal audit to operate in accordance with prescribed norms and standards. This would imply that Internal Audit Activity should apply the Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Audit (SPPIA) in the execution of its functions.

The purpose of the Standards is to:

- Delineate basic principles that represent the practice of internal auditing.
- Provide a framework for performing and promoting a broad range of value-added internal auditing.
- Establish the basis for the evaluation of internal audit performance.
- Foster improved organisational process and operations.

Standards for the Professional Practice of Internal Audit (SPPIA) consists of Attributes, Performance and Implementation standards:

Attributes standard

Attributes standards address the attributes (characteristics) of organisations and individuals performing internal audit services. These includes that the purpose, authority and responsibilities of the Internal Audit Activity should be defined in the audit charter, Internal Auditors should apply proficiency and due professional care in discharging internal audit work and the Internal Audit activity should go through the process of quality assurance and devise a development program.

Standard 1110 requires that the “Chief Audit Executive should report to a level within the organization that allows the Internal Audit Activity to fulfil its responsibilities. The Chief Audit Executive must confirm to the ‘board’, at least annually, the organizational independence of the Internal Audit Activity”.

The standards further require that Internal Audit should be free from conditions that threaten the ability of the Internal Audit Activity to carry out internal audit responsibilities in an unbiased manner. Standard 1010 require that “The Chief Audit Executive should discuss the Definition of Internal Auditing, the Code of Ethics, and the Standards with senior management and the board. “Standard 1010 require that “The Internal Audit Activity must be independent, and internal auditors must be objective in performing their work”.

Performance standards:

Performance Standards provide guidance on the nature of audit work and planning, conducting, managing, communicating, and reporting throughout the audit activity, the standards also address aspects such as resource and risk management, policies and procedures, control, and governance.

Implementation standard:

Implementation Standards are provided to expand upon the Attribute and Performance standards, by providing the requirements applicable to **assurance** or **consulting** activities.

Assurance services involve the internal auditor’s objective assessment of evidence to provide an independent opinion or conclusions regarding an entity, operation, function, process, system, or other subject matter. The nature and scope of the assurance engagement are determined by the internal auditor.

Consulting services are advisory in nature and are generally performed at the specific request of an engagement client. The nature and scope of the consulting engagement are subject to agreement with the engagement client.

Internal Audit operate in terms of approved Charter which set out the nature, role, responsibility, status and authority of internal auditing within Polokwane Municipality and to outline the scope and responsibilities of the Internal Audit activity.

8.11.2 Internal Audit Strategic Coverage Plan

The rolling three-year Internal Audit Plan is developed based on the strategic organisational risk register and the annual Internal Audit Plan is derived or based on the Rolling Three-Year Strategic Internal Audit Plan.

The critical success factors for an effective internal audit plan are that it:

- Is aligned with the strategic objectives of the organisation.
- Covers the strategic risk areas facing the organisation, not just the financial risks and controls.
- Is risk based – addresses the key risk areas/concerns of management.
- Is prepared in consultation with management and the Audit and Performance Audit Committee.
- Matches assurance needs with available resources.
- The Internal Audit Plans includes risk based, performance information reviews compliance, ICT, financial, follow up and adhoc (requests from management) reviews. The Internal Audit Plans also highlights the objectives, scope, risks to achieving objectives and the resource allocation.

8.11.3 Audit Committee and Performance Audit Committee

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee (APAC) is a committee of Council primarily established to provide independent specialist advice on financial performance and efficiency, compliance with legislation, and performance management. A combined committee was appointed to represent both Performance Audit and Audit Committees in compliance to section 166 of MFMA no 56 of 2003 and section 14(2) of Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations. The Audit and Performance Audit Committee must liaise with Internal Audit in terms of Section 166(3) (a).

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee must ensure that the strategic internal audit plan is based on key areas of risk, including having regard to the institution's risk management strategy. The Committee reviews the work of Internal Audit through the internal audit reports.

The Audit and Performance Audit Committee currently has five members, comprised of the Chairperson and four members.

APAC operate in terms of approved Charter which outline the role, responsibilities, composition and operating guidelines of the committee of Polokwane Municipality and report to Council quarterly.

8.11.4 Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)

The Municipality also established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called “**Operation Clean Audit**” and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion. OPCA committee has been established to address **Audit findings**.

The Task Team is an operational forum which formulates action plans and monitor progress in implementing action plans towards achieving a clean audit.

The Task Team report to Council via the Audit and Performance Audit Committee which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the Audit and Performance Audit Committee Charter

Prevailing challenges noticeable include recurring audit findings indicated in the Internal Audit reports; information not presented to internal audit on time or not submitted at all, establishing greater synergy between Council committees and Audit and Performance Audit Committee; achieving greater compliance with key areas of legislation, the MSA, other regulations and policies.

8.11.5 Resources availability for Internal Audit

The current Internal Audit function comprises of the Chief Audit Executive, Four Assistant Managers: Internal Audit, seven (7) Internal Auditors, as well as a panel of four Co-Sourced Internal Audit Service Providers.

8.11.6 Report of the Chief Audit Executive on AGSA Audit Opinions

Report of the Chief Audit Executive on **AGSA Audit Opinions Matters** for the term of the office of Council.

Auditor General (SA) Audit Opinion

2015/2016 Financial Year: Unqualified audit opinion with matters of emphasis

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Material impairment
- Material under spending
- Unauthorized expenditure
- Irregular expenditure

2016/2017 Financial Year: Qualified audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Property, Plant and Equipment
- Revenue from exchange transactions
- Expenditure
- Revaluation Surplus
- Cash flow statement

2017/2018 Financial Year: Qualified audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Revenue from exchange transactions
- Commitments

2018/2019 Financial Year: Qualified audit opinion

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

- Property, Plant and Equipment
- Revenue and receivable from exchange transactions
- Cash and cash equivalents

2019/2020 Financial Year: Qualified

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows:

1. Property plant and equipment
2. Investment property
3. Revenue and receivables from exchange transactions

2020/2021 Financial Year: Qualified

The basis for the qualified audit opinion were as follows.

1. Property plant and equipment
2. Revenue from exchange transactions

2021/2022 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:

- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Significant uncertainties
- Material water losses

2022/2023 Financial Year: Unqualified

The matters of emphasis were as follows:




- Restatement of corresponding figures
- Significant uncertainties
- Material water losses
- Material impairments

The following table reflects the movement of the municipality audit opinions for the term of office of council:

Financial Year	Audit opinion	Movement of audit opinion
2018/2019	Qualified	➔
2019/2020	Qualified	➔

Financial Year	Audit opinion	Movement of audit opinion
2020/2021	Qualified	→
2021/2022	Unqualified	↑
2022/2023	Unqualified	→

Source: PLK Auditor General Opinion Report

-  Improved audit opinion
-  Maintained same audit opinion
-  Regressed

8.11.7 DISCIPLINARY BOARD

The Municipality has also established a disciplinary board in line with the provisions of the Municipal Regulations on Financial Misconduct, Procedures and Criminal Procedures, Government Gazette No. 37682 of May 2014 on Local Government and Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) 2003. The disciplinary board is an independent advisory body that assists the Council with the investigation of allegations of financial misconduct, and also provides recommendations to Council on further steps to be taken regarding disciplinary proceedings, or any other relevant steps to be taken.

The disciplinary board is composed of the following members:

- a) One member of the Audit Committee
- b) Manager: Legal Services
- c) Manager: Internal Audit (*Chief Audit Executive*)
- d) Manager: Risk Management
- e) Assistant Manager: Labour Relations (*Secretariat of the Board*)
- f) Representative of Provincial Treasury (*seconded by the Department*)

The Disciplinary Board presents its reports to Council through its chairperson who is the member of the Audit Committee.

8.12 PUBLIC PARTICIPATION AND COUNCIL SUPPORT

8.12.1 Key Municipal Stakeholders

The relationship between the Municipality and its stakeholders is very important. The involvement of all stakeholders in the matters of the Municipality is necessary because the Municipality is accountable to them for decisions taken. Stakeholders are not only local people. They include governments and their agencies, as well as people, organizations, institutions and markets. Stakeholders include people

and institutions that impact directly but also indirectly on the organization, and they can include people who may not even be aware that they have a stake in the management of the Municipality.

The primary aim of stakeholder identification is to name all those who could and should have a stake in a planning and management process.

The following is a list of key stakeholders for Polokwane Municipality

- Traditional Authorities
- Community
- Business Sector
- Traditional Healers
- Government Departments
- Education Sector
- Non-Governmental Organisations
- Transport Sector
- Labour Unions
- Financial institutions
- Farmers
- Civic organisation
- Religious groups

8.12.2 Relationship with Traditional Leaders

The Municipality has a good working relationship with Traditional Leaders. They are engaged towards and after any IDP/Budget Review consultations. The Municipality meets with Magoshi to discuss the consultation programme with them first before public participation in their jurisdictions.

During the development of the current Organizational Structure (Organogram), Traditional Leaders were officially placed under the Office of the Speaker and all engagement is facilitated from the Speakers' Office through Public Participation Unit. The Municipality therefore has a structural relationship with its Traditional Leaders. Meetings with Traditional Leaders are scheduled on a quarterly basis, in addition to the IDP/Budget Review consultation meetings. It is a standard practice that during the Community Outreach programmes (IMBIZO's), the Municipality pays courtesy visit to the Traditional authorities before engaging with the local community.

The Municipality has established an Annual Charity Fund that benefits the most Rural Poor Organizations (NGO's & CBO's). Traditional leaders are responsible for identifying the qualifying NGOs & CBOs to benefit from this initiative.

The Office of the Speaker quarterly convenes special meetings with all Traditional Authorities to focus on Service Delivery matters.

Generally, the Polokwane Municipality has a smooth relationship with all its Traditional leaders, and they participate actively in the Municipality's programmes.

8.12.3 The building blocks of Good Governance

The building blocks of good governance are, amongst others, participation, accountability, predictability, transparency, and responsiveness. Section 152 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 requires the Municipality to provide democratic and accountable government for local communities and to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government.

Developmental local government requires municipalities to promote good governance and community participation. In promoting and ensuring a culture of good governance in providing services municipalities are required to establish components and mechanisms that promote good governance and community participation.

8.12.4 Ward Committee and Community Development Workers (CDW's)

The Municipality has established Ward Committees for each of its 45 Wards in accordance with Part 4 of the Local Government Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998. The Municipality has also passed a By-law on Ward Committees to regulate matters such as the procedure to elect the Ward Committee members; the circumstances under which those members must vacate office; and the frequency of meetings of ward committees.

Ward Committees are regulated and scheduled to sit on a monthly basis to discuss and report on their ward activities and challenges. Council receives consolidated reports on the work and issues raised by the Ward Committees on a quarterly basis from the office of the Speaker. Council is ceased with strengthening the functionality of ward Committees. To this end, it recently commissioned the Ward Committees Satisfaction Survey, aimed at establishing community satisfaction and or improve functionality of Ward Committees, and is strengthening feedback mechanisms on issues raised by Ward Committees.

Table: Distribution of ward committees and Community Development Workers

Number of Wards	Number of CDW's	Number of ward committees	Number of wards committees not functional	Challenges
45	29	450	0	Limited capacity building programmes due to financial constraints. Limited number of CDW's in the municipal area. CDW's report to CoGHSTA and are not always able to honour our invitation for them to attend our Ward Committee meetings.

8.13 SECRETARIAT

8.13.1 Main objectives of Secretariat unit

- Run an effective Councillors' support programme.
- Perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral Committee and other committees established by Council.
- Ensure internal political interface with the Mayor's Office, Speakers Office and the Office of the Whip of Council.
- Run an effective decision making support programme for portfolio committees.

8.13.2 Challenges /Constraints at Secretariat and Records

- Late submission of reports for packaging for portfolio, Mayoral Committee and Council.
- Inadequate office and record filling space.

Interventions

- Timelines for receiving reports and distributions by Secretariat to councillors in compliance with the Council Rules of Order are being issued upfront to ensure compliance.
- Records are to be converted and filed electronically, with the paper records being filed timeously at the Records section.

8.14 COUNCIL COMMITTEES

Council is the body that makes policy and oversees its implementation. Its key role in its current structure is to focus on legislative, participatory and oversight roles. The Executive Mayor is the political head championing the strategy of the Municipality. Executive Mayor is assisted by the Mayoral Committee made up of 10 councillors, and six are full time councillors. The Mayoral Committee Members are accountable to Portfolio Committees, which are empowered to play oversight on, and ensure accountability by the executive functionaries.

Polokwane Municipality holds its Council meetings at least on quarterly basis. Mayoral Committee and Portfolio Committee meetings are held once a month. The Council is consisting of 90 Councillors (45 Ward and 45 PR Councillors).

8.14.1 Political Parties Represented in Council:

There are 8 Political Parties that are represented in Council of Polokwane Municipality:

	Name of Political Party	No of Councillors
1	ANC	57
2	EFF	20
3	DA	07
4	VF+ (FF+)	02
5	COPE	01
6	ABC	01
7	MSM	01
8	ACDP	01

8.14.2 City of Polokwane Council Meeting



City of Polokwane Council Meeting

8.14.3 Portfolio Committees

Section 79 of the Municipal Structures Act authorises the municipal Council to establish one or more committees necessary for the effective and efficient performance of any of its functions or the exercise

of any of its powers. To this end, Council resolved on the 18th of October 2023 Council Resolution No. CR51/10/23) to re-establish or formalise its erstwhile from being Committees to assist the Executive Mayor in terms of section 80 to being Committees of the Council in terms of section 79 of the Municipal Structures Act. The Committees are **Admin & Governance; Community Safety; Energy; Finance; Housing; Local Economic Development, Land Use & Spatial Planning; Roads, Transport & Storm water; Waster & Environment; Sport, Arts, Culture and Special Programmes; and Water & Sanitation**. The Committees are chaired by non-executive councillors, i.e. councillors not serving in the Mayoral Committee.

These portfolio Committees were delegated public representation and participation, legislative, and oversight powers in respect of, and on the work of their relevant Administrative departments and Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs).

All the Portfolio Committees are functional and have developed their own Annual Work Plans for 2024/2025 Financial Year to enable them to focus on specific targets for which they were established and against which Council can adjudge their functionality.

8.14.4 Municipal Public Account Committee (MPAC)

Section 79A of the Municipal Structures Act 117 of 1998, as amended, provides for the establishment of a Municipal Public Accounts Committee (MPAC) to, amongst others:

- review the Auditor-General's reports and comments of the management committee and the audit committee and make recommendations to the municipal council.
- review internal audit reports together with comments from the management committee and the audit committee and make recommendations to the municipal council.
- initiate and develop the oversight report on annual reports contemplated in section 129 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act.
- attend to and make recommendations to the municipal council on any matter referred to it by the municipal council, executive committee, a committee of the council, a member of this committee, a councillor and the municipal manager.
- on its own initiative, subject to the direction of the municipal council, investigate and report to the municipal council on any matter affecting the municipality.

In accordance with Section 129 (5) of the Municipal Finance Management Act, Council of Polokwane Municipality has adopted the "Guideline for Establishment of Municipal Public Accounts Committees" ("Guideline"). The Polokwane MPAC consists of the following Councillors:

Table: MPAC Members

	COUNCILLOR	POLITICAL PARTY
1.	Clarke Susanna Elizabeth	ANC
2.	Kganyago Madumetsa Stephen	ANC
3.	Makhafola Malesela Daniel	ANC
4.	Moshoeu Pontsho Esther	ANC
5.	Murwa Thosetse Phaka Kgolane	ANC

	COUNCILLOR	POLITICAL PARTY
6.	Phoshoko Mapula Salome (Chairperson)	ANC
7.	Phukubye Dorothy	ANC
8.	Ramaphakela Maketu Freddy	EFF
9.	Sathekge Madimetja William	EFF

The Committee is fully functional and reports to Council on a quarterly basis against its Council approved Annual work Plan.

8.14.5 Local Geographic Names Committee

The Local Geographic Names Committee has been established for the following functions:

- To advise and engage with the local authorities in ensuring the principles of the South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC) are applied to names under their jurisdiction.
- To make recommendations to the SAGNC through Council on the names of a geographical feature that falls within its Municipal boundaries.
- To do preparatory work for the submissions of names to be sent to the SAGNC.
- To ensure that local communities and other stakeholders are adequately consulted.

8.14.6 Rules and Ethics Committee

The Rules and Ethics Committee is responsible for the following:

- Development of policies to assist implementation of the Code of Conduct for Councillors.
- Development of rules to enhance efficiency and effectiveness of Council and its committees.
- Monitoring and evaluation of compliance with the Code of Conduct for Councillors.
- To act as a disciplinary committee for contravention of the Code of Conduct for Councillors.

The Committee is functional and is consistently reporting to Council on a quarterly basis. It has amongst others, reviewed the Council Rules of Order for Municipal Council and Council Committees By-Law and developed the prerequisite Uniform Standing Procedure for Non-Attendance of Meetings and other Breaches of the Code of Conduct for Councillors and the Council Rules of Order (USP).

8.15 COMMUNICATION AND MARKETING

Communications and marketing are important elements of good governance. It is through communication that the communities and other stakeholders are informed about the activities,

challenges and achievements of the municipality and thereby being empowered to participate in the affairs of the municipality. Section 18 of the Municipal Systems Act stresses the importance of communication between the Council and its communities. It gives guidelines of issues that the municipality must communicate about to its stakeholders.

The Incorporation of Aganang Municipality resulted in the municipality growing bigger in size and this necessitates a review of the organogram and the approach model of the Communications and Marketing unit so that the municipality can efficiently and effectively respond to the needs of the communities in all clusters with the assistance of the Public Participation Unit and Clusters Services Unit.

A variety of media platforms are used to encourage community participation in municipal affairs. These include programmes of mobilizing, informing and educating, engaging and empowering communities in municipal affairs.

The turnaround and developmental strategies and activities driven by the political leadership are highlighted during direct and rapid response activities with communities.

The municipality is taking advantage of new electronic and social media channels to improve on the speed through which information reaches residents and other stakeholders. These include communication through digital media platforms in the form of SMSs, social media chat groups, social media broadcast lists, Facebook, X (formerly Twitter), YouTube and online news services.

Face-to-face or direct communications with communities & community structures are conducted through outreach programmes such as the mayoral roadshows and other interested groups meetings on a regular basis.

Services challenges and achievements, products and programmes of the municipality continue to be profiled on the social media, radio stations, print media, online news services, posters and third-party website as a way of marketing Polokwane as a city that is capable to respond to the needs of its communicators and visitors to the province. The municipality created and maintained sound relationship with the media personnel.

The municipality has adopted a communications brand which is an umbrella brand that would provide shelter under which developmental activities that relates to the growth of the city should be communicated to the residents of Polokwane. The “Re aga Polokwane” (which means we are building Polokwane) platform is being used to ensure that the City’s stakeholders have a better understanding of the various projects that the city is embarking on and why the city has embarked on these projects. Further, the brand provides residents and businesses with a platform and opportunity for their own initiative to come up with programmes that will benefit and improve the city in various ways. The programme is in full swing.

Under this banner, the municipality must continue to develop and implement a comprehensive well-researched marketing strategy that will implement campaigns geared towards revenue enhancement, water conservation, key municipal projects, service delivery achievements, investments opportunities and internal communications.

The municipality will continue to develop and improve processes to enhance public participation and strengthening of relations with critical stakeholders to entrench participatory local government.

Billboards, electronic and conventional that are allocated to the municipality around the city are being used to communicate key programmes around awareness. The municipality must take advantage of the availability of this infrastructure and allocate funding to access other available billboards in the city and other urban areas to deliver effective awareness campaigns like water and environmental conservation.

8.15.1 Complaints Management System

The municipality uses suggestions books to record all complains, suggestions and complements by the community about municipal services or any other matter that affects the municipality. Complaints are also received through government hotlines, walk-ins and through the media.

The Call Centre currently managed by various service departments including the Water and Sanitation and the Energy Services with different contact numbers is available and allows members of the public to report complaints or other service-related issues. The Revenue Management Services also has a dedicated call centre.

Processes are currently underway to implement an integrated or one stop call centre. The municipality is also implementing a digital application to report service related issues.

There is an urgent need for the municipality to establish a dedicated customer care unit to be able to centralize customer care services and develop and monitor implementation of services standards (from standard operating procedures developed by all the business units) within the municipality. The unit should also conduct customer care surveys in order to improve its services to all stakeholders.

The municipality also participates in the District and the Provincial Hotline and Batho Pele Forums where management of complaints are attended with the aim of reducing complaints received.

The municipality coordinates Batho pele Days where government departments offering direct services to the public like Home Affairs, SASSA, Eskom, SAPS are invited to exhibit and perform their services at areas where it is usually difficult for communities to access such services without travelling far.

8.16 EXECUTIVE SUPPORT PROGRAMMES

The Executive Support Unit is located within the Office of the Executive Mayor to address issues that affect previously deprived and marginalized groups of the society, such as **women, children, youth, people with disabilities and older persons as well as people living with HIV**. The forums for all the targeted groups were established, including the Local Aids Council and the Local AIDS Council Technical Committee, with the aim of mainstreaming all the Executive Support programmes into the municipal services and processes. The Ward AIDS Councils will be Re- established in all 45 wards of the municipality. The unit plays a role of supporting and strengthening these councils to yield best possible results of reducing HIV and AIDS and other opportunistic diseases. Social ills such as Gender Based Violence, Teenage pregnancy, Substance abuse and others, are also addressed within these municipal structures. The HIV and AIDS/Special Programmes Centre provides training, information

and counselling to individuals, organizations, schools and other community structures. The centre also serves as a condom distribution site.

Section 73(1) of the Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000 requires municipalities to give effect to the provisions of the Constitution to give priority to the basic needs of the local community and to promote its development. The Act, Section 73 (2) further states that municipal services should be equitable, accessible and be provided in a manner that is conducive to the prudent, economic, efficient and effective use of available resources.

8.16.1 Core Function of the Executive Support SBU

The core function of this unit is to provide care and support services to the vulnerable groups in the community. Mainstreaming of services is ensured through the following programmes:

- **HIV/AIDS, STI and TB (HAST)**
- **Gender Focal Point**
- **Disability Rights Advocacy**
- **Youth Development**
- **Children's Rights Advocacy**
- **Older Persons' Rights Advocacy**

The Executive Support Programmes are regulated through community forums: i.e.

- **Local AIDS Council, Local AIDS Council Technical Committee and The Ward AIDS Councils.** - Accelerate prevention to reduce new HIV, TB, and STIs infections in collaboration with Department of Health, other government departments and development partners.
- **Gender Forum and the Men's Forum-** To ensure gender mainstreaming and equity in the community and stakeholders within the Municipality. Ensuring accountability and accelerating efforts to address and end Gender Based and create awareness on economic development for PWDs. Violence. Taking priority action that is incorporated into the National Strategic Plan on GBVF framework.
- **Multi Party Women Commission** – To ensure gender mainstreaming and equity within municipal processes and to Act as an advisory and consultative body for all women Councilors and representing their interests within Municipal structure
- **Older Persons Forum** - Advocate for the rights of older persons and creating awareness on abuse against the elderly.
- **Disability Forum** - Advocate for the rights of People with Disabilities and economic development and addressing PWD unemployment. Economic Development and addressing PWD unemployment. Creating Accessible environment for Persons with Disabilities within the Municipality Built Environment (Facilities)
- **Children's Rights Stakeholders Forum** - Advocacy services for children, with special reference to the rights of children.

- **Youth Forum** - Advocacy for youth economic development and unemployment to reduce youth unemployment.
- **Civil Society Organizations Forum** -
- The **Local Drug Action Committee was established** to address issues of **substance abuse**.

The 95/95/95 Fast Track City Programme had been introduced in the City of Polokwane with the main aim of achieving HIV/AIDS, STIs and TB goals and objectives using the Local Implementation Plan by attaining the 95/95/95 targets. The implementation strategy will:

- Ensure that at least 95% of PLHIV and TB know their status.
- Improve access to Anti Retro Viral and TB treatment to 95%
- Ensure that 95% of PLHIV and TB who are on treatment are virally suppressed and those TB+s is cured.
- Increase the utilization of combination HIV prevention services,
- Reduce to zero the negative impact of stigma and discrimination,
- Establish a common web-based platform for real time monitoring progress.

All the programmes are implemented in collaboration with government departments, civil society organizations, faith-based organisations, traditional authorities and developmental partners to ensure effective services to the vulnerable groups.

8.16.2 Special Focus Challenges

Special Focus Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation meetings are:

Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation	Corrective measure
1. Braille Documents for the blind and partially sighted persons	As a short-term intervention strategy, the documents and agendas used during community consultation meetings are printed in Braille with the assistance of South African National Association of the Blind and Partially sighted (SANABP). Plans are underway to have the IDP and Budget document printed in Braille. Plans are also underway for the procurement of the Braille machine for the municipality.
2. Sign language interpreter for all municipal events and the rates hall.	As a short term intervention strategy, the sign language services are outsourced from the local organizations for the deaf.
3. The money raised during the Mayor`s Charity Fund not enough to cover the huge number of NGOs in the Municipality.	The municipality in partnership with government departments and financial institutions strive to capacitate Community Based Organizations (CBOs) in terms of financial management and fundraising skills to ensure sustainability of their initiatives.
4. The Participation of people with disabilities and women as well in the procurement process.	Women and people with disabilities and youth are encouraged to register on the municipal data base.

Challenges raised during the IDP Consultation	Corrective measure
5. Most of our buildings still not user friendly to our people living with disabilities.	Access ramps were constructed at the 1 st , 2 nd and 3 rd floor entrances of the building.
6. Inclusion of people with disabilities in the workforce (non-compliance to the 2% employment mandate) The Employment Equity Survey conducted confirmed an increase of employees with disabilities from 1.1% to 2%.	People with disabilities are encouraged to apply for advertised jobs through the disability forum and organizations.
7. Shortage of land for NGOs and CBOs.	The land acquisition and disposal of municipal property policy that was adopted by council will enable community organizations to make applications for leasing or buying of land. Plans are underway to seek permission for the utilization of some Municipal Vacant land as a one stop centre for community service organizations, including the Victim Support and Empowerment Centre.

Source: Special Focus SBU

8.17 Health and Social Development

8.17.1 Health Facilities Analysis

To optimize the delivery of quality health care services to the community of Polokwane, the provision of health services is fairly covering the communities. There are 40 clinics and 1 health care centre found in the municipal area. Most of the clinics operates 24 hours and are fairly equipped with all necessary infrastructures. The municipality also harbours a provincial hospital, 1 District hospital and 2 tertiary hospitals.

8.17.2 Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

The following are the Major Hospitals in City of Polokwane

1. Polokwane Hospital
2. Mankweng Hospital in Mankweng township (30 km east of Polokwane)
3. Pholoso Netcare Hospital (next to savannah Mall)
4. Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)
5. Knobel Hospital in Aganang Cluster (60 km North West of Polokwane.)

6. Med clinic Limpopo (Polokwane)
7. Rethabile Health Centre in Polokwane City
8. Over 40 clinics associated with all the above hospitals

Regional Hospitals in the City of Polokwane

Polokwane Hospital



Pholoso Netcare Hospital next to savannah Mall



Mankweng Hospital in Sovenga township (30 km east of Polokwane)



Seshego District Hospital (10 km out of Polokwane City)



Source: Limpopo Dept Health

8.17.3 HIV /AIDS Prevalence in Polokwane

HIV and AIDS

The burden of HIV and AIDS continue to pose a developmental hurdle because it put PLM's human assets at risk of morbidity and mortality. Data extracted from Regional Explorer (2019) showed that 59,664 people were infected with HIV in 2016; 69,539 in 2017 and 71,007 in 2018. During the same period, 1376 AIDS related deaths were reported in 2016: 1234 deaths in 2017 and 1241 deaths in 2018. Owing to an effective ARV treatment strategy adopted in 2009, AIDS related deaths reduced significantly by 9.8% between 2016 and 2018. The City of Polokwane is arguably one of the top HIV hotspots in Limpopo Province.

8.17.4 National HIV prevalence

The estimated National HIV prevalence was 29.5%, showing a slight drop of 0.7% from the 2010 national HIV prevalence (30.2%). However, Limpopo indicated a steady increase from 21.4% in 2009 to 22.1% in 2011 whereas the Capricorn District has shown an increase from 24.9% to 25.2%. The Polokwane municipality has therefore a vigorous role to play in the prevention and support objectives of the Provincial HIV and AIDS strategy. The Centre also serves as a condom distribution site (distributing \pm 120 000 condoms per month).

8.17.5 Awards Received by Special Focus

The Special Focus unit received an award for the most resourceful Council in terms of gender mainstreaming during the Capricorn/Swaziland Gender Protocol and Justice summit.

8.17.6 The 95-95-95 targets

The 95–95–95 targets are a set of global goals established by the United Nations Programme on AIDS and HIV. By 2020, the goal is that “**95%** of people living with HIV will know their HIV status, **95%** of those who know their HIV-positive status will be accessing treatment, and **95%** of people on treatment will have suppressed viral loads.”

These targets provide a good measure of how well different provinces are performing in key areas such as the provision and promotion of HIV testing and helping people who test positive to start treatment and to stay on treatment.

8.18 LEGAL SERVICES

The municipality has a well-established legal services unit which is responsible for the following:

1. Co-ordinate, facilitate and manage all external and internal legal actions and processes on behalf of and against the Municipality.
2. Develop and review by-laws and policies.
3. Develop and review a system of delegation of powers.
4. Advise on matters of legal compliance.
5. Effective legal support services
6. Municipal policy framework
7. Contracts (including service level agreements) drafting and vetting.
8. Finalization of (long) outstanding litigious matters.
9. Management of Illegal Land Use.

8.18.1 Core Functions of Legal Services

The Unit is further sub- divided into the following **4 Specialized** areas:

1. Litigations
2. Properties
3. Legislation and law enforcement
4. Governance and corporate affairs

8.18.2 Legislation & Law Enforcement

By-laws/Policies Status	Number of Cases
By-laws drafted/amended awaiting council adoption	<p>01</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Municipal Planning By-Law 2018
By-laws adopted & promulgated	<p>01</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Electricity Supply By-Law 2023
Policies drafted/amended & pending adoption by council	<p>07</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Development Charges Policy • Dispute Resolution Policy • Dispute Resolution Appeal Policy • Water & Sanitation Policy • Bereavement Policy • LED Incentives Policy • POPIA Policy
Policies adopted	<p>02</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSEG Policy 2023 • Communication Strategy Policy 2024

Source: Legal Services SBU 2024

Challenges:

- Legal Services not engaged in consultation and drafting of by-laws and policies.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not receive council agendas and minutes to follow up on flow of by-laws and policies adopted.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not have access to Green Gazette for purposes of receiving promulgated by-laws to update the municipal code.
- Legal Services Legislation & Law Enforcement do not have access to a legal library for purposes of access to legislation, case law and other law reports.

Interventions aimed at addressing challenges

- Informative emails to be forwarded to all Directorates in every quarter to create awareness of the role of Legislation & Law Enforcement in drafting of by-laws and policies.
- Request for access to council agendas and minutes, Green Gazette and a proper legal library to be escalated to senior management.

8.18.3 Litigation

Civil Litigation – Damages claimed against Municipality	Number
Pending litigation	24
Matters finalised	02
Civil Litigation – Contingent Assets in favour of Municipality	
Pending litigation	02
Matters finalised	01

Source: Legal Services SBU 2024

8.18.4 Governance and Corporate Affairs

Service Level Agreements	Number
Instructions received for drafting	54
Service Level Agreement drafted	54
Service level agreement delivered to relevant SBU	54
Number not yet signed and awaiting MM's signature	03
Delegation of Powers	
Instruction received for drafting	01
Drafted	01
Finalized	01

Source: Legal Services SBU 2024

8.19 RISK MANAGEMENT

8.19.1 Risk Management core responsibilities

Risk Management is one of Management's core responsibilities in terms of section 62 of the Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and is an integral part of the internal processes of a municipality. Risk Management is a systematic process to identify, evaluate and address risks on a continuous basis before such risks can impact negatively on service delivery capacity of a Municipality.

Polokwane municipality has a Risk Management unit, the role and responsibility of the unit is to develop and maintain an effective risk management system which will ensure an internal control environment that is conducive to the achievement of the municipality's objectives. This is achieved by developing and implementing an effective Risk Management framework and conducting institutional risk assessment in consultation with all stakeholders including the Audit and Performance Audit Committee on matters of governance.

8.19.2 Risk Management Committee

Oversight of overall Municipal risk management activities resides with Risk Management Committee and the Audit and Performance Committee. Risk Management Committee meet quarterly and report to the Audit and Performance Audit Committee.

Risk management Committee is chaired by an independent person who is not an employee of the Municipality, the chairperson was appointed in March 2023 for a period of three (03) years. The Risk Management Committee is responsible for reviewing the effectiveness of the municipal's risk management system, practices, and procedures, and provide recommendations for improvement. All Municipal Directors are members of the Committee. The committee as a collective possess a blend of skills, expertise and knowledge of the Municipality, including familiarity with the concepts, principles and practice of risk management, such that they can contribute meaningfully to the advancement of risk management within the Municipality.

8.19.3 The Risk Champions Committee

Risk Management Unit has also established an internal a Risk Champions Committee, its main objective is to assist Risk management SBU in implementing risk management framework and cascading risk management processes to lower levels in the municipality.

8.19.4 Top 13 Strategic Risks Identified

Strategic risks are reviewed annually, the main purpose of the review is to assess progress made in risk treatment strategies, determine whether the risk identified in the previous year and mitigations were implemented and whether those risks are still relevant and identify emerging risks. Strategic risks are reviewed annually, and the process has been aligned with the IDP and Budget process to ensure that identified risk mitigations are budgeted for.

Below are the top 13 strategic risks identified for 2024/25 Financial Year

1. Ageing of infrastructure (water, Energy Roads and Storm water, Fleet, Facilities)
2. Water losses
3. Electricity losses (technical and non- technical losses)
4. Inadequate Sewer Treatment Capacity
5. Water Scarcity
6. Theft and vandalism of municipal infrastructure
7. Poor performance of allocated grants
8. Cyber-attack
9. Negative Audit Outcome
10. Fraud and Corruption
11. Cash Flow constraints
12. Slow economic growth and development
13. Unsustainability of the Integrated Public Transport Network (IPTN)

8.19.5 Risk assessment review process

Risk assessment and review process is conducted annually at strategic and operational level where Directors and SBU Managers are consulted and encourage to identify risks and mitigations. Operational risks assessment and review is conducted for each SBU. Reporting of progress on mitigation both strategic and operational risk is done on the reporting system and monitored continually and reported to EXCO and Risk Management Committee.

8.20 Fraud and Corruption Strategy

8.20.1 Polokwane Municipality statement of attitude to fraud

Polokwane Municipality always requires all staff to act honestly and with integrity and to safeguard the municipal resources for which they are responsible. The Municipality is committed to protecting all revenue, expenditure, and assets from any attempt to gain illegal financial or other benefits.

Any fraud or corruption committed against the Municipality is a major concern to the Council. Consequently, any case will be thoroughly investigated, and appropriate corrective action will be taken against anyone who is found guilty of corrupt conduct. This may include referral to the South Africa Police Services and other relevant state organ depending on the nature of the matter. The Municipality has an approved anti-fraud and corruption strategy approved by Council.

8.20.2 Whistle Blowing Policy

Council has approved a whistle blowing policy in compliance with the Protected Disclosures Act, the policy is intended to encourage and enable staff to report suspected fraud and corruption activities within Polokwane Municipality rather than overlooking a problem or blowing the whistle via inappropriate channels. The Municipality also encourages communities and stakeholders or service providers who suspect fraud and corruption to report allegations of fraud and corruption using the protected disclosure.

8.20.3 Anti-Fraud and awareness

The Municipality conducts fraud awareness activities to create awareness on fraud and corruption prevention on a quarterly basis as required by the Fraud Risk Management Plan.

8.21. INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN (IDP)

8.21.1 Legislative Background Introduction

It is required in terms of Section 25 of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 32 of 2000, that each municipal council must within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, adopt a strategic plan, known as the Integrated Development Plan (IDP). IDP is a 5-year plan which **guides and informs the municipality's planning, development and budgeting**. It is reviewed annually based on its performance and other changing circumstances deemed relevant by the municipal council (Section 34 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 as amended).

Integrated development planning is a **process** through which a municipality conducts a comprehensive analysis of the community needs and subsequently priorities available resources to address those needs. The process seeks to ensure **vertical and horizontal integration** between the municipal planned interventions with the planning efforts of **national and provincial spheres of government** as well as within the various sectors of government. This process also allows for the participation of private sector, the community and community organisations identified by the

Municipality as key stakeholders in the development planning of the municipal area. In compliance with the Municipal Systems Act (2000, as amended),

The City of Polokwane IDP is underpinned by key sector plans and strategies, which include the Municipality's long-term plan (**Vision 2030/Smart City**), Spatial Development Framework (**SDF**), Polokwane 20 Years Economic Growth and Development Plan (**EGDP**), Integrated Waste Management Plan (**IWMP**), Water Services Development Plan (WSDP), Integrated Transport Plan (**ITP**) and the Environmental Management Plan(**EMP**) amongst others. The IDP is responding to the community priorities, provincial, national priorities and is in line with State of the Nation Address (SONA), State of the Province Address (SOPA), State of the City Address(SOCA), Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs IDP guidelines and the District Development Model (DDM).

8.21.2 Integrated Development Planning

Local Municipalities in South Africa have to use "integrated development planning" as a method to plan future development in their areas. Apartheid planning left us with cities and towns that:

- Have racially divided business and residential areas
- Are badly planned to cater for the poor - with long travelling distances to work and poor access to business and other services.
- Have great differences in level of services between rich and poor areas.
- Have sprawling informal settlements and spread-out residential areas that make cheap service delivery difficult.

Rural areas were left underdeveloped and largely un-serviced. The new approach to local government has to be developmental and aims to overcome the poor planning of the past.

Integrated Development Planning is an approach to planning that involves the entire municipality and its citizens in finding the best solutions to achieve good long-term development.

An Integrated Development Plan is a **super plan** for an area that gives an overall framework for development. It aims to co-ordinate the work of local and other spheres of government in a coherent plan to improve the quality of life for all the people living in an area. It should consider the existing conditions and problems and resources available for development. The plan should look at economic and social development for the area as a whole. It must set a framework for how land should be used, what infrastructure and services are needed and how the environment should be protected.

All municipalities have to produce an Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The municipality is responsible for the co-ordination of the IDP and must draw in other stakeholders in the area who can impact on and/or benefit from development in the area.

Once the IDP is drawn up, all municipal planning and projects should happen in terms of the IDP. The annual Council budget should be based on the IDP. Other government departments working in the area should take the IDP into account when making their own plans.

It should take **6 to 9 months** to develop an IDP. During this period service delivery and development continues. The IDP is reviewed every year and necessary changes can be made.

The IDP has a lifespan of **5 years** that is linked directly to the **term of office for local councillors**. After every local government election, the new council has to decide on the future of the IDP. The Council can adopt the existing IDP or develop a new IDP that takes into consideration existing plans.

The Executive Mayor of the municipality have to manage the IDP Process. The Executive Mayor may assign this responsibility to the Municipal Manager.

The IDP has to be drawn up in consultation with forums and stakeholders. The Draft and Final IDP document has to be approved by the Council.

8.21.3 Evolution of the IDP (Trends since 2001)

1 st Generation (2001-2006)	2 nd Generation (2006-2011)	3 rd Generation (2011-2016)	4 th Generation (2016-2021)	5 th Generation (2021-2026)
Eradication of service delivery backlogs	Eradication of service delivery backlogs	Participation of provincial and national spheres of government	Intergovernmental programme pipelining	NDP vision 2030 – spatial transformation
	IDP being a plan of all government	Alignment of planning and budgeting processes	Respond to policy imperatives (NDP, IUDF, SPLUMA)	Facilitate spatial integration, growth, inclusion and access
		Integration of municipal sector plans into the IDP	Spatial planning	

Source: PLK IDP SBU

8.21.4 IDP/ Budget Process Plan

In terms of Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 28(1), each municipal Council must adopt a process set out in writing to guide the planning, drafting, adoption and review of its Integrated

Development Plan. Annually, City of Polokwane Council approves IDP/Budget/PMS process plan that is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar detailing activities and processes that will unfold culminating with the final approval and adoption of the IDP and Budget by Council and it is aligned with the Municipal Corporate Calendar.

8.21.5 The IDP/Budget Committees

Legislation requires municipalities to establish appropriate mechanism, processes and procedures for the organs of state, including traditional authorities and other role players to be identified and consulted on the drafting of the Integrated Development Plan. To achieve this purpose, the City of Polokwane established committees towards attainment of the above legislative requirement as follows:

8.21.6 IDP/Budget Technical Committee

The IDP /Budget Technical committee is chaired by the Municipal Manager and constituted by all Directors and all Managers who are appointed annually by the Municipal Manager. This committee serve as a working committee for municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance.

8.21.7 IDP/Budget Steering Committee

The IDP Steering committee is chaired by the Executive Mayor and composed of all members of the Mayoral committee, Speaker of Council, Chief whip; MPAC Chairperson, Ethic Chairperson, Geographic Names Chairperson, MM, all Directors and selected Managers. Councillors in the committee play oversight role over municipal planning, budgeting and institutional performance whereas municipal employees provide expertise and technical knowledge in a supporting role.

8.21.8 IDP Representative Forum

The IDP Representative Forum is platform that the City of Polokwane use to engage with organized formations and government departments. The Forum is fully functional, and its meetings are held every phase of the IDP for feedback purposes and further engagements with stakeholders.

8.22 IDP/Budget Public Participation and Stakeholder Engagements Process

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Chapter 4 provides for the municipalities to develop a culture of municipal governance that complements formal representative government with a system of participatory governance and to encourage and create conditions for the local community to participate in the affairs of the municipality including in the preparation, implementation and review of its Integrated Development Plan. Polokwane Municipality is divided into seven (7) clusters for administrative purposes and further has a diverse and active citizenry that requires an effective public participation process to ensure that they are fully engaged in matters of their development. These includes

community, business sector, government departments, non-governmental organisations, Traditional Authorities amongst others.

Polokwane Municipality has dedicated the month of **April** annually to consult with its stakeholders and source inputs into the tabled draft IDP and Budget. During these meetings Council gives feedback on the implementation of the current financial year projects, budgets and interventions where necessary and further present proposed projects, programmes, budgets and tariff increases for the coming financial year for engagements with stakeholders. Copies of both the draft and final IDP and Budgets are placed at strategic places within the seven (7) municipal clusters, libraries and also get posted on the municipal website for consumption by members of the public.

8.22.1 Executive Mayor addressing the Community during IDP /Budget Public Participation Meeting

IDP/Budget Public Participation Meetings



Executive Mayor addressing the Community during IDP /Budget Public Participation Meeting



Aganang Cluster IDP Public Participation Meeting



Moletjie Cluster IDP Public Participation Meeting

Source: City of Polokwane Communication SBU 2024

8.23 MEC IDP Assessments

Municipal System Act, 32 of 2000, Section 32 requires municipalities to submit the adopted Integrated Development Plans (IDP) to the Office of the MEC for local government within ten **(10) days** after Council approval. This is to allow the MEC for local government to assess the IDPs of municipalities for compliance and to make proposals for amendments where possible for consideration by local councils. Polokwane Municipality has always complied with legislation and submitted the adopted IDP within the prescribed timelines. Polokwane Municipality always considers proposals by the MEC for Local Government from the IDP Assessments and incorporates them into planning. Below is the Ratings Received from MEC assessment on Polokwane final IDP's.

8.23.1 MEC rating for Polokwane Municipality IDP

MEC IDP Assessment Rating for Polokwane (High; Medium and Low)	
Financial Year Final IDP Assessment	MEC Rating
2011/12	High
2012/13	High
2013/14	High
2014/15	High
2015/16	High
2016/17	High

MEC IDP Assessment Rating for Polokwane (High; Medium and Low)	
Financial Year Final IDP Assessment	MEC Rating
2017/18	High
2018/19	Medium
2019/20	High
2020/21	High
2021/26	High
2022/23	High
2023/24	High
2024/25	Results not yet Released Assessment Held 04 - 06 Sept 1024

Source: PLK IDP SBU

8.24 Strategic Planning Session (Bosberaad)

The purpose of the strategic planning session is to maintain a favourable balance between an organization and its environment over a long run. Strategic Planning has been defined as “a disciplined effort to produce fundamental decisions and actions that shape and guide what an organization is, what it does, and why it does it”. It provides a systematic process for gathering information about the bigger picture and using it to establish a long-term direction and then translate that direction into specific goals, objectives, and actions. It blends futuristic thinking, objective analysis, and subjective evaluation of goals and priorities to chart a future course of action that will ensure the organization’s vitality and effectiveness in the long run. “At best it permeates the culture of an organization, creating an almost intuitive sense of where it is going and what is important”.

In today’s highly competitive business and organizational environment, budget-oriented planning or forecast planning methods are insufficient for organization to prosper. There is a need to engage in strategic planning that clearly defines objectives and assesses both the internal and external situation to formulate strategy, evaluate progress, and make judgments as necessary to stay on track. Polokwane Municipality usually host its strategic planning sessions **each financial year** in terms of the IDP/Budget/PMS Process Plan. The session is led by the Executive Mayor. The Executive Mayor with the support of the Members of the Mayoral Committee, Chairpersons of Council Committees, leaders of all parties Represented in Council , Senior Management and EXCO Managers embarks on a retreat to make a thorough **introspection** on whether the municipality is on track to achieve its **Vision 2030/Smart City** and take the necessary actions / decisions to ensure that Polokwane Municipality succeeds in bettering the lives of its communities and therefore achieve its Vision 2030.

8.25 District Development Model (DDM)

8.25.1 The District Development Model – One Plan

Lack of coordination between National and Provincial Governments, between departments and particularly at local government level, has not served the country. The pattern of operating in silos has led to lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government's programme difficult.



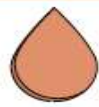






The President in the 2019 Presidency Budget Speech (2019) identified the “pattern of operating in silos” as a challenge which led to “lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government's programme difficult”. The consequence has been non optimal delivery of services and diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and employment.

8.25.2 The Approach

The rolling out of “a new integrated district-based approach to effectively address our service delivery challenges and localised procurement and job creation, that promotes and supports local businesses, and that involves communities, was important.

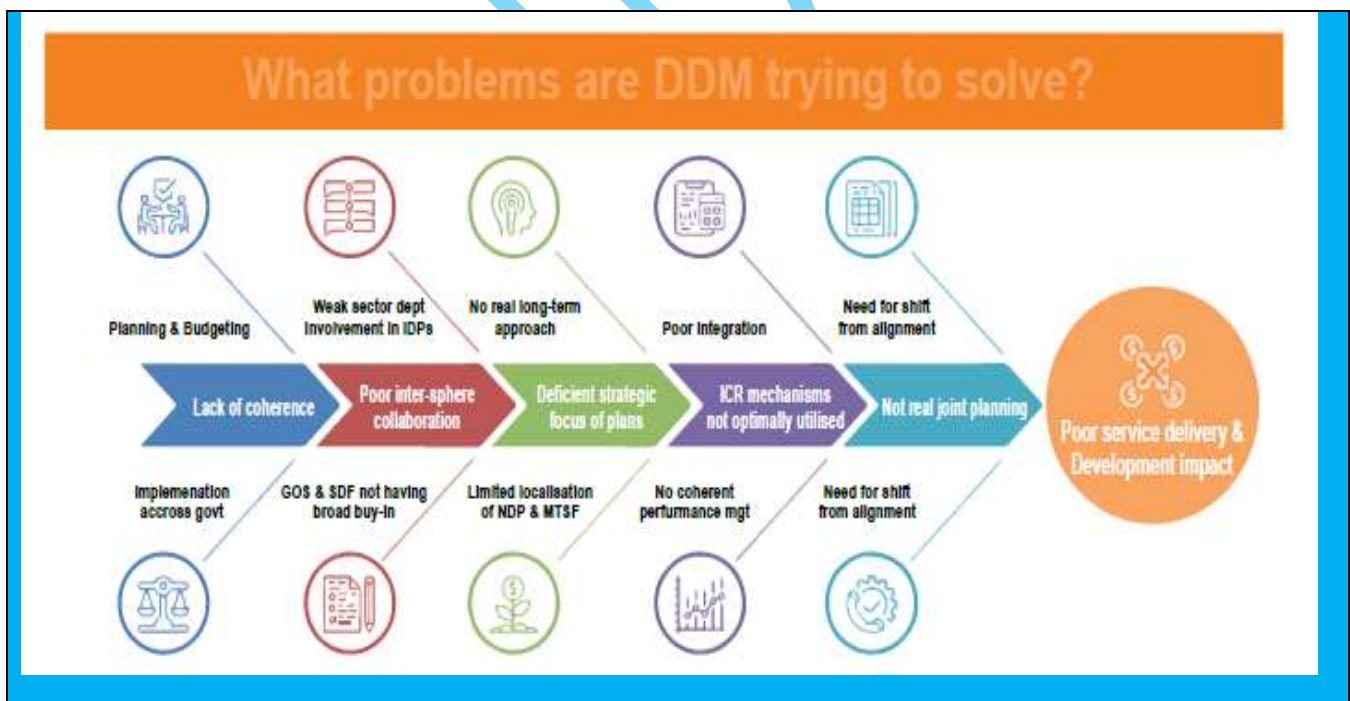
8.25.3 A New Shift

The DDM focusses on implementation of immediate priority projects, stabilisation of local government and long-term institutionalisation of integrated planning, budgeting and delivery anchored on the development and implementation of the “One Plan”. As such the DDM focuses on building state capacity as the system of Local Government is stabilised, and in the medium term, to improve cooperative governance, integrated planning and spatial transformation, inclusive economic development, and where citizens are empowered to contribute and partner in development.

 Solve horizontal & vertical Silos	 Narrow distance between people and government	 Deliver Integrated Services and M&E
 Budgets & programmes based on community needs, inclusive & gender-responsive	 Youth empowered	 Maximising impact
 Facilitate for Local Economic Development	 Sustainable development, accelerate initiatives to promote zero hunger, poverty eradication, employment & equality	 Inculcate Long-range Planning

Source: DCoG DDM 2024

8.25.4 What Problems are DDM trying to solve?

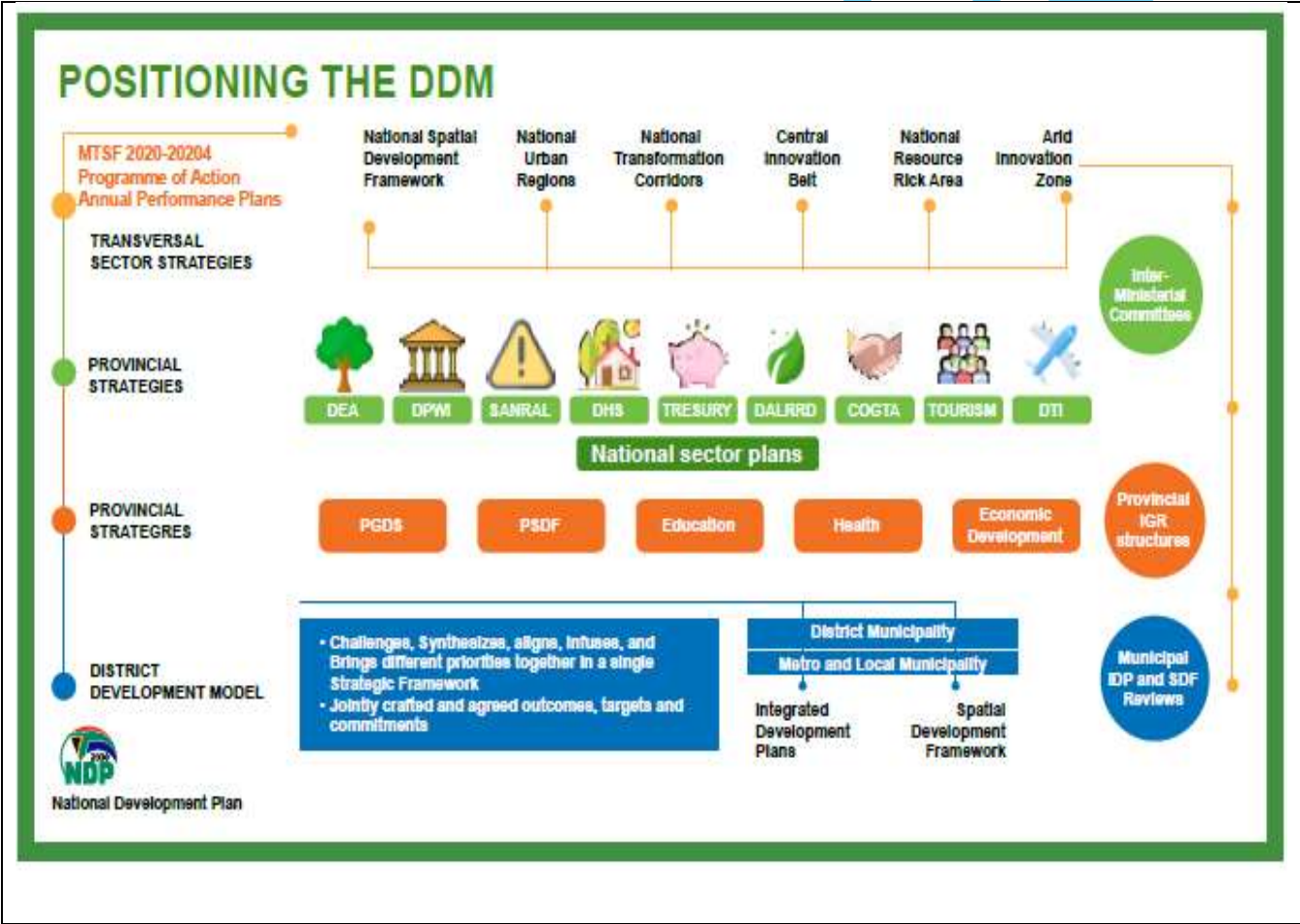


Source: DCoG DDM 2024

The DDM enables **synergy** between national, provincial and local priorities; and implementation of immediate priority projects and actions as well as a long-term strategic framework for predictable, coherent and effective service delivery and development.

It enables implementation of the **National Development Plan (NDP)**, National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF), Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) and the Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) by **localising and synergising objectives, targets and directives** in relation to the 52 District and Metropolitan spaces (IGR Impact Zones), thereby addressing the **triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment** in a spatially targeted and responsive manner. The DDM is positioned in relation to the NDP, MTSF and NSDF to enhance the overall system by synergizing national, provincial and local priorities in relation to the district and metro spaces.

8.25.5 POSITIONING THE DDM



Source: DCoG DDM 2024

8.25.6 The Key Principles

The District Development Model (DDM) was approved as an **operational model** for improving Cooperative Governance aimed at building a capable, ethical **Developmental State**, including improving and enhancing the state of **Local Government**.

It is an All of Government and Society Approach providing a method by which all three spheres of government and state entities work in unison in an impact-oriented way, where there is higher performance and accountability for coherent and effective service delivery and development outcomes.

It is critical that the DDM also incorporate initiatives and interventions to **deal with Gender Based Violence and Femicide** as guided by the National Strategic Plan (NSP) on Gender Based Violence and Femicide (GBVF) as approved by Cabinet in November 2019 and the Framework on Gender-Responsive Planning, Budgeting, Monitoring, Evaluation and Auditing (GRPBMEA) as adopted by Cabinet in March 2019.

The One Plan will guide and improve the **spatialisation and reprioritization** of programmes and budgets of all three spheres of government over the short, medium, and long-term according to the outcomes, targets and commitments expressed. Within the implementation areas and phasing described above, the DDM is implemented through two interrelated processes to be followed by the **whole of government**. These processes entail **spatialisation and reprioritisation**. **Spatialisation** refers to the process of translating development priorities and objectives into spatial locations (district and metropolitan areas) and according to local spatial and place making logic of these areas manifesting in physical and integrated impacts on people's lives and the places they live in.

Spatial Restructuring – is the process by which a transformed and efficient spatial development pattern and form is created to support competitive local economy and integrated sustainable human settlements. Spatial restructuring informs infrastructure investment in terms of quantum and as well as location and layout of infrastructure networks.

Reprioritisation - is the process of reviewing and changing existing plans and budgets and undertaking future planning and budgeting to realise the desired physical and integrated impacts over the long-term.

The DDM implementation therefore refers to the spatial framing of development priorities and objectives and the review and reprioritisation of plans, budgets and programmes by **each sphere, sector department and state entity** that takes place within the prescripts of the Government Planning, Budgeting, and reporting cycle.

8.25.7 The DDM Model

For the effective implementation of our seven priorities, the structures of government will need to function with maximum coordination and cooperation as it is envisaged in our Constitution.

The truth is that lack of coordination between national and provincial governments, between departments and particularly at local government level, has not served us. We have slid into a pattern of operating in silos. This has led to lack of coherence in planning and implementation, and has made monitoring and oversight of government’s programme difficult.

President Cyril Ramaphosa in the 2019 Presidency Budget Speech (2019). The consequence has been non optimal delivery of services and diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and employment.

8.25.8 Principles underpinning the Model and Main Objectives of the Model

Principles Underpinning the Model	Main Objectives of the Model
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Existing Constitutional Framework Remains as is, whilst strengthening the regulatory framework for Cooperative Governance b. Reinforce Local Government and its Proximity to Communities c. Distinction Between Long-term and Medium-term Strategic Planning/ Implementation Mechanisms d. Build on Lessons from implementing previous similar and Existing Good Practices – Current MTSF Alignment (DPME) and Operation Sukuma Sakhe (OSS) and other emerging best practice e. Reconfigure Integrated Planning Responsibilities and Institutional Arrangements 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Managing rural/urban migration, as well as sustainable growth and development; b. Determining and/or supporting local economic drivers; c. Determining and managing spatial form, land release and land development; d. Determining infrastructure investment requirements and ensure long-term infrastructure adequacy to support integrated human settlements, economic activity and provision of basic services, community and social services; e. Institutionalize long term planning whilst addressing 'burning' short term issues

Source: DCoG DDM 2024

8.25.9 DDM Institutionalisation

The DDM is an **intergovernmental approach** focusing on 52 district and metropolitan spaces as IGR impact zones for more effective joint planning, budgeting and implementation over multi-year planning and electoral cycles.

DDM Implementation is part of the institutionalisation of a programmatic IGR approach and is taken to mean and entail **both immediate and short-term actions as well as medium to long-term actions and fitting into a logical framework.**

Although each sphere, sector or entity has its distinct constitutional powers, functions, and responsibilities, they cooperate and undertake collaborative planning, budgeting and implementation processes converging developmental efforts at the district/metropolitan level.

The 44 Districts and 8 Metros as developmental spaces (IGR Impact Zones) can be the strategic alignment platforms for all three spheres of government where a Single Government Plan (as an Intergovernmental Compact) for each space guides and directs all strategic investment spending and project delivery and forms the basis for accountability.

8.25.10 The Model's Main Objectives

The main objectives of the District Development Model are:

- a) To focus on the district or metropolitan spaces as the appropriate scale and arena for intergovernmental planning and coordination.
- b) To focus on the 44 districts and 8 metropolitan spaces as developmental spaces (IGR Impact Zones) and strategic alignment platforms for all three spheres of government.
- c) To produce a spatially integrated single government plan (as an intergovernmental compact) that guides and directs government-wide strategic investment spending, project delivery and accountability for each district and metropolitan space.
- d) This approach reinforces an outcomes-based IGR system where there is a systematic IGR programme and process associated with the formulation and implementation of a single government plan. This is a significant shift from a highly negotiated approach to alignment of plans to regulated cooperative governance's One Plan.
- e) To take development to communities as the key beneficiaries and participants in what government does.

8.25.11 ONE PLAN WHEELS DESCRIPTIONS

One Plan

The DDM model espouses a district scale developmental planning that produces one plan elaborating key transformation processes required to achieve long-term strategic goals and a desired future in all *44 district and 8 metropolitan areas*. Six features are identified as key transformation areas that are components of the plan.



Source: DCoG DDM 2024

ONE PLAN WHEELS DESCRIPTIONS

a) District demographics and profiling – a process of understanding the current population profile and development dynamics to reach a common and deeper understanding of the current demographic composition across government and other relevant district-level factors such as: Multi-dimensional poverty index; hunger; skills audit; land use and audit; social capital index; health index; inequality; unemployment/employment; service delivery index; economic development opportunities mapping; and stakeholder analysis.

b) Economic Positioning – a process of creating a competitive edge to attract domestic and foreign investment and job creation. The economic positioning informs the spatial restructuring that is required.

c) Spatial Restructuring – a process of transforming spatial development pattern to stimulate local economy and create sustainable integrated human settlements. Spatial restructuring informs the quantum of infrastructure investment and the location and layout of infrastructure networks.

d) Infrastructure Engineering – a process for bulk infrastructure planning and investment to support spatial transformation. This requires alternative forms of labour intensive infrastructure projects such as **paving** of artillery, ring and local roads.

e) Provision of Integrated Services – a process for the delivery of integrated human settlement; municipal and community services in partnership with communities. This requires holistic household-level service delivery in the context of a social wage; and improved jobs and livelihoods.

f) Governance and Management – a process of enforcing leadership and management principles for effective, efficient, accountable and transparent planning, budgeting, procurement and performance management.

With the new District Development Model, the elaborate and detailed annual operational plans of all stakeholders will draw from the 'One Plan' to:

- a) Manage urbanisation, growth and development.
- b) Determine and/or supporting local economic drivers.
- c) Determine and managing spatial form, land release and land development.
- d) Determine infrastructure investment requirements and ensure long-term infrastructure adequacy to support integrated human settlements, economic activity and provision of basic services, community and social services.
- e) Institutionalise long-term planning whilst addressing 'burning' short-term issues.

Districts and Metros

Districts and Metropolitan municipalities must be a starting point for consolidating the understanding of community needs. The National Development Plan and the National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF) remain the anchor reference points to ensure that all three spheres of government appropriately address strategic government priorities. However, the national, provincial and local government shall no longer be allowed to develop their individual plans and projects in isolation to the expected policy outcomes and impacts on the district and metropolitan spaces. Cabinet has already taken a decision in this regard.

Planning

- The model's credibility and effectiveness is dependent on a sound balance between long-term strategic development planning or execution and short or medium-term alignment of strategic operational plans.
- The cooperative governance system needs to be subjected to long-term planning as currently championed in the National Development Plan (NDP). This will allow the execution of plans to be directly aligned with the projected outcomes of the NDP through the district/metro model which endeavours to establish a close alignment of cooperative governance and intergovernmental relations framework. In this regard, the district/metro model is premised on the principle of long-term integrated development planning, and at least linked to the time frame of the NDP.

- There are numerous intergovernmental processes to align plans and budgets across government such as the Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF), Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (METF), Built Environment Performance Plans (BEPP), etc. These processes, many of which are legislated, must be retained, improved and streamlined. Provinces have developed intergovernmental planning and alignment processes with related structures. These must be retained and refined in line with the district/metropolitan model.

8.25.12 Institutional Arrangements, Roles and Responsibilities

Institution	Roles and Responsibilities
National Government	From an implementation perspective the District Development Model is driven and managed by the Department of Cooperative Governance in line with the department's cooperative governance mandate. The president is an overall champion, supported by a relevant inter-ministerial committee. The National Planning Commission supports processes of aligning national sector policy, priorities and plans with the 52 IGR impact zones.
Role of the Presidency	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Oversee the coherence of the national policy; NDP; and national sector planning and budgeting with the district/metro developmental impact. b) Ensure national sector alignment with the district/metro intergovernmental working sessions and approving and adopting Single Joined-Up Plans; capacity building plans; and shared resourcing initiatives. c) Review the role of National Planning Commission to support the cascading of NDP; undertake research; coordinate national sector alignment; and advise on the adoption of Single-Joined-Up plans. d) Convene President's Coordinating Council (PCC); receive reports from provinces and provide feedback and strategic guidance to provinces in respect of district coordination model implementation. e) Receive and engage with progress reports from the district/metro Coordination hubs via DCoG and PCC. f) Receive and engage with impact monitoring reports.
Role of National Planning Commission	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Support the cascading of NDP, undertake research, coordinate national sector alignment, and advise on adoption of Single-Joined-Up plans. b) Provide strategic guidance and support for integrated planning. c) Establish and operate a National Research Observatory (as per NDP) to inform and support district/metro diagnostic profiling and district/metro scale Single-Joined up Plans, in partnership and in collaboration with StatsSA, research and academic institutions; and d) Ensure that national policy and plans are spatially differentiated, targeted and responsive to local circumstances, needs and opportunities.
Role of the National Department of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Manage the DDM and programmatic outcomes-based IGR to enable government to formulate, adopt and implement Single Joined-Up plans.

Institution	Roles and Responsibilities
Cooperative Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b) Coordinate local government capacity building and shared resourcing; and undertake impact monitoring. c) Institutionalise Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) through a long-term planning approach contained in the Single-Joined Up Plans for each district/metro. d) Enable the necessary institutional arrangements in consultation with all key role players and provide direction with regards to role, responsibilities and accountabilities. e) Mobilise resources and/or restructure to ensure appointment of managers, coordinators and specialists to give effect to the DDM. f) Appoint a national programme manager for district/metro coordination. g) Appoint provincial coordinators to support the programme manager in institutionalising the DDM in each province. h) Establish and manage the district/metro coordination hubs that will initiate and drive the formulation of the Single Joined-up plans and oversee implementation, as well as coordinate capacity building, shared resourcing and impact monitoring. i) Appoint and contract directly with the personnel that constitute the hubs; j) Process recommendations and advice from the district/metro coordination steering committee (D/MCSC) with regards to appointments, business plan and hub operations. k) Mobilise resources based on hub business plans or requests from the D/MCSCs; l) Receive reports from the D/MCSCs and hub managers; m) Report to the Presidency on progress with regards to the programmatic IGR work undertaken by the district coordination hubs.
Provincial Government	<p>The provinces will play an integral role in the programmatic approach through the President's Coordinating Council (PCC) and by leading the coordination processes at the provincial level utilising the Premiers Coordinating Forum (PCF) structures and participating via Provincial DCoG in the District/Metro Coordination Steering Committees.</p>
Role of Premier's Offices	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Oversee the effective implementation of district-based coordination and delivery models and systems within the province. b) Oversee provincial policy and provincial sector planning and budgeting coherence according to national priorities and the district/metro developmental impact. c) Ensure provincial sector alignment in district/metro intergovernmental working sessions and approving and adopting Single Joined-Up Plans; capacity building plans; and shared resourcing initiatives. d) Convene Premier's Coordinating Forum (PCF) Council and provide feedback and strategic guidance to municipalities. e) Receive and engage with the on-going reports from the district/metro coordination hubs via DCoG and PCF. f) Receive and engage with the impact monitoring reports.
Role of Provincial Departments of Cooperative Governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) Support the implementation and institutionalisation of DDM in the province and utilise it to assist the province with its coordination; support; and local government oversight responsibilities.

Institution	Roles and Responsibilities
	b) Support the Premier's Office in cascading the provincial priorities and aligning provincial sector strategies and plans with the district/metro developmental impact. c) Support the Premier's Office in terms of convening PCFs, reporting to PCC; and overseeing the effective implementation of the district-based model. d) Participate in the D/MCSCs and guide the functioning of the hubs.
District Coordination Hubs' Functions	Integrated Planning & Implementation -Manage and coordinate the process of formulating Single Joined-Up plan for the district/metro space: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ demographics ➤ economic positioning and investment attraction: ➤ spatial restructuring ➤ infrastructure engineering ➤ service provisioning ➤ governance: ➤ Develop and manage a work plan for the plan formulation process in consultation with national, relevant province and district or metro; ➤ Undertake and coordinate research related to district service delivery and development ➤ Identify key national and local priorities; and district localization factors; ➤ Assess local and sector plans against long-term planning criteria; ➤ Coordinate compilation of district diagnostic profiles as a basis to inform the single plan formulation; ➤ Support the district and local municipalities to make and coordinate their inputs into the plan formulation process; ➤ Convene intergovernmental working sessions; ➤ Compile inputs emanating from working sessions; ➤ Manage the drafting and adoption of Single Joined-Up Plans; ➤ Oversee implementation processes; ➤ Track IGR compact commitments; and ➤ Coordinate project preparation.
District Coordination Steering Committee	The coordination steering committee consists of the district hub manager and representatives of provincial DCoG, district and local municipalities. The steering committee will assume ownership of the work of the hubs and be responsible for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Guiding and advising in respect of all four components of the hubs' work: ➤ integrated planning ➤ capacity building ➤ shared resourcing ➤ impact monitoring. ➤ Approving the hubs' business and work plans; ➤ Overseeing implementation of business and work plans; ➤ Supporting and enabling the smooth running and operational functioning of the hubs; ➤ Enabling conducive environment for intergovernmental collaboration; ➤ Serving as a clearing house for any bottlenecks or challenges;

Institution	Roles and Responsibilities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Reporting to DCoG and identifying progress; challenges; and opportunities in relating to improving government coherence, service delivery and development. <p><u>Capacity Building</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Support the district and local municipalities to identify capacity building needs; ➤ Develop district capacity building plans and programmes together with the province, district and local municipalities; ➤ Consolidate all capacity building funding and support according to the plan; ➤ Coordinate capacity building programmes; ➤ Establish capacity building coordination forum; ➤ Oversee implementation of capacity building plan; and ➤ Track the impact of capacity building initiatives. <p><u>Shared Resourcing</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Support the district and local municipalities to identify critical human resource capacity building needs; ➤ Identify critical resource gaps in the district and local municipalities; ➤ Mobilise the relevant experts/specialists to be made available to the district and/or local municipalities; ➤ Enable district and local municipalities to share resources and perform core functions; ➤ Manage the deployment of personnel; and ➤ Monitor the effectiveness of resources and utilization thereof. <p><u>Impact Monitoring</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Develop monitoring system to monitor the impact of government work within the district and metropolitan spaces; ➤ Develop baseline monitoring information and data; ➤ Develop key outcomes and performance indicators; ➤ Monitor inputs and assess against envisaged outcomes; ➤ Coordinate reporting and prepare impact monitoring reports; ➤ Identify and track improvements in government coherence and development impact; and ➤ Generate and coordinate human development indexes and community satisfaction surveys.

Source: DCoG DDM 2024

8.25.13 DDM Gazette

The regulation framing the institutionalisation of **District Development Model** in terms of section 47(1) b of the intergovernmental relations Framework Act of 2005 was gazetted by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional affairs on the **15 April 2024**

8.26 Project Management Unit (PMU)

8.26.1 Roles and Responsibilities for PMU

- ✓ Support on contract management
- ✓ Monitoring and evaluation of project performance and expenditure by allocation of a dedicated person allocated to support each directorate
- ✓ Coordination of various grant performance and reporting processes
- ✓ Institutional coordination of PSP performance for quarterly reporting
- ✓ Implementation of EPWP program and related compliance

The Municipality is currently responsible for capital infrastructure projects funded from **IUDG, RBIG, NDPG, WISG; PTNG, EPWP, MDRG, INEP and CRR.**

8.26.2 NEIGHBORHOOD DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

The Precinct Plan is for development and connection of the identified business nodes in Seshego urban hub as part of the NDPG (Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant) funded project from National Treasury. During the investigations about Seshego Urban hub, it was realized that there are some areas where the facilities/infrastructure need re-designing to accommodate growth patterns at Seshego. It becomes the priority of the precinct plan to address those problems at a minimal cost while ensuring that people still receive the required services as they are supposed to.

The precinct plan is aimed at promoting the performance of Seshego urban hub with the following objectives: Formalise public transportation facilities and services. Increase pedestrian volumes to the hub by defining and improving pedestrian movement. To create vibrancy, job opportunities and increase population thresholds by means of the integration and mix of land uses such as commercial, transport, social and public space, higher residential densities and training facilities. Establish a public square to encourage social and cultural gathering and interaction. Improve the Economic Development within the entire hub. To date, 25 projects have been identified during the precinct planning and it will require R850 300 125.00 to complete the project in phases.

AM Consulting Engineers have been appointed by the municipality to assist with implementation of the projects within the precinct plan in Seshego Urban Hub. Though the precinct plan has been approved by the Council, National Treasury has allowed the municipality to revise the plan, reprioritise the implementation of certain projects and propose new projects where possible. This will assist both the municipality and National Treasury to fully implement the NDPG Programme by also exploring other possible sources of funding. The precinct plan is reviewed regularly as and when needs arise, and engagements are done with national Treasury for assessment and prioritisation of projects.

In the 2020/21 the NDPG team at National Treasury advised that a x 108 sub precinct be developed to focus on heart of the already approved precinct plan. The Precinct Plan Review aims to transform the existing Seshego into an urban hub that is vibrant, pedestrian orientated, create convenience and functions as a Transit Oriented Development (TOD) environment. The interventions proposed are subject to availability of bulk infrastructure capacity and strong precinct management. Successful government interventions will stimulate private sector opportunities and confidence to invest in the hub. All these interventions will be to the advantage of the broader community of Seshego and Polokwane it is noted that the Precinct Plan recommendations may have to be updated if any final designs impact on the Precinct design proposals.

The precinct plan review together with x108 sub-precinct developed report was approved by National Treasury which allow the municipality to implement the project. Further source the private sector for investment within the hub as part of economic enhancement within the hub and surrounding areas to improving the social cohesion within the society.

8.27 Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a nation-wide Government Programme aiming at drawing significant numbers of unemployed into productive work, so that they increase their capacity to earn an income.

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) was initiated in 2004 with the primary goal of reducing unemployment across South Africa. The EPWP provides labour intensive employment created through the infrastructure sector, social sector, environment sector as well as the non-state sector. These sectors under the EPWP therefore have a dual purpose namely, job creation and upgrading of infrastructure.

The persistently high rate of unemployment in South Africa is one of the most pressing socio-economic challenges facing the Government and the City of Polokwane is not immune to these challenges. High youth unemployment in particular means young people are not acquiring the skills or experience needed to drive the economy forward.

Therefore, job creation and skills development remain the key priorities of the the City of Polokwane. EPWP targets are set annually by the National Government, which the Municipality is expected to achieve. With the introduction of the EPWP phase III, the Municipality has performed well in terms of job creation, by achieving their target for the first year. Currently most jobs are created through Capital projects as well as Operational projects, and quite a significant number of jobs are created through Water and Sanitation, Waste Management, Roads and storm water, Environment Management and Transportation Projects.

An EPWP policy document was developed and approved by Council in 2012/13 financial year and is reviewed annually. The policy is aimed at providing an enabling environment for the Municipality to upscale the EPWP Programme, through the re-orientation of the line budget function and channeling a substantial amount of the overall annual budget allocation and human resources towards the implementation of EPWP. This policy also advocates for the establishment of a Municipal EPWP Steering Committee which has since been established and is responsible for the strategic direction and coordination of EPWP.

To ensure accountability by all Directorates in the achievement of these set National EPWP targets, the Directorates are allocated annually, a portion of the total target which the Directorates must achieve.

The Municipality is currently implementing PHASE V of the Expanded Public Works Program which came into effect in April 2024.

8.27.1 Objectives of EPWP Phase V

The Objective of EPWP Phase V is:

To create five million work opportunities over the next five years ending 31 March 2029. This phase emphasizes increased youth participation, strengthened skills development, and targeted exit strategies for participants. It aims to enhance the quality of work experiences and the services delivered to communities.

EPWP Phase IV Focus

- Improve coordination and effectiveness of structures implementing the Programme
- Improve the implementation framework from recruitment to the end. Implementation should be bolstered through effective monitoring and accountability,
- Define impactful projects. While providing work opportunities and skills, there is a need to contribute towards improving the quality and delivery of services to the people
- Improve training to provide meaningful skills while preserving the cost benefit.
- Ensure proper exit strategies through enterprise development and linking other participants with permanent employment for the participants to be able to become entrepreneurs and also enter the job market. Well positioned to coordinate and participate in the implementation of the EPWP Phase 5.

8.27.2 Community Work Programme

The Municipality in partnership with the Department of Co-operative Governance Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs (COGHSTA) is implementing the Community Work Program (CWP). The CWP targets specific areas, where a significant number of people unemployed are drawn into productive work. The communities identify useful work at community level.

The programme aims to provide an employment safety net, by providing a minimum level of regular work opportunities to participants, with a predictable number of days of work provided per month. It is targeted at the unemployed and/or underemployed people of working age, including those whose livelihood activities are insufficient to lift them out of poverty. The Polokwane Municipality has received an allocation of 1882 participants from (COGHSTA) through the CWP and participants are distributed across different wards.

8.27.3 EPWP Jobs Targets

As part of the EPWP, the municipality set EPWP targets for each project which contractors have to achieve. It is also a requirement in terms of demographics that, 55% of the people employed during project construction should be youth. For the 2023/24 Financial year a total of 3665 EPWP participants were recruited on projects, out of which 1703 were Women, 1535 youth and 18 were people with disability.

- EPWP Job Creation Target for 2024/25 Financial Year is =2478
- Work Opportunities achieved = 580 to date

8.28 PMU Challenges

- Poor performance of service providers leading to delays.
- Terminations of contracts.
- Delays in approvals of technical reports.
- Delays in the approval of Implementation Readiness Status (IRS) documents prevent the municipality from conducting long term planning on water and waste water projects.
- Prolonged procurement process of service providers in some instances.
- Completed but dysfunctional water supply and waste management projects due to outstanding electricity connections by Eskom.
- Vandalism of completed infrastructure.
- Inconsistency in submission of EPWP reports and compliance documents.

8.28.1 Proposed Intervention on PMU Challenges

- The municipality continues to improve projects planning across all funding sources. Project planning for each financial year commences in the third and fourth quarter in order to ensure that project implementation is achieved by the first quarter of each implementation year.
- The municipality uses a multiyear implementation approach for medium to long term projects with the aim of improving the rate of service delivery and back log eradication.

- The municipality further uses a three-year panel for professional service providers for project planning and implementation.
- Putting technical support in place for interventions for poor performing projects. Where intervention is not successful contractors are penalized or terminated.
- Appointment of contractors on a three-year period to eliminate procurement delays on a medium term.
- All affected SBUs to adopt the resolution of servicing payment certificates only when service providers comply with EPWP requirements.

8.29 Technical Report Approval

The municipality implements its Regional Water Scheme (RWS) projects mostly through the Integrated Urban Development Grant (IUDG). It is a requirement that the water projects be taken through the process of the technical reports by the municipality through appointed consultants, which are then processed by the Department of Water Affairs for recommendation of grant funding.

8.30 Capital Expenditure Framework(CEF)

The framework includes all the infrastructure that falls within the mandate of the municipality. The infrastructure is funded by the municipality and includes own funding, various grants received as well as borrowing raised by the municipality itself.

The CEF is an important tool in ensuring that long term infrastructure investment decisions are timeously made in a financially viable way to support the Intergrated Urban Development Framework(IUDF) objectives in facilitating spatial transformation.

The CEF also serves a business plan for the implementation of Intergrated Urban Development Grant(IUDG) funded projects. The Municipality is currently in a process of the first review of the capital expenditure framework since the approval in the 2019/20FY.

8.31 2024/25 Grants performance.

The municipality has received allocations of grants to support infrastructure development in the current financial year which are managed as follows:

GRANT REGISTER		
Code	Grant	SBU
IUDG	Integrated Urban Development Grant	PMU, Roads and Storm water, Water and Sanitation, Sports and

GRANT REGISTER		
Code	Grant	SBU
		Recreation, Waste Management, Energy services and Planning and Economic development
RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant	Water and Sanitation
PTNG	Public Transport Infrastructure Grant	Transportation Services
EPWP	Extended public works programme	PMU
INEP	Integrated National Electrification Programme	Energy Services
NDPG	Neighbourhood Dev Partnership Grant	Roads and Storm water
WSIG	Water Services Infrastructure Grant	Water and Sanitation
MDRG	Municipal Disaster Relief Grant	Roads & Storm water

Source: Polokwane PMU SBU:

8.32 PLANNING FOR 2024/25 FY

8.32.1 2024/25FY Grant Allocations

This part aims to update the progress on the municipality's Capital Infrastructure Program for the Financial Year (2024/25).

GRANT	2023/24 FY BUDGET
RBIG	R126 013 000
IUDG (co-managed by Water and Sanitation, Roads and Transportation, Community Services and Planning& Economic Development)	R413 544 000
NDPG	R44 984 000
WSIG	R76 000 000
PTNG	R267 249 000
INEP	R12 573 000
MDRG	R4 765 000
Total	R945 128 000 *

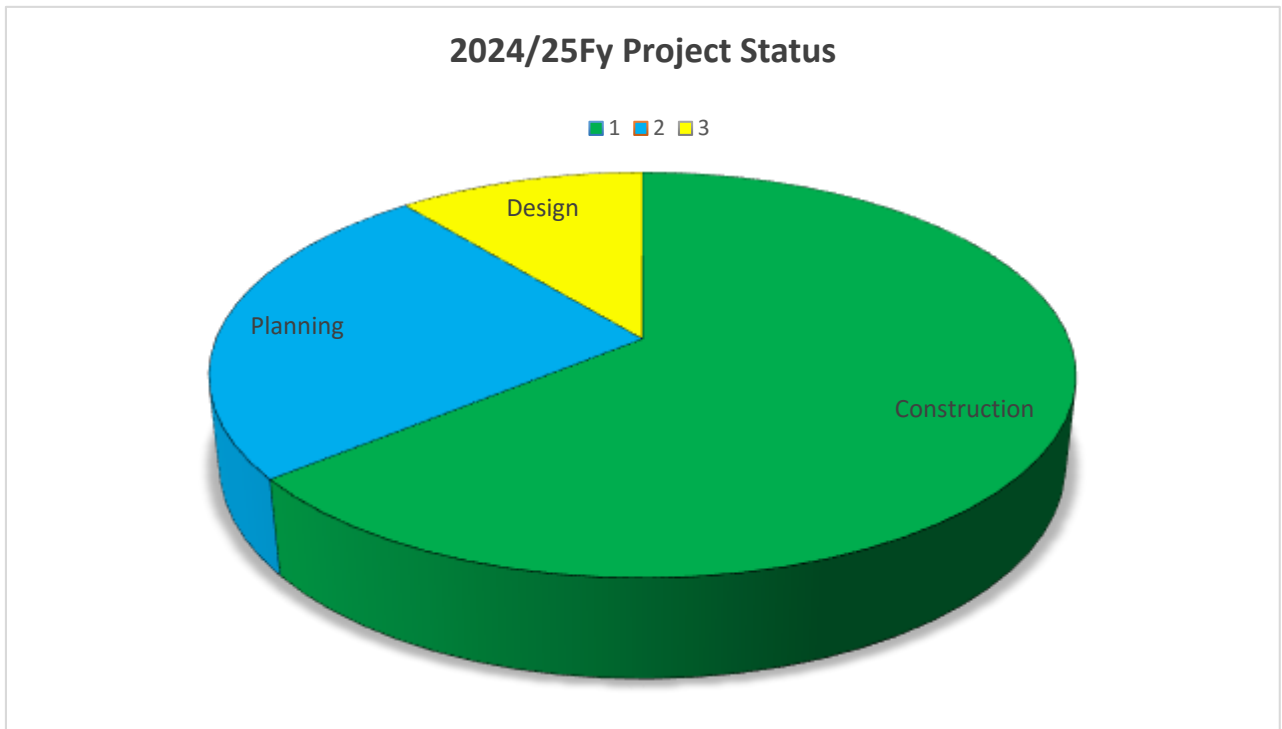
Source: Polokwane PMU SBU

8.32.2 SUMMARY OF FORWARD PLANNING

There a total of 134 capital projects funded from various grants with statuses categorised as follows:

#	PROJECT STATUS	NUMBER OF PROJECTS	VALUE
1	CONSTRUCTION	81	R517 218 268
2	PLANNING	38	R192 467 541
3	DESIGN	15	R103 015 505
	TOTAL	134	R 812 701 314

8.32.3 2024/25 Financial Year Project Status Quo



8.32.4. 2024/25FY IUDG Projects

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
1	Paving of AKI streets in RDP section SDA1 (Luthuli)	R1.024.575,00	02/09/2024	20/02/2025	Procurement
2	Paving of internal ring roads to University road in Toronto	R1.022.118,00	02/09/2024	20/02/2024	Procurement
3	Paving of internal streets in Mountain view	R2.722.118,00	01/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
4	Paving of internal streets at Mankgaile, Ga-Mokoatedi to D4040 until GaRachidi	R4.024.575,00	01/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
5	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 1	R3.024.575,00	11/12/2023	07/07/2024	Construction
6	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 2	R3.024.575,00	22-Apr-24	23-Aug-24	Construction

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
7	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 3	R3.024.575,00	22-Apr-24	23-Sep-24	Construction
8	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 5	R3.024.575,00	25-Apr-24	26-Sep-24	Construction
9	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 6	R3.024.575,00	10/05/2024	10/11/2024	Construction
10	Paving of internal streets in Seshego Zone 8	R3.024.575,00	07/05/2024	27/01/2025	Construction
11	Paving of internal street in Ga Rankhuwe	R2.024.575,00	01/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
12	Paving of internal streets in Extension 75 (Ward 14)	R3.000.000,00	Planning	Planning	Construction
13	Paving of Dwars Street Connecting ext 40 and 78.(Ward 08)	R2.347.826,00	13/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
14	Planning of Paving of internal street at Disteneng	R1.024.575,00	Planning	Planning	Planning
15	Paving of internal street at Madiga(Ward 29)	R1.000.000,00	23/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
16	Paving of internal street from University road to Makanye primary school	R2.000.000,00	31/10/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
17	Paving of Koppermyn internal road Ga- Maja (Ward 2)	R2.000.000,00	22-Feb-24	30/09/2024	Construction
18	Paving of internal street at Ceres(Ward 45)	R1.000.000,00	17/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
19	Paving of internal street in Ga Dikgale Moshate	R2.108.696,00	22/07/2024	22/11/2024	Construction
20	Upgrading of streets in Nirvana extension	R3.000.000,00	22/07/2024	22/11/2024	Construction
21	Paving of streets in Westernburg RDP Section	R3.024.575,00	06/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
22	Paving of streets in Benharris from Zebediela to D19(ward 08)	R2.722.118,00	01/10/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
23	Paving of Bloodriver main road via Mulautsi high school to agriculture houses (ward 10)	R2.722.118,00	01/10/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
24	Paving of internal street in Mankweng Unit A, to Pulamadibogo street from LG to Church (ward 25)	R2.722.118,00	01/10/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
25	Paving of internal street from Solomondale to D3997 (ward 32)	R4.222.118,00	29/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
26	Paving of internal street ring road at Ga-Makibelo to Hlahla (ward 38)	R4.268.431,00	04/12/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
27	Construction of Storm Water in Ga Semanya	R3.478.261,00	01/10/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
28	Upgrading of Storm water Channel at Thutu Street at Seshego zone 4	R2.722.118,00	01/09/2024	28/02/2025	Design
29	Upgrading of storm water in Polokwane ext. 76	R2.608.696,00	15/01/2024	22/07/2024	Construction
30	Upgrading of Storm Water Storm Water in Sterpark; Flora Park; and Fauna Park	R2.722.118,00	01/09/2024	28/02/2025	Design
31	Paving of Road from Matsiokwane Village to Ngwanalaka crossing at Mafiane Ward 24	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
32	Paving of access road to Mashate wa Mothapo	R1.888.737,00	22/07/2024	23/09/2024	Contractor appointed, site handover to be done on the 22 July 2024
33	Paving of access road to Moshate wa Moletji	R2.000.000,00	22/07/2024	23/09/2024	Contractor appointed, site handover to be done on the 22 July 2024
34	Paving of streets in Thakgalane	R500.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
35	Rehabilitation of Bodenstein from Schoeman to Oost	R1.000.000,00	15/07/2024	30/09/2024	Contractor appointed, site handover done on the 26 June 2024
36	Rehabilitation of Burger from Hospital to Suid	R1.000.000,00	06/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
37	Rehabilitation of Hans Van Rensburg from Hospital to Suid	R1.000.000,00	15/07/2024	30/09/2024	Contractor appointed, site handover done on the 26 June 2024
38	Rehabilitation of Jorisen from Munnik ave to Dahl	R1.000.000,00	09/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
39	Rehabilitation of Boom from Devenish to Excelsior	R1.000.000,00	02/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
40	Rehabilitation of Rabe from Oost to Bok (From Plain)	R1.000.000,00	03/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
41	Rehabilitation Dorp from Hospital to Suid	R1.000.000,00	05/07/2024	30/09/2024	Construction
42	Completion of Beryl from Veldspaat to Mangnesiet	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
43	Upgrading of stormwater in Ivypark (Emperor)	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
44	Planning for construction of service road in Dalmada	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
45	Tarring of Road from Tshebela to Moshate	R14.524.575,00	07/03/2024	07/11/2024	Construction
46	Upgrading of access Roads from Ga Thaba in Molepo, Chuene, Maja cluster	R2.024.575,00	06/11/2023	27/07/2024	Construction
47	Upgrading of road from Mohlonong to Kalkspruit	R2.524.575,00	03/06/2024	03/02/2025	Construction
48	Upgrading of road from Monyoaneng to Lonsdale	R4.024.575,00	22/11/2023	26/07/2024	Construction
49	Upgrading of access road in Ga Makgoba	R3.061.437,00	07/12/2023	30/08/2024	Construction

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
50	Upgrading of road from Nobody Traffic circle to Moshate Mothapo	R3.024.575,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
51	Upgrading of road from Phomolong to Makgwareng	R2.500.000,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
52	Upgrading of road from Spitzkop to Segwasi	R5.073.724,00	23/11/2023	24/10/2024	Construction
53	Upgrading of road from Titibe to Marobala and Makgoba	R3.000.000,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
54	Upgrading of road from Matobole to Silicon	R4.024.575,00	21/03/2024	21/09/2024	Construction
55	Upgrading of road from Maja Moshate to Feke	R3.043.478,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
56	Paving of road from Sengatane (D3330) to Chebeng (ward 09)	R2.722.118,00	22/07/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
57	Upgrading of road D3432 from Ga-Mosi(Gilead road) via Sengatane to Chebeng(ward 16)	R3.024.575,00	23/11/2023	23/05/2024	Construction
58	Paving of road in ga Thoka from reserrior to Makanye 4034(ward 27)	R2.310.019,00	01/10/2024	30/06/2025	Construction
59	Upgrading of Bus road from R71 to Dinokeng between Mshongoville Gashiloane to Matshela pata(ward 28)	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
60	Paving of Sekoala primary school road to mehlakong (ward 29)	R2.549.149,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
61	Upgrading of arterial road in Tshware from Taxi rank via Tshware village to mamotshwa clinic(ward 30)	R3.293.006,00	02/05/2025	27/01/2025	Construction
62	Upgrading of arterial road D3997 from GaMokgopo to Ga Makalanyane (ward 33)	R949.500,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
63	Upgrading of road from Ga Mamphaka to Spitzkop (ward 34)	R3.524.575,00	18/04/2024	18/12/2024	Construction

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
64	Upgrading of road from Ralema primary school via Krukutje , Ga Mmasehla, Ga legodi, Mokgohloa to Molepo bottle store (ward 36)	R2.049.149,00	01/10/2024	30/06/2025	Construction
65	Upgrading of Internal Street in Ga Ujane to D3363 (ward 40)	R4.110.586,00	30/11/2023	30/09/2024	Construction
66	Upgrading of arterial road D3355 from Monotwane to Matlala clinic (ward 41)	R4.293.006,00	06/05/2024	12/11/2024	Construction
67	Upgrading of arterial road in Magongwa village from road D3378 to road D19 (ward 42)	R3.024.575,00	22/07/2024	30/03/2025	Construction
68	Upgrading of arterial road D3383 in Setumong via Mahoai to Kgomo school(Ward 43)	R3.024.575,00	06/05/2024	12/11/2024	Construction
69	Upgrading of arterial road from Moetagare in to Setumong D3382	R3.524.575,00	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Procurement
70	Upgrading of arterial road from Ditshweneng to Maja Moshate	R2.739.287,00	22/07/2024	31/03/2025	Construction
71	Completion of the links to SANRAL roads network	R1.050.500,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
72	Upgrading of arterial road D3355 from Monotwane to Matlala clinic (ward 42)	R1.000.000,00	Project is still at planning stage	Project is still at planning stage	Planning
73	WIP Olifantspoort RWS (Mmotong wa Perekisi) 233600	R3.103.361,36	06-Mar-23	19-Jul-24	Construction
74	Mothapo RWS	R7.189.295,00	13-Jun-23	30-Jul-24	Construction
75	Moletjie East RWS	R2.527.543,00	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
76	Sebayeng/Dikgale RWS	R4.764.056,56	19-Jan-24	19-Jul-24	Construction
77	Houtriver RWS	R4.217.391,00	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
78	Chuene Maja RWS	R4.217.391,00	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design
79	Molepo RWS	R5.145.557,00	R 45.299	R 45.509	Construction
80	Laastehoop RWS	R 2.803.301	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
81	Mankweng RWS	R 2.803.301	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
82	Boyne RWS	R 2.571.256	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
83	Aganang RWS (2) (Ramobola, Madietane)	18.125.659,00	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Procurement
84	Bakone RWS (3) (Ramokadikadi)	R 5.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
85	Kalkspruit Water Supply (Aganang Ward 42)	R 4.298.838	R 45.161	R 45.534	Construction
86	Mashashane Water Works	R 6.998.110	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
87	Capital Replacement on Water & Sanitation	R 5.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	As and when replacement of parts is required
88	Drilling of Boreholes in all Municipal Clusters	R 10.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
89	Greening programme	R 3.000.000	1-Sep-24	12/31/2024	Implementation
90	Greening Programme for Disteneng	R 808.696	1-Sep-2024	12/31/2024	Implementation
91	Development of a regional parks In Rural Areas	R 1.172.023	1-Jul-2024	6/5/2025	Design
92	Construction of Ablution Facilities at Mankweng Parks	R 1.000.000	1-Jul-2024	1/31/2025	Design
93	Upgrading of Tom Naude Park	R 2.500.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design
94	Extension of landfill site(Weltevreden)	R 3.500.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
95	Seshego transfer station	R 5.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design
96	Westernburg Transfer Station	R 6.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design
97	Molepo Transfer Station	R 3.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
98	Ga- Maja transfer station(Planning)	R 1.469.107	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
99	Ga- Chuene transfer station(Planning)	R 1.412.287	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
100	Construction of Sebayeng / Dikgale Sport Complex	R 6.523.887	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	negotiating Priced BOQ with contractor
101	EXT 44/78 Sports and Recreation Facility	R 7.000.000	07/09/2023	28/03/2025	construction
102	Construction of Softball stadium in City Cluster	R 23.000.000	6/24/2024	TBC	Contractor appointed
103	Construction of Ablution Facilities Ga-Manamela	R 1.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
104	Construction of Mankweng Sports Complex	R 10.000.000	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Design
105	Construction of Molepo Sports Complex	R 2.000.000	5/6/2021	Project not yet started	contractor halted
106	Provision of short term engineering services for Bakone Malapa	R 17.656.951	8 March 20023	3 years from start	Detail design for water and sewer is submitted
107	Rural Household Sanitation	R 20.975.340	14/02/2024	30/11/24	Construction
108	Capital Expenditure Framework	R 7.576.481	01/07/2023	Project to end 9 months later. Consultant also appointed on panel of consultants	Consultation stage on draft CEF

8.32.5 2024/25FY NDPG Projects

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
1	Hospital view additional roads	R 15.152.956	February 2023	April 2024	Construction
2	Construction of Nelson Mandela Bo-okelo, Ditlou Crossing	R 12.750.396	June 2023	June 2024	Construction
3	Construction of Storm water Canal in Seshego	R 17.080.648	March 2023	May 2024	Construction

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus

8.32.6 2024/25FY WSIG Projects

#	Project Name	Budget	Project start date	Project completion date	Project Staus
1	Moletjie North RWS	R 1.347.826	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
2	Moletjie South RWS	R 14.217.391	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
3	Badimong RWS	R 5.608.696	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning
4	Aganang RWS (3) (Rapitsi, Kgabo Park, Mars, Wash Bank)	R 22.748.582	March 2024	August 2024	Construction & Planning
5	Segwasi RWS	R 10.493.682	Dec 2023	July 2024	Construction & Planning
6	Bakone RWS (2) (Ga- Phoffu, Ga-Ntlolane)	R 21.583.823	February 2024	August 2024	Construction
7	Moletjie North RWS	R 1.347.826	Project not yet started	Project not yet started	Planning

CHAPTER Nine - Municipal Transformation and Organisational Development Analysis

9.1 ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE

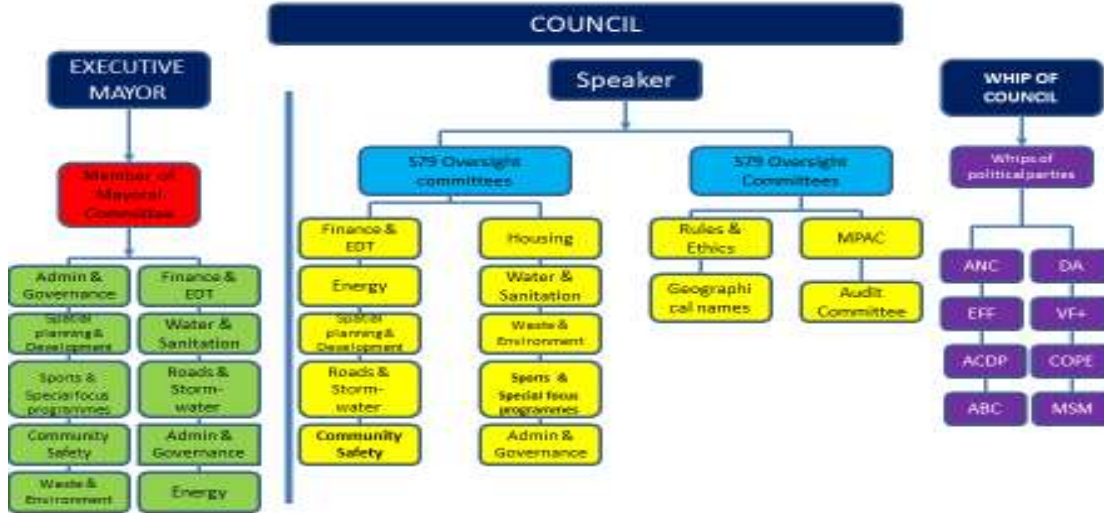
Municipalities are faced with increased scrutiny, budget constraints and pressure to improve services. Leaders are taking a hard look at Service Delivery as part of their strategic initiatives to modernize. Service delivery is carried out primarily through human capital. Polokwane municipality can only position itself to deliver effectively and efficiently from inside by attracting and keeping skilled workers and by also promoting itself as being a desirable place to relocate to or grow up and stay in. The ability to maintain skilled workers is accomplished by anticipating and accommodating new trends in service delivery, skills, local population, demographics and new economic opportunities.

The organizational structure is not simply an organization's chart. It is all people, positions procedures, processes, culture, technology, and related elements that make up the organization. It explains how all these pieces work together (or in some instances they don't work together). The structure must be aligned to the strategic objectives of the municipality in order to achieve the mission and goals of a Smart City. The structure must be totally aligned with strategy for the organization to achieve its mission and goals.

The governance model consists of the Legislative Authority (Speaker of Council, Chief Whip and Section 79 Portfolio and Standing Committees), the Executive Authority (Executive Mayor and Members of the Mayoral Committee (MMCs) as indicated below.

9.1.1 Political Governance Structure

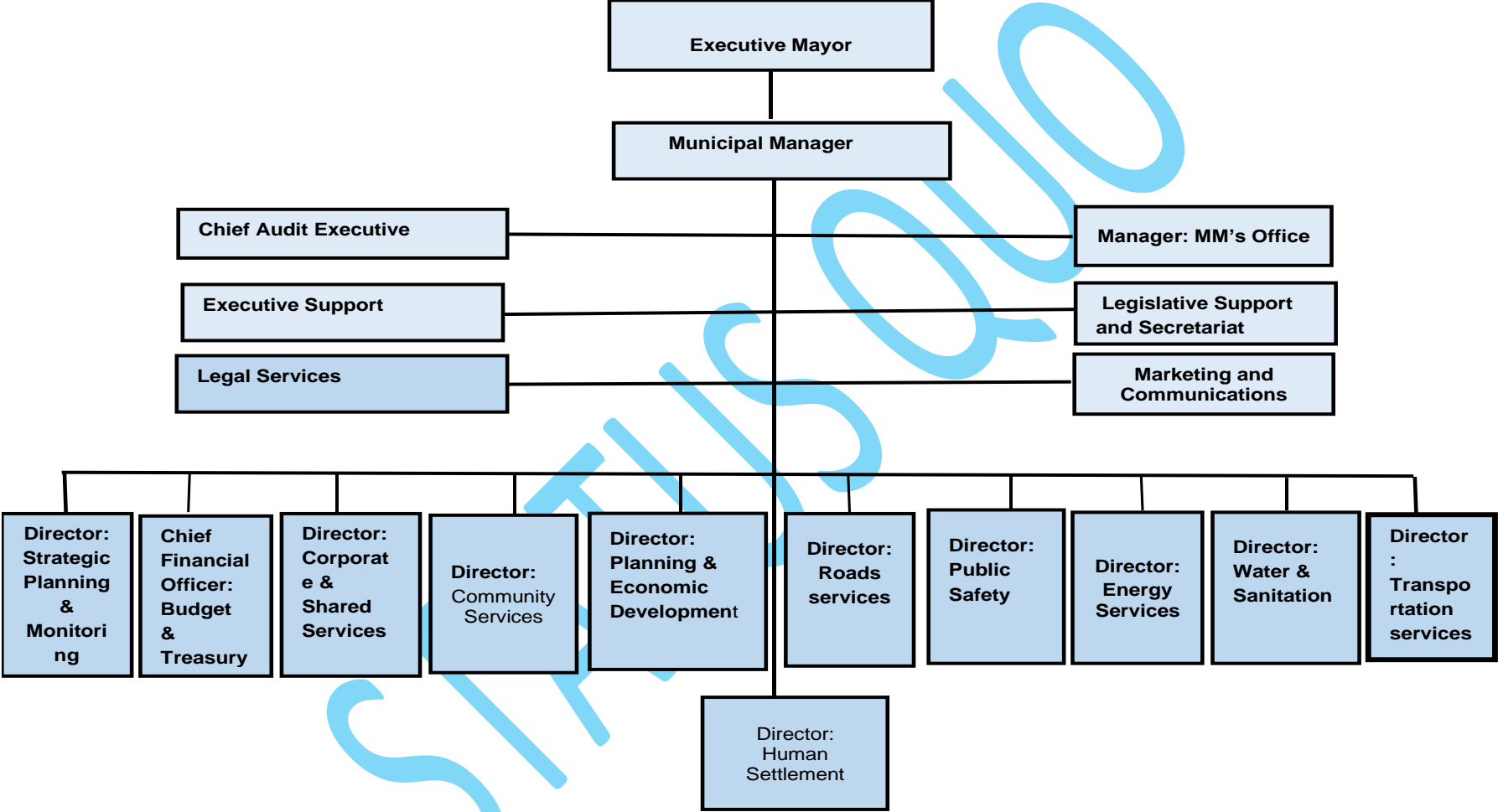
POLITICAL GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE



The organizational structure has 4892 positions. The structure is being implemented through a phased in approach in response to new developments.

9.2 ADMINISTRATIVE GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

CITY OF POLOKWANE



9.2.1. Appointment of Senior Managers

There are **(12)** Senior Manager Positions on the City of Polokwane's Organogram as at the end of 2023/2024.

- 1) Municipal Manager (MM)
- 2) Chief Financial Officer (CFO)
- 3) Director: Planning and Economic Development
- 4) Director: Community Services
- 5) Director: Transportation Services
- 6) Director: Roads Services
- 7) Director: Corporate and Shared Services
- 8) Director: Water and Sanitation
- 9) Director: Energy Services
- 10) Director Strategic Planning Monitoring and Evaluation)**
- 11) Director Public Safety**
- 12) Director Human Settlements**

9.2.2 New Senior Managers Positions on the organogram

It has been resolved that Director: **Public Safety** position will only be filled when the City attains the **Metro status**. The functions of this Directorate are still rendered by Directorate Community Services, the Human Settlements Directorate functions are rendered by Planning and Economic Development.

9.2.3 Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Table 1: Total number of positions in the structure per Directorate

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Office of the Municipal Manager	7	-	16	6	9	15	22	12	12	5	1	-	2	1	-	-	8	116
Chief Operations Office (SPME)	3	-	10	12	1	2	1	1	9	-	4	-	2	-	-	-	31	76
Budget and Treasury	6	-	15	6	9	18	5	13	65	57	12	1	5	-	-	-	5	218

Job Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	Total
Corporate and Shared Services	5	-	16	23	27	9	13	13	40	4	62	8	5	-	-	-	157	382
Planning and Economic Development	6	-	12	21	37	41	22	18	10	12	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	181
Human Settlement	2	-	3	2	-	10	3	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2	35
Community Services	5	-	7	1	9	21	41	30	60	121	21	8	5	25	6	56	1177	1593
Public Safety	4	-	6	8	19	65	156	202	189	92	29	41	4	-	-	60	36	911
Transportation Services	3	-	5	1	0	9	3	4	3	7	-	-	-	2	-	-	2	39
Roads Services	1	-	4	10	13	4	12	17	38	1	1	28	1	-	-	-	200	330
Energy Services	2	-	5	8	7	9	17	15	63	17	6	-	2	-	-	-	114	265
Water and Sanitation	3	-	5	8	16	10	18	12	95	44	15	1	50	-	-	-	454	731
Total																		4874

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

The breakdown above excludes the 12 Senior Managers and the Deputy CFO appointed on contract at level 0.

The total staff complement based on the current organizational structure stands at **1 924** with a **4.23%** turnover rate. Municipalities are highly regulated as such it's a challenge to retain or attract talent. It is a common occurrence that skilled employees will always look for greener pastures or leave for bigger cities due to the highly regulated salaries and wages.

A job evaluation process is underway led by SALGA (South African Local Government Association).

The process is meant to:

- Evaluate all new positions within Polokwane Municipality.
- Implement the results of the evaluation in line with the wage curve.

TABLE:2

Number of jobs on the structure	Number of jobs evaluated	Number of jobs submitted to Provincial Audit Committee
732	652	530

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.2.4 Positions and Budget Per Directorate

POSITIONS AND BUDGET PER DIRECTORATE (2023-2024)

Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget (2022-2023)
Municipal Manager's Office	24	15	9	7	2	R21 121 530
Chief Operations Office	187	102	85	26	59	R97 269 405
Budget & Treasury Office	223	144	79	39	40	R108 811 790
Corporate and Shared Services	369	162	207	56	151	R111 075 969
Planning & Economic Development	176	59	117	13	104	R65 516 182
Human Settlements	36	18	18	3	15	R16 575 199
Community Services	1592	510	1082	134	948	R210 395 042
Public Safety	912	382	530	92	438	R267 173 600

Directorate	Number of Positions as per Organogram	Positions Filled	Positions Vacant	Number of Budgeted vacancies	Non Budgeted vacancies	Salary Budget (2022-2023)
Transportation Services	40	119	248	36	212	R15 382 050
Roads Services	40	11	29	14	15	R47 144 768
Energy Services	331	105	226	29	197	R102 234 381
Water and Sanitation	732	321	411	92	319	R162 476 426
GRAND TOTAL	4884	1988	2896	540	2356	R1 225 176 343

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.3 Skills Development and Training

Training presents a prime opportunity to expand the knowledge base of all employees. In some instances, many employers find training as an expensive opportunity; work time is consumed by training session. Despite this drawback, training and development provides both the municipality and the individual employee with benefits that may cost time; however, it is a worthwhile investment.

9.3.1 Addressing Weakness in workplace skills.

Most employees have some gaps in their skills. A training program allows you to strengthen those skills that each employee needs to improve. A development program brings all employees to a higher level, so they all have similar skills and knowledge. This helps reduce any weak links within the municipality.

Improved Employee Performance

An employee who receives the necessary training can perform better his/her job. The training may also build the employee's confidence because she/he has a stronger understanding of the systems within a municipality.

Consistency

A structured training and development program ensures that employees have a consistent experience and background knowledge. All employees need to be aware of the expectations and procedures within the municipality.

Employee Satisfaction

Employees with access to training and development programs have the advantage over employees in other institutions that are left to seek out training opportunities on their own. The investment in training that an institution makes shows the employees that they are valued. MSA 2000 S68 (1) requires municipalities to develop their human resource capacity to a level that enables them to perform their function and exercise their powers in an economical, effective, efficient and accountable way.

9.3.2 Skills Development Act (SDA)

The Skills Development Act (SDA) aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. Furthermore, it aims to provide the financing of skills development by means of a levy – financing scheme and a National Skills Fund. The Skills Development Act (SDA) aims to provide an institutional framework to devise and implement national, sector and workplace strategies to develop and improve the skills of the South African workforce. Furthermore, it aims to provide the financing of skills development by means of a levy – financing scheme and a National Skills Fund. The SDA also makes it a requirement for the municipality to compile a workplace skills plan and submit an implementation report. The municipality always adheres to this requirement.

9.3.3 Learnership programmes

Polokwane Municipality has implemented following Learnership program i.e.

TABLE 3: Learnership

Learnership	Numbers
Work Integrated Learning implemented	6

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

Polokwane Municipality has a total of 165 employees that meet the Municipal Regulations on Minimum Competencies, 2007. Section 14 (4) requires of municipalities to compile a report on compliance with prescribed competency levels. 142 employees and 12 Councillors were trained for the 2023/2024 financial year.

9.3.4 Institutional Plan

Institutional Plan -The purpose of reviewing the municipality's Organizational Structure and service delivery model is to ensure that it reflects the municipality's mandate and meets its obligations to its community.

In reviewing the structure, a holistically look at any pertinent changes that would be warranted to the current structure was taken cognizance of. The COGTA Guidelines on Staff Establishment, the Municipal staff regulations of 2021, as well as other relevant legislations were used as a process tool to make necessary amendments.

The review of the organisational structure reflects the alignment to the IDP, and eventually saw the abolishment of redundant positions and additions of some that are deemed critical.

9.4 Employment Equity

Polokwane Municipality views employment equity as a strategic priority and it recognises it as an important measure against which a Smart City and a world class organisation is benchmarked. The creation of an equitable working environment, with the dignity of all employees respected and the diversity of employees valued and properly managed, as a solid base for longer-term growth and competitive advantage.

The transformation and the successful management of diversity will deliver a competitive advantage that will deliver a stronger, more cohesive, and more productive municipality. It contributes to greater employee satisfaction and commitment resulting in lower staff turnover and stronger customer and stakeholder orientation and satisfaction.

MSA 2000 S67 requires municipalities to develop and adopt appropriate systems and procedures to ensure fair; efficient; effective; and transparent personnel administration in accordance with the Employment Equity Act 1998. In implementing such the Municipality should be realistic for these programmes to be achievable. They should be based on accurate information about race, gender and disability and reflect the demographics within Polokwane Municipality

9.4.1 Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

TABLE 4: Employment Equity Statistics - Polokwane Municipality

EMPLOYMENT EQUITY STATISTICS - 30 JUNE 2024										
Occupational Categories	Level	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
		FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
Top Management	MM, CFO & Directors	3	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
	1	8	21	1	1	0	0	0	0	31
Senior Management	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
	3	26	32	0	0	2	0	3	2	65
Professionally Qualified	4	19	23	2	1	0	1	0	6	52
	5	21	25	0	1	0	0	0	3	50
	6	37	50	1	0	0	0	3	7	98
Skilled Technical	7	43	49	1	0	0	0	1	7	101
	8	65	67	1	0	0	0	2	7	142
	9	102	100	1	4	1	0	4	9	221
	10	77	114	0	1	0	1	2	4	199
	11	44	29	1	0	0	0	0	0	74
	12	11	30	1	0	0	0	0	0	42
Semi-Skilled	13	7	19	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
	14	2	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
	15	5	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	26

	16	8	15	0	0	0	0	0	0	23
Unskilled	17	283	472	1	4	0	0	0	1	761
Total		761	1074	10	12	3	2	15	47	1924

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

TABLE 5: Summary

Gender	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total	National EAP	Provincial EAP	Polokwane
Females	761	10	3	15	789	55,2%	55,7%	41,01%
Males	1074	12	2	47	1135	44,8%	44,3%	58,99%
TOTAL	1924							

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.4.2 Summary of people with disabilities

TABLE 6: Summary of people with disabilities

SUMMARY OF PEOPLE WITH DISABILITIES					
Gender	African	Coloured	Indian	White	Total
Females	6	1	0	3	10
Males	14	0	0	11	25
TOTAL					35
The total number of People with Disabilities constitutes 1.82% of the total workforce of 1924					

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.4.3 Equity Plan for Polokwane Municipality

The Municipality has an Equity Plan as required by the Act in place. Positive measures are being implemented within the Municipality to ensure that positive measures as set out the Municipality's goals and targets are realised. The Employment Equity is guided by the National and Provincial Economically Active Population (EAP) as well as time frames. The plan needs continuous Monitoring and Evaluation. Development of an effective communication strategy, Consultation, and participation by all stakeholders. Research to inform ongoing policy making and planning process. The demographics as per Economically Active Population for Polokwane stands at 41.01% for women and 58.99% for men. The disabled employees constitute 1.82% of the total workforce as contained the total workforce table five (5) above.

It should be noted that at top management level the municipality has implemented targets, and it follows the Equity plan. Challenges remain in the category of disabled persons and women. The solution to this is to:

- Implement targeted recruitment process (Targeting women and the disabled)

9.5 Job grade analysis

TABLE 6: Job Grade Analysis

JOB GRADE ANALYSIS - 30 JUNE 2024									
Level	African		Coloured		Indian		White		Total
	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	FM	M	
1	8	21	1	1	0	0	0	0	31
2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
3	26	32	0	0	2	0	3	2	65
4	19	23	2	1	0	1	0	6	52
5	21	25	0	1	0	0	0	3	50
6	37	50	1	0	0	0	3	7	98
7	43	49	1	0	0	0	1	7	101
8	65	67	1	0	0	0	2	7	142
9	102	100	1	4	1	0	4	9	221
10	77	114	0	1	0	1	2	4	199
11	44	29	1	0	0	0	0	0	74
12	11	30	1	0	0	0	0	0	42
13	7	19	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
14	2	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
15	5	21	0	0	0	0	0	0	26
16	8	15	0	0	0	0	0	0	23
17	283	472	1	4	0	0	0	1	761
MM, Dir & CFO	3	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	7
Total	761	1074	10	12	3	2	15	47	1924

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.6 Vacancy and Turnover

The total staff complement based on the organizational structure stands at 1924 with a 4.23% turnover rate. The turnover is because of amongst others; the highly regulated environment, challenges of retaining skills because of rigid wage/salary grades. Six (6) Sec 56/7 positions have been filled for the period in question and only Six (6) positions are vacant due to turnover as well as new positions caused by the reviewed of the organogram.

The staff turnover for the year 2023/24 was at 4.23% which represents termination of 84 employees and the vacancy rate was at 60.67%. The high vacancy rate is because of the total approved positions in the organizational structure not necessarily the budgeted positions. When considering the total budgeted positions of 622, the vacancy rate is at 12.71%, which means the remaining 47.95% is non-budgeted.

The turnover rate and the vacancy rate are based on the organizational structure which was approved with 4892 positions.

9.7 OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH & SAFETY (OHS)

The aim of the OHS Act is to provide for the safety and health of employees at work and in connection with the use of plant and machinery. It further provides for the protection of people other than people at work from hazards arising out of or in connection with the activities from people at work.

The main objective of the Act could be described as a pro-active attempt by the employer to prevent and avoid work related injuries and illness. The Act governs the health and safety for the diverse industry of South Africa. It regulates and control health and safety in all organizations, from a normal office environment to more hazardous environments like industrial plants and construction sites this include the Polokwane Municipality.

Occupational Health and Safety is not only the responsibility of the unit but a function that is applicable at all Strategic Business Units. Occupational Health and Safety is about compliance issues that not only include the Occupational Health and Safety Act, but the compliance factor stretch over a variety of legislations including Mine Health and Safety, Railway Safety Regulator Act and Disaster Management Act.

New Regulations/Bill adopted in the Occupational Health and Safety Act are as follows:

The following notices were issued under the OHS ACT 85 OF 1993:

- 1st March 2024: Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 Of 1993, draft Lead Regulation comments invitation.
- 5th of April 2024: Occupational Health and Safety Act: Regulations for Hazardous Chemical Agents.
- 12th of April 2024: Regulations: Driven Machinery: Code of Practice for Conveyer Systems,

All injuries on duty incidents are reported to the Compensation Commissioner. This is done electronically to the Department of Labour. All serious injuries are investigated as stipulated in Sec 24 of the Occupational Health and Safety Act no 85 Of 1993. The total of 3 incident investigations were conducted and 20 risk assessments were conducted for discussions on the relevant Strategic Business Units Health and Safety Committees meetings. This is a legislative requirement.

All construction projects must have site specific health and safety specifications and baseline risk assessment that the unit develop and must be included in the tender. Once the contractor has been appointed this unit must approve the health and safety file before any construction may start. In total 59 safety files were approved by this unit. During some of the construction projects Health and Safety Consultants are appointed and the management of these consultants are the responsibility of this unit.

Occupational Health and Safety Unit conducted Municipal wide inspections ensuring that compliance to OHS Act and its regulations are adhered to. This ongoing and form part of day-to-day activities. In total 21 on sites inspection checks were conducted from the period 1 July 2023 to 30 June 2024.

9.7.1 OHS unit Challenges.

Challenges that the OHS unit encounters:

- Staff complement is not sufficient to ensure that proper consultations and compliance are effective and manage health and safety pro-actively.
- Lack of training for OHS Officials to ensure that they are capacitated on new development and changes in the Occupational Health and Safety Act programmes.
- A proper electronic health and safety management system needs to be implemented.
- Late reporting of IOD by SBU's which results in non-compliance to the COIDA and may result in penalties.
- There is a need to capacitate Managers, Supervisors, and all employees on OHS training to ensure that there is a better understanding on compliance.
- Lack of proper scheduled maintenance programs that influence the health and safety of employees and public this include:
 - Fire alarms and smoke detection systems
 - Air conditioners
 - Falling structures/building

TABLE 7: Injury on duty

Strategic Business Unit	Number of Injuries per SBU	Days lost
Public Transportation Infrastructure Development	14	121
Waste Management	24	187
Facility Management	2	6
Sports and Recreation	5	55
Traffic and Licensing	2	65
Purification	2	5
Fire and Rescue	2	38
Energy Services	5	31
Environmental Management	25	92
Water and Sanitation	3	5
By-Law Enforcement	2	5
EHP	1	14
TOTAL	91	624

Source: PLK Human Resource Management SBU

9.8 Employee Relations

Employment relations are important and viewed as key in the creation of a successful organization, economic prosperity. Employment is viewed as a critical factor for the development of any organization.

The Local Labour Forum is important as a point of engagement with organized labour. Training of Line Managers on labour relations remains key to the management of relationship in the workplace. Training must not only be restricted to line managers, but worker representatives also form an important part in employee relations, and therefore any capacity building initiatives should include worker representatives.

Newly appointed employees are specifically workshopped on the code of conduct.

The Municipality has seen a significant rise in disciplinary hearings involving various form of misconduct.

9.9 Employee Assistance Programme (EAP)

Employee Assistance Programme is important in any organization as it deals with the well-being of employees. EAP offers services that address personal, family problems and work-related problems. The range of psycho-social challenges that they assist with includes ill-health, poor productivity, personal finance management, emotional instability, stress and depression management, trauma, grief and various addictions amongst others. Services are offered internally (to employees and management) and externally (to employees and their immediate families).

Employees often encounter challenges as they interact with their counterparts daily both in the workplace and outside. Some of employees who seek assistance are affected by poor working relations, lack of resources, unproductive communication channels and relations with superiors.

It would be in the best interest of the Employer and Employees to have regular team cohesion sessions, attend health proactive programme, self enhancement activities, as this will result in energised, goal orientated employees who are set to meet the objectives of the organization, resulting in return on investment for the employer.

EAP also incorporates proactive wellness programmes. It is very imperative for employees to be empowered on wellness issues, so that they can be informed and always be in the know of new medical developments or research findings which could promote healthy lifestyles. Proactive Information sharing sessions are conducted on issues such as cancer, substance abuse, HIV & AIDS, stress management, healthy lifestyle, work-life balance and so forth. Health screenings are also done quarterly to conscientize about their health status and make it part of one's lifestyle to undergo regular medical check-ups. These health screenings also help with early detection of health concerns. There is a need for employees to take proper care of their health and to participate in wellness programmes.

The Employee Assistance Programme has established a good working relation with stakeholder such as Old Mutual and Sanlam who are rendering financial wellness to our employees freely.

This will go a long way in reducing the financial burden that they are subjected to which has resulted in several workplace challenges such as absenteeism, stress, poor productivity, and high turnover of resignation due to debts.

The impact of mental health should also be promoted and not be overlooked across the workplace. The EAP unit will continue to explore how they can support employees' emotional wellbeing. The municipality has seen an increase in several cases related to mental health mostly being men seeking intervention and support.

The functionality of the Peer Educators programme within the workplace – this has prompted a positive outlook on the EAP activities such as wellness champions and promotion of healthy living, as by virtue of having support system in a form of health champion or an enabler it makes things easier for those who need support and knowledge. The availability of Peer Educators within all the directorate and clusters have created a pathway for promotion of EAP services and increased utilization.

The promotion and establishment of effective workplace Men's forums, with the overall aim of empowering male employees on ways of overcoming social ills, understanding and promotion of eradication of gender-based violence. Creating and promoting positive role models for younger men, see women as their social partner/equal. This will go a long way in building a better society and creating a conducive psychosocial environment for all to live in.

The number of proactive programmes initiated had been with the purpose of empowering employees on social related skills which would contribute positively towards impactful decision making. There has also been a significant increase on the number of employees seeking rehabilitative interventions related to substance abuse.

EAP related challenges:

- Staff compliment is not adequate to ensure effective psychosocial support services to employees proactively.
- Lack of contracted services to assist with the provision of EAP related services to employees (Psychologist, psychiatrist, Occupational Therapist, and rehabilitations centers)

9.10 Recruitment

Municipalities are at the coalface of service delivery. The challenges of transformation places municipalities in the centre of the job markets where competition is high. To survive and deliver services municipalities must ensure that they attract and retain talent.

To make smart hiring for top talent the municipality has approved a recruitment policy as well as a scarce skill policy. After all, an institution's productivity and profitability depend on the quality of its workers. The policies, considers a mix of factors, including credentials, work experience, personality, and skills.

Challenges of a highly regulated bargained environment persist although as an institution we have policies in place to attract and retain talent.

The municipality has just reviewed the Recruitment Policy to align it with new ways of recruitment in line with the new Regulations for Staff. The turnover rate is reasonable at 4.23%; it is attributed to the high unemployment rate as employees turn to stay longer except in the high skill category.

9.11 Fleet Management Services

Fleet Management Services main function is to provide fleet management support to the municipality. The sub functions are including fleet administration, selection and procurement, risk management and disposal. The sub functions are listed as follow:

1. Fleet needs analysis and acquisition
2. Fleet Administration
 - Registration and license renewals
 - Vehicle inspection, maintenance and availability
 - Management and monitoring of vehicle utilization, tracking and fuel.
 - Driver behavior assessment and training
 - Compliance with NRTA, AARTO (traffic fine management) and OHSA
3. Fleet risk management
4. Fleet disposal

9.11.1 Number of Fleet

the City of Polokwane has an overall of **727** units consisting of a mixed fleet of self-propelled and non-self-propelled.

1. Council Fleet =502 (including 76 special car allowance scheme vehicles)
2. Leased through Fleet Africa =225

9.11.2 Municipal fleet status quo

Ownership	TOTAL FLEET	OPERATIONAL	NON-OPERATIONAL	TO BE DISPOSED
Council Fleet	502	446	56	125
Leased Fleet Africa Fleet	225	155	70	
TOTAL	727	601	126	125

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU

9.11.3 Procurement of Waste Compactor truck and Panel vans

The Municipality plan to procure 6 units comprising of trucks and panel van as follows:

- 2 x Security Panel vans
- 4 x Waste Compactor trucks

9.11.4 Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy

In terms of the Fleet Management Sourcing Strategy a number of sourcing methods to procure and replace fleet units were identified. A **hybrid model** including outright purchase of fleet units, outsourcing of waste compactors and Special Car Scheme Allowance for law enforcement and traffic officials. To improve on efficiency of our business processes, a fleet support company was appointed to manage fleet administration including licensing, fuel, traffic fines, tracking, utilization and driver behaviour, risk management and as well as maintenance and availability.

9.11.5 Challenges Within the Fleet SBU

1. Budget

Budget provided fleet replacement is not aligned with the actual needs of the municipality. Fleet needs analysis is not centralized, resulting in resources allocated to SBUs not mandated with selection and procurement of fleet.

2. Ageing fleet

The municipality has a total of 727 fleet units consisting of a mixed fleet of self-propelled and non-self-propelled.

502 municipal owned fleet units, 225 Fleet Africa fleet units with 427 units that is 59% of the overall fleet that had aged (i.e.: as far as 10-20yrs) that is guided by the Fleet Policy.

3. High maintenance costs

Council has procured a fleet solution which provided for managed maintenance option. This option functions better provided that fleet units are new/ relatively new and procured with maintenance/ warrantee/ service plan. The biggest driver of this maintenance cost is due to ageing fleet and fleet units procured without maintenance/ warrantee/ and service plan. The other major driving force of high maintenance costs is the contractual mark-up added on repairs, maintenance and accessories. Driver behaviour also a mayor contributing factor to high maintenance costs.

4. Utilization and fuel management

Vehicle log sheet and fuel slips are not submitted timeously as per the fleet policy by some SBUs.

5. Driver behavior and negligence

The municipality is experiencing high accident rate that results in vehicles been written off before their expected vehicle life cycle.

9.11.6 Interventions and control measures

- 1) Engagements and consultation with BTO, during budget consultation process to address the budget challenge.
- 2) Centralisation of fleet budget to Fleet Management Services SBU.
- 3) Engagements with other SBUs with regards to institutional fleet needs analysis.

- 4) Submission of monthly vehicle utilisation and fuel reports to SBUs.
- 5) Future procurement of vehicles will include maintenance plan or warranty.

9.11.7 New Municipal Fleet



New Municipal Fleet



New Municipal Fleet already Started Cleaning illegal Dumping

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU 2024

9.11.8 Unveiling of two new graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor

Source: PLK Fleet Management SBU 2024

9.12 Information Communication and Technology (ICT)

The world has seen extraordinary development in information and communications technology with significant global dimensions. It is impossible to ignore the importance of ICT wherever and whenever good governance is pursued. The use of ICT has been identified as the other challenge facing the transformation of municipalities, both within local government agencies and also regarding to external stakeholders (traditional leaders, citizens and local businesses). The effective and intelligent use of ICT has been an essential component of modern administrative science. It is a fact that ICT has great potential to speed up the transformation process. However, the public service track record in the use of ICT is far from ideal. It is a

verity that ICT has brought a bright perspective to the human condition, but two factors must be taken into consideration, to take advantage of it and to facilitate public participation: accessibility and availability. If this aspect is not addressed, the use of ICT for more efficient public-service delivery might become a value which serves the vested interests of a few stakeholders, while others view them as constraints to their freedom.

ICT plays an important role in strengthening democracy, as it improves the relationship between citizens and public administration. The relationship includes the information privacy of citizen boundaries within and between the organizations; political and public accountability; and citizenship in a consumer democracy. Strategically use of ICT in a public service environment produces the following benefits:

- Speed or quality of service delivery
- Increased public access to service agencies or departments.
- The facilitation of remote communication and transactions
- Enhance transparency.

The integration of public services and the destruction of the administrative walls separating bureaucratic departments and government agencies.

9.12.1 ICT - SMART City Concept

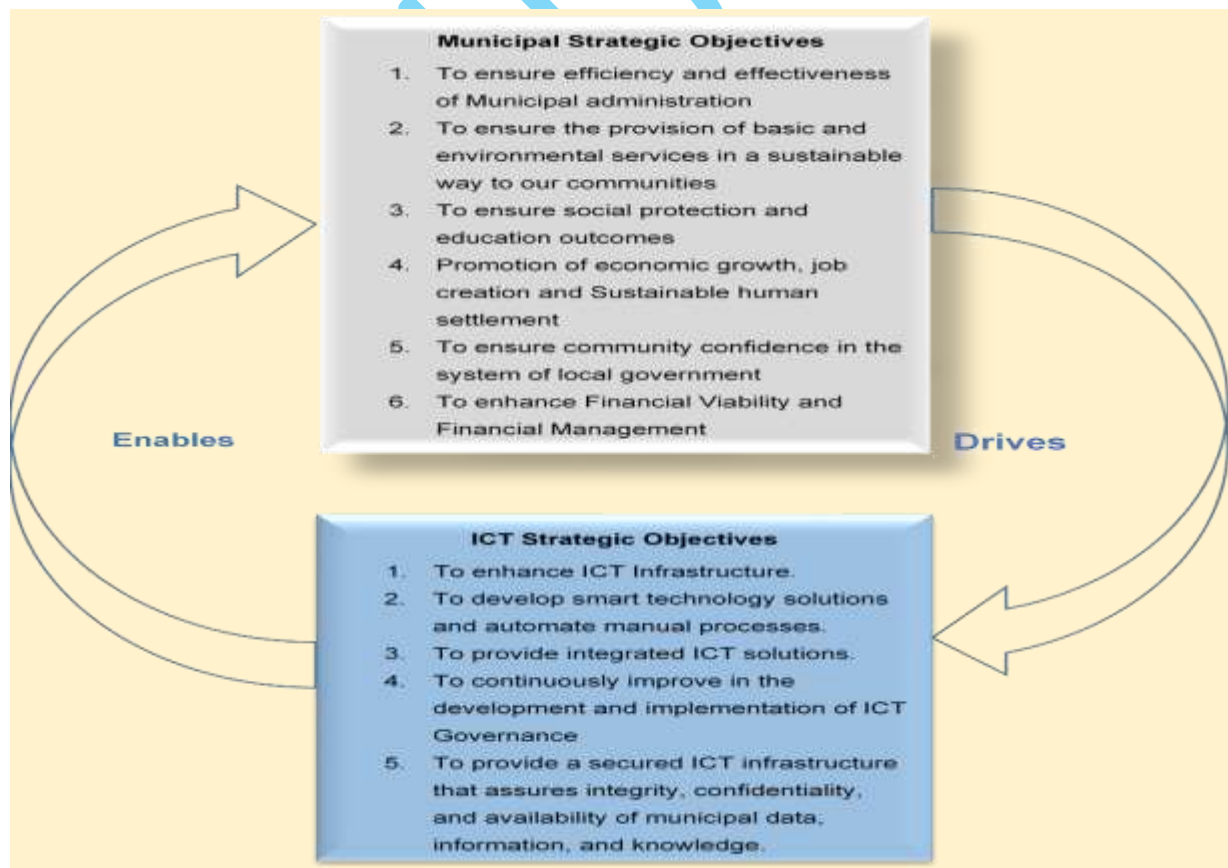
The municipality has adopted the 2030 Smart City Vision as a way of fast-tracking service delivery to the community and improve Citizens engagement through the implementation of smart technologies. Consistent with the 2030 Smart City Vision, the city launched six pillars that will assist the municipality to work towards the realization of becoming a Smart City; this will be the city that is characterized by a Smart Economy, Smart Environment, Smart Governance, Smart Living, Smart Mobility and Smart People. This Smart City concept is carried within the city's vision to be the "The ultimate in innovation and sustainable development".

All six of the aforementioned elements of a smart city can increasingly become more achievable and manageable by being connected through the use of ICT and developing technological systems. Furthermore, we believe that there is a great opportunity for this council to join other smart thinking cities the world over who see the opportunity to own ICT infrastructure which may be a major source of revenue in the future.

9.12.2 ICT Governance

The ICT SBU must implement the reviewed Corporate Governance of ICT Policy Framework (CGICTPF) version 2, which promotes efficient and effective ICT governance for the municipality to achieve their strategic objectives through the governing tasks of evaluating, directing, and monitoring. The municipality should strategically utilise ICT to achieve their objectives. To adhere to this policy framework's objectives, ICT SBU is required to implement corporate governance of ICT by adopting its principles and practices and customising their governance system to be aligned with the municipal context, while preserving the intent of this policy framework. It is also required to plan for the long, medium, and short term to enable business growth and value creation. The planning process for ICT must adhere to the applicable planning guidelines, methodologies, and timeframes. The ICT planning process focuses mainly on the ICT **Strategic Plan (five-year plan)**, the ICT **Implementation Plan (three-year plan)**, and the **Operational Plan (one-year plan)**. During the 2022/23 financial year, the ICT strategic plan was reviewed, and below are the strategic objectives:

Diagram shows the alignment of Municipal objectives and ICT objectives.



Source: PLK ICT SBU

The strategy aims to ensure ongoing support to the municipal users by means of improved service delivery, by achieving the following objectives:

- a) **Objective:** To provide integrated ICT solutions.
Description: To make municipal services more accessible on e-services (i.e. online), which will reduce the cost of accessing the services and improve turnaround times and strengthen accountability and responsiveness.
- b) **Objective:** To develop smart technology solutions and automate manual processes.
Description: To design and develop systems/solutions that will promote e-Governance and e-participation through technology.
- c) **Objective:** To enhance ICT Infrastructure.
Description: To design, develop, implement and maintain the hardware, software, datacenter and a high-speed communication network in keeping up with emerging technological trends in order to enhance the performance of service delivery.
- d) **Objective:** To continuously improve in the development and implementation of ICT Governance.
Description: To continuously implement, evaluate and monitor Corporate Governance of ICT Policy Framework in order improve the ICT SBU's operations.
- e) **Objective:** To provide a secured ICT infrastructure that assures integrity, confidentiality, and availability of municipal data, information and knowledge.
Description: To continuously enforce the implementation ICT security Framework across all hardware and software in order to protect data as a municipal asset.

Implement Corporate Governance of Information and Communication Technology Policy Framework (CGICTPF):

The municipality managed to establish the ICT steering committee which is responsible for ensuring that municipal arrangements for the corporate governance of ICT are developed, implemented, managed, monitored, and evaluated. The ICT plans, policies and procedures are in place. The ICT SBU will continuously improve the corporate governance of the ICT system, which is the system where the current and future use of ICT resources is directed and controlled to facilitate the achievement of the municipality's strategic objectives.

9.12.3 ICT Challenges

- a) Partially integrated systems.

- b) Connectivity to Cluster Offices and Telephone Systems
- c) Aging Desktop Hardware and Network Cabling Infrastructure

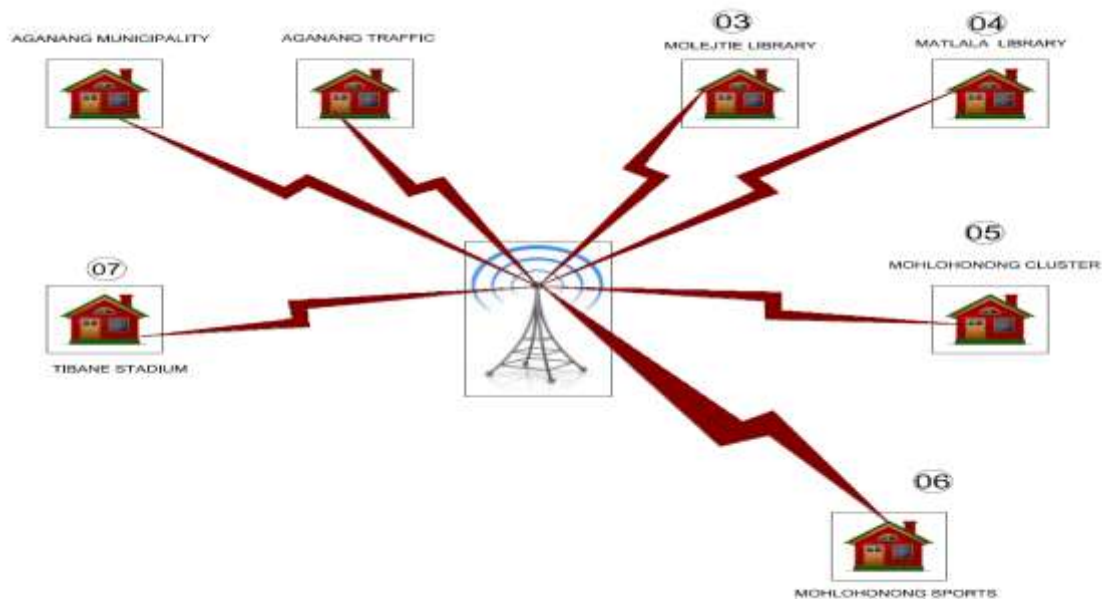
Interventions

- a) Integration of critical applications into the main Enterprise Resource Planning system to aid decision making.
- b) Continuous improvement and maintenance Connectivity and VOIP Telephone System.
- c) Replacing old Desktop Computers and Network Cabling with latest technologies

9.12.4 Network Upgrade (Seshego Cluster Offices)

Management made a significant investment on the upgrade of network connectivity to all the Seshego Offices to address connectivity challenges experienced at the offices. The eight (08) office at Seshego are connected to the Ladanna Traffic station through a Fibre Network technology. Most of the other cluster offices are still connected through Radio Link Network Connectivity as indicated below for Aganang Cluster office network diagram.

9.12.5 Connectivity for Aganang Cluster



Source: PLK ICT SBU

9.13 ICT (Telephone Systems)

Brilliant Telecommunication was appointed to implement telephone system in 2021/22 FY. The system is a **Voice Over IP (VOIP)** solution that depends on network connectivity. The solution is implemented in all cluster offices including Control Centre (Traffic Office).

9.13.1 Telephone Network Configuration

The telephone system configuration still the same as the previous Financial Year as indicated in the below diagram. The area marked in **blue** is the City's server room situated at the Civic Centre, this is where the telephone controller is hosted. The server room is connected to the Ladanna Call Centre through an overhead fibre connection marked in **red**. In an event the fibre connection between Civic Centre and Ladanna is damaged, the call centre telephones will be affected.

Network Configuration



Source: PLK ICT SBU

9.13.2 City of Polokwane Call Centre Numbers

Service Challenges Report Line -The Municipality has implemented a **queuing system** with a voice prompt listing different services for callers to select from. The queuing system is applicable on the Municipality main line telephone numbers: **015 290 2000 and 015 023 5000.**

9.13.3 Telephone System Challenges

The Polokwane Municipality Call Centre is situated at Ladanna Traffic Station and the telephone system is hosted at the Civic Centre. The Civic Centre is connected to the Traffic Station are connected through aerial fibre network that is suspended on street poles. The challenge we have is that in an event of a fibre cable damage as indicated in the below diagram the telephones at the Call Centre are affected. Management is planning to move the Call Centre to a facility that has minimal disruption for the purpose of service continuity.

Figure: Damage and repair process of fibre connection.



Source: PLK ICT SBU

9.14 Record Management

9.14.1 Record Management Objectives

The main objectives of the unit are:

- a) To keep all Records and perform the general administration of Council, Mayoral Committee and all other Committees established by Council.
- b) To attend to the electronic document management system
- c) To move away from paper documents to electronic documents for all committees.

9.14.2 Challenges/Constraints for Record Management

- a) Lack of a storage facility that comply with Records Management Best Practises.
- b) Decentralized records keeping.

Solutions:

- a) Continuous record management awareness or roadshow.
- b) Request HR training division to cover Record Management as part of induction package for new employees.
- c) Centralization of records Keeping and provision of a facility that comply with Records Management Best Practises.

9.15 Facilities Management

The Municipality has established the SBU to assist in maintaining and up keeping of municipal buildings. The SBU is responsible for routine maintenance over **110 municipal facilities**. The objective of the SBU is to maintain municipal facilities in accordance with SANS 10400:1990, SABS Standard Act: 2008 and the Occupational Health and Safety Act Regulations Act 85/1993 and Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act 2010 (Act 2 of 2010) (SASREA) in order to provide a conducive environment to the employees and the community at large, utilising or visiting the Municipal offices.

9.15.1 List of Municipal Facilities in all Clusters

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
POLOKWANE CBD		
1.	Civic Centre	Landros mare str
2.	Council Chamber	Church str
3.	Fire Brigade old Airport	Silicon road
4.	Game Reserve	Silicon road
5.	Environment	Webster street
6.	Environmental storeroom	Webster street
7.	Transfer Site	Webster street
8.	Library Gardens	Jorrison str
9.	Iltoseng Entrepreneurial Centre	Bus Terminals
10.	Main Transfer Site	Silicon road
11.	Bird Sanctuary	Emdo
12.	Museum (Irish House)	Thabo Mbeki str
13.	Bakone Malapa	R52
14.	Art Museum	Jorrison str
15.	Art Museum Storeroom	Biccard Str
16.	Town Pool	Thabo Mbeki str
17.	Visitors Information Centre	Church str
18.	Aids Centre	Magazane str
19.	Water Purification	Dalmada
20.	Recreation centre	Burger str
21.	Cricket club	Suid str
22.	Netball courts	Burger str
23.	Old Peter Mokaba Stadium	Dorp Str
24.	New Peter Mokaba Stadium	Magazyn Street
25.	Show ground	N1
26.	Sports and recreation offices	Burger str
27.	Jack Botes Hall	Church str
28.	Huge Huston Musium	Landros Maré str
29.	Public toilets x 20	Town
30.	Tennis court	Compensatie str
31.	Cooking Facilities	Church str
32.	Cemetery	Dahl str

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
33.	Cemetery	Church str
34.	African Market	Market Street
35.	Substations x 15	
36.	Capricorn Flying Club	26 Pierre Street, Bendor
LADANNA; WESTERNBURG AND NIRVANA		
37.	Hostel Ladanna	Asbes Str
38.	Westernburg Library	Buys str
39.	Hostel Matlala Road	Matlala Road
40.	Nirvana Library	Tagore str
41.	Water and Sanitation	Vermukuliet str
42.	Sewer Purification	Asbes str
43.	Electrical workshop	Vermukuliet str
44.	Mechanical workshop	Vermukuliet str
45.	Roads & Storm water workshop	Vermukuliet str
46.	Nursery	Asbes Str
47.	Waste offices	Vermikuliet str
48.	Nirvana Hall	Tagore str
49.	Westernburg Hall	Buys str
50.	Fire Brigade Ladanna	Vermikuliet str
51.	Nirvana stadium	Himalaya Ave
52.	Nirvana sports facilities	Himalaya Ave
53.	Westernburg sports facilities	Tagore str
54.	Nirvana Cricket grounds	Himalaya Ave
55.	Traffic Station	Ladanna
56.	Nirvana swimming pools	Orient Dr
57.	Swimming pool	Tagore str
58.	Mayor Guest House	Soetdooring
59.	Transfer site	Vermikuliet str
60.	Stores	Vermikuliet str
61.	Public toilets x2	Ladanna and Nirvana
62.	Substations x 8	
SESHEGO CLUSTER		
63.	Offices	Zone 1 Chris Hani Dr

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
64.	Offices	Zone 3 Kwena str
65.	Offices	Zone 8
66.	Water Purification	Zone 4
67.	Waste Purification	Zone 6
68.	Seshego Library	Zone 2
69.	Environment Deport	Zone 3
70.	Ngoako Ramahlodi Sports Complex	Zone 7
71.	Seshego stadium	Zone 1
72.	Seshego sports complex	Zone 1
73.	Seshego sports fields	Zone 6
74.	Public toilets	Zone 2 & 4
75.	Environmental depot	Zone 8
76.	Substations x 3	
77.	Mashinini Pump Station	
<u>MANKWENG, SEBAYENG/ DIKGALE CLUSTER</u>		
78.	Sewer Purification	Nchichane
79.	Offices	Zone A
80.	Offices	Zone C
81.	Offices	Sebayeng
82.	Traffic	Zone B
83.	Fire Station Offices	Zone A
84.	Transfer station	Nchichane
85.	Taxi Rank	Zone A
86.	Community Hall	Zone A
87.	Public toilet University Hawkers Centre	Gate 2
88.	Transfer station	Dikgale
89.	Transfer station	Makotopong
90.	Public toilet Hospital Hawkers Centre	Hospital
<u>MOLETJIE CLUSTER</u>		
91.	Library	Moletjie
92.	Offices	Moletjie
93.	Water Purification	Ramakgapula
94.	Ga-Manamela Stadium	Ga Manamela

No.	Name of the Building / Facility	Location /Street address / Direction
95.	Transfer station	Vaalkop
96.	Transfer station	Makgakga
<u>MOLEPO/CHUENE /MAJA CLUSTER</u>		
97.	Office	Maja
98.	Water Treatment Plant	Ga- Chuene
99.	Sports complex	Molepo
100.	Sports complex	Maja
101.	Library	Molepo
<u>AGANANG CLUSTER</u>		
102.	Office	Aganang
103.	Hall	Aganang
104.	Traffic and Licensing	Aganang
105.	Ipopeng Parliament Democracy Office	Matlala
106.	Ward office	Mashashane
107.	Stadium	Mohlonong
108.	Stadium	Tibane
109.	Jupiter Hall	Mashashane
110.	Landfill site	Aganang
111.	Nobel Hawkers Centre	Nobel

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

9.15.2 Procedure Manual

The following procedures for maintenance services are in place when maintenance complains, or request have been received at the Facility Management Unit:

1. Every maintenance service request forwarded by a client through emails/WhatsApp's/SMSs/telephone calls to the office of Facility Management SBU shall be recorded.
2. Once the request has been received a job card will be opened and the client shall receive a reference number for which will be considered as reference for the work/call until the work is finalized and closed.

3. Maintenance team shall be dispatched to the site to attend to the request.
At the closure of each request the client shall sign off on the job card which was opened at the beginning of the request.
4. Should the extent the works require the services of external service provider, the client will be informed of such.
5. The SBU obtain the greatest effectiveness from the work order system, work requests and activities performed by maintenance staff are recorded on work orders.

Work orders contain, at a minimum, the following information:

- (i) Work order number
- (ii) Location of work
- (iii) Client Details (Contacts, Building Name, Physical Address, SBU and Dates)
- (iv) Official Details (Supervisor, Technician assigned, Assigned Date, and Signatures)
- (vi) Description of work requested or to be executed
- (vii) Job Inspection

9.15.3 Priority of work and response times

Priority of work is taken up in three stages:

- (i) High priority: where maintenance is required by law or is life threatening and affects or compromises the core business of the Municipality. This request shall be attended to at our earliest convenience.
 - (ii) Medium priority: where maintenance is not of a high priority. This request shall receive the priority it requires.
- Low priority: where the core business of the Municipality is not compromised by the need of maintenance. This request shall receive the priority it requires.

9.15.4 Maintenance of municipal facilities

Routine maintenance

Routine Maintenance is regarded as a service attending to day to day maintenance needs. This type of maintenance is done when maintenance requests are reported to Facility Management by the client on a day-to-day basis.

Routine Maintenance *inter alia* includes maintenance assistance and services in the following instances:

9.15.5 Trades conducted under routine maintenance.

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
1.	Electrical maintenance works:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair/replace plugs, switches, light fittings and bulbs • Repair/replace electrical reticulation within erfs • Verification and certification of electrical installations on premises • repair/replace distribution board
2.	Plumbing maintenance works:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing/replacing of damaged sewer pipes • Replacing of sanitary ware: basins, toilet pots, seats • Replacing of damaged toilet mechanisms • Unblocking of sewer pipes • Repairing/replacing of damaged water supply pipes • Repairing/replacing of damaged rain water gutters • Repairing/replacing of element in the geyser and geyser complete
3.	Air conditioning maintenance works:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing of elements in the air-conditioners and heat pumps • Replacing of damaged elements, gas etc. • Servicing of air-conditioners and heat pumps
4.	Sound and microphones maintenance works	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing/servicing and replacing of microphones • Repairing/servicing and replacing of amplifiers • Repairing/servicing and replacing of speakers • Repairing/replacing of cables and wires

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
5.	General building maintenance works	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing of damaged brickwork • Repairing of damaged plastering and painting work • Repairing/replacing of damaged carpets • Replacing of damaged window panes
6.	Carpentry and joinery maintenance works	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing/replacing of damaged ceilings • Repairing of damaged wood furniture and doors • Repairing/replacing of door locks, hinges, window stays and handles etc. (Ironmongery) • Repairing/replacing of waterproofing membrane on the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) Roofs (ii) Windows (iii) Doors (iv) Basements (v) Walls
7.	Precast concrete and metal maintenance work	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repairing of damaged hot steel works etc. • Repairing/replacing of metal structures and precast concrete work
8.	Fixed generators maintenance works	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Servicing of the generator, quarterly or per specification • Refilling of diesel • Testing of generators monthly (Required by law)
9.	Fumigation of municipal facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fumigation of municipal facilities • Bees and birds nest removal • Removal of termite's mount • Replacing of damaged window panes
10.	Supply and delivery of building and cleaning material	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Supply and delivery of building materials • Supply and delivery of cleaning materials
11.	Cleaning of offices and public toilets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deep and conventional cleaning of offices and public toilets

ITEM	SERVICE/TRADE	DESCRIPTION
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Issuing out of toilet papers to the public • Up keeping of cleanness of the facility during the day • Ensuring that the properties are not vandalised by constant appearance and locking up at the end of the day
12.	Cleaning and disinfection of municipal wide ablution facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cleaning and disinfection of sanitary fittings (basins, toilet pot and seat) • Servicing of sanitary bins monthly (required by law) • Servicing of hand dryer • Servicing of soap dispenser • Servicing of seat wipes • Servicing of air fresheners
13.	Servicing of the lifts	• Monthly servicing of the lifts (Library garden, council chamber; old Peter Mokaba stadium and civic centre)

Source: PLK Facilities Management SBU

Scheduled Maintenance

This type of maintenance is regarded as maintenance needs identified by way of annual, quarterly and monthly inspections conducted by the Facility Management SBU, which maintenance needs are then recorded in a detailed schedule plan with implementation dates and turnaround timeframes for purposes of efficiently conducting maintenance services identified and needed.

9.15.6 Codes and Standards

Paint colours

- (i) The standard paint colours to be applied on interior walls of municipal facilities are cream, white or peach, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.
- (ii) The standard paint colours to be applied on exterior walls of municipal facilities falls under the earthy group of colours or corporate colours, unless otherwise specified by the client as special request.

Carpets

- (i) Standard carpets to be used are tile carpets.
- (ii) Standard colour on the carpets is blue for all and maroon for executive offices.

Tiles

- (i) Tiles to be used are porcelain and should be non-slippery
- (ii) Staircase tiles must be fitted with an aluminium non-slippery strip

Roof coverings

- (i) Roof coverings should have a non-reflective finish

9.15.7 Refurbishment and renovation of buildings:

Refurbishment of facilities with the aim that of ensuring that they comply in accordance with SANS Building Regulations 10400:1990, SABS Standard Act: 2008, the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Regulations Act 85/1993 to provide a conducive environment to the employees and the community at large, utilising or visiting the Municipal offices.

****NB: All materials used on the works as well as work procedures must be in accordance with South African Bureau of Standards (SABS).**

STATUS

CHAPTER Ten: Transportation Services Analysis

10.1 Leeto la Polokwane

10.1.1 Introduction to Transportation

Local government is responsible for creating, maintaining, and managing a vast network of local roadways, as well as providing both private and **public transportation** infrastructure and services. It also plays a crucial role in establishing integrated transportation planning.

10.1.2 COMPREHENSIVE INTEGRATED TRANSPORT PLAN (CITP)

National Land Transport Act of 2009 requires all Transport Authorities to develop the Integrated Transport Plans for their area for a period of Five (05) years and must be updated annually. The CIPT must be submitted to the MEC for approval. Polokwane Municipality must also submit its CITP to the Minister for approval of the Commuter Rail and Airports.

Polokwane Municipality CITP was developed in 2012 and still needs to be updated. It was adopted by Polokwane Municipality and was also approved by MEC as a living document which guides the Transport Planning within Polokwane Jurisdiction.

10.1.3 COMMUTER TRANSPORT CORRIDORS AND FACILITIES

There are two major commuter transport corridors in Polokwane:

- **Between Seshego/Moletji and the CBD**
- **Between Mankweng and the CBD**

Seshego/Moletji Corridor: This corridor serves the ± 38 000 households north-west of the CBD. Most commuters in this area stay within 15 km from the CBD in the Seshego, Perskebut, Blood River, Moletji and surrounding residential areas. According to the 2010 National Household Travel Surveys, less than 4% of working people staying in Seshego also work there. 74% of working people who stay in Seshego, work in Polokwane. The corridor is served by taxis and buses with the modal split 4:1 in favour of taxi passenger trips. The split between public and private transport is also 4:1 in favour of public transport trips.

Based on travel-time surveys undertaken in 2012, the average travel speed on this corridor (including stops) is around 35 km/h. This means that commuters from Seshego take approximately 25 minutes to travel the average distance of 15 km to town. This excludes other legs of the journey such as walking from the drop-off to the actual place of employment.

While the Seshego-Polokwane Taxi Association serve the Seshego area up to ± 15 km from the CBD, the Moletji Taxi Association serves the area further north, as far as 80 km from town.

The population density north of Perskebult is however very low and the number of passenger trips are low in comparison with those from Seshego.

Mankweng Corridor: Taxis from the Mankweng Taxi Association make use of this corridor to serve commuters staying in villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas, between 25 and 50 km east of the CBD. Taxis from the Sebayeng and Dikgale villages along the northern municipal boundary use the R81 while villages in the Mankweng and Moria areas are served by taxis using the R71. The 25 km travelled on the R71 increases the average speed to 50 km/h meaning that a taxi from University of Limpopo in Mankweng will cover the distance of 30 km to town in ± 35 minutes. The 40 km to the Boyne taxi rank in Moria will take ± 50 minutes.

10.2 Mode of Public Transport Facilities

Seshego/Moletji facilities: Public transport facilities on this corridor consist only of bus/taxi stops and lay-bys on some arterial roads, because commuters are picked-up along the routes in the AM by both taxis and buses, there are no formal ranks in the residential areas. In the PM, commuters are also dropped off along the route. The fact that there is no need for modal transfers or transfers from long distance to local taxis also negates the need for ranks in the area.

Mankweng facilities: Because of the longer distance from town compared to Seshego, Mankweng has a more vibrant commercial centre. The University of Limpopo (Turf Loop campus), the shopping centre and the hospital form the core of the economic hub in Mankweng. Public transport users coming from the university shopping centre and hospital rely on taxis departing from the Turf Loop Plaza Rank and the Hospital Rank to take them to town or the surrounding villages. These ranks are not specifically used during the AM or PM peak as is the case for most ranks but are used at a low intensity throughout the day as nurses finish their shifts and students come from class.

Polokwane CBD facilities: For inward trips, most of which are during the AM peak, bus and taxi passengers are dropped-off at various bus and taxi stops throughout the CBD. The lack of lay-bys or formalised drop-off points in the CBD however forces taxis and buses to stop in the roadway to off-load passengers. This blocks the general flow of traffic resulting in unnecessary congestion and vehicle-pedestrian conflict.

It is generally accepted that taxis and buses off-load commuters along the route instead of at a central rank. This is done to reduce walking distances and enable commuters to get to work quicker. For outward trips, most of which are during the PM peak between 16:00 and 19:00, taxis and buses depart from various ranks within the CBD. There are more than 23 taxi facilities in the Polokwane Municipal area of which approximately 60% are formalised.

A total of ± 17 ranks provide local commuter services. There is only one informal rank specifically dedicated for long-distance taxis, while the remaining ranks provide both local and long-distance services. There are also four taxi holding areas of which only one has been formalised. There is a rank in Hospital/Silicon Street for subsidised commuter buses and a terminus in Thabo Mbeki Street for long distance buses. Metered taxis do not currently have allocated holding areas but on street locations are used to hold and load passengers.

- i) Pick 'n Pay Taxi Rank a (Church Str)
- ii) Pick 'n Pay Rank a (Pres Paul Kruger / Devenish Str)

- | | | |
|--------|--|------|
| iii) | Taxi Holding Area (Along Nelson Mandela Drive) | iv) |
| | Taxi Holding Area (Devenish / Buite Str) | |
| v) | Taxi Holding Area (Rissik / Buite Str) | |
| vi) | Spar Taxi Rank (Rissik / Bok Str) | |
| vii) | Checkers Taxi Rank (Biccard Str) | |
| viii) | Oriental Plaza Taxi Rank (Excelsior Str) | |
| ix) | Dahl Taxi Holding (RSA Café: Dahl between Grobler and Thabo Mbeki Str) | x) |
| | Westenburg Taxi Rank (Ben Harris Str) | |
| xi) | No. 87 Paul Kruger Street Long Distance Taxi Rank (Privately owned) | xii) |
| | Mall of the North Taxi Rank(R81) | |
| xiii) | Sasol Taxi Rank: Paledi Mall (R71) | |
| xiv) | Boyne Taxi Rank (R71) | |
| xv) | Bus Rank (Silicon Str) | |
| xvi) | Mankweng Hospital Taxi Rank | |
| xvii) | Turfloop Plaza Taxi Rank (University of North Str) | |
| xviii) | Mankweng Taxi Rank 2 (opposite the hospital) | |

10.2.1 Metered Taxi

- Metered taxis operate all over and outside Polokwane.
- Polokwane metered taxi association have 64 cabs with 31 owners.
- Capricorn metered taxi association has 113 cabs with 83 owners.
- They operate 24 hours a day.
- Metered taxis are not branded.
- No facilities provided for metered taxis, subsequently they stop all over town.
- Less than eight (08) are legally operating.

Currently metered taxis hold at the following locations:

- Pick 'n Pay in Church Street between Devenish Street and Rissik Street.
- Shoprite located at the corner of General Joubert and Thabo Mbeki Street.
- Grobler Street between Schoeman and Landros Mare Street.
- At Savannah Mall.
- Churles Parking area between Biccard and Hans van Rensburg Street.
- Capricorn Metered Taxi Association are still waiting for operating licenses

10.3 Polokwane International Airport (GAAL)

There are **two airports** in the City of Polokwane (**Gateway Airport Authority Limited (GAAL)** and Polokwane Municipality Airport). Polokwane International Airport (GAAL) is flying passengers between Polokwane and Johannesburg.

The airport is located approximately **5 km** to the north of the Polokwane CBD (Central Business District). **SA Air link** has a scheduled flight service to between Johannesburg (OR Tambo) and Polokwane under the management of Gateway Airport Authority Ltd (GAAL). The service is code shared with South African Airways as the marketing carrier and SA Air link as the operating carrier.

There are also local and international unscheduled flights that make use of this airport. The approximate annual flights are between 4000 and 5 000 with an approximate passenger traffic of 38 000. There are four flights from Monday to Friday, one flight on a Saturday and two flights on Sundays.



Polokwane International Airport 1



Polokwane International Airport 2



10.3.1 Polokwane Municipality Airport

Polokwane Municipality Airport is leased to a private operator. Only private airplanes are landing in this airport. The lease agreement is with Land use under City Planning. This Airport is using the GAAL tower for taking off. The Municipality is not contributing financially to the rental of the tower, which leaves GAAL with the responsibility of renting the tower for the Airport that is not monitored. The near accidents that are audited in Polokwane Municipality Airport are counted under GAAL. The Monitoring and Regulation of Polokwane Municipality Airport in terms of Civil Aviation Authority compliance is very important.

10.3.2 Rail

The Passenger Rail Agency (PRASA) operates the Shosholozza Meyl long distance passenger service between Johannesburg and Musina via Polokwane. It is an economy class service (sitter accommodation) that operates 3 times per week in each direction.

The train leaves Johannesburg Station on Monday, Wednesday, and Friday evenings at 19:00 and arrives at Polokwane station at 03:50 in the morning. It departs at 04:30 for Musina and arrives there at 11:15.

The train to Johannesburg leaves Musina on Tuesday, Thursday, and Sunday afternoons at 15:25 and arrives at Polokwane at 21:48. It then departs for Johannesburg at 22:35 and arrives there at 05:44.

There are no intermodal transfer facilities for passengers who need to transfer between rail, bus or taxi. The distance by foot, from the railway station to both the Hospital Street bus rank and the Pick 'n Pay taxi rank is 1 km.

Given the lack of transfer facilities and the inconvenient arrival and departure times, the service is not very popular, and most passengers prefer to travel by bus.

10.4 FREIGHT TRANSPORT

10.4.1 Road freight

Polokwane is the largest town on the N1 transport corridor between Gauteng and SADC countries to the north including Zimbabwe, Zambia, Malawi, the DRC and Tanzania. Most of the freight imported from and exported to the above countries is transported by road. These trucks park all over the City during the day and night. They damage the sidewalks, Road signs and electricity poles. The construction of the Truck Inn was recommended by the Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan and development of intermodal freight logistics hub at the Airport.

10.4.2 AIR FREIGHT

Due to its central location in relation to the neighbouring countries such as Botswana, Mozambique and Zimbabwe, Polokwane International Airport has a significant potential for the export of freight. Long distances to Gauteng and other provinces also create opportunities

for air freight transport, specifically for perishable goods such as fruit, beef and venison produced locally. The need for an Inter-modal freight hub in Polokwane has been identified by previous studies.

10.4.3 RAIL FREIGHT

Polokwane generates fresh produce and as such, freight rail plays an important part in transporting these products to various destinations in and out of the South Africa. Due to the high cost of freight road transport, it is expected that the freight rail will boost the economy of Polokwane by transporting the products at a lower cost. Based on the Department of Transport through Transnet Freight Rail has estimated that the cost of transportation can be reduced from R1.9 billion to R1.7 billion if 35% of cargo is transported by rail. This will result in the reduction of road trucks transporting citrus fruits to port from 55 000 trips to 32 000 trips.

Due to the high cost of road freight transport, Transnet has announced plans to move more freight by rail. This is a positive development for Polokwane as it will reduce damage to roads because of high freight volumes currently transported by road. On routes such as the N1 and the R81, the percentage of heavy vehicles is as high as between 15% and 20%. The fact that up to 17% of trucks are overloaded indicates that a lot of damage is being caused to road infrastructure.

It should however be noted that it is not only overloaded trucks which damage roads. The exponential relationship between axle loads and stresses in road pavement layers means that even trucks which are within the legal limit, causes a lot of damage to roads.

10.5 A SMART WAY TO TRAVELL

The City of Polokwane is introducing an integrated Rapid Public Transport System (IRPTS), comprising various modes including taxis, buses and non-motorised transport service. This is in line with the National Land Transport Strategic Framework developed by the National Department of Transport. The IRPTS currently being planned for Polokwane is intended to transform the public transport sector through the provision of a high quality and affordable transport system whilst reducing the overall journey times for transport users.

As part of its mandate, the municipality has continuously been engaging with stakeholders but not limited to the current public transport operators, Ward Councillors and committees, commuters as well as residents about the upcoming Integrated Rapid Public Transport System.

10.6 TRANSPORT IMPLICATIONS OF THE SDF

Polokwane is facing high migration into its towns from rural areas, and which is fuelled by the expectations of finding of urban jobs. Daily migration into and out of Polokwane CBD for many workers to go and work elsewhere (mining and industrial areas) is a transport matter that needs to be understood in future planning, thus linking the urban and regional perspective is partly to be understood and described in the ITP. Such integrated transport and land-use planning strategies to achieve transport provision includes:

– The urban perspective by means of:

- Concentrating residential development at stations along public transport corridors.

- creating a high density of trip-attracting activities in central areas well served by public transport; and
- Issuing guidelines, which try to ensure that new developments are accessible to public transport.

The wider regional perspective:

- **Upgraded rail, road and air transport facilities.**
- Lack of transport facilities for the long-distance transport services and the integration with the existing local public transport services. The integration of the above services with land use management becomes a central issue to ensure that proper transport services is provided where people live.
- Proper land use rights and densification is promoted to make transport more effective and efficient.
- Public transport amenities e.g., taxi- bus and railway facilities are focused in the north western part of Polokwane CBD between the Buite Street taxi holding area and the Polokwane Railway station.
- Future links can be established between the taxi/bus terminus, the railway station and Polokwane International Airport

A specific feature of Polokwane's demographic profile is the high density Seshego and Moletji corridor north-west of the CBD. The following figure indicates household densities in Polokwane on a spatial format. The corridor provides an ideal opportunity for the development of an IRPT System which is appropriate for Polokwane's specific needs. The corridor has specific features:

- It includes the most densely populated part of Polokwane with a high demand for public transport.
- This high demand corridor stretches along Nelson Mandela Drive and New Era Road through the Seshego and Moletji residential nodes.
- The corridor is approximately 4 km wide and 15 km long making it suitable for the development of an IRPT system.
- The residential areas along the main corridor extend over ± 80 % of the route.
- The corridor is currently served by taxis and buses – there is no passenger rail.
- The residential areas along this corridor include $\pm 37\ 500$ households within an area of approximately 38 km².

10.7 INTERMODAL / LONG DISTANCE TRANSPORT HUB

Lack of transport facilities for the long-distance transport services and the integration with existing local public transport services, the integration of these services with land use management becomes a central issue to ensure that proper transport services is provided where people live. Proper land use rights and densification is promoted to make transport more effective and efficient. Public transport amenities e.g., taxi- bus and railway facilities are focused on the north-western part of Polokwane CBD between the Buite Street taxi holding

10.8 LEETO LA POLOKWANE SYSTEM ELEMENT

10.8.1 Universal Access (UA)

Universal Access (UA) on Leeto la Polokwane, is about giving all people an equal opportunity to access a quality transport service. In line with the UA principles, **Leeto La Polokwane** is designed to provide easy access to all people with a variety of needs.

The UA features on **Leeto La Polokwane** include the use of deployable boarding bridges to allow passengers on wheelchairs, and mothers with baby strollers to enter and exit the buses safely. The other features are raised tactile (textured) paving, beeping alarms, and voice announcements that guide people who have reduced vision and who cannot read.

Leeto La Polokwane Buses



Source: PLK Roads and Transport Directorate

10.8.2 Non-Motorized Transport (NMT)

An important aspect to Leeto La Polokwane is the provision of infrastructure for both **pedestrians and cyclists**. As a result, we have built about 17.01 km of Non-Motorized

Transport (NMT) facilities which includes the pedestrian walkways that are dedicated to human powered means of getting around, like cycling, walking, skating, the use of wheelchairs and handcarts.

Our first NMT public infrastructure is on **Lawton Road (Nirvana), Ben Harris (Westernburg)** and **Matlala Road (Westernburg)**. The Leeto la Polokwane infrastructure aims comply with universal access design standards to ensure the safety and inclusivity for everyone using the system



10.8.3 Industry Transition

- First round of negotiation on the Value Chain Agreement undertaken in line with the signed Process Agreement.
- Engagement with the taxi industry on the Travel Demand Surveys (TDS) as part of future planning put on hold due to issues related to the interim contract.
- Coordinated discussion and agreement on outstanding matters related to the 3-year interim Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA).
- Drew up a programme to fasttrack negotiations of the long-term VOCA and coordinate approvals for extension of 3-year interim contract.
- Continuous engagement with the taxi industry and Vehicle Operating Company (VOC) on transport and operational matters.

10.8.4 Transport Planning and Operations

- 21 standard buses have been procured and delivered to Polokwane.
- 5 x 9 meter buses delivered and 10 x 9 meter buses outstanding.
- Council has terminated the negotiations with the Business Rescue Practitioners, Cassim Incorporated, Ernst and Young, and the funder of RAW, the Industrial Development Cooperation of South Africa (IDC) to resolve the matter of the outstanding nine (10) x 9 metre Leeto La Polokwane buses and has instituted Legal proceedings in respect of recovery of funds.

- Leeto La Polokwane is currently operational along Phase 1A routes (Seshego – CBD, Nirvana – CBD and Flora Park – CBD).
- Maintenance of the buses on daily basis at the workshop.
- Council has approved 2023 to 2028 Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan (CITP) and will be reviewed annually.

10.8.5 Intelligent Transport System Modelling

- ❖ Partial Implementation of the safety and security plan at the Metropolitan office, Layover facility and Control centre.
- ❖ Revenue collected through the Account-Based Ticketing (ABT) compliant Automated Fare Collection (AFC) system as the only fare media for the bus service.
- ❖ Operational control centre utilizing the Public Transport Management System (PTMS) which assists the bus service with fleet management, route planning, scheduling and communication with the drivers and customers.
- ❖ Council has approved utilization of Mike’s Kitchen as a Leeto La Polokwane customer walk-in center.

10.8.6 Leeto La Polokwane fare increase

- ❖ Council has approved the fare increase of Leeto la Polokwane operations with effect from **1st July 2024**. The New Fare Increase are as Follows:(Seshego - R13 to R15, Nirvana /Westernburg and Flora Park –R8 to R9.50).

10.8.7 Leeto Marketing, Communications and Stakeholder Relations

- ❖ System Marketing - Leeto brand awareness and placement of information/marketing material on social media platforms, website and other digital platforms, activations, and brand partnerships.
- ❖ Communication and Public Relations - Public notices and posters on accessibility, Leeto ABT card selling-top-up points, unavailability of top-up functionality, 2024/25 bus fare adjustment etc. and response to media enquiries.
- ❖ System Branding - Branding application at the Leeto bus station and the walk-in centre, and branding at events/activations.
- ❖ Continuous Stakeholder consultations have been taking place with affected parties for Phase 1A.
- ❖ Provision of Leeto La Polokwane customer relationship management services.



Leeto Marketing and Communications 1



Leeto Marketing and Communications 2



Leeto Logo

Leeto Marketing and Communications 3

10.8.8 Business and Finance

- ❖ 100 Standard Operation Procedures (SOP) for Leeto la Polokwane operations developed.

- ❖ Fare Policy has been developed and approved by Council.
- ❖ Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) has been signed and approved by the City and Esilux.
- ❖ Financial Model has been signed off by the City and Esilux.
- ❖ The Municipality is currently reviewing the Operations plans for expansion. The plan would include the roll out of Phase 1B and possible initial part of phase 2. The implementation plans would be based on the affordability of the Municipality to cover the operations cost of providing the Transport services.

10.8.9 Leeto Infrastructure

- **4.65km** of Dedicated Bus route (Nelson Mandela Drive to Seshego) completed.
- **31.49km** of CBD feeder routes have been rehabilitated.
- **20.41km** of Seshego Bus routes have been upgraded.
- Rehabilitation of the Day-time Facility (interim depot) is almost completed.
- **17km** of Non-Motorised Transport Facilities have been completed.
- Construction of the Depot civil works (Seshego) and Terminal Station Upper structures (on General Joubert Street) is under implementation.

10.9 Construction of Bus Depot at Seshego

10.9.1 Paving of internal roads and Parking Area at the Bus Depot at Seshego



Paving of internal Streets at the Bus Depot at Seshego (2)



Paving of internal Streets at the Bus Depot at Seshego (2)

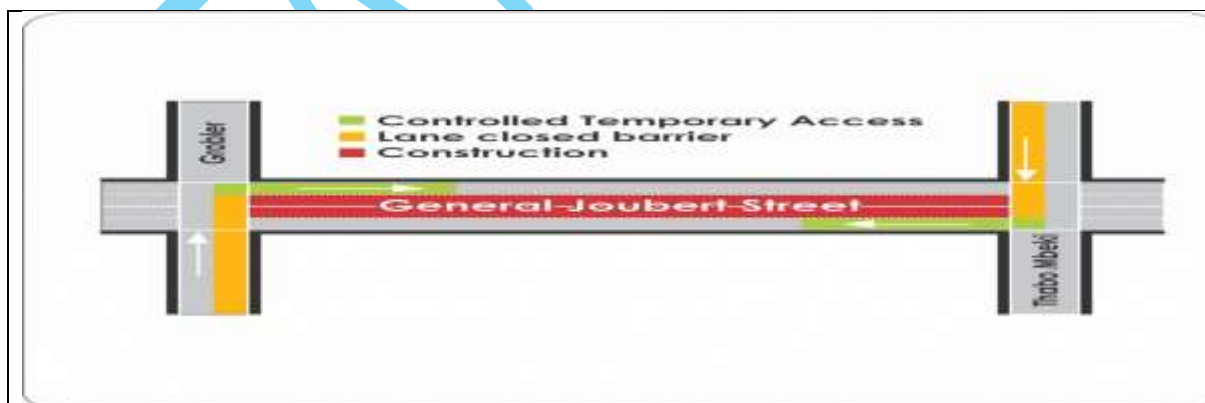
10.10 General Joubert Street Bus Station Precinct

The City of Polokwane's Integrated Public Transport System (IPTS), Leeto la Polokwane, is currently implementing the following infrastructure projects at the station precinct.

- 1 – Construction of the Leeto la Polokwane bus Station on General Joubert Street
- 2 – Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD

The construction will affect General Joubert Street between Grobler Street and Thabo Mbeki Street. This will result in restricted access for vehicles into the area (tenants only). This area is allocated for the Leeto la Polokwane station and dedicated Leeto La Polokwane bus lanes.

There will be no public parking in this area. Alternative parking is available on the corner of Bodenstein and Church Street.



Designs -Construction of the Leeto la Polokwane bus Station on General Joubert Street.

Construction of the Leeto la Polokwane bus Station on General Joubert Street.

10.10.1 Progress on Construction of Bus Station Upper Structure (General Joubert str)



Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD (1)



Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD (2)



Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD (3)

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate (February 2024)

10.10.2 Complete ProjectConstruction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD



Construction of Leeto Bus Station at the City CBD (4)

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate (June 2024)

10.10.3 Widening of Sandriver Bridge

The Widening and Upgrading of Nelson Mandela Sand River Bridge, the Municipality is waiting for Beans from the Manufacture in order to Complete this Project.



Widening of Sandriver Bridge 1



Widening of Sandriver Bridge 2



Widening of Sandriver Bridge 3

10.11 Trunk route between Seshego and the CBD

IPTN has constructed a trunk route in the median between Seshego and the CBD. Currently it is about 4,5 kilometres. This route will be used by BRT Buses for the effective and efficient scheduled service.

Polokwane Municipality under IPTN has also constructed the Non-Motorized Transport (NMT) both sides between the CBD and Seshego, Greenside and Westernburg. This infrastructure will be used by people walking and cycling.

Trunk route between Seshego and the CBD



Trunk route between Seshego and the CBD

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

10.11.1 Painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes in the CBD

The painting of the Leeto la Polokwane bus lanes will be done in phases. These dedicated lanes will be painted in **red** to indicate that only Leeto la Polokwane buses and other authorized vehicles are permitted. Motorists are urged to be vigilant and exercise caution during this period.



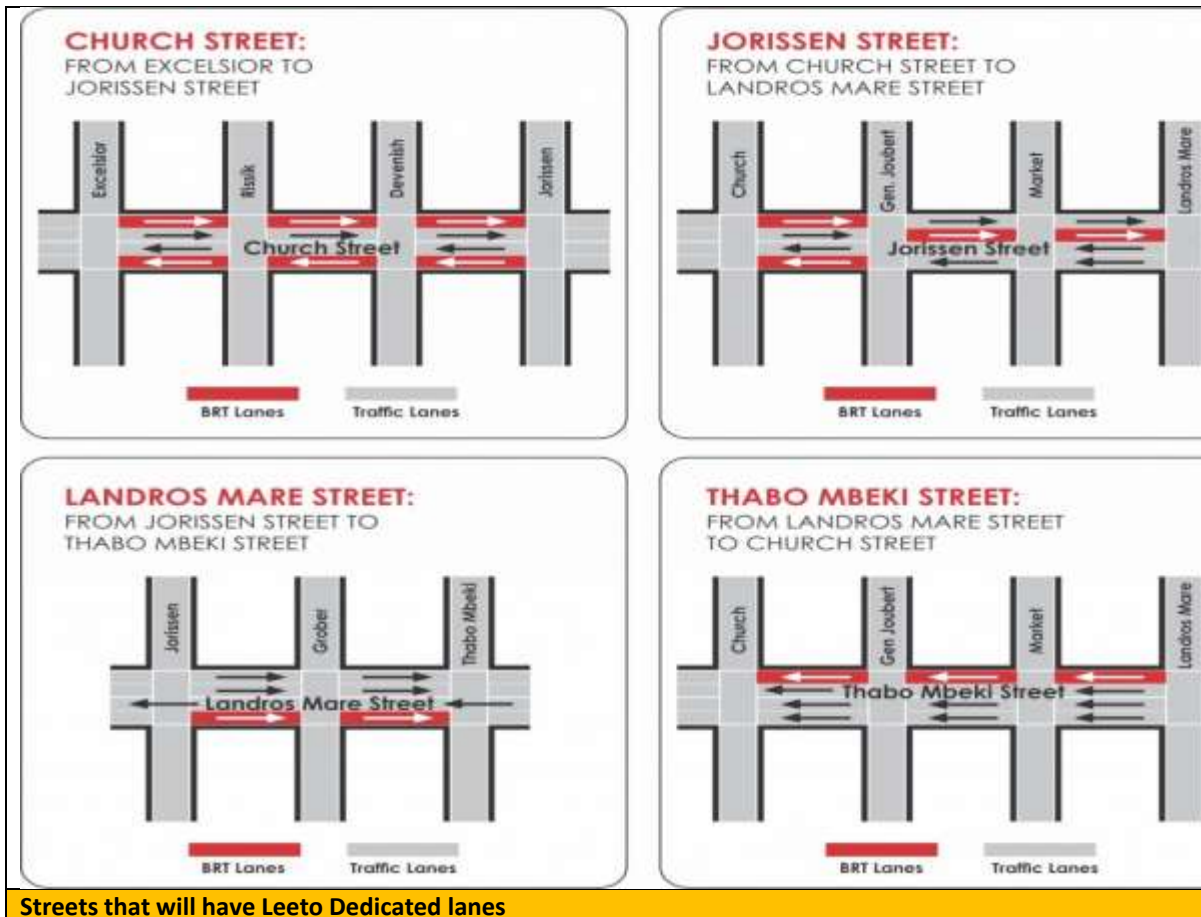
Leeto la Polokwane bus dedicated lanes

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

8.11.2 Streets that will have Leeto Dedicated lanes

The following street will be affected:

- 1) Church Street: Between Excelsior and Thabo Mbeki Street
- 2) Jorissen Street: Between Church and Landros Mare Street
- 3) Landros Mare Street: Between Jorissen and Thabo Mbeki Street
- 4) Thabo Mbeki Street: between Landros Mare and Church Street.



Streets that will have Leeto Dedicated lanes

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

10.11.3 Leeto Daytime Layover Facility

Project Description include: Day time layover facility for Leeto La Polokwane bus operations. Construction of bus parking area, palisade fencing and refurbishment of office building are completed. The refurbishment of the ablution facilities and construction of access ramps is under construction. To work as a mini, depot for Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane IPTS service. It is currently being used as offices for the Vehicle Operation Company (**Esilux Offices**). Leeto bus Daytime Layover Facility is located adjacent to the Itsoseng bus Centre



Leeto bus Daytime Layover Facility 1



Leeto bus Daytime Layover Facility 2

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

10.11.4 Leeto Control Cent

Project Description include: -Provision of the Automated Fare Collection (AFC) and Public Transport Management System (PTMS). Installation of Fare Collection equipment. Installation of operations monitoring equipment. The Leeto La Polokwane control centre is fully functional in supporting the operations through the Public Transport Monitoring System (PTMS).



Leeto Control Centre

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

10.11.5 Leeto La Polokwane (LLP)

Leeto La Polokwane (LLP) is an Integrated Rapid Public Transport System (IRPTS) that aims to improve the state of public transport in the Municipality by integrating various modes of public transport operating within the jurisdiction of transportation. LLP is a safe, reliable, and convenient integrated public transport system for all of Polokwane's citizens. One of the features of LLP is the Bus Service which is a partnership between the municipality and the affected public transport operators.

Leeto La Polokwane is an Integrated Public Transport System (IPTS) of the City of Polokwane. The system aims to provide a high-quality public transport service aligned to the Public Transport Strategy and Action Plan of 2007, implemented under the requirements of the National Land Transport Act (NLTA) of 2009, and the public transport vision that was articulated in the White Paper on Transport Policy of 1996.

The aim of Leeto La Polokwane is to integrate various public transport modes across the municipality as well as capacitating current public transport operators who are directly affected by the System as per the requirements of the NLTA.



Leeto Bus Fleet



Leeto Bus stop



Inside leeto Bus

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

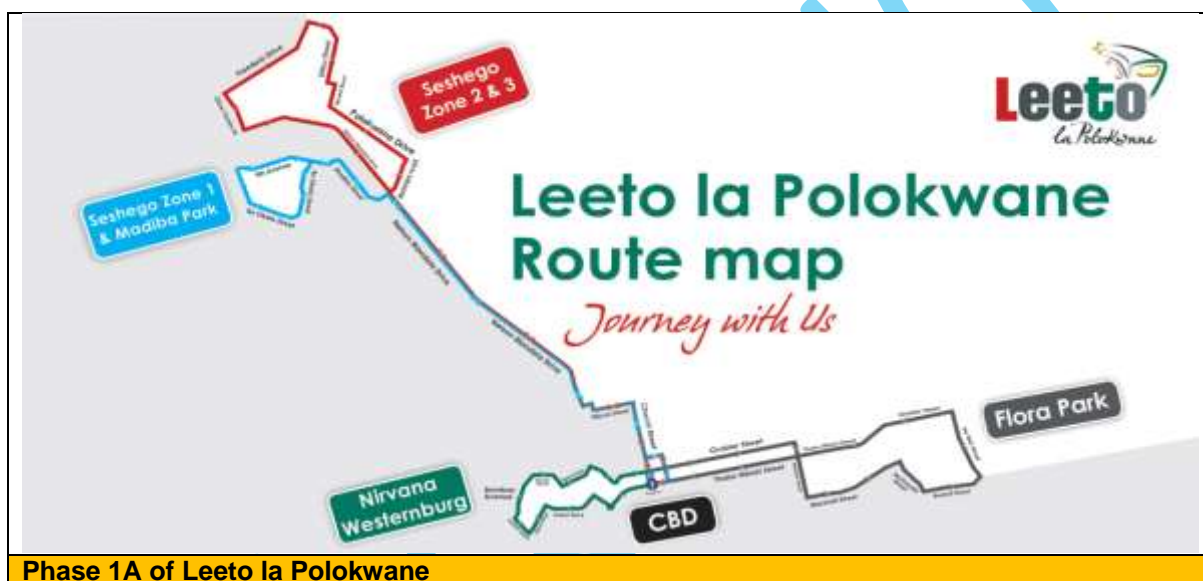
10.11.5 Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane

The PIPTS consists of a Bus Service which is a partnership between the City of Polokwane and the Phase 1A affected operators. The Leeto La Polokwane's PIPTS Operational Plan identified four (4) phases which will be implemented as follows:

- **Phase 1:** Polokwane City and Seshego
- **Phase 2:** Polokwane City and Moletji
- **Phase 3:** Polokwane City and Mankweng
- **Phase 4:** Polokwane City and Koloti

It should also be highlighted that the phases will not necessarily be implemented in chronological order, but rather in accordance with the travel demand patterns observed using surveys.

Figure 1: Phase 1A of Leeto la Polokwane



Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

- Leeto La Polokwane commenced with the Phase 1A operations in October 2021, as it has been nominated as one of the flagship programs by the Minister of Transport.
- The Municipality allowed its residence to name their transport system through intensive public participation processes. Some of which allowed for creativity in suggesting a name that emulates and represent the culture of Polokwane.

10.11.6 Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane

Fig 1: Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane



THE BENEFITS OF LEETO LA POLOKWANE™

The Municipality aims to achieve the following main objectives through the implementation of Leeto La Polokwane



Benefits of Leeto La Polokwane

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

The Public Transport System is intended to transform the public transport sector through the provision of a high-quality and affordable public transport system in line with the national policy. The Public Transport System will also be aimed at reducing the overall journey times for public transport users.

The key characteristics of the system are an improvement in access between residential areas and major economic nodes. The main objective of the Public Transport System is therefore, to provide new and attractive road-based public transport services.

Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A Compensation payment effected to 123 affected minibus taxi (MBT) operators from Flora Park Pietersburg (FPTA), Seshego Polokwane (SPTA), and Westenburg (WTA) Taxi Associations. A Vehicle Operating Company Agreement (VOCA) concluded with Esilux (Pty) Ltd; a vehicle operating company (VOC) established by Phase 1A affected taxi associations.

- The AFC and PTMS equipment have been fitted in the 21 x 12m buses, layover facility and the control centre.
- The construction of the Depot and the Station at General Joubert is underway, while the construction of the Layover Facility has been completed.

10.12 Progress on implementation of Leeto La Polokwane Turnaround Strategy

Leeto La Polokwane commenced operations with fare paying passengers from 27 October 2021 with a fleet of 15 buses. The Operations plan, related to the negotiated, three (3) year Vehicle Operating Company Agreement, outlined that a bus fleet of 36 would operate on the identified routes. The fleet of 36 buses was to operate at a frequency of 15 minutes during peak and 30 minutes during off-peak. An adjusted Operations Plan was introduced, due to the limited bus fleet.

The Leeto la Polokwane service has been adjusted to an interim bus fleet of 15 x 12 m bus fleet, with a bus frequency of 30 minutes during peak and off-peak periods. Based on historical data extrapolated from other operating Cities across the country low ridership was predicted at the beginning of operations and, with the expectation that ridership would gradually increase.

Analysis of actual data from the start of operations indicates that the ridership is low, with no gradual increase for the past three months. As a result of the analysis, this has necessitated intervention through a Turnaround Strategy. The purpose of the Turnaround Strategy is to address the low ridership volumes on Phase 1A of Leeto La Polokwane. The Turnaround Strategy is critical to provide measures that may increase ridership. The Turnaround Strategy is targeted at sustainable and efficient operations of Leeto la Polokwane Phase 1A. The Turnaround Strategy must be anchored on the following key objectives:

- Identify Gaps for Operational Efficiency and Propose Improvements.
- Secure Financial Viability and Sustainability of operations.
- Obtain high Levels of Customer Centricity.

Phase 1A of the PIPTS is operational from 27 October 2021 and a Vehicle Operating Company (VOC), Esilux (Pty) Ltd, formed by the Phase 1A affected associations, Flora Park Pietersburg (FPTA), Seshego Polokwane (SPTA), and Westernburg (WTA), are contracted to operate the Phase 1A bus fleet on behalf of the City of Polokwane.

At commencement of operations, ridership projections were to peak at 14 659 per day, when operations have stabilised, and based on a fleet of 36 buses (21 x 12 m buses and 15 x 9 m buses). The projection was also based on a higher frequency of bus timetables (5-to-10-minute headways during peak periods). Currently, an average of 566 passengers are utilising the service daily with a fleet of 11 buses at a reduced frequency of 30 minutes. This is unacceptably far below the initial projections. We further highlight that 123 Mini-bus taxis (MBTs) and their Operating Licences (OL) were removed from service to make way for Phase

1A operations. Based on the afore-mentioned the following may be expected for ridership numbers:

$$123 \text{ MBTs} \times 15 \text{ passengers per trip} \times 6 \text{ trips per day} \times 50\% \text{ capacity utilisation} = 5\,535 \text{ passengers per day.}$$

Through the removal of the 123 MBT a gap has been created in the market for 5 535 passengers per day, however ridership indicates that those passengers have not migrated to Leeto La Polokwane services. This may be attributed to:

- Utilising other modes of transport
- No longer travelling.

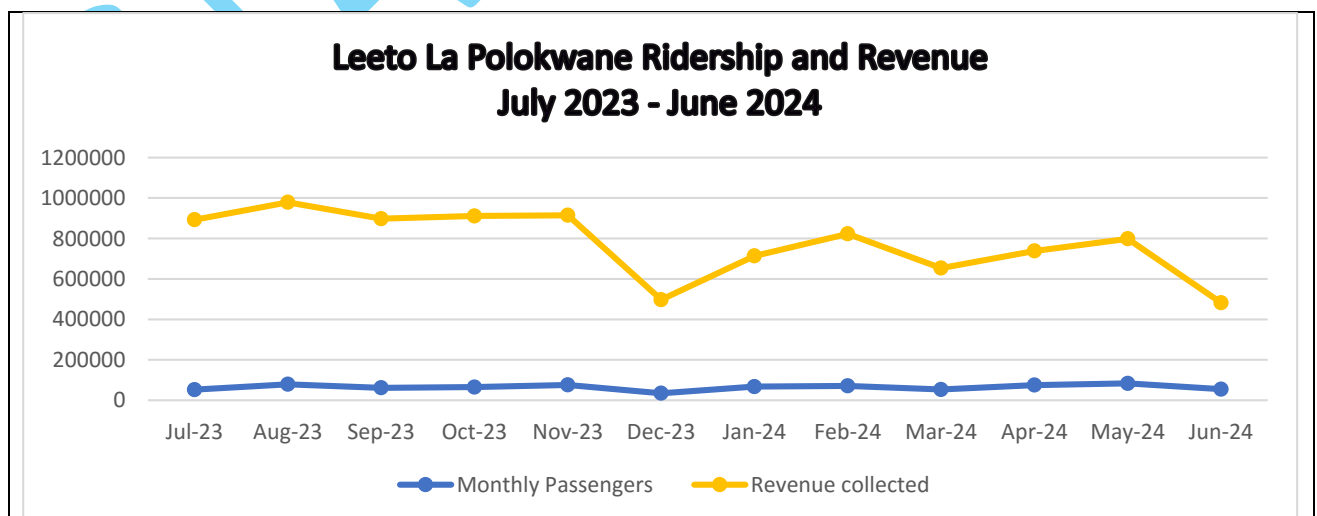
10.12.1 Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Table 1: Ridership on Leeto la Polokwane Bus Service

Ridership on Leeto La Polokwane (Fleet of 15 buses and 116 daily bus trips)	
Projected	Actual
7 308 passengers per day	3 237 passengers per day (end of June 2024)

10.12.2 Monthly ridership and revenue collected

Below indicates the actual monthly ridership and revenue collected from June 2023 to June 2024.



Monthly ridership and revenue

Source: PLK Transportation Directorate

10.12.3 Accessibility and Convenience

In order for ridership to increase for Leeto la Polokwane bus service, all system elements should be accessible and convenient to promote modal shift from other transport modes to our bus service/ system.

10.12.4 Bus Stop Coverage

Bus stop coverage based on the Operations Plan is not adequate and has a negative impact on passengers utilising the service. This is based on the following:

- That the distance between bus stops along the bus routes are placed far apart, and does not adhere to NDoT's Universal Access guidelines,
- Impacts the accessibility of the system, as NDoT's Universal Access Guidelines further state that passengers should not walk long distance to the bus stop and does not adhere to the recommended NDoT's Universal Access guidelines, which states that passenger should not walk more than 500m to the bus stop,
- Some of the key trip generators were not adequately covered such as, educational institutions, hospitals etc.,
- The community (potential passengers) have also raised various concerns with regards to the placement of the bus stops.

10.12.5 Route Alignment Coverage.

The Phase 1A route alignment is the initial operations Phase, with a limited bus fleet which is a factor influencing ridership. The route alignment and current bus fleet, is therefore only able to partially satisfy passenger demand, contributing to ridership, until the expansion of the fleet size, and bus frequency to cover a wider footprint of the population for Phase 1A.

However, some of the passenger demand would necessitate possible review and rationalisation of the route alignment as the system does not meet the Origin-Destination (O-D) pairs. The data on which alignments were planned is outdated and travel patterns have changed since the collection of that data which is more than 8 years. We outline issues, and possible interventions, that must be introduced to the route alignment.

10.12.6 Flora Park (F1) Route

The envisaged service for the Flora Park route is to provide both clockwise and anti-clockwise services to Flora Park in order to provide a direct service between the CBD and Savannah Mall. The current service provides only the anti-clockwise service, therefore taking longer for passengers going directly to Savannah Mall and surrounding areas. The project team has been receiving concerns from some of the passengers pointing this as one of the contributing factors for not using the service due to long journey times. Some passengers that it takes them close to 30 minutes to travel between Library Gardens and Savannah Mall through the current anti-clockwise route.

10.12.7 Westernburg (F4A) Route

The current service is operating from the CBD to Nirvana; however, it has been performing very poorly in terms of passenger volumes since its inception. Although there were amendments done to the original route due to unavailability of the 9m midi-buses, this is not considered as the primary reason for the low passenger numbers.

10.12.8 Seshego (TE4) Route

The current alignment within Madiba Park traverses along Bo-Okelo Street, which runs on the outskirts of the catchment area. The catchment for this alignment for most part of the route is concentrated on one side only as the area to the east of Bo-Okelo Street is not yet developed. This results in most passengers residing further in the centre of Madiba Park to consider other modes of accessible public transport routes and stops.

10.12.9 Seshego (TEB) Route

The current route alignment proceeds from the Seshego circle and loops around the area following Ditlou Street towards the industrial areas, Khensani Street and down along Freedom Street, Oliver Tambo and back to the trunk route along Nelson Mandela Drive. Based on assessments undertaken and feedback received from stakeholders, it has been identified that most of the passengers are concentrated along Zondi Maphanga Street and across Freedom Street to Realeboga Street and Bram Fischer Street.

10.13 Modal Competition

There seems to be illegal operators who are providing public transport services and as there are insufficient Law Enforcement measures dedicated to Leeto La Polokwane Phase 1A route that might be a contributing factor to the illegal operations.

The afore-mentioned challenges may be eliminated by increase in the fleet size, frequency of bus operations, and introduction of law enforcement measures, such as monitoring of MBT operator licenses and operations. Regular engagement with Phase 1A stakeholders, that is the three affected taxi associations to assist in enforcement is also underway.

10.13.1 Information Dissemination

During engagements with stakeholders, it became evident that information with regards to Leeto La Polokwane has not adequately reached the target market. Various platforms (website, social media) are being utilised to share information to the public, however it appears that not many people have access to these platforms. Intervention measures are necessary for dissemination of information, and are addressed further below, in the document.

10.13.2 Insufficient Human Resources

To implement Leeto la Polokwane efficiently and effectively, sufficient, and qualified personnel is required. Coordination with and support from other departments within the Municipality is also crucial to ensure efficiency of services rendered by other departments to Leeto La Polokwane where required.

The following key personnel dedicated to Leeto La Polokwane is required:

- Law Enforcement
- Customer Care
- Operations and Monitoring
- System Marketing
- System Inspectors

It is recommended that the City of Polokwane address this issue with urgency.

10.13.3 Possible Strategies to Address Identified Challenges

Through the implementation of the identified response strategies, the Polokwane Municipality has a vision of increasing ridership on Leeto La Polokwane.

- ABT Implementation
- Route optimization

- Increase the number of bus stops
- Improve and increase brand visibility and loyalty through the implementation of a revised Integrated Marketing Communication Turnaround Strategy
- Improved Law Enforcement visibility
- CCTV Cameras along the Leeto La Polokwane route, facilities, and infrastructure

The City of Polokwane has acknowledged the current situation of the Leeto La Polokwane service as it relates to low ridership and the causes thereof. In response to the challenges identified, several strategies have been developed in order turn the situation around. A variety of opportunities exist for the improvement of operations as stipulated in this document.

10.14 Upgrade of Indian Centre Taxi Rank

Indian Centre Taxi Rank is undergoing transformation as part of our programme to revitalise and empower the taxi industry and to improve commuting experience, construction has kicked off and is set to wrap up in **8 months**. Polokwane Municipality is Constructing a modern taxi facility with all-new infrastructure:

- Fresh new paving
- Smooth new asphalt
- Dedicated loading bays
- Functional offices
- 24/7 lighting
- Reliable backup power

the stylish new Indian Centre will be expected at the end of this Project



Upgrade of PT facilities at the Indian centre 1



Upgrade of PT facilities at the Indian centre 2



Upgrade of PT facilities at the Indian centre 3



Upgrade of PT facilities at the Indian centre 4

Source: PLK Roads and Transport Directorate

CHAPTER Eleven: Roads and Storm Water Analysis

11.1 ROADS AND STORM WATER

11.1.1 Introduction to Roads and Storm water

Polokwane Municipality is characterised by radial road network of approximately **7 495 km** covering its area of jurisdiction with a backlog of approximately 6 005,87km as per the recent inventory. This backlog translates to a total of 80.1% percent. This is due to the establishment of new developments both formal and informal settlements. It is situated at the point where National and Provincial roads converge from where they radiate out in all directions providing good regional accessibility.

The Municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard which ensures accessibility at all times. Coupled with the latter, there is storm water management and control to an extent that it poses as a threat to mobility, infrastructure and communities.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on this high road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure

The Municipality has since moved from implementing an average of **19km** road upgrading per annum to an average of **16km for surfacing and paving** per annum. In the 2023/24 Financial year the Municipality has budgeted a total of R 172 717 895 for upgrading of arterial road as well as Paving of internal streets in townships and rural areas which will have an impact in reducing backlog of gravel roads in those areas.

The Municipality will also be upgrading some of the RAL roads as agreed with RAL. Council has taken a decision to request RAL to transfer to the municipality, those RAL roads implemented or that are being implemented by the municipality. These roads are deemed necessary as they connect villages. These roads are deemed necessary as they connect villages.

There are panel of contractors and consultants procured to reduce lag time for procuring service providers as and when the project is to be implemented. The service providers are readily obtainable from the panel as and when the need arises and this has also enhanced

the planning ahead where designs are planned ahead of implementation to avoid delays and delays in projects implementation. Contractors will be allocated from the panel of contractors for implementation.

As an interim approach to have accessible gravel roads municipal wide, the SBU is implementing a clustering approach of municipal resources and teams in order to make impact when maintaining gravel roads. In the 2023/24 financial year, the Municipality managed to procure two new graders as part of staged fleet replacement plan on current redundant fleet.

In terms of the current analysis, City/Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance hence most of the roads have exceeded their design life. The municipality has appointed panel of contractors to augment the in-house team in maintaining the roads municipal wide, War on pothole program has been launched to address surface defects to achieve a pothole free city in the Municipality. The program oversight is done by the Executive Mayor, Roads and transportation portfolio committee and the Roads management team

The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system. The Municipality was allocated R14 280 000,00 from National Disaster Management Centre to deal with the after-effect of 2023/2024 floods which were declared by the Minister in February 2023. The funds were able to enhance the rehabilitation of apportion of 900m length of road in Blaauberg street from Caltex Garage to Fluorspat street as well as the rehabilitation of 300m length of road in Doloriet street from Blaauberg towards Silicon street. More funds are required for the rehabilitation of roads in the city and surrounding suburbs.

Roads and storm water SBU is made up of two divisions but only Roads is mostly considered over Storm water when it comes to budgeting. Storm water should have its own budget. The other challenge affecting the roads is the unavailability or the insufficiency of Storm water system. The Municipality has for long time neglected the issue of storm water in that there is never a dedicated budget for storm water to address areas that are too problematic. Areas like Seshego, Flora Park, Sterpark, CBD, Welgelegen and Mankweng get flooded each time that it rains. Whenever a budget for storm water is made available, you find that it is insufficient to kick start a project. Another challenge is the high vacancy rate in the SBU

Approximately R22.1M has been budgeted for through CRR, IUDG and NDPG for implementation of storm water project municipal wide. Construction of low-level bridges in

rural area has started as requested by community during IDP consultation meetings and **9** low level bridges will be implemented in the 2024/25 financial year

Traffic safety can be linked with the existing condition of roads in the municipal area. With increased road users, congestion has also increased in recent years and has now become problematic in the City/Seshego and Mankweng clusters. In addition, road safety has become a concern with increasing accidents occurring on municipal roads. The Municipality has from the previous financial years approved three (3) speed humps yearly per ward in areas that are critical. The approved 3 speed humps will not be possible in the 2023/24 financial year, however only two speed humps will be prioritised in most critical wards due to limited budget. Traffic calming measures are still a problem on most roads. The municipality has in the financial year 2022/23 FY managed to appoint a contractor to implement installation of traffic lights and signs at southern gateway in the city cluster and project is in progress.

11.1.2 Classification of Roads

The municipality has developed the Road Master Plan that has been approved by Council in 2014. This Master plan will be updated to include the incorporated area of Aganang. It was in anyway due for review and such will take place in the **2025/26** financial year.

The Roads Provincial Gazette was published and Roads authorities are familiar with their new Road Network.

The municipality is faced with huge challenges in providing and maintaining the local roads at an acceptable standard which always ensures accessibility. Coupled with the latter, there is a challenge with storm water management and control to an extent that it poses a threat to mobility, infrastructure and communities. The Municipality will develop storm water master plan in the **2025/26 financial** year for municipal wide which will assist in planning and addressing storm water challenges that are faced by the Municipality.

The long-term strategy of the municipality is to surface and pave roads within the municipal area. Based on huge road backlog, different strategies are implemented including preventative maintenance of the road infrastructure. In terms of the current analysis, City / Seshego and Mankweng Cluster have roads that deteriorated due to limited routine and preventative maintenance.

11.1.3 Challenges faced by the Municipality in providing Roads.

- Aging infrastructure (deterioration of roads due to limited routine and preventative maintenance)
- Most of roads have exceeded their design life span (approximately **R2.2Billion** required to rehabilitate the existing roads) in both Polokwane and Aganang area.
- Unavailability or insufficient storm water systems
- Huge rural backlog with minimal impact of 16Km per annum.
- Though the municipality has approved a new organogram, most critical positions are still vacant due to the insufficient funding.
- 98% of Roads that Community prioritize during IDP's do not belong to the Municipality but to RAL and the Department of Roads.
- Insufficient budget
- Insufficient plant (construction machinery)
- High vacancy rate in the Roads SBU

11.2 ROADS BACKLOG

Below is the current status of existing backlog, which without annual maintenance will escalate.

Service	H/H	Access	Backlog
Roads (7 495km)	280 225	1 489,13km (19,86%)	6 005,87 km

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.1 Municipal Roads Current Status Quo

Operational issues /Capacity

- Inadequate routine maintenance staff/ high vacancy rate/ reliance on casuals

Status of Yellow fleet

- High down time of graders because of ageing. / Machinery takes a very long time to be fixed.
- The Municipality has managed to procure and deliver two more new graders as part of the mitigation to bridge the shortage of grading machinery.

Number of graders broken down

- There are 9 graders which are frequently broken and not reliable.
- The three graders which were normally on operational are now augmented by the two new graders recently received.

11.2.2 Potholes Repairs in the City CBD, Seshego, Westerberg.

- The Executive Major, had launched a war on pothole whereby the available resources and teams are clustered to attend to any emerging potholes in the CBD and around all inward bound roads into the city.
- The programme is aimed at ensuring that all the inward bound roads are pothole free and viable for freight transportation and new business as well as economic adventures.
- The credibility and accessibility of all inbound roads has increased significantly since the inception of the war on pothole programme.
- The programme for war on pothole is coupled with sundry works such as road markings, maintenance of sidewalks and other road furniture's. This is undertaken to ensure that the entire inbound roads are clean, clear from obstructions and free from localized runoff ponding.
- The programme is also aimed to be decentralized to outbound roads leading to surrounding suburbs, townships and clusters.
- This will also enhance local economic investments and decentralization of business opportunities to all Municipal clusters in particular rural areas which in turns will make an impact on providing conducive environment for the job creations across all Municipal clusters.

11.2.3 Refurbishment of streets around the City CBD

The streets within City of Polokwane CBD, surrounding suburbs and the industrial area are currently in a deteriorating state. The municipality has embarked on a programme to renew its roads infrastructure assets. The city has budgeted R50 000 000.00 in the 2024/25 financial year and R29 500 000.00 in 2025/26 financial year through IUDG and PTNG for rehabilitation of streets in Polokwane.

Polokwane Municipality has also managed to rehabilitate 1,3km of roads in Doloriet and Blaauberg street through Municipal Disaster Recovery Grant received from National Disaster Management Centre



Rehabilitation of Blaauberg Street

Rehabilitation of Doloriet Street

Refurbishment of streets around the City CBD

11.2.4 War on pothole programme

This is a programme Launched by the Executive Mayor **Cllr Mosema John Mpe** to address the Potholes that are within the Municipal roads in all Clusters. During this Programme the Executive Mayor Cllr Mosema John Mpe joins the employees from roads section to repair potholes. The Main Aim is to improve quality of Roads within the City of Polokwane.



War on pothole programme 1

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.5 Grader's status QUO Report per Cluster (Their Condition)

1. **Dikgale Sebayeng**=1 grader in good condition
2. **Mankweng**= 2 graders allocated, 1in fair condition, 1 is fair
3. **City cluster and Seshego**=1 grader fair
4. **Moletjie** = 2 graders, 1 in fair condition, 1 is poor
5. **Aganang**= 6xgraders, 1 in good condition,1 new and 4 redundant
6. **Molepo Chuene Maja**= 2 graders, 1 fair condition and 1 new grader

Unveiling of two New graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor



Unveiling of two graders for Moletjie Cluster by Executive Mayor

11.2.6 Roads SBU Yellow Fleet Status Quo

Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
Graders	6 functional; 9 not fully functional	9 graders to be scrapped, regular Transmission fault and overheating, no torque, Frequent overheating,	4xnew grader, 2xfair condition, 9x extremely poor
Roller	1 functional		
Maintenance trucks	10 Functional and 2 not functional	Overheating, Roadworthy, Exhausted engines.	6 trucks in good condition, 6 trucks fair and 4 trucks auctioned
Water Trucks	1 Functional, 1 not fully functional	Regular breakdown, transmission and starters	1 good condition, 1 fair
TLB	2 functional, 3 not functional	Frequent overheating, thrust on loading buckets nipples, hydraulic pipe bursts	2 good and 3xfair
Front end loader	1 x functional		
Tipper Trucks	6 tipper truck, 1x6 cubic and 5x10cubic 3 functional, 3 not functional	hydraulic cylinder diagnosis, Aged Engines and low tipping torque.	2 fair, 1 poor and 3 good

Type of Fleet	Status of the fleet (How many functions and how many not functional)	Type of Service Required	Condition of the Fleet (Poor, Fair Good)
Dozer (track wheel)	1xnot functional	Engine down	Poor
Lowbed truck	Functional	Low torque and fuel suction problem	Good
Light delivery vehicle	8 functional, 5 not functional	4 scraps and 1xaccident	5 good,3 fair and 4 obsolete and 1 beyond repair light vehicle were auctioned

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.2.7 New Municipal Graders Hand over

To address the Shortage of Graders, Council has Purchased New graders that will assist in grading of Roads in the Rural Cluster. New Graders were procured and will be handed over by the Executive Mayor **Cllr Mosema John Mpe**. The handing over of Graders and Patching of potholes forms part of the municipality initiative to improve road infrastructure within the municipality.



New Municipal Graders Hand over 1



New Municipal Graders Hand over 2

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.3 Construction of low level bridges

11.3.1 CONSTRUCTION OF LOW-LEVEL BRIDGES PROGRAMME

The city of Polokwane has improved significantly towards providing safe low level bridges along streams and tributaries in rural areas for the past 14 years. The Municipality has constructed 6 low level bridges during 2023/24 financial year.

- Targeted low level bridges= 15
- Achievement =6
- Project status: It is an ongoing project.

11.3.2 Areas where low level bridges were constructed and completed

7. Mamadimo park,
8. Matobole to Molatela
9. Seshego Ext 133
10. Moletji Komape
11. Makgobathe
12. Sehora

Low level bridges



Low level bridges

Source: PLK Roads SBU

Remarks:

- Low level bridge in Moletjie Ga Komape was successfully completed. The project was undertaken through partnership with Department of Rural Development and CoGHSTA.

11.4 Repairs on Storm Water Drainage

The City of Polokwane has embarked on a war against flash flooding and inefficient drainage system to eliminate flooding which has been detrimental to the growth and investment opportunity for the city.

The steel frames on the storm water kerb inlet were frequently vandalised and missing subsequently impacting more on ineffective collection of runoff.

The areas which were prone to frequent damages and missing of steel frames are currently refurbished through war on storm water initiative by installing 250mm heavy concrete slab which is thick enough to overcome the regular damages and missing of frames.

- Targeted storm water drains for June= 72 storm water drains
- 115 x Storm water kerb inlet maintained:
- Targeted area: CBD and surrounding suburbs and township.

11.4.1 Challenges for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance

- Polokwane Municipality has been prone to flash flooding each time when it rains as a results of inefficient storm water systems and regular damage to the kerb inlet as a results of missing and damaged steel frames.
- There were several areas which were frequently affected by the flash flooding each time it rained.
- Areas such as Nikkel street near Jumbo, Ext 76, 44, 78, Legae La Batho, Ivy Park Emperor and Ridge road, Makanye, Moremadi and Mamadimo Park, Asbes street along the Water treatment plant and Outlet structure adjacent to Buite clinic as well as other areas not listed, are frequently prone to flash flooding each time when it rains.

11.4.2 Interventions for Storm Water Infrastructure Maintenance

- The Municipality has managed to procure Consulting Engineers to plan, design and monitor the storm water management in the following areas as part of phase in approach for war on storm water initiative.
- Upgrading of storm water system in Ext 76 is currently under construction and the project is at 60% of the physical progress.
- Contractor is appointed to upgrade the storm water system along Nikkel street next to Jumbo.
- National Disaster Management Centre has allocated R4,765 million as part of flood relief intervention to address the flooding matter along Asbes street near Water treatment plant.
- The consultant is finishing off the detailed design for the storm water upgrade in Ivy Park.
- The Consulting Engineer is concluding with storm water preliminary design for storm water in Seshego Thutu street.
- The upgrading of storm water outlet structure adjacent to Buite clinic was completed. The project was funded by the National Disaster Management Centre as part of flood relief intervention.
- Notice boards erected on all illegal dumping spots.
- Erection of bollards behind catch pits slabs at areas prone to frequent damages is to be undertaken upon the procurement of service provider to supply the road construction material.

11.4.3 Blocked Storm Water Drainage infrastructure

Unblocking of storm water infrastructure in particular kerb inlet has improved drastically since the initiative of the declaration of war against storm water by the council of City of Polokwane.

Illustrations - Unblocking Storm water Drainage System
War on Storm Water Drainage Programme



Unblocking Storm water Drainage System



Unblocking Storm water Drainage System

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.5 Various Roads Projects under Construction within Various Municipal Clusters

Polokwane as part of **road asset** renewal program to rehabilitate streets in the urban area especially the city cluster and surrounding suburbs.

There are panel of contractors appointed to deal with preventative maintenance as and when the need arises and where the in-house team Roads and Storm water operations and maintenance team requires an amplified support.

War on pothole program has been launched to address surface defects to achieve a pothole free city in the Municipality. The program oversight is done by the Executive Mayor, Roads and transportation portfolio committee and the Roads and Storm water management team.

11.5.1 Upgrading of Internal Street from Hostel to Oliver Tambo Road at Seshego zone 6



Upgrading of Internal Street from Hostel to Oliver Tambo Road at Seshego zone 6



Upgrading of Internal Street from Hostel to Oliver Tambo Road at Seshego zone 6

11.6 Paving of Economically Strategic Roads

Paving of economically strategic Roads - The City of Polokwane has Started with a New Programme of Paving Roads Network that are Economically Strategic as Guided by **GROW Resolution** taken at the Municipal Strategic Planning Session which indicates Progress as Follows:

- Economical strategic roads to be paved were identified and consultants were appointed to plan and design these roads over the MTREF period.
- Detailed designs for paving of strategic road was completed, contractors appointed.
- The sites hand over for the contractors took place and implementation commenced in **January 2024**.
- The Directorate is Conducting contractor and consultant **monthly meetings** to ensure that all those Roads Are Completed on time within the allocated Budget as approved by Council.

11.6.1 Paving of Streets in Mankgaile



Paving of streets in Mankgaile

11.6.2 Paving of Streets in Sebayeng /Dikgale Cluster



Paving of streets in Sebayeng /Dikgale cluster

Source: PLK Roads SBU ,2024

11.7 Personnel for Roads and Storm Water

Number of Vacancies:

8x Budgeted Positions: i.e.

- 2x Superintendent
- 1x Senior Technician
- 2x Technicians
- 3x Special Worksman
- 4x Drivers
- 7x labourers

Other Essential vacancies with no budget: i.e.

- 1x Assistant Management, Storm water management, Railway sidings and traffic lights.
- 3 x Foreman City cluster.
- 6 x Senior Operators
- 2x Senior Technician.
- 3x technicians
- 4 x operators.
- 2 x drivers.
- 1 x Project administrator.
- 1 x Wayleave Technician.
- 30x labourers.

11.8 Grading of Rural Roads Per Cluster

11.8.1 Grading of Roads Status Quo

CLUSTERS	GRADER AVAILABILITY	REMARKS
City	PM711	Bush worn and wearing on cylinder hinge Redundant- Frequent breakdown
Molepo Chuene Maja	PM23/01	1000 km Service new grader
	PM 712	Tendrum worn out and not rotating
Dikgale Sebayeng	PM17/02 PM 24/03	Injectors and fuel suction New grader purchased

CLUSTERS	GRADER AVAILABILITY	REMARKS
Aganang	PM23/02	Damaged pipes for Hydraulic pipe transmission and coolant and currently operational
	PM 796, PM 805,	Transmission faulty Guide shims on the blade damaged
	PM 812,	Gear selection, Mould board worn out
	PM18/96	Programming
Mankweng	PM710	Turn table and cycle drive damaged
	PM 18/101	Replacement of copper slide and spacer.
Seshego	PM18/100 is shared with Moletjie	PM18/100, Overheating, engine malfunction.
Moletjie	PM17/01	PM18/100, Overheating, engine malfunction, PM17/01 wiring and hydraulic pipe burst, PM711 oil leakage and loss torque
	PM 24/02	New grader purchased

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.8.2 Challenges for Rural Roads Grading

Inadequate functional graders

- The directorate needs at least **two graders** per cluster, this will reduce long travelling distances and over utilization of machinery. This will also improve service delivery and elimination of overtime cost.
 1. Total number of Municipal graders=15
 2. Full functional graders=6
 3. Redundant graders= 8
 4. Graders experiencing regular breakdowns=9

Shortage of Grader operators.

- There are only 5 Senior Operator who are currently performing grading services and are not sufficient to deliver adequate grading service.
- At least two senior operators are required per cluster to enable effective grading of roads in rural areas.

11.8.3 Roads SBU Fleet analysis

ANALYSIS OF FLEET REQUIRED TO RENDER ROADS FULLY FUNCTIONAL

FLEET DESCRIPTION	TOTAL ALLOCATION	AVAILABLE	OLD FLEET	REQUIRED ADDITIONAL FLEET
Graders	15	6	9	9
TLB	5	3	2	2
Lowbed Truck	1	1		1
LDV's	13	8	5	7
4 Ton Maintenance Trucks	17	7	5	12
Excavator	0			1
10m3 Tipper trucks	5	3	2	7
Front End Loader	1	1	0	0
Water trucks	2	1	1	2 x 18000litres
Smooth roller	1	1	0	0
Grid Roller and Tow tractor	0	0	0	1
Tamping roller	0			1
Dozer	1	1		0
Crane Truck	0			1
Road Marker self-propelled	0			5
Asphalt milling machine	0			1
Double drum asphalt compactor	0			2

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.8 .4 Incomplete Provincial D-Roads (Bermuda Roads)

Incomplete Provincial roads implemented by the Municipality (Bermuda Roads)

PROJECT NAME	ROAD NUMBER	TOTAL KM	KM COVERED TO DATE	OUTSTANDING KM
Phomolong to Moshate to Tjatjaneng	D4030	7.2KM	4 KM	3.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road in Ga-Rampheri	D4032	11 KM	7 KM	4 KM
Upgrading of Mohlolong to Kalkspruit	D3370	13 KM	5.2 KM	7.8 KM
Upgrading of Lonsdale to Percy Clinic via Flora	D3405	4.9 KM	3.5 KM	1.4 KM
Upgrading of Mamatsha (Makubung to Boshega	D4000 - D4020	21.5 KM	11.3 KM	10.2 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Kgohloane to Makgofe	D3422 – D3390	16.4KM	10.8KM	5.6 KM
Upgrading of arterial road D977 (Silicon to Matobole)	D977	19 KM	7 KM	12 KM
Upgrading of arterial road (Nobody to Laastehoop to Mothapo)	D1809 – D4030	20 KM	5.4 KM	14.6 KM

PROJECT NAME	ROAD NUMBER	TOTAL KM	KM COVERED TO DATE	OUTSTANDING KM
Upgrading of arterial road Sebayeng Mantheding to Ga-Dikgale	D3959 – D3997	8.5 KM	6.4 KM	2.1 KM
Upgrading of arterial road Mamadila to Ramakgaphola to Manamela	D3413 – D3414	15.3 KM	5 KM	10.3 KM
Arterial roads Molepo Maja Chuene Cluster (Paledi)	D4016	18.4 KM	8.4 KM	10 KM
Upgrading of Mmotong to Sengatane road	D3422	13.8 KM	5.8 KM	8 KM

Source: PLK Roads SBU

11.9 ROAD PER WARD PROGRAMME

As the community of Polokwane have prioritise Roads as their top priority need during the Draft IDP Public Participation Process, Council of the City of Polokwane have approved the 2024/25 Final IDP with road project for all 45 wards. Below are some of the roads projects that are currently under construction in all 7 Municipal Clusters.

The directorate has managed to complete 4,9 km of surfacing or paving of road during the financial year with the aim of improving accessibility of services to the communities, rehabilitated 1.2km, 69,4 km of road was re-gravelled to at least improve accessibility to villages and 3220.2 km of roads were bladed, 4 low level bridges constructed, 20 speed humps constructed, 57 600.38 m² of Pothole patched

11.9.1 Paving of Street at Moletjie Cluster (Ga-Rankuwa –Ward 35)



11.9.2 Upgrading the road from Ga-Mosi to Sengatane

Polokwane Municipality is upgrading the road from Ga-Mosi to Sengatane. Base construction: 100% complete, **Outstanding work:** Asphalt surfacing, drainage installation, road marking and signs. Overall, the project is **86% complete**.



Upgrading the road from Ga-Mosi to Sengatane

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.3 Paving of Street in SDA1(DWARS Street Ward 08)



Paving of Street in SDA1(DWARS Street)

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.4 Paving of Street in Mankgaile (WARD 04)

Paving of Street in Mankgaile at Ward o4 is Almost Complete. The newly paved streets will greatly benefit the community by reducing dust and mud, especially during rainy seasons and will also make it easier for vehicles to move through the area.

Polokwane Municipality is continuing with its efforts to enhance the Roads infrastructure across



Paving of Street in Mankgaile (WARD 04)

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.5 Upgrading of arterial Road from Spitzkop to Segwashi (Ward 34)

Upgrading of arterial Road from Spitzkop to Segwashi is located at Mankweng Cluster under ward 34. overall progress is **50.02%**



Upgrading of arterial Road from Spitzkop to Segwashi

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.6 Upgrading of Road at Seshego Zone 5

The Progress of Seshego Zone 5 roads is at **20%**, Box cutting completed, Busy with Road Bed.





Upgrading of Road at Seshego Zone 5

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.7 Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street (Industrial Area)

The Projects includes Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street and upgrading existing storm water system. The project is Funded through **Municipal Disaster Recovery Grant**





Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street (Industrial Area)



Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street (Industrial Area)



Rehabilitation of Blaauberg street between Bulawayo and fluorspar street (Industrial Area)

Source: PLK Roads SBU (2024)

11.9.8 Paving of Street in Moletjie Ga Makibelo to Hlahla Ring Road (Ward 38)



Paving of Street in Moletjie Ga Makibelo to Hlahla Ring Road (Ward 38)



Paving of Street in Moletjie Ga Makibelo to Hlahla Ring Road (Ward 38)

11.9.9 Rehabilitation of DORP street in the City CBD



Rehabilitation of DORP street in the City CBD



Rehabilitation of DORP street in the City CBD

11.9.10 Upgrading of Mohlonong to Kalkspruit Road under (Aganang Cluster)



Upgrading of Mohlonong to Kalkspruit Road (Aganang Cluster)



Upgrading of Mohlonong to Kalkspruit Road (Aganang Cluster)

11.9.11 Rehabilitation of Jorrisen Street City CBD



Rehabilitation of Jorrisen Street



Rehabilitation of Jorrisen Street

11.9.12 Upgrading of roads at Seshego Zone 6

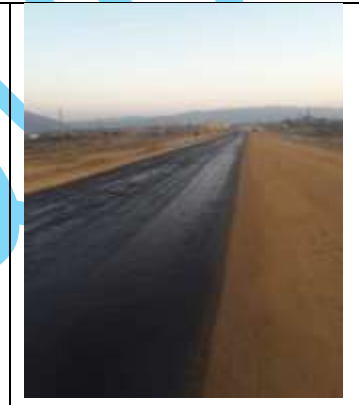


Upgrading of roads at Seshego Zone 6



Upgrading of roads at Seshego Zone 6

11.9.13 Tarring of road from Tshebela to Moshate (Ward 03) Molepo/Chuene/ Maja Cluster)



Tarring of road from Tshebela to Moshate (Ward 03)



Tarring of road from Tshebela to Moshate (Ward 03)



Tarring of road from Tshebela to Moshate (Ward 03)

11.9.14 Upgrading of Access Road at Ga Makgoba (Ward 33)

➤ Brooming and Priming of the Base



Upgrading of Access Road at Ga Makgoba (Ward 33)



Upgrading of Access Road at Ga Makgoba (Ward 33)

11.9.15 Upgrading of Silicon to Matobole



Upgrading of Silicon to Matobole



Upgrading of Silicon to Matobole

11.9.16 Paving of road at Extension 78



Paving of road at Extension 78

11.9.17 Paving of Internal Street from Solomondale to D3997(Ward 32)



Paving of Internal Street from Solomondale to D3997(Ward 32)



Paving of Internal Street from Solomondale to D3997(Ward 32)



Paving of Internal Street from Solomondale to D3997(Ward 32)

11.9.18 Paving of access road to Moshate wa Moletji (Offices)

Progress on Site at 22%, the roadbed has been Completed, Rock has been encountered on Site



Paving of access road to Moshate wa Moletji (Offices)



Paving of access road to Moshate wa Moletji (Offices)

Rock has been encountered

11.10 ROADS MARKING PROGRAMME

11.10.1 Road Marking at Bodenstein Street



Road Marking at Bodenstein Street



Road Marking at Bodenstein Street

11.10.2 Road Marking in the City CBD



Road Marking in the City CBD



Road Marking in the City CBD



Road Marking at Seshego Cluster

CHAPTER TWELVE -Financial Analysis

12.1. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY

12.1.1 Revenue Management

The municipality derives revenue from rendering of services as mandated through the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA) and other related regulations. Municipal revenue comprises of own revenue as well as grants from the national government. Own revenue contributes **56%** of total revenue and which shows an increase from the prior financial year.

The municipality main sources of own revenue are as follows:

- Property Rates
- Electricity
- Water
- Refuse and sewerage
- Other income such as rental of property, investment income, traffic fines and others.

The municipality's own revenue across the board has increased by an average of around **1%** year on year with increases in service charges by around **1%**. The main contribution to the year-on-year increase in service charges is mainly due to the increase in the tariffs

All the grants from the National government is dealt with in terms of the requirements of Division of Revenue Act (DoRA) and management of own revenue is dealt with in terms of the MFMA. The municipality also applies its indigent policy to cater for the indigent population within its jurisdiction.

12.1.2 Status on Revenue Management

Averaged **86%** on collections for the last financial year, having a significant impact in the poor performance of the economy.

Approximately only 2400 accounts remain on conventional electricity meters whilst the rest of the accounts are on prepaid electricity. Out of the approximate **25506** pre-paid water meters installed around **16330** meters are not purchasing as the meters are dysfunctional. The revenue from prepaid water however shows an increase of revenue from **R1 757 808** in June 2023 as compared to **R2 045 523** in 2024.

12.1.3. Revenue Enhancement

Tariff setting challenges.

The MFMA and enabling legislations such as the Water and Electricity Acts requires tariffs to be cost reflective.

Although the municipality is showing a positive gross profit percentage on service charges the following **challenges** remain:

- High tariff increases by Eskom and Lepelle Northern Water
- Increase in water and electricity distributions costs.

The municipality is **addressing** these challenges by exploring alternative cost savers such as power banks and the installation of pre-paid meters to ensure customer consume at the rate that they can afford.

Credibility of bills and data

Since the implementation of the new system around 2019, the municipality is able to produce **credible billings**. The installation of **prepaid meters** has also assisted in the production of credible revenue bills and reports and lessened the number of queries on consumption. The adjustment of account resulting from the supplementary valuation roll is dominantly the only alter which changes the charges of the account triggered by a change in category, Market value or the effective date of the change.

12.1.4 Collections from households, businesses and Government Departments.

The municipality has averaged a collection rate of **86% percent** closest to the budgeted rate of 87% regardless of the global socio economic challenges.

The installation of the new system has allowed the municipality to interface the billing module with the credit control module. This ensures that the cut off list is done almost at real time thereby making it possible to perform more cut offs on a daily basis improving the collection rate.

As far as government is considered, collections have improved as a separate cut off list is implemented. The debt of government debts increased due to the data cleansing and updates on the treasury data for AD report.

12.1.5 Implementation of revenue enhancement strategy

The municipality partnered with Cigicell to ensure that there is maximization of revenue on **electricity consumption** by the top customers. The municipal revenue from this top customer has since improved and increased by R86 Million for the financial year and accordingly reduced possible losses from baseline of R6 Million to R11 Million. the table below shows what the municipality was getting prior the intervention baseline was set and after which the results started to show increased revenue.

		Phase 1					
Consumption month	Billing Month	Quantity Meters	Meters Exceeding baseline	Baseline Value	Billing Value	Difference	% Increase
22-Jun	22-Jul	96	86	4 483 954.11	7 838 359.68	3 354 405.57	75%
22-Jul	22-Aug	95	87	5 284 463.49	8 743 310.85	3 458 847.36	65%
22-Aug	22-Sep	95	87	5 217 357.68	8 678 887.24	3 461 529.56	66%
22-Sep	22-Oct	95	83	4 682 037.03	7 452 049.31	2 770 012.28	59%
22-Oct	22-Nov	95	82	4 892 682.08	8 044 034.85	3 151 352.77	64%
22-Nov	22-Dec	95	87	5 438 364.40	8 587 656.18	3 149 291.78	58%
22-Dec	23-Jan	95	80	5 247 214.10	7 997 319.96	2 750 105.86	52%
23-Jan	23-Feb	96	82	5 246 281.17	8 038 457.44	2 792 176.27	53%
23-Feb	23-Mar	96	81	4 792 668.65	7 171 164.32	2 378 495.67	50%
23-Mar	23-Apr	96	82	5 222 662.34	8 127 820.87	2 905 158.53	56%
23-Apr	23-May	96	74	4 072 279.26	6 286 855.76	2 214 576.50	54%
23-May	23-Jun	96	79	4 598 009.06	7 108 940.08	2 510 931.02	55%
23-Jun	23-Jul	96	87	5 392 322.90	9 426 164.11	4 033 841.21	75%
23-Jul	23-Aug	96	86	5 056 133.04	9 391 932.32	4 335 799.28	86%
23-Aug	23-Sep	93	85	5 118 153.09	9 499 616.84	4 381 463.75	86%
23-Sep	23-Oct	93	84	5 365 837.36	9 048 916.80	3 683 079.44	69%
23-Oct	23-Nov	93	84	6 195 766.21	10 618 759.87	4 422 993.66	71%
23-Nov	23-Dec	93	85	6 196 987.55	10 500 987.21	4 303 999.66	69%
23-Dec	24-Jan	93	84	6 150 260.60	10 575 063.32	4 424 802.72	72%
24-Jan	24-Feb	93	84	5 499 971.18	9 746 099.89	4 246 128.71	77%
24-Feb	24-Mar	93	82	5 060 320.81	9 454 397.29	4 394 076.48	87%
24-Mar	24-Apr	93	83	5 785 321.10	10 421 780.21	4 636 459.11	80%
24-Apr	24-May	93	82	5 717 883.53	9 634 227.19	3 916 343.66	68%
24-May	24-Jun	93	83	5 670 516.41	10 325 400.96	4 654 884.55	82%
24-Jun	24-Jul	93	85	5 750 783.61	11 041 932.47	5 291 148.86	92%
						86 330 755.39	

		Phase 2					
Consumption month	Billing Month	Quantity Phase 2	Meters Exceeding baseline	Baseline Value	Billing Value	Difference	% Increase
22-Jun	22-Jul	38	36	1 084 267.32	2 170 177.35	1 085 910.03	50%
22-Jul	22-Aug	38	36	1 084 267.32	2 296 551.35	1 212 284.03	53%
22-Aug	22-Sep	38	36	1 084 267.32	2 340 408.38	1 256 141.06	54%
22-Sep	22-Oct	37	35	1 057 134.24	2 188 267.29	1 131 133.05	52%
22-Oct	22-Nov	36	35	1 057 134.24	2 305 688.91	1 248 554.67	54%
22-Nov	22-Dec	36	34	1 028 490.59	2 306 289.30	1 277 798.71	55%
22-Dec	23-Jan	35	31	985 320.17	2 168 380.87	1 183 060.70	55%
23-Jan	23-Feb	35	34	1 028 490.59	2 190 268.73	1 161 778.14	53%
23-Feb	23-Mar	34	33	1 022 900.01	2 123 827.98	1 100 927.97	52%
23-Mar	23-Apr	34	33	1 022 900.01	2 180 073.97	1 157 173.96	53%
23-Apr	23-May	36	31	1 006 157.63	1 989 287.42	983 129.79	49%
23-May	23-Jun	38	34	1 040 534.04	1 949 592.57	909 058.53	47%
23-Jun	23-Jul	36	34	1 047 531.33	2 041 853.40	994 322.07	49%
23-Jul	23-Aug	36	33	1 023 221.17	1 985 458.09	962 236.92	48%
23-Aug	23-Sep	36	33	1 069 663.34	2 012 202.57	942 539.23	47%
23-Sep	23-Oct	36	33	1 069 663.34	1 924 218.85	854 555.51	44%
23-Oct	23-Nov	37	33	1 054 039.81	2 062 396.89	1 008 357.08	49%
23-Nov	23-Dec	36	32	1 054 039.81	1 999 241.86	945 202.05	47%
23-Dec	24-Jan	36	29	983 291.61	1 903 428.79	920 137.18	48%
24-Jan	24-Feb	36	29	722 671.80	1 857 652.12	1 134 980.32	61%
24-Feb	24-Mar	35	28	721 552.95	1 760 464.89	1 038 911.94	59%
24-Mar	24-Apr	36	31	765 128.79	1 834 579.18	1 069 450.39	58%
24-Apr	24-May	35	30	753 817.21	1 735 770.34	981 953.13	57%
24-May	24-Jun	36	30	738 295.33	1 667 031.81	928 736.48	56%
24-Jun	24-Jul	35	30	738 295.33	1 792 652.93	1 054 357.60	59%
						25 488 332.93	

12.1.6 Key Challenges and Interventions in Revenue Management

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Meter tempering/faulty meters	The establishment of the revenue protection unit to deal with specific matters on possible meter tempering and addressing faulty meters and other challenges that may contribute to under billing and under collections. Use of third-party data to analyse possible tempering or dysfunctional meters through the revenue protection unit.
2	Poor economy impacts	Continue with credit control with consideration of Poor Economy strain consumers on a merit basis as per National Treasury circular. i.e., considering the 20% reconnection fee on merit. However, if any arrangement made are not honoured strict credit control will apply as to do otherwise will compromise our financial viability.
3	Mankweng debt book	Enforce credit control - Discontinue flat rate charges and bill for actual fixed charges and fixed estimated consumption.
4	Revenue collection not maximised	The establishment of the revenue generation committee to assist with maximising revenue collection as well as maintenance of existing revenue streams.
5	Poor revenue on other revenue streams and Intimidation when implementing manual credit control	Implement block vending

12.2. FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK

In terms of governing legislation, the municipality is required to develop and implement rates and tariff policies or bylaws to guide the revenue management of the Municipality. The following budget related policies have been approved and adopted by council.

- Borrowing policy
- Petty cash policy
- Budget policy
- Funding and reserves policy
- Indigent policy
- Banking & investment policy
- Supply chain Management policy
- Credit control and Debt collection policy
- Customer Care Policy

- Tariff policy
- Rates policy
- Subsistence & Travel Policy
- Leave Policy
- Virement policy
- Asset Management Policy

12.3 DEBTORS MANAGEMENT

12.3.1 Debtor Book

Debtors amount to almost **R2 billion**. Mankweng project to be fast tracked. Government debtors need an IGR intervention. Debt collectors appointed, hand over at advanced stage.

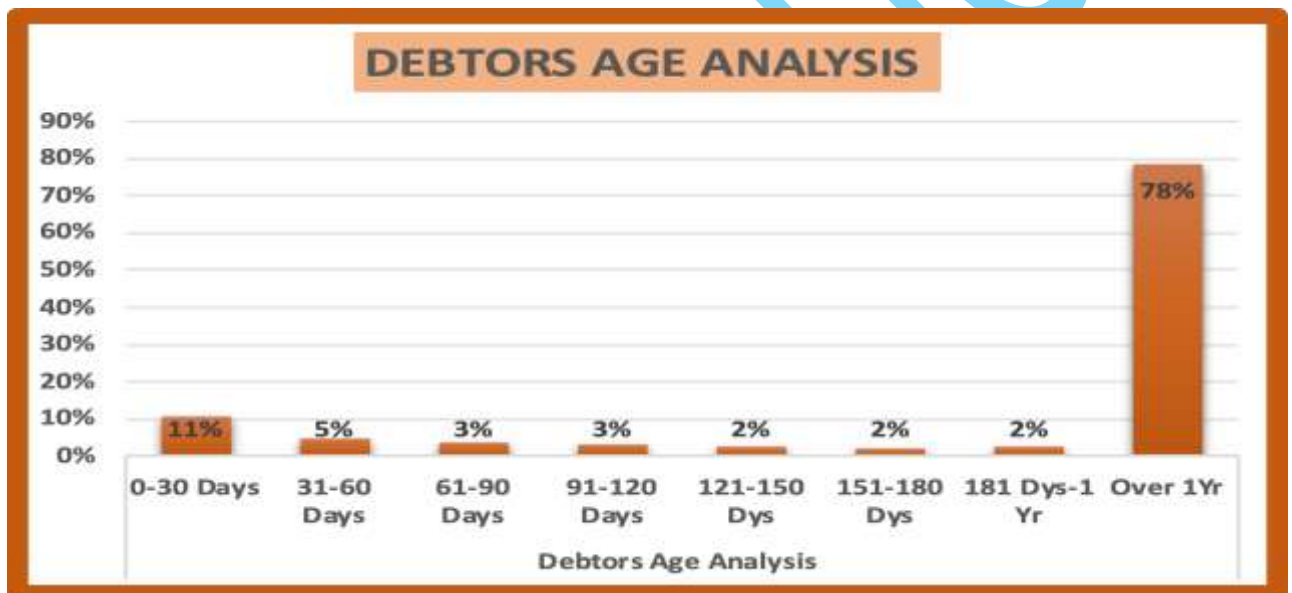
Staff and councillors' debt is being recouped monthly and progress is reported to Council on a monthly basis through the revenue report. All councillors are up to date as at 30 June 2024.

Debtor Book

Description	Amount	%
Mankweng	383 721 500	19%
Govt debtors	271 531 670	13%
Interest on outstanding debts	429 772 133	21%
Indigent debtors	20 460 185	1%
Other debtors (commercial, institutions and households)	920 619 512	45%
TOTAL	2 026 105 000	100%

11.3.2 Debtors Aging (30 June 2024)

Description	Budget Year 2023/24								
	0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
R thousands									
Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source									
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Water	32 796	10 572	14 641	10 758	5 517	4 900	10 150	256 742	346 075
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Electricity	74 644	16 482	10 947	11 074	7 280	5 386	4 922	142 060	272 795
Receivables from Non-exchange Transactions - Property Rates	46 189	29 283	15 097	11 489	10 332	9 806	9 314	377 822	509 333
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Water Management	21 399	7 275	5 606	4 981	4 875	4 500	4 308	102 650	155 593
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Management	14 323	7 254	5 568	4 979	4 821	4 518	4 358	126 664	172 485
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Property Rental Debtors	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	104	104
Interest on Arrear Debtor Accounts	13 191	12 766	12 312	11 911	11 662	11 403	11 095	345 431	429 772
Other	4 100	4 006	1 464	1 395	1 184	2 681	1 493	123 625	139 948
Total By Income Source	206 642	87 638	65 635	56 586	45 671	43 194	45 640	1 475 099	2 026 105
Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group									
Organs of State	27 930	11 603	10 361	7 731	7 037	6 310	5 773	194 788	271 532
Commercial	91 562	22 629	19 790	17 341	9 066	8 450	12 917	248 771	430 526
Households	87 150	53 406	35 484	31 515	29 568	28 434	26 950	1 031 540	1 324 048
Other	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total By Customer Group	206 642	87 638	65 635	56 586	45 671	43 194	45 640	1 475 099	2 026 105



Source: PIK BTO Directorate

12.3.3 Debtors Aging (30 June 2023) Comparative

Description	Budget Year 2022/23								
	0-30 Days	31-60 Days	61-90 Days	91-120 Days	121-150 Dys	151-180 Dys	181 Dys-1 Yr	Over 1Yr	Total
R thousands									
Debtors Age Analysis By Income Source									
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Water	26,306	8,492	30,150	7,160	5,389	4,803	19,955	216,479	318,733
Trade and Other Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Electricity	58,154	14,402	12,525	9,215	8,428	5,087	31,159	109,574	248,544
Receivables from Non-exchange Transactions - Property Rates	44,022	22,250	20,275	12,970	10,642	9,611	44,043	286,535	450,348
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Water Management	13,502	7,490	6,822	4,412	3,890	3,620	20,571	76,650	136,958
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Waste Management	13,167	7,171	5,882	4,392	3,790	3,535	21,945	96,050	155,930
Receivables from Exchange Transactions - Property Rental Debtors	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	185	185
Interest on Arrear Debtor Accounts	9,685	9,623	9,400	9,220	9,067	8,887	41,906	175,778	273,567
Recoverable unauthorised, irregular, fruitless and wasteful expenditure	6,314	2,620	2,280	2,054	1,805	1,474	25,168	136,840	178,555
Total By Income Source	171,149	72,047	87,335	49,424	43,011	37,015	204,747	1,098,093	1,762,821
2021/22 - totals only	178,644	65,750	77,965	42,340	39,370	34,195	180,002	1,100,114	1,687,012
Debtors Age Analysis By Customer Group									
Organs of State	21,611	11,327	10,088	8,288	7,706	5,928	25,674	133,401	224,024
Commercial	70,463	19,156	18,451	13,031	7,108	6,975	37,615	207,616	380,415
Households	79,074	41,564	58,795	28,105	28,197	24,113	141,458	757,076	1,158,383
Other	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total By Customer Group	171,149	72,047	87,335	49,424	43,011	37,015	204,747	1,098,093	1,762,821

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.3.4 Debt Control Initiatives

Municipality is currently implementing credit and **debt control initiatives** in order to minimize level of debt book, some of those initiatives are

1. Regular termination of services
2. Blocking of electricity vending or purchases to customers in arrears until they have paid portion of the arrears
3. Hand over of the debt to the debt collectors to initiate legal processes.

The municipality implemented the following controls to date:

- Use of the **new financial system** to perform real time credit control due to the successful integration functionality.
- Intensified credit control including government departments (with the assistance of the finance portfolio) which accelerated the payments by some departments including settlement of the long standing Mankweng hospital debt.

12.4 Indigent support

12.4.1 Status of Municipal Indigent Register

The municipality has **10413** currently on its database and spends around **R9.6 million** monthly for poor households

12.4.2 Processes in indigent Applications

TASK	TIMELINE	OUTPUT
Receipt of application files from the Municipality and consumption and account confirmation	5 days	Received documents to be sorted according to the wards
Capturing of the information on the indigent system and scanning of documents	3 days	Verification of the collected files and the existing information on the system
Distribution of Public Notice Letters and SMS	2 days	Clear and precise instructions to be forwarded to the applicants beforehand, for the required attachments
Site Visits	1 days	Collection of the required documents from the applicants, and photographic evidence of the indigent household
Capturing of updated documents on the system	2 days	Scanning and uploading of the updated documents on the system. And quality check.
External Vetting	14 Days	The collated documents and the information to be vetted for correctness.
Vetting Results and follow up and customisation	4 days	Compilation of a Report to the Municipality on recommendations of the applications based on the results of the external vetting.
Send Report to the Municipality for decision	3 days	Compiled and consolidated report to be forwarded to the Municipality.
Upload results of the application unto the system	3 Days	Receipt of the decisions of the applications from the Municipality
Send outcome results to the applicant through sms	1 day	Informing the applicants of the outcome of their applications.
Write Off and flagging as indigent on the system	3 to 15 days after month end done	The capturing and rebates and possible write off applied on the system after system month end is processed.

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

12.4.3 Challenges and Mitigation/Control – Indigent Support

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Late application	Residents don't apply for indigent subsidy until they are terminated and then they claim the indigent status	Payment is required until the customer qualify as indigent. Applicant does not warrant the indigent status.
Incomplete/ inaccurate information	Applicant often supply incomplete or incorrect information and documents delaying the verification process	Checklist is made and the officials try to validate the information on application, the vetting provide information not provided by the applicant.

Challenges	Description	Mitigation/Control
Unavailability of applicant	Customers when requested to be available for verification they are often not available delaying the process, at times the customer do not have the required copies of conformation required failing the site verification.	Up to about 3 site visits are done before the customer is disqualified and the process has to start from the beginning.
Ownership	Often the owners who passed on has the house allocated as family house while other members of the household are employed	The information provided by the household get verified and normally the process requires more time and additional documents.
False information/claims	New information is not disclosed such job status and spouse who is employed.	Indigents are terminated, and status reversed

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.4.4 Debtors Incentive Scheme

A discount based on sliding scale incentive was provided to the customers for a period of one year ending November 2023. There is still a 50% incentive n back charge to encourage customers to settle the account when back charged and for municipality to recover a minimum of cost.

Prescribed debt written off as data cleansing exercise. Majority of this accounts results from the previous system before the municipality migrated to Munsoft system relating to challenges and inconsistencies of data in the old system Samras. A discount of 10% was offered to all good payers for two consecutive months.

12.4.5 Indigent Support

Indigent Report as at 30 June 2024

Indigent Applications Received	605
Indigent Beneficiaries Approved & Added to Register	514
Removed / Disqualified	
Pending Applications on Indigent System	
Total Indigent Applications on System pre-register	
Total register plus newly added less Disqualified	10396

Description	Amount
Balance Write off	-R15 296 768.92
Assessment rates rebate	-R1 364 767.59
Service Rebate (Sewerage, Refuse, Other Basic charges)	-R4 452 566.88
Meter Rebate (Water) @ R 73.98	-R762 807.78
Meter Rebate (Electricity) @ R 168.00	-R1 694 616.00
Total Cost to Council in June 2024	-R23 571 527.17
Indigent Levies @ R119.65	R1 243 881.40
Balances	
Opening Balance	R44 796 087.60
Payments	-R2 008 256.82
Closing Balance	R20 460 185.01

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.5 Revenue generation from other SBUs

Revenue component	Activity to enhance revenue
Traffic fines	Integrated system to collate all fines payable within Polokwane's jurisdiction. To be paid when renewing annual license fees
Illegal dumping	Utilizing our fleet to perform monitoring
Clean up fees after conferences	Utilize our cleaners to clear up after conferences for a fee
Hawkers	Create an automated database and ensure debt is collected
Markets	Encourage flea markets and others for a fee
Revenue Maximisation	Revenue generation committee established, monitor and enhance controls to achieve maximum revenue.

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.6 FINANCIAL POLICY FRAMEWORK

In terms of governing legislation, the municipality is required to develop and implement rates and tariff policies or bylaws to guide the revenue management of the Municipality. The following budget related policies have been approved and adopted by council.

1. Asset Management Policy
2. Billing Policy
3. Borrowing Policy
4. Budget and Virement Policy
5. Cash management and Investment Policy
6. Claims committee and loss Policy
7. Consumer Deposit Policy
8. Cost Containment Policy
9. Credit control and debt collection Policy
10. Expenditure Management Policy
11. Fare Policy and Fare Structure
12. Funding and reserves Policy
13. Indigent and Social Assistance Policy
14. Integrated Customer Care Policy
15. Inventory Policy
16. Leave Policy
17. Performance Management System Policy (Organizational and Employee Management Policy)
18. Property Rates Policy
19. Subsistence and Travelling Policy
20. Supply chain management Policy
21. Tariff Policy
22. Unauthorized, Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure Policy

12.7 Expenditure Management

12.7.1 Expenditure Management Status Quo/Achievement

- All conditional grants maintained through Grant register and accounted in primary bank account.
- No double payments encountered to service providers.
- Long - Term Loans are paid on time per loan agreement and conditions
- Salaries, Eskom, and Lepelle Northern Water bills paid promptly.
- **Roll overs** are **cash backed** in terms of National Treasury circular 99.
- All creditors submitted to Finance and recorded on the system at the end of July were paid within 30 days i.e., all creditors due were paid.
- Monthly VAT declaration to SARS are done.
- Timeous payment of Third Parties and SARS.

EXPENDITURE

12.7.2 Expenditure analysis

Description	Total Actual	%
Bulk Purchases	1 018 199 332	19%
Contracted Services	953 353 335	18%
Depreciation and Amortisation	1 152 781 539	22%
Employee Related Cost	1 061 477 253	20%

Impairment Loss	-	0%
Interest; Dividends and Rent on Land	47 882 637	1%
Inventory Consumed	252 155 174	5%
Irrecoverable Debts Written Off	375 581 962	7%
Operational Cost	343 739 739	7%
Remuneration of Councillors	43 877 152	1%
Transfers and Subsidies	15 480 000	0%
TOTAL	5 264 528 124	100%

Source: PIK BTO Directorate (2024)

12.7.3 Key Contracted Services

Expenditure	Total Budget	Total Actual	% Spent
Civil	R 140 305 409	R 140 305 409	100%
Security Services	R 91 862 924	R 89 813 632	98%
Refuse Removal	R 84 530 676	R 83 209 816	98%
Commissions and Committees	R 86 860 445	R 80 486 495	93%
Personnel and Labour	R 60 181 532	R 59 223 676	98%
Maintenance of Buildings and Facilities	R 67 175 055	R 47 278 388	70%
Transport Services	R 46 555 158	R 46 555 158	100%
Maintenance of Unspecified Assets	R 46 684 745	R 45 834 169	98%
Business and Financial Management	R 44 908 852	R 44 694 562	100%
Transportation	R 40 763 441	R 40 662 141	100%
TOTAL	R 709 828 238	R 678 063 447	96%

Source: PIK BTO Directorate (2024)

12.7.4 General Expenditure

Description	Total Budget	Total Actual
Wet Fuel	47 701 196.00	47 616 936.99
Corporate and Municipal Activities	48 954 730.14	43 937 595.38
Insurance Underwriting: Premiums	31 824 379.00	31 824 374.44
Workmen's Compensation Fund	28 459 968.01	28 459 968.01
Municipal Services	26 008 323.83	25 474 949.22
Software Licences	25 098 504.00	24 640 081.72
Uniform and Protective Clothing	27 150 748.00	18 868 001.28
Indigent Relief	16 250 248.00	14 549 281.82
External Audit Fees	16 000 000.00	14 307 681.26
Cellular Expenditure	13 708 447.00	12 865 497.62

Total	281 156 543.98	262 544 367.74
--------------	-----------------------	-----------------------

Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

12.7.5 Overtime

Directorate	Total Budget	Total Actual	% Spent
BUDGET AND TREASURY OFFICE	R 3 747 141	R 2 626 385	70%
CHIEF OPERATIONS OFFICE	R 62 018	R 17 031	27%
COMMUNITY SERVICES	R 26 937 591	R 19 807 839	74%
CORPORATE AND SHARED SERVICES	R 3 891 907	R 2 669 774	69%
ENERGY SERVICES	R 22 684 805	R 22 683 647	100%
HUMAN SETTLEMENT	R 38 790	R 38 790	100%
MUNICIPAL MANAGER'S OFFICE	R 1 549 231	R 1 386 997	90%
PLANNING AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	R 433 949	R 397 911	92%
PUBLIC SAFETY	R 26 771 398	R 25 723 860	96%
ROADS AND STORM WATER	R 3 217 433	R 3 217 423	100%
TRANSPORTATION SERVICES	R 44 000	R 43 974	100%
WATER AND SANITATION	R 28 286 877	R 27 940 391	99%
TOTAL	R 117 665 140	R 106 554 023	91%

Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

12.7.6 Capital Performance

Grant	Allocation	Received	Spend	Actual vs Receipts
Integrated National Electrification Programme Grant (INEP)	17,161,000.00	17,161,000.00	17,161,000.00	100%
Neighbourhood Development Partnership Grant (NDPG)	22,168,000.00	22,168,000.00	22,167,999.17	100%
Energy Efficiency and Demand Side Management Grant (EEDSM)	4,000,000.00	4,000,000.00	3,994,212.62	100%
Public Transport Network Grant(PTNG)	163,978,000.00	163,978,000.00	159,625,651.01	97%
Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant (RBIG)	152,539,000.00	238,539,000.00	238,539,000.00	100%
Water Services Infrastructure Grant (WSIG)	67,700,000.00	67,700,000.00	67,700,000.32	100%
Municipal Disaster Relief Grant	14,280,000.00	14,280,000.00	12,529,191.18	88%
Intergrated Urban Development Grant (IUDG)	435,949,000.00	435,949,000.00	435,949,000.00	100%
Financial Management Grant (FMG)	2,400,000.00	2,400,000.00	2,400,000.02	100%
Infrastructure Skills Development Grant (ISDG)	5,450,000.00	5,869,000.00	3,351,389.98	57%
Extended Public Works Programme (EPWP)	11,135,000.00	11,135,000.00	11,135,000.00	100%
Total	896,760,000.00	983,222,852	975,014,098	99%

Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

12.7.7 Non-core expenditure

Non-core Function	Total Budget	Total Actual
Community Parks (including Nurseries)	R49 941 688	R54 550 793
Cultural Matters	R4 753 039	R3 689 906

Non-core Function	Total Budget	Total Actual
Disaster Management	R11 582 545	R10 932 652
Fire Fighting and Protection	R77 479 073	R77 295 445
Health Services	R7 054 722	R6 824 185
Libraries and Archives	R23 464 019	R20 919 994
Museums and Art Galleries	R11 526 239	R10 314 568
Road and Traffic Regulation	R128 490 627	R126 466 590
Total	314 291 951	310 994 134

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.8 Challenges and Intervention for Expenditure Management

No	Challenge	Intervention
1	Payment within 30 days	Monthly cash flow to be submitted to all SBUs. SBUs are not allowed to exceed the allocation for that month. Munsoft requires Managers to authorise/submit invoices on the system and this delays timeous processing of payments.
2	Invoice submitted late to Finance	A memo to explain the processes was communicated by BTO
3	Eskom bill exceeding R160 million in the first month of the financial year due to the peak season demand rates. Municipal tariffs for electricity will soon not be cost reflective due to the high anticipated increase in Eskom tariffs in the coming years.	Finalised the power bank feasibility. In the process of finalising the solar project
4	Budget not unbundled per projects resulting in budget adjustment through virement before January/February 2024	Budget inputs to be unbundled.

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.7.9 Creditors

Outstanding trade creditors amounted to **R 251 947 185** as at 31 July 2024.

Description	Budget Year 2024/25									Prior year totals for chart (same period)
	0 - 30 Days	31 - 60 Days	61 - 90 Days	91 - 120 Days	121 - 150 Days	151 - 180 Days	181 Days - 1 Year	Over 1 Year	Total	
R thousands										
Creditors Age Analysis By Customer Type										
Bulk Electricity	162 691	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	162 691	134 423
Bulk Water	23 570	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	23 570	24 844
PAYE deductions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
VAT (output less input)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Pensions / Retirement deductions	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Loan repayments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Trade Creditors	65 687	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	65 687	20 490
Auditor General	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Other	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Total By Customer Type	251 947	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	251 947	179 757

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

12.7.10 Payment of creditors

Description	Ageing	0-30 days
Eskom	Current	R162 691
Lepelle Northern Water	Current	R24 844
Other service providers	Current	R20 490
Total		R251 947

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

Council pays its creditors within **30 days**. In terms of MFMA Circular 49 issued by National Treasury and further section 65(2) (e) of MFMA emphasize that municipality must honour its obligation within 30 days.

12.8 BORROWINGS

INSTITUTION	APPROVED % INTEREST	OPENING BALANCE 1 JULY 2024	INTEREST ACCRUED	INTEREST PAID JUNE 2024	REDEMPTION JUNE 2024	BALANCE 31 JULY 2024	EXPIRY DATE/ REDEMPTION DATE
DEVELOPMENT BANK OF SOUTH AFRICA	10.75	173 357 353	- 7 713 956	-	-	173 357 353	31.01.2032
STANDARD BANK	10.98	174 331 141	- 7 918 837	-	-	174 331 141	31.07.2032
TOTAL		347 688 494	- 15 632 793	-	-	347 688 494	

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

12.8.1 Extent of existing loans, and associated finance and redemption payments.

- Repayments are made on the due dates and the municipality has not defaulted in its loans since inception.
- The loans were incurred to finance **the replacement of AC pipes and pre-paid metering projects around 2016/17 financial year.**
- These projects have returned 76% return on capital since inception in line with the 5 year pay-back period.
- However, we need to reassess how to pay back the loans sooner since the returns are being realised as plan.

12.9 Key ratios – Expenditure Management

RATIO	NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
1	30 days		30 days	Within the norm.
		Total expenditure	4 342 732 251 942 186	
		Trade creditors	198 481 65 686 603	
2	0%		14%	The unauthorised expenditure of R1 billion on the AFS is due to non-cash unauthorised expenditure and is awaiting Council approval for write off. Benchmarked with City of CT in 2017
		Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful and Unauthorised Expenditure	614 953	
		Total Operating Expenditure	291 405 451	
		Taxation Expense	-	
			23%	

RATIO		NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
3	Remuneration as % of Total Operating Expenditure	25% - 40%	Employee/personnel related cost	1 033 277	<p>Within the norm. However, this is 38% of own cash revenues and will have to be carefully monitored.</p> <p>Further, overtime of R119 million was incurred which represents 11% of the salary bill,</p> <p>General acceptable norm from Treasury is 5%</p> <p>While a revised policy is in progress, much is needed to address this matter (Corporate and Shared Services).</p>
			Councillors Remuneration	41 383	
			Total Operating Expenditure	291 405	
4	Contracted Services % of Total Operating Expenditure	2% - 5%		19%	<p>R157 million is funded from grants. The ratio drops to</p>
			Contracted Services	813 456 810	

RATIO	NORM/RANGE	INPUT DESCRIPTION	RESULT	INTERPRETATION
		Total Operating Expenditure	4 342 732	15% when excluding grants.
		Taxation Expense	-	However, not within the norm. More cost efficiencies need to be achieved.

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.10 EXPENDITURE

12.10.1 Expenditure analysis

Description	Total Actual	%
Bulk Purchases	1 018 199 332	21%
Contracted Services	962 874 498	20%
Depreciation and Amortisation	1 136 262 721	23%
Employee Related Cost	1 104 130 068	23%
Interest; Dividends and Rent on Land	50 930 148	1%
Inventory Consumed	274 804 206	6%
Operational Cost	290 763 063	6%
Remuneration of Councillors	43 877 151	0%
Transfers and Subsidies	15 480 000	0%
TOTAL	4 897 321 148	100%

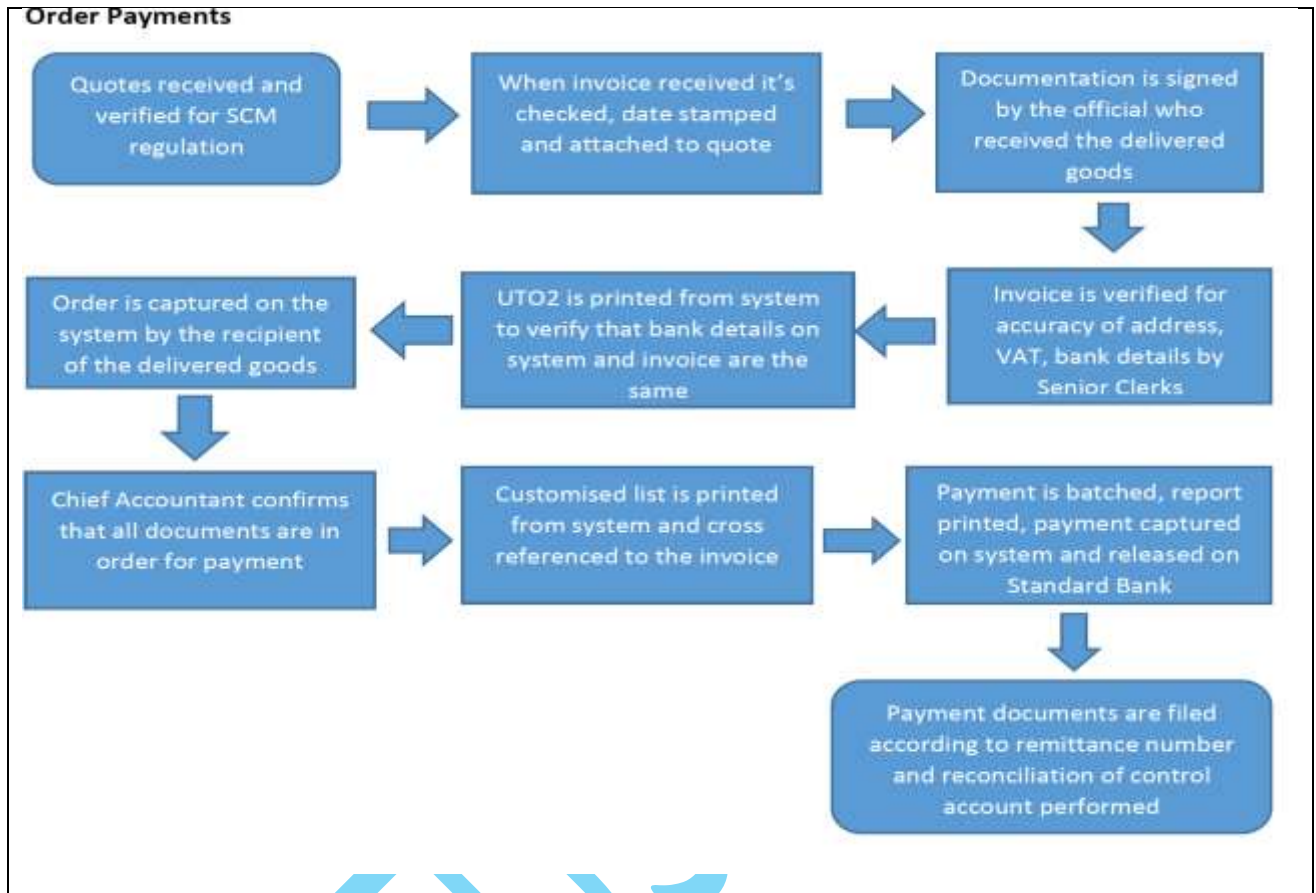
Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.11 Expenditure

All creditors are paid within 30 days. AGSA has not raised this as a finding in the last audit as opposed to the last 3 financial years where it was a recurring finding.

Eskom, and Lepelle Northern Water remain up to date. Proper engagements between managers and their service providers on the payment processes **is required**, currently we have circulated Internal Memos to give guide to project managers on the payment process is undertaken and that they must advise their service providers on the payments processes to minimize queries during processing of payments.

12.11.1 Expenditure Flow Chart



Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.11.2 Key contracted services

Expenditure	Budget	Actual
Civil	R 109 525 458	R 140 305 409
Security Services	R 91 862 924	R 89 813 632
Refuse Removal	R 84 530 676	R 83 209 816
Business and Advisory:Commissions and Committees	R 86 860 445	R 80 486 495
Personnel and Labour	R 60 181 532	R 59 223 676
Maintenance of Buildings and Facilities	R 67 175 055	R 47 278 388
Transport Services	R 45 000 860	R 46 555 158
Maintenance of Unspecified Assets	R 46 684 745	R 45 834 169
Business and Advisory:Business and Financial Management	R 44 908 852	R 44 694 562
Transportation	R 40 763 441	R 40 662 141
Maintenance of Equipment	R 41 584 395	R 36 301 612
Sewerage Services	R 41 802 291	R 34 884 882
Legal Cost:Legal Advice and Litigation	R 32 805 227	R 31 559 039
Electrical	R 44 952 677	R 24 867 714
Business and Advisory:Accounting and Auditing	R 26 223 206	R 24 377 536

Expenditure	Budget	Actual
Business and Advisory:Communications	R 20 337 723	R 17 422 043
Business and Advisory:Project Management	R 17 731 125	R 15 539 789
Meter Management	R 13 676 800	R 13 603 036
Safeguard and Security	R 11 552 262	R 11 552 262
Business and Advisory:Research and Advisory	R 10 506 408	R 9 850 389

Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

12.11.3 Roll Overs Projects

MFMA Circular No. 91 refers to Section 22 (2) of the **2019** Division of Revenue Act (**DORA**) which states that any conditional grant which is not spent at the end of the municipal financial year must revert to the National Revenue Fund.

12.11.4 Budget Adjustments

The adjustment budget is conducted in February each Financial year. Municipal Budget is Adjusted after assessing the following:

- 1) Cash flow analysis on own revenue (actual vs budget).
- 2) Revenue performance (actual vs budget).
- 3) Revenue and cost optimization measures.
- 4) Spending trends on own funded Capital projects.
- 5) Unspent conditional grants.

12.12 Investments

The municipality is implementing stringent investment measures to ensure financial sustainability and that all the investments are made in line with the investment policy through the establishment of an investment committee. The investment policy is fully aligned to the municipal investment regulations.

Our cash resources will be invested in various institutions as per the Cash Management Policy, Investment Terms of Reference. Project Managers have provided Grant Cash flow projections to ensure smooth running of operations.

12.13 Asset Management

The asset management unit is responsible to oversee the assets with total value of **R 15 724 311 378 (15 Billion)** at net book value. The municipal asset register has the following key components.

1. Investment property
2. Community and infrastructure assets.
3. Movable assets.
4. Finance lease assets.
5. Biological assets.

6. Heritage assets.
7. Library books.
8. Living and Non-Living Assets
9. Land
10. And other assets.

Municipality makes hybrid method to account for municipal assets and verification of assets is performed ongoing basis. Assets are recorded either at fair value, cost or depreciated replacement cost.

The asset management team together with the PMU and town planning unit developed a capital expenditure framework (CEF) which is high-level long-term-infrastructure plan that flows from a spatial development framework. The CEF estimates the level of affordable capital investment by the municipality over the long term. This framework largely informed our capital expenditure budget over the MTEF. The Municipality is in a process to finalise the review of the CEF to ensure that is aligned to the long term and medium term objectives in terms of infrastructure development.

12.13.1 State of Assets

With respect to **immovable assets**, City of Polokwane owns or otherwise controls some **372,974 fixed point assets** (e.g., facilities such as buildings, pump stations and bridges, as well as water and electricity meters), and **19,320 km of linear assets** such as electricity cables and lines, water and sanitation pipes, and information and communications technology (ICT) cables. Additionally, the city's investment property portfolio **includes land of 38 hectares**.

Polokwane's immovable asset portfolios have a combined current replacement cost (CRC) value of **R 42 billion**

12.13.2 State of Assets – Asset Portfolio

Asset Class	2024 Cost closing	2024 Accumulated depreciation	2024 Accumulated impairment	2024 carrying amount
Community Facilities	1 403 930 568.93	- 847 987 965.84	- 4 678 076.93	551 264 526.15
Sport and recreation facilities	4 238 476 473.41	- 2 605 157 160.36	- 5 014 117.65	1 628 305 195.40
Electrical Infrastructure	6 581 363 906.93	- 4 845 630 159.58	- 3 181 191.05	1 732 552 556.30
Electricity Network	2 779 548.06	- 322 176.47	-	2 457 371.59
Information and communication infrastructure	53 464 680.92	- 35 011 778.39	- 581 739.09	17 871 163.45
Roads and Stormwater Network	270 780 992.09	- 50 225 700.73	-	220 555 291.36
Roads infrastructure	9 500 580 399.89	- 6 436 524 602.94	- 27 611 132.29	3 036 444 664.66
Sanitation Infrastructure	1 794 602 401.10	- 1 271 738 324.17	- 7 757 700.74	515 106 376.19
Solid Waste Infrastructure	336 977 892.69	- 165 169 901.71	- 1 757 369.74	170 050 621.24
Storm water infrastructure	1 468 354 038.38	- 1 064 889 691.78	- 467 633.14	402 996 713.46
Water Supply Infrastructure	7 391 068 453.10	- 4 388 409 627.61	- 16 007 059.20	2 986 651 766.29
Land	462 481 883.01	-	-	462 481 883.01
Housing	49 289 764.57	- 36 762 692.13	- 46 968.50	12 480 103.93
Operational Buildings	886 649 683.76	- 683 341 639.22	- 2 607 567.67	200 700 476.87
Grand Total	34 440 800 686.85	- 22 431 171 420.94	- 69 710 556.02	11 939 918 709.89

Source: City of Polokwane Fixed Asset Register_2024

12.13.3 Asset Consultants

Reason for the need of Asset Consultants

Specialist skills of around 21 employees comprising electrical and civil engineers, town planners, GIS specialists, land valuers, quantity surveyors and environmentalists. The skills are required to comply to GRAP standards and therefore would not be cost effective to have employees with these skills appointed on a full-time basis. The approved organizational structure includes additional positions within the asset management unit. Should the positions gets filled, the scope of work to be allocated to the consultants will be reduced drastically,

Value for money

Unbundling of assets, conditional assessments Unit rate calibration to ensure compliance to GRAP standards and asset register. The municipality attained unqualified audit opinion in 2022/23 financial year on these assets that require such expertise.

Skills transfer

The transfer skill plan was drafted/compiled, and progress was given on quarterly basis to Audit Committee.

All officials involved in preparation of the Asset Register were involved in the process, being financial and technical officials.

Monitoring

Weekly meeting chaired by CFO in a form of OPCA (operation clean audit) and AFS readiness meetings. Monthly Asset Steering Committee meeting chaired by the CFO to ensure that all asset related issues are extensively discussed and resolved.

12.14 Auditor General Outcomes

12.14.1. AUDIT OUTCOMES OPINIONS PER FINANCIAL YEAR

FINANCIAL YEAR	AUDIT OUTCOME
2019/2020	Qualified
2020/2021	Qualified
2021/2022	Unqualified
2022/2023	Unqualified
2023/2024	Audit is still underway

Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

12.14.2 Audit Strategy

The Municipality established a task team to drive the Clean Audit initiative called “Operation Clean Audit” and which aims at improving governance, financial systems and service delivery at both local and provincial government level, reversing poor internal controls, poor quality of financial statements and non-compliance with Supply Chain Management whilst attaining a clean audit opinion.

The Task Team report to Council via the Audit and Performance Audit Committee which is responsible to Council for financial and internal control oversight in line with the Audit and Performance Audit Committee Charter.

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, Internal Audit and MMC for Finance
Asset management	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Annual Financial Statement	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Audit Committee	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, Internal Audit, Provincial Treasury and COGHSTA

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.15 FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY

It has been recognized that the well-managed physical development of the municipal precinct and the sustainable provision of infrastructural and social services to the citizenry of Polokwane Municipality, both depend to a large degree on the efficiency of the municipality as an institution, as well as its financial viability.

Repairs and maintenance become fundamental to financial sustainability. All revenue generating assets have to be maintained and refurbished all the time to continue rendering

the requisite services and yielding the revenue required to continue as a going concern. To this end the municipality has continued to set aside more and more resources both operational and capital to ensure that the assets are in a good state.

One of the processes the municipality embarked on as part of the turnaround was to develop a turnaround strategy striving to reduce costs and enhance revenue. Specific areas were targeted for budget reduction and streamlining. Luxury spending and unplanned spending was discouraged. Certain measures have been put in place to improve the management of revenue and collection thereof. In general municipality is working hard to ensure full compliance to circular 70 of the MFMA issued by National Treasury.

12.16. SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY (SCM)

The Polokwane Municipal Council adopted the Supply Chain Management Policy that was drafted in accordance with the requirements of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, No. 56 (MFMA), as well as the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations, Government Gazette Notice No. 868 of 2005.

Section 217 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa requires that when an organ of State contracts for goods and services, it must do so in accordance with a system which is fair, equitable, transparent, competitive and cost effective.

The Supply Chain Management Policy gives effect to these principles and the Preferential Procurement Legislation, and furthermore to comply with the provisions of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act and its Regulations promulgated in terms thereof. The SCM policy has recently been reviewed and approved by Council to ensure that controls are tightened to combat fraud and corruption in procurement processes.

12.16.1 Supply Chain Committees

Chapter 11 of the MFMA compels the municipalities to establish Supply Chain Management Units and implement the SCM Policy, which gives effect to all SCM functional areas. The Supply Chain Management Unit has been established and operates under a direct supervision of the **Chief Financial Officer**.

Regulation 26 of the Municipal Supply Chain Management Regulations stipulates that a municipality's Supply Chain Management system must provide for a committee system for competitive bids consisting of at least a bid specification, bid evaluation and bid adjudication committee. The Municipality has established the following committees: -

- **Bid Specification Committee.**
- **Bid Evaluation Committee and**
- **Bid Adjudication Committee.**

Each Committee consists of a practitioner from Supply Chain Management and officials from key Directorates in the Municipality. The Accounting Officer is responsible for the appointment of bid committees and committees are appointed once a year and reviewed accordingly by the Accounting Officer. Although the chain of work of these Committees is intertwined, they

operate separately from each other. All members of the Committees sign an Oath of Secrecy and Declaration of Interest to ensure that the bidding system is fair, transparency, openness and equitable.

Municipality has awarded 98% of the bids to the BBEE compliant service providers as part of implementation of BBEE legislation however the challenge remain on the category of empowerment insofar as disabled sector of society is concern. Currently municipality is advertising the tenders on the CSD as part of National Treasury initiative.

To curb irregular expenditure, the Office of the Chief Financial Officer has strengthened its compliance unit and developed a procurement checklist. The compliance officers verify whether all bids have been processes in accordance with the MFMA procurement regulations before been awarded.

12.16.2 SCM Challenges on Projects

List of SCM challenges on Projects	Progress to date	Solutions
<p><u>Non-Responsive Bid</u></p> <p>Non-responsive bid is when service providers or contractors are failing to respond to the bid evaluation requirements. In this case, the bid is cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>All the bids where bidders were non-responsive to the bid have been cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>Establishment of Panel of Contractors for Implementation of Capital Projects</p>
<p><u>Declining the Award</u></p> <p>There are incidents whereby contractors decline the appointments or awards due to under-quoting by the contractor or service provider on the project. The projects were cancelled and re-advertised if there are no second bidder in line.</p>	<p>The projects were cancelled and re-advertised.</p>	<p>Establishment of Panel of Contractors for Implementation of Capital Projects</p>
<p><u>Delays in Finalization of the Specifications by the Consulting Engineers</u></p> <p>Supply Chain Management (Demand Management) experienced delays with specifications that are referred to consulting engineers for rectifications. The specification takes a very long time to be finalized and thus delays the process of advertisement of the bid.</p>	<p>Follow ups are being made with the end-user departments for submission of specifications.</p>	<p>Planning on Projects will be done in one financial year and the implementation on the same projects will be done in a different year.</p>
<p><u>Quoting Above Budget</u></p> <p>There are incidents wherein service providers or contractors quote above the budget. The risk of appointing such contractors is that projects will be</p>	<p>Projects are delayed for appointment until such time that funding is guaranteed.</p>	<p>Proper costing of the project should be done by the consulting engineers.</p>

List of SCM challenges on Projects	Progress to date	Solutions
<p>delayed since there will be no funds to cover the shortfall at that time. The end-user department will wait for budget adjustment processes to unfold in order to obtain additional funding.</p>		

Source: PLK SCM SBU

12.17 MUNICIPAL REGULATIONS ON A STANDARD CHART OF ACCOUNTS (MSCOA)

mSCOA stands for “standard chart of accounts” and provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets, liabilities, equity, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. mSCOA is a “proudly South African” project researched by National Treasury based on municipal practices, reporting outcomes, policy implementation and review, etc.

12.17.1 mSCOA as a Business Reform

mSCOA is a business reform rather than a mere financial reform and requires multidimensional recording and reporting of every transaction across the following 7 segments:

Background

Minister of Finance has, in terms of section 168 of the Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act No.56 of 2003), and acting with the concurrence of the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs gazette the Municipal Regulations on Standard Chart of Accounts (mSCOA) into effect on 22 April 2014. Municipal SCOA provides a uniform and standardized financial transaction classification framework. Essentially this means that mSCOA prescribes the method (the how) and format (the look) that municipalities and their entities should use to record and classify all expenditure (capital and operating), revenue, assets and liabilities, policy outcomes and legislative reporting. This is done at transactional level and ensures that a municipality and its entities have minimum business processes in place. This will result in an improved understanding of the role of local government in the broader national policy framework and linkage to other government functions.

The Regulations apply to all municipalities and municipal entities and indicate its applicability and relevance to each specific municipal environment while accommodating organizational uniqueness and structural differences. The Regulation provides for a three-year preparation

and readiness window and all 278 municipalities had to be compliant to the mSCOA classification framework.

12.17.2 mSCOA Implementation by Polokwane Municipality

The municipality is one of the best performing municipalities in the country in the compliance of MSCOA regulations. To date we have not lost any of our equitable shares due to non-compliances and our reporting is extracted directly from the system by National Treasury due to the strict compliances to the MSCOA regulations.

12.18 COST CONTAINMENT

The cost containment regulations came into effect on 1 July 2019. The regulations require the municipality to monitor certain categories of expenditure with the objective to contain costs. The municipality is also required to report on the budget and actual expenditure relating to the regulated costs on a regular basis as outlined below

Cost Containment Measure	Budget	Total Expenditure
Consultants and Professional Services	186 444 835	168 970 812
Advertising Publicity and Marketing	50 783 418	45 889 133
Overtime	63 674 150	54 164 369
Catering Services	2 944 272	2 042 467
Travel Agency and Visa's	4 225 816	3 802 921
Travel and Subsistence	4 719 146	3 886 892
Total	312 791 637	278 756 594

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

12.18.1 UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR AND FRUITLESS EXPENDITURE SUMMARY

UIF SUMMARY

Description	Opening balance	Movement	Write offs by Council	Closing balance
Irregular	251 904 724	382 524 464	(575 604 606)	58 824 582
Unauthorised	1 631 926 182	921 608 228	(2 290 309 252)	263 225 158
Fruitless and wasteful	17 125 046	2 176 392	(19 301 438)	
TOTAL	1 927 420 566	437 482 532	- 1 306 356 602	1 041 421 450

Source: PIK BTO Directorate

UNAUTHORISED

UNAUTHORISED, IRREGULAR, FRUITLESS AND WASTEFUL EXPENDITURE DISALLOWED	2024	2023	2022	2021
Depreciation - non cash item	710 654 167	278 769 927	511 893 476	614 252 938
Bad Debts written off	88 102 425	59 491 224	4 219 800	-
Interest on Landfill site - non-cash)	0	-	6 500 022	-
Pholoso Private Hospital Cash	-	-	-	1 419 877.69
Impairment loss	45 352 723	31 148 802	-	-
Losses on disposal of assets	-	583 009 739	-	-
Inventory(consumed/issued/writ down)	77 498 913	88 136 685		
Total	921 608 228	1 040 556 577	539 098 503	615 672 816

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

IRREGULAR EXPENDITURE PER FINANCIAL YEAR

Financial year	2019/20	2020/21	2021/22	2022/23	2023/24
Irregular expenditure	53 290 069	72 934 604	89 762 828	255 808 363	382 524 464

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.19 Audit COMMITTEES Outcomes

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Operation Clean Audit (OPCA)	To report progress on the audit action plan.	Weekly	Management, Internal Audit and MMC for Finance

Committee	Purpose	Frequency	Attendees
Asset management	To report progress on specific asset issues. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Annual Financial Statement	To report progress on the AFS process plan. This is a sub-committee of the OPCA	Weekly	CFO, Asset management, internal audit and National Treasury
Audit Committee	To review the annual financial statements and audit action plan.	Quarterly and through special meetings.	Management, Internal Audit, Provincial Treasury and COGHSTA

Source: Plk BTO Directorate

12.20 Research and Development

12.20.1 City of Polokwane Investor summit

The city developed the 2030 Economic Growth and Development Plan which serves as a blue print for Polokwane local Municipality long term development plan. The plan has highlighted a needs to develop a Municipal investment incentive policy. The policy has been drafted currently undergoing public participation. Once this policy is approved by the council, a summit should organised in order to promote/market the city to potential investor based on incentives and available economic opportunities. Through this strategy, the municipality would be able to create more job opportunities and grow the local economy.

12.20.2 Use of early warning underground cable theft alarm system to prevent cable theft.

This solution is mainly applied below the soil surface above load carrying cable. It utilizes vibrations to activate and informs that a tamper is detected. The technology is used at other municipalities and will also significantly reduce reliance on physical security and its related costs.

12.20.3 Revamped IT infrastructure and control centre

Example, a customer should be able to log faults with pictures on an app. These issues should be then routed to all the various stakeholders such as technicians, relevant managers and the EM for monitoring purposes. This will also hold technicians accountable and reduce overtime due to the data that will be available for oversight reporting.

12.20.4 Risk to our financial viability

- Non-adherence to the cash flow strategy
- Overtime management especially over emergency overtime for essential services
- Road's concession project
- Illegal connections
- Community disruption as unwillingness to pay.
- Over reliance on contracted services and non-utilization of own staff
- Fuel costs
- Not investing in revenue generation projects
- Leeto Project

12.22 Sustained Audit Excellence Award

The City of Polokwane has emerged victorious at the prestigious **South African Local Government Association (SALGA) 2022/23 Municipal Awards**.

The City Received the award in the category honouring municipalities with sustained **unqualified audit opinions**, reaffirming its status as a beacon of fiscal responsibility and good governance. This remarkable achievement highlights Polokwane's dedication to upholding the highest standards of accountability, setting a commendable benchmark for municipalities nationwide.

The accolade places Polokwane among the select few identified for their potential to attain clean audits. Adding to the celebration.

Polokwane Housing Association (PHA), a key Entity under the municipality's purview, has also been honoured for its sustained unqualified audit opinion. This dual triumph further solidifies Polokwane's reputation as a model of efficiency and accountability in municipal governance. This accolade is a testament to the dedication and hard work of the entire Municipal team, it reaffirms the City commitment to transparency, accountability, and delivering value to the residents of Polokwane.

The recognition bestowed upon Polokwane Municipality and the PHA serves as a source of inspiration for municipalities across the country, demonstrating that with dedication and diligence, the goal of achieving clean audits is within reach.

As Polokwane basks in the glory of this well-deserved accolade, it stands as a shining example of what can be accomplished through a steadfast commitment to excellence and integrity in local government



Source: Plk BTO Directorate (2024)

STATUS

THE END

ⁱSection 16A of the Deeds Registry Act, Act 47 of 1937.

ⁱⁱSection 35 the Spatial Planning and land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

ⁱⁱⁱRegulation 20 to the Act read with section 56 of the Spatial Planning and land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

^{iv}Municipal delegation of power as amended from time to time read with section 56 of the of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013.

^vSchedule 1 (v) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

^{vi}section 32 read with section 6 (1)(a) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

^{vii}section 24 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013

^{viii}Chapter 4 Part E. section 20 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013